Health Care Entities, September 1, 2014; Audit & Accounting Guide

American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)

Follow this and additional works at: https://egrove.olemiss.edu/aicpa_indev

Part of the Accounting Commons
Preface

About AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides

This AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide has been developed by the AICPA Health Care Committee and the AICPA Health Care Audit and Accounting Guide Overhaul Task Force to assist management in the preparation of their financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and to assist auditors in performing and reporting on their audit engagements.

The Financial Reporting Executive Committee (FinREC) is the designated senior committee of the AICPA authorized to speak for the AICPA in the areas of financial accounting and reporting. Conforming changes made to the financial accounting and reporting guidance contained in this guide are approved by the FinREC chair (or his or her designee). Any changes made to the financial accounting and reporting guidance in this guide exceeding that of conforming changes, which are referred to as enhancive updates, are required to be approved by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of the members of FinREC. No enhancive updates have been made to this edition of the guide.

This guide does the following:

- Identifies certain requirements set forth in FASB Accounting Standards Codification® (ASC) and GAAP for governmental entities.
- Describes FinREC's understanding of prevalent or sole industry practice concerning certain issues. In addition, this guide may indicate that FinREC expresses a preference for the prevalent or sole industry practice, or it may indicate that FinREC expresses a preference for another practice that is not the prevalent or sole industry practice; alternatively, FinREC may express no view on the matter.
- Identifies certain other, but not necessarily all, industry practices concerning certain accounting issues without expressing FinREC's views on them.
- Provides guidance that has been supported by FinREC on the accounting, reporting, or disclosure treatment of transactions or events that are not set forth in FASB ASC or GAAP for governmental entities.

Accounting guidance for nongovernmental entities included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide is a source of nonauthoritative accounting guidance. FASB ASC is the authoritative source of U.S. accounting and reporting standards for nongovernmental entities, in addition to guidance issued by the SEC for SEC registrants.

Accounting guidance for governmental entities included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide and cleared by the GASB is a source of authoritative accounting guidance, as described in category (b) of the hierarchy of GAAP for state and local governmental entities. AICPA members should be prepared to justify departures from GAAP, as discussed in Rule 203, Accounting Principles (AICPA, Professional Standards, ET sec. 203 par. .01).
Auditing guidance included in an AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide is recognized as an interpretive publication, as defined in AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Interpretive publications are recommendations on the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries.

An interpretive publication is issued under the authority of the ASB after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the proposed interpretive publication is consistent with GAAS. The members of the ASB have found this guide to be consistent with GAAS. Although interpretive publications are not auditing standards, AU-C section 200 requires the auditor to consider applicable interpretive publications in planning and performing the audit because interpretive publications are relevant to the proper application of GAAS in specific circumstances. If the auditor does not apply the auditing guidance in an applicable interpretive publication, the auditor should document how the requirements of GAAS were complied with in the circumstances addressed by such auditing guidance.

The ASB is the designated senior committee of the AICPA authorized to speak for the AICPA on all matters related to auditing. Conforming changes made to the auditing guidance contained in this guide are approved by the ASB chair (or his or her designee) and the AICPA Vice President of Professional Standards and Services. Updates made to the auditing guidance in this guide exceeding that of conforming changes (referred to as *enhancive updates*) are issued after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the guide is consistent with the Statements on Auditing Standards (SASs). No enhancive updates have been made to this edition of the guide.

**Recognition**

**2014 Guide Edition**

**AICPA Senior Committees**

**Auditing Standards Board**

Kay Tatum, ASB Member

Bruce P. Webb, *Chair*

**Financial Reporting Executive Committee**

Jack Markey, FinREC Member

Richard C. Paul, *Chair*

The AICPA gratefully acknowledges those members of the AICPA Health Care Expert Panel who reviewed or otherwise contributed to the development of this edition of the guide: Jay D. Adkisson, Mark Albrecht, Robert D. Beard, Steve Blake, Ronald Finkelstein, John P. Gaspich Jr, Nanda P. Gopal, John Hawryluk, Patrick J. Kitchen, Kimberly McKay, Chris Pritchard, Steve Stang, Deborah Stokes, and the chair of the expert panel, Martha Garner, in addition to former panel member Mark Ross.

**AICPA Staff**

Nisha Gordhan

*Technical Manager*

Accounting and Auditing Publications

AAG-HCO
Guidance Considered in This Edition

This edition of the guide has been modified by the AICPA staff to include certain changes necessary due to the issuance of authoritative guidance since the guide was originally issued, and other revisions as deemed appropriate. Authoritative guidance issued through September 1, 2014, has been considered in the development of this edition of the guide.

Authoritative guidance that is issued as of September 1, 2014, and effective for entities with fiscal years ending on or before December 31, 2014, is incorporated directly in the text of this guide. The presentation of authoritative guidance issued as of September 1, 2014, but not yet effective for entities with fiscal years ending after December 31, 2014, is being presented differently than in past editions of this guide. This information is being presented as a guidance update, which is a shaded area that contains information on the new guidance and a reference to appendix A, "Guidance Updates," where appropriate. The distinct presentation of this content is intended to aid the reader in differentiating content that may not be effective for the reader's purposes.

This includes relevant guidance issued up to and including the following:

- FASB Accounting Standards Update No. 2014-15, Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern
- GASB Statement No. 71, Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 68
- SAS No. 129, Amendment to Statement on Auditing Standards No. 122 Section 920, Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties, as Amended (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 920)
- GASB Interpretations and Technical Bulletins issued through September 1, 2014
- Statement of Position 13-2, Performing Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements That Address the Completeness, Mapping, Consistency, or Structure of XBRL-Formatted Information (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, AUD sec. 14,470)
- PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 18, Related Parties

Users of this guide should consider guidance issued subsequent to those items listed previously to determine their effect on entities covered by this guide. In determining the applicability of recently issued guidance, its effective date should also be considered.

The changes made to this edition of the guide are identified in appendix H, "Schedule of Changes Made to the Text From the Previous Edition." The changes do not include all those that might be considered necessary if the guide were subjected to a comprehensive review and revision.
FASB ASC Pending Content

Presentation of Pending Content in FASB ASC
Amendments to FASB ASC (issued in the form of ASUs) are initially incorporated into FASB ASC in "pending content" boxes, below the paragraphs being amended with links to the transition information. The pending content boxes are meant to provide users with information about how the guidance in a paragraph will change as a result of the new guidance.

Pending content applies to different entities at different times due to varying fiscal year-ends, and because certain guidance may be effective on different dates for public and nonpublic entities. As such, FASB maintains amended guidance in pending content boxes within FASB ASC until the "roll-off" date. Generally, the roll-off date is six months following the latest fiscal year end for which the original guidance being amended could still be applied.

Presentation of FASB ASC Pending Content in AICPA Audit and Accounting Guides
Amended FASB ASC guidance that is included in pending content boxes in FASB ASC on May 1, 2014, is referenced as "Pending Content" in this guide. Readers should be aware that "Pending Content" referenced in this guide will eventually be subjected to FASB's roll-off process and no longer be labeled as "Pending Content" in FASB ASC (as discussed in the previous paragraph).

Terms Used to Define Professional Requirements in This AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide
Any requirements described in this guide are normally referenced to the applicable standards or regulations from which they are derived. Generally the terms used in this guide describing the professional requirements of the referenced standard setter (for example, the ASB) are the same as those used in the applicable standards or regulations (for example, must or should). However, where the accounting requirements are derived from FASB ASC, this guide uses should, whereas FASB uses shall. The Notice to Constituents in FASB ASC states that FASB considers the terms should and shall to be comparable terms.

Readers should refer to the applicable standards and regulations for more information on the requirements imposed by the use of the various terms used to define professional requirements in the context of the standards and regulations in which they appear.

Certain exceptions apply to these general rules, particularly in those circumstances where the guide describes prevailing or preferred industry practices for the application of a standard or regulation. In these circumstances, the applicable senior committee responsible for reviewing the guide's content believes the guidance contained herein is appropriate for the circumstances.

Applicability of Generally Accepted Auditing Standards and PCAOB Standards
Appendix A, "Council Resolution Designating Bodies to Promulgate Technical Standards" Compliance with Standards (AICPA, Professional Standards),
of the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct recognizes both the ASB and the PCAOB as standard setting bodies designated to promulgate auditing, attestation, and quality control standards. Rule 202, *Compliance With Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*, ET sec. 202 par. .01), requires an AICPA member who performs an audit to comply with the applicable standards.

Audits of the financial statements of those entities not subject to the oversight authority of the PCAOB (that is, those entities not within its jurisdiction—hereinafter referred to as *nonissuers*) are to be conducted in accordance with GAAS as issued by the ASB, a senior committee of the AICPA. The ASB develops and issues standards in the form of SASs through a due process that includes deliberation in meetings open to the public, public exposure of proposed SASs, and a formal vote. The SASs and their related interpretations are codified in the AICPA's *Professional Standards*.

Audits of the financial statements of those entities subject to the oversight authority of the PCAOB (that is, those entities within its jurisdiction—hereinafter referred to as *issuers*) are to be conducted in accordance with standards established by the PCAOB, a private sector, nonprofit corporation created by the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. The SEC has oversight authority over the PCAOB, including the approval of its rules, standards, and budget.

The auditing content in this guide primarily discusses GAAS issued by the ASB and is applicable to audits of nonissuers. Appendix C, "Clarified Auditing Standards and PCAOB Standards," of this guide is included to assist auditors in comparing the clarified standards, many of which are referenced throughout this guide, to the PCAOB standards. Appendix C is prepared for informational and reference purposes only. It has not been reviewed, approved, disapproved, or otherwise acted on by the PCAOB or any senior committee of the AICPA and does not represent official positions or pronouncements of the PCAOB or the AICPA.

Considerations for audits of issuers in accordance with PCAOB standards may also be discussed within this guide's chapter text. When such discussion is provided, the related paragraphs are designated with the following title: *Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards.*

**Alternatives Within U.S. GAAP**

The Private Company Council (PCC), established by the Financial Accounting Foundation's Board of Trustees in 2012, and FASB, working jointly, will mutually agree on a set of criteria to decide whether and when alternatives within U.S. GAAP are warranted for private companies. Based on those criteria, the PCC will review and propose alternatives within U.S. GAAP to address the needs of users of private company financial statements. These U.S. GAAP alternatives may be applied to those entities that are not public business entities, not-for-profits, or employee benefit plans.

The FASB ASC Master Glossary defines a *public business entity* as follows:

> A public business entity is a business entity meeting any one of the criteria below. Neither a not-for-profit entity nor an employee benefit plan is a business entity.

a. It is required by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) to file or furnish financial statements, or does file or furnish financial statements (including
voluntary filers), with the SEC (including other entities whose financial statements or financial information are required to be or are included in a filing).

b. It is required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the Act), as amended, or rules or regulations promulgated under the Act, to file or furnish financial statements with a regulatory agency other than the SEC.

c. It is required to file or furnish financial statements with a foreign or domestic regulatory agency in preparation for the sale of or for purposes of issuing securities that are not subject to contractual restrictions on transfer.

d. It has issued, or is a conduit bond obligor for, securities that are traded, listed, or quoted on an exchange or an over-the-counter market.

e. It has one or more securities that are not subject to contractual restrictions on transfer, and it is required by law, contract, or regulation to prepare U.S. GAAP financial statements (including footnotes) and make them publicly available on a periodic basis (for example, interim or annual periods). An entity must meet both of these conditions to meet this criterion.

An entity may meet the definition of a public business entity solely because its financial statements or financial information is included in another entity's filing with the SEC. In that case, the entity is only a public business entity for purposes of financial statements that are filed or furnished with the SEC.

Any discussion of alternatives for private companies within this guide is clearly identified.

References to Professional Standards

In citing GAAS and their related interpretations, references use section numbers within the codification of currently effective SASs, not the original statement number, as appropriate. In those sections of the guides that refer to specific auditing standards of the PCAOB, references are made to the AICPA's PCAOB Standards and Related Rules publication.

Limitations and Relationships to Other Authoritative Literature

This guide does not discuss the application of all GAAP and GAAS that are relevant to the preparation and audit of financial statements of health care entities. The guide is directed primarily to those aspects of the preparation and audit of health care entities' financial statements that may be unique to those entities or that are considered particularly significant to them.

This guide incorporates certain provisions of FASB ASC 954, Health Care Entities; FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities; GASB Statement No. 33, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Nonexchange Transactions, as amended; and GASB Statement No. 34, Basic Financial Statements—and Management's Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments, as amended, as well as ...
as other authoritative accounting and auditing literature. Not all guidance included in that literature, however, is incorporated, repeated, or summarized in this guide. Accordingly, FASB ASC, GASB statements and interpretations, AICPA Professional Standards, and all authoritative guidance should be read in conjunction with this guide.

This guide is not the only industry-specific AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide that auditors should consider when performing an audit of a governmental health care entity. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments includes governmental health care entities in its scope and was cleared by GASB. Therefore, certain accounting and financial reporting guidance in that guide constitutes category (b) of the hierarchy of GAAP for governmental health care entities. The auditing guidance in that guide should also be considered during an audit of a governmental health care entity that is included in the scope of this guide. In practice, auditors of governmental health care entities that issue separate financial statements as special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities⁴ may use this guide as the primary source of guidance because this guide addresses transactions that are unique to, or prevalent in, the health care industry. However, the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments contains information about governmental accounting and financial reporting standards and other matters that are unique to, or prevalent in, government and not included in this guide.²

Special-purpose governments are legally separate entities, as that term is described in paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 14, The Financial Reporting Entity. They may be component units of another governmental entity, or they may be other stand-alone governments (component units and other stand-alone governments are also defined in GASB Statement No. 14.). Because GASB Statement No. 34 is written from the perspective of general-purpose governments, paragraph 138 of GASB Statement No. 34 discusses how those requirements apply to special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities, such as certain governmental health care entities. Governmental health care entities that are special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities should present only the financial statements required for enterprise funds. These financial statements are discussed further in chapter 15, "Unique Considerations of State and Local Government Health Care Entities," of this guide.

Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-133,³ Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations, sets forth audit requirements

---

¹ GASB Statement No. 34, Basic Financial Statements—and Management’s Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments, as amended, does not provide guidance on separate reporting by individual enterprise funds of a government. Although this discussion of the guidance in GASB Statement No. 34 is written in terms of special-purpose business-type activities that are governmental health care entities, the accounting, financial reporting, and auditing considerations are usually equally applicable when the health care activity is conducted as a function or program of a general-purpose government and reported in an enterprise fund (see footnote 7 in chapter 12, "Special Purpose and State Governments," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments). Reporting guidance on separate reporting by individual enterprise funds of a government is provided in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments.

² See paragraphs 1.21 and 12.11–.13 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments.

³ Note that this circular and others will be superseded by the Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards: Final Rule. Refer to chapter 2, "General Auditing Considerations," of this guide for details of this update.
for health care entities expending federal awards. Institutions covered by OMB Circular A-133 include not-for-profit hospitals, public hospitals, institutions of higher education and their affiliated hospitals, voluntary health and welfare entities, and other community-based organizations. Auditors of health care entities who perform audits under Government Auditing Standards, the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, and OMB Circular A-133 should also refer to the Audit Guide Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits.

AICPA.org Website

The AICPA encourages you to visit the website at www.aicpa.org and the Financial Reporting Center at www.aicpa.org/frc. The Financial Reporting Center supports members in the execution of high-quality financial reporting. Whether you are a financial statement preparer or a member in public practice, this center provides exclusive member-only resources for the entire financial reporting process, and provides timely and relevant news, guidance and examples supporting the financial reporting process, including accounting, preparing financial statements and performing compilation, review, audit, attest or assurance and advisory engagements. Certain content on the AICPA's websites referenced in this guide may be restricted to AICPA members only.

Select Recent Developments Significant to This Guide

ASB’s Clarity Project

To address concerns over the clarity, length, and complexity of its standards, the ASB redrafted standards for clarity and also converged the standards with the International Standards on Auditing (ISA), issued by the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board. As part of redrafting the standards, they now specify more clearly the objectives of the auditor and the requirements with which the auditor has to comply when conducting an audit in accordance with GAAS. The clarified auditing standards are now fully effective.

As part of the clarity project the "AU-C" identifier was established to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections. The AU-C identifier had been scheduled to revert back to the AU identifier at the end of 2013, by which time the previous AU sections would be superseded for all engagements. However, in response to user requests, the AU-C identifier will be retained indefinitely. The superseded AU sections were removed from Professional Standards at the end of 2013, as scheduled.

The Auditing Standards Board has completed the Clarity Project with the issuance of SAS No. 128, Using the Work of Internal Auditors (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 610), in February, 2014. This guidance is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2014.

4 Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-133, Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations, also includes audit requirements for commercial organizations, including for-profit hospitals, that receive federal awards under Department of Health & Human Services programs. Generally, the organization has two options regarding audits: a financial-related audit of a particular award, in accordance with Government Auditing Standards, or an audit that meets the requirements of OMB Circular A-133. See Title 45, Public Welfare, U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 74.36(d) for further information.
AICPA’s Ethics Codification Project

The AICPA’s Professional Ethics Executive Committee (PEEC) restructured and codified the AICPA Code of Professional Conduct (code) so that members and other users of the code can apply the rules and reach appropriate conclusions more easily and intuitively. This is referred to as the AICPA Ethics Codification Project.

Although PEEC believes it was able to maintain the substance of the existing AICPA ethics standards through this process and limited substantive changes to certain specific areas that were in need of revision, the numeric citations and titles of interpretations have all changed. In addition, the ethics rulings are no longer in a question and answer format but rather, have been drafted as interpretations, incorporated into interpretations as examples, or deleted where deemed appropriate. For example,

- Rule 101, *Independence* [ET section 101 par. .01] is referred to as the "Independence Rule" [ET 1.200.001] in the revised code.

- the content from the ethics ruling entitled "Financial Services Company Client has Custody of a Member's Assets" [ET section 191 par. .081–.082] is incorporated into the "Brokerage and Other Accounts" interpretation [ET 1.255.020] found under the subtopic "Depository, Brokerage, and Other Accounts" [ET 1.255] of the "Independence" topic [ET 1.200].

The revised code is effective December 15, 2014 and is available at http://pub.aicpa.org/codeofconduct. References to the code in this guide will be updated in the next edition.

To assist users in locating in the revised code content from the prior code, PEEC created a mapping document. The mapping document is available in Excel format at www.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/ProfessionalEthics/Community/DownloadableDocuments/Mapping.xlsx and can also be found in appendix D in the revised code.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Overview and Unique Considerations of Health Care Entities</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Purpose ........................................................................</td>
<td>01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicability ................................................................</td>
<td>02-06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Classification of Health Care Entities .......................</td>
<td>07-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Regulatory Environment ............................................</td>
<td>09-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Health Care Reform ................................................</td>
<td>12-14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>General Auditing Considerations</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Overview ......................................................</td>
<td>01-02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An Audit of Financial Statements ................................</td>
<td>03-09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Audit Risk ..........................................................</td>
<td>05-09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terms of Engagement .............................................</td>
<td>10-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Business Associates Agreements ................................</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Audit Planning ....................................................</td>
<td>15-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group Audits ........................................................</td>
<td>19-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multi-Location Audits Versus Group Audits ....................</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complex Transactions ............................................</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Materiality ................................................................</td>
<td>25-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Performance Materiality .........................................</td>
<td>29-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Qualitative Aspects of Materiality ............................</td>
<td>31-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use of Assertions in Assessment of Risks of Material .......</td>
<td>33-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risk Assessment Procedures ....................................</td>
<td>35-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities ..........</td>
<td>37-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Entity and Its Environment ..................................</td>
<td>44-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Additional Audit Considerations ................................</td>
<td>58-94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Substantive Analytical Procedures ................................</td>
<td>58-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting Estimates ............................................</td>
<td>60-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transactions Processed by Service Organizations ............</td>
<td>63-66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compliance With Laws and Regulations ........................</td>
<td>67-77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Going-Concern Considerations ....................................</td>
<td>78-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Written Representations ..........................................</td>
<td>88-94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single Audit Act and Related Audit Considerations ..........</td>
<td>95-101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statutory Reporting Considerations for Health Plans ........</td>
<td>102-110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RBC Requirements ..................................................</td>
<td>106-107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deficiencies in Internal Control ...............................</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Communicating Internal Control Matters in an Audit ..........</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Communications With Regulators and the Annual .............</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial Reporting Model Regulation ........................</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Unique Financial Statement Considerations for Not-for-Profit Health Care Entities</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Complete Set of Financial Statements ..........................................................</td>
<td>02-05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balance Sheet ................................. ..................................................</td>
<td>06-08</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contents
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Unique Financial Statement Considerations for Not-for-Profit Health Care Entities—continued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statement of Operations ..................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Performance Indicator .......................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other Intermediate Subtotals ............................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extraordinary Items, Discontinued Operations, and Accounting Changes ...............................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Revenues ............................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expenses ............................................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statement of Changes in Net Assets (or Equity) ..................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statement of Cash Flows ......................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Notes to the Financial Statements ......................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Subsequent Events ...............................................................................................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Example Financial Statements ............................................................................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 4       | Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments ............................................................................ | .01-.76 |
|         | Cash and Cash Equivalents .................................................................................................. | .01-.11 |
|         | Centralized Cash Management Arrangements ....................................................................... | .03-.06 |
|         | Cash From Restricted Donations ........................................................................................ | .07 |
|         | Other Restricted or Designated Cash Amounts ................................................................... | .08-.11 |
|         | Investments ........................................................................................................................ | .12-.73 |
|         | Fair Value Option ................................................................................................................ | .17-.22 |
|         | Investments in Debt Securities and Certain Equity Securities With a Readily Determinable Fair Value That Are Not Recorded Under the Fair Value Option ................................ | .23-.35 |
|         | Investments in Certain Other Financial Instruments Without a Readily Determinable Fair Value That Are Not Recorded Under the Fair Value Option ................................................. | .36-.38 |
|         | Investment Pools .................................................................................................................. | .39-.47 |
|         | Fair Value Measurements ..................................................................................................... | .48 |
|         | Impairment of Investments .................................................................................................. | .49-.59 |
|         | Securities Lending Activities ............................................................................................. | .60 |
|         | Transfers of Assets to an NFP or Charitable Trust for Investment ....................................... | .61-.63 |
|         | Regulation ............................................................................................................................ | .64 |
|         | Other Financial Statement Presentation Matters ................................................................... | .65-.73 |
|         | Auditing ............................................................................................................................... | .74-.76 |

<p>| 5       | Derivatives ........................................................................................................................ | .01-.47 |
|         | Introduction ......................................................................................................................... | .01-.05 |
|         | General Guidance ............................................................................................................... | .06-.14 |
|         | Fair Value Hedges ............................................................................................................... | .09-.10 |
|         | Cash Flow Hedges ............................................................................................................... | .11-.13 |
|         | Derivatives Not Designated as a Hedging Instrument ........................................................ | .14 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Derivatives—continued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hedge Accounting</td>
<td>.15-.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shortcut Method</td>
<td>.22-.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hybrid Instruments, Host Contracts, and Embedded Derivatives</td>
<td>.31-.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calls and Puts in Debt</td>
<td>.35-.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivatives Embedded in Split-Interest Agreements</td>
<td>.37-.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Statement Presentation and Disclosure</td>
<td>.40-.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-hedging Derivatives</td>
<td>.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Requirements for NFP Health Care Entities</td>
<td>.43-.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditing</td>
<td>.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Property and Equipment and Other Assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview</td>
<td>.01-.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capitalized Interest</td>
<td>.06-.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supplies, Rebates, and Discounts</td>
<td>.12-.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lessee Involvement in Fixed Asset Construction</td>
<td>.14-.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset Retirement and Environmental Remediation Obligations</td>
<td>.18-.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impairment or Disposal</td>
<td>.21-.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discontinued Operations</td>
<td>.28-.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonreciprocal Transfers</td>
<td>.31-.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Long-Lived Assets</td>
<td>.34-.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Company Alternative Issued by the Private Company Council</td>
<td>.38-.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Statement Presentation</td>
<td>.42-.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditing</td>
<td>.46-.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Municipal Bond Financing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>.01-.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conduit Bonds That Trade in Public Markets</td>
<td>.06-.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit Enhancement</td>
<td>.09-.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issuance of Municipal Bonds</td>
<td>.12-.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extinguishment and Modification Transactions</td>
<td>.14-.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calls and Mode Conversions</td>
<td>.18-.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defeasance</td>
<td>.20-.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modifications</td>
<td>.27-.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain or Loss on Debt Extinguishment</td>
<td>.32-.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debt Issuance Costs</td>
<td>.34-.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puts or Tender Options</td>
<td>.37-.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRS Considerations</td>
<td>.40-.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Statement Presentation and Disclosure</td>
<td>.45-.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balance Sheet</td>
<td>.45-.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement of Operations</td>
<td>.64-.65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>7 Municipal Bond Financing—continued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dislosures ........................................... .66-.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Obligated Group Reporting ......................... .73-.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interim Financial Reporting ....................... .75-.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing ................................................ .77-.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General ................................................... .77-.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditor Involvement With Municipal Securities Filings ...... .86-.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Letters for Underwriters .............................. .98-.102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Attestation Engagements Related to Securities Issuance .......... .103-.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appendix A—Municipal Securities Regulation .............. .105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>8 Contingencies and Other Liabilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contingencies and Commitments ............. .01-.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Essentials of Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure for Contingencies ...... .03-.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Managing Risk of Loss ....................... .10-.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medical Malpractice .............................. .13-.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosures for Medical Malpractice .......... .48-.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physician Guarantees and Other Agreements With Physicians .............. .54-.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other Liabilities ................................. .62-.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asset Retirement Obligations ..................... .62-.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compensation and Related Benefits ............ .65-.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joint and Several Liability Arrangements ........ .77-.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Agency Funds ........................................... .82-.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fees Paid to the Federal Government by Health Insurers .......... .84-.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tax Considerations for NFP Health Care Entities ........ .. .86-.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Private Inurement and Intermediate Sanctions ........ .92-.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unrelated Business Income ....................... .94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>State and Local Taxes ............................... .95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tax Positions .......................................... .96-.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs ....... .98-.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Risks and Uncertainties ........................... .100-.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing Contingencies and Other Liabilities .......... .107-.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing Medical Malpractice Loss Contingencies ........ .108-.111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing Accounting Estimates .................... .112-.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use of Actuaries and Actuarial Methods ........... .118-.121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Evaluating Lawyers’ Responses ................... .122-.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Income Taxes ........................................... .126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing Considerations ............................ .127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>9 Net Assets (Equity)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Investor-Owned Health Care Entities .............. .01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Not-for-Profit Entities ............................ .02-.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Net Asset Classes .................................... .05-.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reclassifications .................................... .19-.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contents**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Net Assets (Equity)—continued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Classification of Donor-Restricted Endowment Funds ...................... 26-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosure ............................................................... 33-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing ........................................................................... 38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Overview of the Health Care Environment .................. 01-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rate Setting With Third-Party Payors ...................... 05-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Government-Contracting Environment .................... 11-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Charity Care ............................................................... 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Types of Health Care Revenue ...................................... 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Types of Payment Methodologies .................................... 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patient (or Resident) Service Revenue ....................... 18-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Revenue Recognition .................................................. 18-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting and Financial Reporting Requirements ............. 30-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Premium and Capitation Revenues .................................... 37-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patient Receivables .................................................. 41-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Estimated Final Settlements .......................................... 46-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing ........................................................................... 55-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounts Receivable Confirmations .............................. 58-60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Contributions Received and Made</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Distinguishing Contributions From Other Transactions ............... 03-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contributions Received ......................... 09-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expiration of Donor-Imposed Restrictions ......................... 12-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Promises to Give in Future Periods (Pledges) ....................... 15-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contributions of Long-Lived Assets, the Use of Long-Lived Assets, or Resources to Acquire Them ........ 25-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contributed Services ................................................... 28-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reporting the Cost of Special Events and Other Fund-Raising Activities ........................................ 31-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Naming Opportunities ................................................... 34-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Investments Gain or Loss Related to Donor-Restricted Contributions ........................................... 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transfers of Assets to an NFP or Charitable Trust That Raises or Holds Contributions for Others .......... 39-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contributions Made ....................................................... 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other Considerations .................................................... 48-55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing ........................................................................... 56-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appendix A—TIS Section 6400, Health Care Entities .................. 63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>The Reporting Entity and Related Entities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Overview ................................................. 01-02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reporting by NFP Health Care Entities ............... 03-58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contents
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Financial Accounting and Reporting for Managed Care Services</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Overview ......................................................................</td>
<td>.01-.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recognition and Classification of Revenue ......................</td>
<td>.03-.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capitation Arrangements ...........................................</td>
<td>.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for Health Care Costs ..................................</td>
<td>.08-.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for Loss Contracts ......................................</td>
<td>.13-.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Consideration of Anticipated Investment Income .................</td>
<td>.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for Stop-Loss Insurance ................................</td>
<td>.18-.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General and Administrative Expenses ................................</td>
<td>.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acquisition Costs ..................................................</td>
<td>.21-.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial Statement Display Considerations ....................</td>
<td>.23-.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balance Sheet ........................................................</td>
<td>.23-.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Income and Cash Flow Statement ....................................</td>
<td>.25-.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosures ..................................................................</td>
<td>.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Financial Accounting and Reporting by Continuing Care Retirement Communities</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Overview ......................................................................</td>
<td>.01-.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Types of Contracts ..................................................................</td>
<td>.06-.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Advance Fees ..................................................................</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic Fees ..........................................................</td>
<td>.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use Fees ....................................................................</td>
<td>.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Types of Living Accommodations .........................................</td>
<td>.11-.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Financial Accounting and Reporting by Continuing Care Retirement Communities—continued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F e e s a n d P a y m e n t M e t h o d .................................. . 13-.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for Refundable Advance Fees ............................................. . 16-.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for Fees Refundable to Residents Only From Reoccupancy Proceeds of a Contract Holder's Unit .............. . 21-.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for Nonrefundable Advance Fees ........................................ . 24-.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Classification of Refundable Advance Fees ........................................ . 26-.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for the Obligation to Provide Future Services and the Use of Facilities to Current Residents .............. . 31-.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accounting for the Costs of Acquiring Initial Continuing-Care Contracts .............. . 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial Statements ........................................................................... . 37-.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auditing ......................................................................................... . 44-.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Unique Considerations of State and Local Government Health Care Entities ............................................. . 01-.167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Introduction .................................................................................... . 01-.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicability of This Chapter ...................................................... . 03-.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GAAP Hierarchy for Governmental Health Care Entities ...................... . 05-.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Applicability of FASB and AICPA Pronouncements .............................. . 09-.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basic Financial Statements ................................................................ . 12-.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statement of Net Position .................................................................. . 13-.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position ............. . 19-.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Statement of Cash Flows .................................................................... . 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Segment Reporting ............................................................................. . 27-.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RSI, Including MD&amp;A ........................................................................ . 29-.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments ........................................ . 34-.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cash and Cash Equivalents .................................................................. . 34-.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Investments ....................................................................................... . 38-.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Derivatives ....................................................................................... . 53-.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Property and Equipment and Other Assets ......................................... . 60-.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Capital Assets—General ..................................................................... . 61-.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intangible Assets Other Than Goodwill .............................................. . 65-.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Goodwill ........................................................................................... . 68-.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Leases ............................................................................................... . 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Service Concession Arrangements ..................................................... . 71-.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asset Retirement and Pollution Remediation Obligations .................... . 75-.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosures ....................................................................................... . 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Municipal Bond Financing and Other Long-Term Debt ........................ . 78-.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Debt Defeasance and Extinguishment ................................................. . 81-.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Debt Issuance Costs .......................................................................... . 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosures ....................................................................................... . 86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Unique Considerations of State and Local Government Health Care Entities—continued</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Contingencies and Other Liabilities ......................................................... .87-.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insurance-Related Contingencies ...................................................................... .87-.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compensation and Related Benefits ................................................................... .98-.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tax Considerations ........................................................................................... .106-.107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosures ........................................................................................................ .108-.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Net Position ...................................................................................................... .110-.119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Financial Reporting .......................................................................................... .118-.119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Health Care Service Revenue and Receivables ................................................ .120-.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contributions and Other Nonexchange Transactions .......................................... .124-.152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Reporting Entity and Related Entities ..................................................... .135-.146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Institutionally-Related Foundations .................................................................. .147-.152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Business Combinations ..................................................................................... .153-.154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>General Auditing Considerations for Governmental Health Care Entities ........... .155-.167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Independent Auditor’s Reports ......................................................................... .161-.162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RSI .................................................................................................................... .163-.165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SI and OI ........................................................................................................... .166-.167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Appendix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>Guidance Updates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Statement of Position 99-1, <em>Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Clarified Auditing Standards and PCAOB Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Statement of Position 00-1, <em>Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Information Sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>References to AICPA Technical Practice Aids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>The New Revenue Recognition Standard: FASB ASU No. 2014-09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Schedule of Changes Made to the Text From the Previous Edition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary

### Index of Pronouncements and Other Technical Guidance

### Subject Index
Chapter 1

Overview and Unique Considerations of Health Care Entities

Purpose

1.01 This guide has been prepared to assist health care entities in preparing financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America and to assist independent auditors in auditing and reporting on those financial statements. This guide focuses on accounting and auditing issues that are pervasive in, or unique to, health care entities.

Applicability

1.02 This guide applies to the following types of health care entities:

- Investor-owned businesses, both public business entities and private companies. Refer to the preface for further explanation of public business entities and private companies.
- Not-for-profit (NFP) entities that have no ownership interest and are essentially self-sustaining from fees charged for goods and services (the term not-for-profit entity is used as defined in the FASB Accounting Standards Codification [ASC] Master Glossary).
- Governmental entities. See paragraph 1.08 and chapter 15, "Unique Considerations of State and Local Government Health Care Entities," of this guide for further discussion regarding governmental health care entities.

This guide applies to entities whose principal operations consist of providing or agreeing to provide health care services and that derive all or almost all of their revenues from the sale of goods or services; it also applies to entities whose primary activities are the planning, organization, and oversight of such entities, such as parent or holding companies of health care entities.

1.03 This guide does not apply to voluntary health and welfare entities, as defined in the FASB ASC Master Glossary. It also does not apply to NFPs that are fund-raising foundations, even if those foundations are included in the consolidated financial statements of a health care entity. Voluntary health and welfare entities and fund-raising foundations follow the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities, rather than this guide.

1.04 Thus, this guide applies to the following entities, among others:

- Clinics, medical group practices, individual practice associations, individual practitioners, emergency care providers, laboratories, surgery centers, imaging centers, and other ambulatory care organizations
- Continuing care retirement communities
- Drug and alcohol rehabilitation centers and other rehabilitation facilities
Health Care Entities

- Health maintenance organizations, or HMOs, and similar prepaid health care plans
- Home health agencies
- Hospice care providers
- Hospitals
- Institutional facilities that provide skilled nursing, intermediate, or less-intensive levels of health care
- Integrated health care delivery systems that include one or more of these entities
- Providers of durable medical equipment and related medical services

1.05 Some entities may have health care as a component of a larger, more diversified operation. For example, some senior independent living facilities are primarily real estate operations with a health care component. The Financial Reporting Executive Committee believes that to the extent such entities have unique transactions of the type covered by this guide, the recognition and measurement guidance of this guide would be applicable. Professional judgment should be exercised in determining the applicability of this guide to transactions entered into by such entities.

1.06 A health care entity may be part of another entity, such as a medical school or university, or a subsidiary of a corporation. The recommendations in this guide apply to the separate financial statements of the health care entity.

Classification of Health Care Entities

1.07 The nature of the entity and its operating structure have a significant effect on the needs of financial statement users. According to paragraph 8 of FASB Concepts Statement No. 4, *Objectives of Financial Reporting by Nonbusiness Organizations*

> some organizations have no ownership interests but are essentially self-sustaining from fees they charge for goods and services. Examples are those private nonprofit hospitals ... that may receive relatively small amounts of contributions and grants but finance their capital needs largely from the proceeds of debt issues and their operating needs largely from service charges rather than from private philanthropy or governmental grants. As a result, assessment of amounts, timing, and uncertainty of cash flows becomes the dominant interest of their creditors and other resource providers and profitability becomes an important indicator of performance. Consequently, the objectives of Concepts Statement No. 1 may be more appropriate for those organizations.

1.08 Health care entities usually can be classified into the following categories on the basis of their operating characteristics:

a. *Investor-owned health care entities.* According to FASB ASC 954-10-05-2, these entities are owned by investors or others with a private equity interest and provide goods or services with the objective of making a profit. They include public business entities and private companies. Refer to the preface for further explanation of public business entities and private companies.
b. *NFP business-oriented entities.* According to FASB ASC 954-10-05-2, these entities are characterized by no ownership interests and are essentially self-sustaining from fees charged for goods and services. The fees charged by such entities generally are intended to help the entity maintain its self-sustaining status, rather than maximize profits for the owner's benefit. Such entities often are exempt from federal income taxes and may receive contributions of relatively small amounts from resource providers that do not expect commensurate or proportionate pecuniary return.

c. *Governmental health care entities.* These are public corporations and bodies corporate and politic. Other entities are governmental entities if they have one or more of the following characteristics:

i. Popular election of officers or appointment or approval of a controlling majority of the members of the entity's governing body by officials of one or more state or local governments

ii. The potential for unilateral dissolution by a government, with the net assets reverting to a government

iii. The power to enact and enforce a tax levy.

Furthermore, entities are presumed to be governmental if they have the ability to directly issue (rather than through a state or municipal authority) debt that pays interest that is exempt from federal taxation. However, entities possessing only that ability (to issue tax-exempt debt) and none of the other governmental characteristics may rebut the presumption that they are governmental if their determination is supported by compelling, relevant evidence.

d. *NFP nonbusiness-oriented entities.* According to FASB ASC 954-10-15-3, these are *voluntary health and welfare entities*, as defined in the FASB ASC Master Glossary. Such entities are within the scope of FASB ASC 958, *Not-for-Profit Entities*. Additional accounting guidance may be obtained in the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Entities*, rather than this guide, as discussed in paragraph 1.03.

**Regulatory Environment**

1.09 Health care entities operate in a highly regulated environment. These regulations affect the provider's operations, as well as certain estimates in the financial statements, such as patient service revenue, third-party payor settlements, and general and professional liabilities. The Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) is the government's principal agency for protecting the health of all Americans and providing essential human services. The following are some of the more significant agencies operating under the HHS that impact health care entities:

- Administration for Community Living
- Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services
- Food and Drug Administration
- Health Resources and Services Administration
- National Institutes of Health
- Office of Inspector General
Other important agencies include the Civil and Criminal Divisions of the Department of Justice, each state's Office of the Attorney General, Medicaid, the IRS, state insurance agencies or departments, and state and federal health benefit exchanges.

Some significant regulations affecting health care are the following:

- False Claims Act
- The antikickback statute of the Medicare and Medicaid Patient and Program Protection Act of 1987
- Stark I, II, and III
- Emergency Medical Treatment and Active Labor Act
- The Privacy Rule of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996
- The State Children's Health Insurance Program of 1997
- The Medicare Prescription Drug Improvement and Modernization Act of 2003
- Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act enacted as part of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009
- Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (ACA)
- Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010

In March 2010, Congress passed two pieces of legislation designed to reform the U.S. health care system. The ACA was enacted on March 23 and was quickly followed by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, which amended several portions of the first act and added new provisions of its own. One of the goals of the legislation is to reform the health care delivery system to improve its quality while lowering its overall cost. In order to meet this goal, among other things, the ACA

- requires states to create health benefit exchanges, competitive marketplaces where individuals and small businesses can compare policies and premiums, and buy insurance (with a government subsidy if eligible). The requirement for certification of all exchanges expired on January 1, 2014.
- establishes state-based reinsurance and risk adjustment programs and a federal risk corridors program. The overall goal of these programs is to provide certainty and protect against adverse selection in the market while stabilizing premiums in the individual and small group markets as market reforms and health benefit exchanges began in 2014.
- authorizes Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services to create the Medicare Shared Savings Program, which encourages accountable care organizations to facilitate cooperation among providers to improve the quality of care provided to Medicare beneficiaries and reduce unnecessary costs.
- adds new requirements for tax-exempt hospitals. To address these requirements for hospitals that want to qualify for tax exemption under IRC Section 501(c)(3), the IRS issued IRC Section 501(r)
that provides requirements for charitable hospitals on a facility-by-facility basis. These four general requirements are to

— establish written financial assistance and emergency medical care policies,
— limit amounts charged for emergency or other medically necessary care to individuals eligible for assistance under the hospital's financial assistance policy,
— make reasonable efforts to determine whether an individual is eligible for assistance under the hospital's financial assistance policy before engaging in extraordinary collection actions against the individual, and
— conduct a community health needs assessment (CHNA) and adopt an implementation strategy at least once every three years. (These CHNA requirements are effective for tax years beginning after March 23, 2012).

establishes other requirements, such as employer mandates, that will further affect provider reimbursement for the current uninsured population.

1.13 Health reform measures may affect the way health care entities deliver services to their patients and how they are compensated for those services. The AICPA has dedicated a section on its website to health care reform legislation and its implementation; see www.aicpa.org/Research/HCR/Pages/Health-Care-Reform.aspx.

1.14 This guide will be updated as further regulations are issued.
Chapter 2

General Auditing Considerations

Overview

2.01 AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), addresses the independent auditor's overall responsibilities when conducting an audit of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS). Specifically, it sets out the overall objectives of the independent auditor (the auditor) and explains the nature and scope of an audit designed to enable the auditor to meet those objectives. It also explains the scope, authority, and structure of GAAS and includes requirements establishing the general responsibilities of the auditor applicable in all audits, including the obligation to comply with GAAS.

2.02 Paragraph .12 of AU-C section 200 states that the overall objectives of the auditor, in conducting an audit of financial statements, are to

a. obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework; and

b. report on the financial statements, and communicate as required by GAAS, in accordance with the auditor's findings.

This section of the guide provides guidance to the auditors of health care entities primarily on the unique application of GAAS in health care entity audits.

An Audit of Financial Statements

2.03 Consistent with the guidance presented in paragraph .04 of AU-C section 200, the purpose of an audit of a health care entity's financial statements is to provide financial statement users with an opinion by the auditor on whether the financial statements are fairly presented, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework, which enhances the degree of confidence that intended users can place in the financial statements. An audit conducted in accordance with GAAS and relevant ethical requirements enables the auditor to form that opinion. As the basis for the auditor's opinion, paragraph .06 of AU-C section 200 states that GAAS require the auditor to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. Reasonable assurance is a high, but not absolute, level of assurance. It is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (for purposes of GAAS, that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level.

2.04 Paragraphs .08 and .10 of AU-C section 200 state that GAAS contain objectives, requirements, and application and other explanatory material that
Health Care Entities

are designed to support the auditor in obtaining reasonable assurance. GAAS require that the auditor exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the planning and performance of the audit and, among other things,

- identify and assess risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, based on an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control.¹
- obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence about whether material misstatements exist, through designing and implementing appropriate responses to the assessed risks.
- form an opinion on the financial statements, or determine that an opinion cannot be formed, based on an evaluation of the audit evidence obtained.

The auditor also may have certain other communication and reporting responsibilities to users, management, those charged with governance, or parties outside the entity, regarding matters arising from the audit. These responsibilities may be established by GAAS or by applicable law or regulation.

Audit Risk

2.05 Paragraph .A36 of AU-C section 200 explains that audit risk is a function of the risks of material misstatement and detection risk. The assessment of risks is based on audit procedures to obtain information necessary for that purpose and evidence obtained throughout the audit. The assessment of risks is a matter of professional judgment, rather than a matter capable of precise measurement.

2.06 Paragraphs .A38–.A40 of AU-C section 200 provide further explanation on the two levels of the risks of material misstatement. The risks of material misstatement exist at the overall financial statement level and the assertion level for classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures. Risks of material misstatement at the overall financial statement level refer to risks of material misstatement that relate pervasively to the financial statements as a whole and potentially affect many assertions. Risks of material misstatement at the assertion level are assessed in order to determine the nature, timing, and extent of further audit procedures necessary to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence. This evidence enables the auditor to express an opinion on the financial statements at an acceptably low level of audit risk.

2.07 Paragraph .05 of AU-C section 315, Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement (AICPA, Professional Standards), requires the auditor to perform risk assessment procedures to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels. Paragraph .A44 of AU-C section 200 explains that the assessment of the risks of material misstatement may be expressed in quantitative terms, such as in percentages or in nonquantitative terms (for example, high, medium, or low).

¹ In May 2013, the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission issued its updated Internal Control–Integrated Framework and related illustrative documents, effective December 15, 2014.
2.08 Paragraphs .A41–.A44 and .A46–.A47 of AU-C section 200 provide further guidance on the two components of the risk of material misstatement (inherent risk and control risk) and characteristics of detection risk.

2.09 In many health care entities, assertions for certain significant accounts may have inherent risk assessed as relatively low. Such assertions typically have characteristics such as (a) a low volume of transactions, (b) transactions that are not complex, or (c) transactions that do not require the use of significant accounting estimates or other judgments. Examples of such relatively low risk assertions may include completeness and existence of inventories, marketable securities, assets whose use is limited, property and equipment and long-term debt. However, assertions for certain other significant accounts may have higher inherent risk due to various factors such as (a) complex transaction, (b) transactions involving the use of significant accounting estimates or other judgments, or (c) transactions involving the use of experts. Examples of such higher risk assertions may include the valuation of patient accounts receivable, goodwill, certain marketable securities and derivative financial instruments, or the completeness and accuracy of medical malpractice, pension, or third-party settlement liabilities.

Terms of Engagement

2.10 The scope of services rendered by auditors generally depends on the types of reports to be issued as a result of the engagement. Paragraphs .09–.10 of AU-C section 210, Terms of Engagement (AICPA, Professional Standards), states that the auditor should agree upon the terms of the audit engagement with management or those charged with governance, as appropriate. The agreed-upon terms of the audit engagement should be documented in an audit engagement letter or other suitable form of agreement. Paragraph .10 of AU-C section 210 provides a listing of agreed-upon terms that should be included. As explained in paragraph .A22 of AU-C section 210, both management and the auditor have an interest in documenting the agreed-upon terms of the audit engagement before the commencement of the audit to help avoid misunderstandings with respect to the audit.

Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards

Paragraphs 5–7 of Auditing Standard No. 16, Communications with Audit Committees (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards), includes requirements related to an auditor's understanding when performing an integrated audit of financial statements and internal control over financial reporting and requirements related to an audit of the financial statements in accordance with PCAOB standards.

2.11 The auditor may consider certain health-care-specific matters in establishing the terms of engagement. For example, when auditing the financial statements of a hospital, with respect to third-party payment matters, language such as the following may be included if appropriate:

An audit conducted in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America does not include audit procedures specifically designed to detect noncompliance with laws and regulations that does not have a material effect on the financial statements (for example, noncompliance with fraud and abuse statutes that
result in fines or penalties being imposed on the company. The auditors' procedures do not include testing compliance with laws and regulations in any jurisdiction related to Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse. It is the responsibility of management of the company, with the oversight of those charged with governance, to ensure that the company's operations are conducted in accordance with the provisions of laws and regulations, including compliance with the provision of laws and regulations that determine the reported amounts and disclosures in the company's financial statements. Therefore, management's responsibilities for compliance with laws and regulations applicable to its operations, include, but are not limited to, those related to Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes.

With respect to cost reports that may be filed with a third party (such as federal and state regulatory agencies), the auditors have not been engaged to test in any way, or render any form of assurance on, the propriety or allowability of the specific costs to be claimed on, or charges to be reported in, a cost report. Management is responsible for the accuracy and propriety of all cost reports filed with Medicare, Medicaid, or other third parties.

The auditors have not been engaged to provide any services with respect to confirming the tax-exempt status of any outstanding bond issue, including testing in any way or rendering any form of assurance that the bonds are in compliance with the requirements as specified in the IRC and regulations thereunder. Management is responsible for monitoring the post-issuance compliance with these requirements.

2.12 In addition to reporting on the entity's basic financial statements, the independent auditor may be engaged to report on the following special reports: (a) cost reports for third-party payors;2 (b) cost reports related to research grants; (c) reports for contributors; (d) reports for local, state, or federal authorities; (e) reports related to bond indentures and other debt instruments; and (f) other special-purpose reports. The nature, timing, and extent of procedures to be performed and the type of reports to be issued are based on the scope of services required by the entity and applicable professional standards. AU-C section 800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks; AU-C section 805, Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement; and AU-C section 806, Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards), and Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements are useful for these engagements.

2.13 The auditor and client may consider including a provision in the engagement letter requiring the client to obtain consent from the auditor before including the auditor's report in an official statement. If the auditor and client agree not to include such a provision, the auditor considers including in the engagement letter a requirement that if the client issues any official statement, and the auditor is not associated with that statement, the client will include

---

2 See Technical Questions and Answers section 9110.15, "Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), for additional guidance regarding auditor association with cost reports in certain jurisdictions.
therein a comment that the auditor is not associated with the contents of such official statement. For example, the official statement might include a comment such as the following: "[Name of firm], our independent auditor, has not been engaged to perform and has not performed, since the date of its report included herein, any procedures on the financial statements addressed in that report. [Name of firm] also has not performed any procedures relating to this official statement."

**Business Associates Agreements**

2.14 The Privacy Standards of the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA), as amended by the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act, require a covered entity to have written agreements with business associates in place. Many health care entities, including health care providers and payors and certain not-for-profit (NFP) and governmental entities, are considered covered entities under HIPAA. A business associate is a person or an entity who performs or assists in the performance of a function or an activity on behalf of a covered entity that involves access to, or use or disclosure of, protected health information (PHI). Independent auditors and advisory and tax professionals may be considered business associates. The HITECH Act also requires business associates to comply with the HIPAA Security Rule's administrative, technical, and physical safeguard requirements and to implement security policies and procedures in the same manner as a covered entity. This will require a business associate to implement written policies and procedures that address each Security Rule standard; implement a security awareness and training program for workforce members; designate a security official; and conduct an accurate and thorough security risk analysis, along with a security management process. Business associates are subject to potentially significant civil and criminal penalties for violation of data privacy and security rules governing the protection of PHI. Business associates' agreements generally are an addendum to, or incorporated into, the audit engagement letter. Auditors may need to work with management to tailor the form of the business associates' agreement, so that it is consistent with the requirements of the privacy regulations of HIPAA and the HITECH Act while recognizing the various rules and regulations applicable to CPAs.

**Audit Planning**

2.15 Auditors of health care entities should refer to auditing standards, including AU-C section 300, Planning an Audit (AICPA, Professional Standards), which addresses the auditor's responsibilities to plan an audit of financial statements. AU-C section 300 is written in the context of recurring audits. This section addresses planning considerations and other auditing considerations that are relevant to audits of health care entities.

*Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards*

PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5, An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards), establishes requirements and provides direction that applies when an auditor is engaged to perform an audit of management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial
Health Care Entities

reporting ("the audit of internal control over financial reporting") that is integrated with an audit of the financial statements.

PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 11, Considerations for Audits of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, PCAOB Staff Guidance, sec. 400.11), discusses the application of certain requirements of Auditing Standard No. 5 and other PCAOB standards to specific aspects of audits of internal control. It discusses

- auditors' risk assessment and the audit of internal control;
- selecting controls to test;
- testing management review controls;
- IT considerations, including system-generated data and reports;
- roll-forward of control testing performed at an interim date;
- using the work of others; and
- evaluating identified control deficiencies.

2.16 Planning activities include performing preliminary engagement activities; establishing an overall audit strategy and communicating with those charged with governance an overview of the planned scope and timing of the audit; developing a detailed, written audit plan; determining direction and supervision of engagement team members, and review of their work; and determining the extent of involvement of professionals with specialized skills. Industry-specific examples of these procedures include the following:

- Review the relationship of affiliated entities to the health care entity, and determine the extent to which their financial information will be included in the financial statements of the entity. See the related discussion in chapter 12, "The Reporting Entity and Related Entities," of this guide.
- Review the status of unsettled cost (reimbursement) reports for prior periods filed with third-party payors.
- Identify situations for which accounting estimates, such as third-party contractual allowances, allowances for doubtful accounts, and medical malpractice liabilities, are required and identify relevant factors that may affect those estimates.
- Review periodic reports from and to third-party payors or other regulatory bodies.
- Consider entity and industry-specific factors, including the organizational structure of the entity, when establishing materiality for the financial statements as a whole as well as performance materiality.

2.17 The independent auditor may find it helpful to maintain audit documentation that includes copies of the following documents specifically relating to the health care entity:

- Specific documents concerning restrictions on donor gifts and bequests
General Auditing Considerations

- Contracts and agreements, including leases, agreements with physicians, agreements with third-party payors, and agreements with affiliated entities
- Third-party correspondence related to cost report settlements, third-party audits such as Recovery Audit Contractor and Risk Assessment Data Validation audits and other significant correspondence from third-party payers
- Loan agreements, bond indentures, and other debt instruments
- IRS determination letter (for tax-exempt entities)

2.18 In accordance with paragraph .09 of AU-C section 300, the auditor should develop an audit plan that includes a description of the nature and extent of planned risk assessment procedures, as determined under AU-C section 315; the nature, timing and extent of planned further audit procedures at the relevant assertion level as determined under AU-C section 330, Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained (AICPA, Professional Standards); and other planned audit procedures that are required to be carried out so that the engagement complies with GAAS. Paragraph .A2 of AU-C section 300 explains that planning is not a discrete phase of an audit, but rather a continual and iterative process that often begins shortly after (or in connection with) the completion of the previous audit and continues until the completion of the current audit engagement.

Group Audits

2.19 Group audits involve an audit of financial statements that include the financial information of more than one component group (group financial statements). AU-C section 600, Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors) (AICPA, Professional Standards), includes terms, concepts, and requirements related to group audit engagements.

2.20 The concept of group financial statements is broader than consolidated or combined financial statements as it encompasses business activities in addition to separate entities. Additionally, AU-C section 600 applies in all audits of group financial statements regardless of whether or not different auditors are involved in an audit. A component is defined as an entity or business activity for which group or component management prepares financial information that is required to be included in the group financial statements. A component may include, but is not limited to, subsidiaries, geographical locations, divisions, investments, products or services, functions, processes, or component units of state or local governments.

2.21 AU-C section 600 addresses special considerations that apply to group audits, in particular those that involve component auditors. Accordingly, a critical aspect of AU-C section 600 is the identification of the components that are included in group financial statements. The requirements in paragraphs .51–.65 of AU-C section 600 are applicable to all components except those for which the auditor of the group financial statements is making reference to the work of a component auditor. All other requirements of AU-C section 600 apply regardless of whether or not the auditor of the group financial statements is assuming responsibility for the work of component auditors.
2.22 AU-C section 600 provides guidance for situations when the auditor of the group financial statements assumes responsibility for the work of a component auditor and when the auditor does not assume responsibility for the work of a component auditor (that is, the auditor makes reference to the audit of the component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements). An audit of group financial statements involves establishing an overall group audit strategy and group audit plan (including identifying the components and the extent to which the group engagement team will use the work of component auditors). The decision whether the auditor's report on the group financial statements will make reference to the audit of a component auditor should be made by the group engagement partner. When the auditor of the group financial statements assumes responsibility for the work of a component auditor, no reference is made to the component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements. Alternatively, paragraph .28 of AU-C section 600 states when the group engagement partner decides to make reference to the audit of a component auditor in the auditor's report on the group financial statements, the auditor's report on the group financial statements should clearly indicate that the component was not audited by the auditor of the group financial statements but was audited by the component auditor, and should include the magnitude of the portion of the financial statements audited by the component auditor. Reference in the auditor's report on the group financial statements to the fact that part of the audit was conducted by a component auditor is not to be construed as a qualification of the opinion. Rather, such reference is intended to communicate

a. that the auditor of the group financial statements is not assuming responsibility for the work of the component auditor and

b. the source of the audit evidence with respect to those components for which reference to the audit of component auditors is made.

Multi-Location Audits Versus Group Audits

2.23 A multi-location audit is different from a group audit. For example, a multi-location audit is performed when a single health care entity has multiple locations, and none of the business activities at the individual locations are components. As another example, a group audit exists when a health care entity has two or more components regardless of the number of locations. As noted above, each component is an entity or business activity for which group or component management prepares financial information that should be included in the group financial statements. In this situation, there is a group engagement team, and component auditors who perform work on the financial information of a component.

Complex Transactions

2.24 Health care entities may enter into complex transactions with other providers and patients. This may require the use of specialists in accordance with AU-C section 620, Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist (AICPA, Professional Standards), legal inquiry, and detailed reviews of contracts.

Materiality

2.25 AU-C section 320, Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the auditor's responsibility to apply the concept of materiality in planning and performing an audit of
financial statements. AU-C section 450, *Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit* (AICPA, Professional Standards), explains how materiality is applied in evaluating the effect of identified misstatements on the audit and the effect of uncorrected misstatements, if any, on the financial statements.

2.26 Paragraphs .04 and .06 of AU-C section 320 state that the auditor's determination of materiality is a matter of professional judgment and is influenced by the auditor's perception of the financial information needs of users of financial statements. In planning the audit, the auditor makes judgments about the size of misstatements that will be considered material. Although it is not practicable to design audit procedures to detect misstatements that could be material solely because of their nature (that is, qualitative considerations), the auditor considers not only the size but also the nature of uncorrected misstatements, and the particular circumstances of their occurrence, when evaluating their effect on the financial statements.

2.27 In accordance with paragraphs .10 and .A5 of AU-C section 320, the auditor should determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole when establishing the overall audit strategy. Determining materiality involves the exercise of professional judgment. A percentage is often applied to a chosen benchmark as a starting point in determining materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If, in the specific circumstances of the entity, one or more particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures exist for which misstatements of lesser amounts than materiality for the financial statements as a whole could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users, then taken on the basis of the financial statements, the auditor also should determine the materiality level or levels to be applied to those particular classes of transactions, account balances, or disclosures. See paragraphs .A12–.A13 of AU-C section 320 for further guidance.

2.28 In determining an appropriate benchmark, the auditor may consider whether items exist on which the attention of the users of the particular entity's financial statements tends to be focused (for example, for the purpose of evaluating financial performance, users may tend to focus on profit, revenue or net assets). For a for-profit entity, net income and earnings per share are typically the major concern of financial statement users, and operating results may be the most relevant measurement basis for materiality. On the other hand, for most NFPs, expenditures are often tightly controlled and based on the concept of a balanced budget. Examples of appropriate benchmarks for NFPs include total assets, various net asset classes, changes in net assets, total revenues, and total expenses. However, other factors also may be relevant such as compliance with its debt covenants (for example, a debt service coverage ratio); and the stability of its operating results (for example, as measured by operating income or the performance indicator).

Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards

For integrated audits, paragraph 4 of Auditing Standard No. 11, *Consideration of Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit*

---

3 The auditing content in this guide focuses primarily on generally accepted auditing standards issued by the Auditing Standards Board and is applicable to audits of nonissuers. These standards are codified in AICPA Professional Standards and referenced by "AU-C" section numbers within the codification.

Issuers are defined by Section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Audits of issuers are required to be performed under PCAOB standards. Readers of this guide should evaluate their audit engagements to determine which auditing standards are applicable.

(continued)
(AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards), highlights that in planning the audit of internal control over financial reporting, the auditor should use the same materiality considerations he or she would use in planning the audit of the company's annual financial statements in accordance with Auditing Standard No. 5, An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards).

**Performance Materiality**

2.29 Paragraph .A14 of AU-C section 320 explains that planning the audit solely to detect individual material misstatements overlooks the fact that the aggregation of individually immaterial misstatements may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated and leaves no margin for possible undetected misstatements. Therefore, in accordance with paragraph .11 of AU-C section 320, the auditor should determine performance materiality for purposes of assessing the risks of material misstatement and determining the nature, timing and extent of further audit procedures. Performance materiality, for purposes of GAAS, is defined in AU-C section 320 as the amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than materiality for the financial statements as a whole to reduce to an appropriately low level the probability that the aggregate of uncorrected and undetected misstatements exceeds materiality for the financial statements as a whole. If applicable, performance materiality also refers to the amount or amounts set by the auditor at less than materiality level or levels for particular classes of transactions, account balances or disclosures. Performance materiality is to be distinguished from tolerable misstatement, which is the application of performance materiality to a particular sampling procedure. AU-C section 530, Audit Sampling (AICPA, Professional Standards), defines tolerable misstatement and provides further application guidance about the concept.

2.30 Paragraph .A14 of AU-C section 320 goes on to explain that the determination of performance materiality is not a simple mechanical calculation and involves the exercise of professional judgment. It is affected by the auditor's understanding of the entity, updated during the performance of the risk assessment procedures, and the nature and extent of misstatements identified in previous audits and, thereby, the auditor's expectations regarding misstatements in the current period.

**Qualitative Aspects of Materiality**

2.31 As previously indicated, judgments about materiality include both quantitative and qualitative information. Qualitative considerations include the following:

- The nature of the client's business and industry sector (for example, hospital, managed care, assisted living, and so on)

(footnote continued)

To assist auditors conducting audits of issuers in accordance with PCAOB standards, appendix C, "Clarified Auditing Standards and PCAOB Standards," compares the clarified standards to the PCAOB standards. Further, considerations for audits of issuers in accordance with PCAOB standards may be discussed within this guide's chapter text. When such discussion is provided, the related paragraphs are designated with the following title: Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards.
General Auditing Considerations

- Operating results (for example, stable earnings, consistently near break-even, low-margin industry, or volatile results)
- Financial position (for example, concerns regarding liquidity, debt covenants, and capital adequacy)

As a result of the interaction of quantitative and qualitative considerations in materiality judgments, misstatements of relatively small amounts that come to the auditor's attention could have a material effect on the financial statements. For example, an error of an otherwise immaterial amount could be material if a reasonable possibility exists that it could lead to a violation of the entity's debt covenants that would cause the debt to be classified as current.

2.32 Qualitative considerations also influence the auditor in reaching a conclusion about whether misstatements are material. Paragraph .A23 of AU-C section 450 provides qualitative factors that the auditor may consider relevant in determining whether misstatements are material.

Use of Assertions in Assessment of Risks of Material Misstatement

2.33 Paragraphs .A113–.A118 of AU-C section 315 discuss the use of assertions in assessment of risks of material misstatement. In representing that the financial statements are presented in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework, management implicitly or explicitly makes assertions regarding the recognition, measurement, presentation, and disclosure of the various elements of financial statements and related disclosures. Assertions used by the auditor to consider the different types of potential misstatements fall into the following categories and may take the following forms:

Categories of Assertions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classes of Transactions and Events During the Period</th>
<th>Account Balances at the End of the Period</th>
<th>Presentation and Disclosure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occurrence or existence Transactions and events that have been recorded have occurred and pertain to the entity.</td>
<td>Assets, liabilities, and equity interests exist.</td>
<td>Disclosed events and transactions have occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rights and obligations —</td>
<td>The entity holds or controls the rights to assets, and liabilities are the obligations of the entity.</td>
<td>Disclosed events and transactions pertain to the entity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Description of Assertions—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classes of Transactions and Events During the Period</th>
<th>Account Balances at the End of the Period</th>
<th>Presentation and Disclosure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Completeness</td>
<td>All assets, liabilities, and equity interests that should have been recorded have been recorded.</td>
<td>All disclosures that should have been included in the financial statements have been included.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accuracy or valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Assets, liabilities, and equity interests are included in the financial statements at appropriate amounts, and any resulting valuation or allocation adjustments are recorded appropriately.</td>
<td>Financial and other information is disclosed fairly and at appropriate amounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off</td>
<td>Transactions and events have been recorded in the correct accounting period.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification and understandability</td>
<td>Transactions and events have been recorded in the proper accounts.</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Financial information is appropriately presented and described, and information in disclosures is expressed clearly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2.34** Examples of industry-specific assertions for classes of transactions, account balances, and presentation and disclosures are reflected in the individual chapters of this guide.

### Risk Assessment Procedures

**2.35** AU-C section 315 addresses the auditor's responsibility to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement in the financial statements through the understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control.
2.36 Obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control (referred to hereafter as an understanding of the entity), is a continuous, dynamic process of gathering, updating and analyzing information throughout the audit. As stated in paragraph .A1 of AU-C section 315, the understanding of the entity establishes a frame of reference within which the auditor plans the audit and exercises professional judgment throughout the audit when, for example,

- assessing risks of material misstatement of the financial statements;
- determining materiality in accordance with AU-C section 320;
- considering the appropriateness of the selection and application of accounting policies and the adequacy of financial statement disclosures;
- identifying areas for which special audit consideration may be necessary (for example, related party transactions, the appropriateness of management's use of the going concern assumption, considering the business purpose of transactions, or the existence of complex and unusual transactions);
- developing expectations for use when performing analytical procedures;
- responding to the assessed risks of material misstatement, including designing and performing further audit procedures to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence; and
- evaluating the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence obtained, such as the appropriateness of assumptions and management's oral and written representations.

Risk Assessment Procedures and Related Activities

2.37 As described in paragraph .05 of AU-C section 315, the auditor should perform risk assessment procedures to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of risks of material misstatement at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels. Risk assessment procedures by themselves, however, do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on which to base the audit opinion. For purposes of GAAS, risk assessment procedures are defined in AU-C section 315 as audit procedures performed to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels.

2.38 Paragraph .A3 of AU-C section 315 states that the auditor is required to exercise professional judgment to determine the extent of the required understanding of the entity. The auditor's primary consideration is whether the understanding of the entity that has been obtained is sufficient to meet the objectives of AU-C section 315. The depth of the overall understanding that is required by the auditor is less than that possessed by management in managing the entity.

2.39 Paragraph .06 of AU-C section 315 states that the risk assessment procedures should include the following:
Inquiries of management, appropriate individuals within the internal audit function (if such function exists), and others within the entity

- Analytical procedures
- Observation and inspection

**Analytical Procedures**

2.40 Paragraphs A7–A10 of AU-C section 315 provide additional explanation for analytical procedures performed during the risk assessment process. Analytical procedures performed as risk assessment procedures may identify aspects of the entity of which the auditor was unaware and may assist in assessing the risks of material misstatement in order to provide a basis for designing and implementing responses to the assessed risks. Analytical procedures may enhance the auditor's understanding of the entity's business and the significant transactions and events that have occurred since the prior audit and help to identify the existence of unusual transactions or events and amounts, ratios, and trends that might indicate matters that have audit implications.

2.41 Analytical procedures performed as risk assessment procedures may include both financial and nonfinancial information. Examples of sources of information for analytical procedures include prior-period financial information, budgets, and health care financial and statistical ratios. Comparative analytical information is available from various health care industry associations.

2.42 The following are examples of analytical procedures that the independent auditor may find useful:

- Comparison of account balances with budget and prior-period amounts
- Analysis of changes in revenues during the current period based on statistical data (for example, admissions, patient or resident days, visits, and professional service procedure counts for laboratory, radiology, and surgery) and information concerning price changes
- Comparison between periods of the number of days of revenue in receivables
- Contractual discounts as a percentage of gross amounts by major payer classes for both accounts receivable and revenues
- Relationship between periods of the allowance for uncollectible accounts to the balance of patient accounts receivable in the aggregate, based on known changes in the accounts receivable's aging and composition by payor
- Comparison of operating expenses as a percentage of operating revenue
- Relationship between periods of the liability for claims incurred but not reported (IBNR) to the related expense

---

4 Statement on Auditing Standards No. 128, *Using the Work of Internal Auditors* (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C section 610), was issued February 2014.
**Discussion Among the Audit Team**

2.43 In accordance with paragraph .11 of AU-C section 315, the engagement partner and other key engagement team members should discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to material misstatement and the application of the applicable financial reporting framework to the entity's facts and circumstances. The engagement partner should determine which matters are to be communicated to engagement team members not involved in the discussion. Paragraph .A14 of AU-C section 315 states this discussion may be held concurrently with the discussion among the engagement team that is required by AU-C section 240, *Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), to discuss the susceptibility of the entity's financial statements to fraud.

**The Entity and Its Environment**

2.44 Paragraph .12 of AU-C section 315 states that the auditor should obtain an understanding of the following:

- **a.** Relevant industry, regulatory, and other external factors, including the applicable financial reporting framework.
- **b.** The nature of the entity, including
  - i. its operations;
  - ii. its ownership and governance structures;
  - iii. the types of investments that the entity is making and plans to make, including investments in entities formed to accomplish specific objectives; and
  - iv. the way that the entity is structured and how it is financed, to enable the auditor to understand the classes of transactions, account balances, and disclosures to be expected in the financial statements.
- **c.** The entity's selection and application of accounting policies, including the reasons for changes thereto. The auditor should evaluate whether the entity's accounting policies are appropriate for its business and consistent with the applicable financial reporting framework and accounting policies used in the relevant industry.
- **d.** The entity's objectives and strategies and those related business risks that may result in risks of material misstatement.
- **e.** The measurement and review of the entity's financial performance.

2.45 Appendix A, "Understanding the Entity and Its Environment," of AU-C section 315 provides additional guidance on matters the auditor may consider when obtaining an understanding of the industry and regulatory and other external factors that affect the entity, the nature of the entity, objectives and strategies and related business risks, and the measurement and review of the entity's financial performance. Appendix B, "Internal Control Components," of AU-C section 315 contains a detailed explanation of the internal control components. The following table includes some unique characteristics of health care entities that the auditor may consider, in addition to the factors listed in appendix A of AU-C section 315, when obtaining an understanding of the entity and its environment in order to assess the risks of material misstatement. Some of these factors are discussed in more detail following the table.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aspects of the Auditor’s Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment</th>
<th>Considerations for Health Care Entities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Industry, regulatory, and other external factors | • Regulatory requirements unique to entities receiving Medicare; Medicaid; or other federal payments, including federal financial assistance.  
• Healthcare reform initiatives brought on by government efforts (for example, Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act and the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010), consumer demands, and the current economic environment.  
• Increased competition in reaction to the issues noted previously.  
• Service delivery regulations (for example, antidumping, Emergency Medical Treatment and Active Labor Act, use of devices approved by the Food and Drug Administration, Hill-Burton charity care, and so on).  
• Billing and coding regulations, including being subject to peer reviews and governmental intermediary audits.  
• Factors arising from an entity's tax-exempt status (for example, prohibited activities, unrelated business income, bond arbitrage rules, and so on).  
• Insurance-related industry regulations (for example, minimum capital requirements, statutory reporting requirements, and so on). |
| Nature of the entity | • The existence of related-party transactions.  
• The entity's experience with payment denials and other matters subject to review by medical review entities.  
• The nature of reports expected to be rendered. Examples include reports on consolidated or consolidating financial statements, reports on financial statements filed with the SEC, reports filed with third-party payors or other regulatory bodies, reports on compliance with debt covenants, and other special reports.  
• Recognition of liabilities for costs incurred by providers of prepaid health care services (see paragraph 2.46).  
• Contingencies for medical malpractice losses (see paragraph 2.47).  
• Obligations under continuing care contracts.  
• Revenue recognition practices (see paragraphs 2.48–.57).  
• Minimum loss issues. |
Aspects of the Auditor's Understanding of the Entity and Its Environment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Considerations for Health Care Entities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objectives and strategies and related business risks</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Measurement and review of the entity's financial performance</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cost of Prepaid Health Care Services

2.46 Risks are associated with recognizing the liability for costs incurred by providers of prepaid health care services (for example, health maintenance organizations) because such costs may have been incurred but not yet reported to the providers. Therefore, it is necessary for the providers to estimate the liability for those costs. These estimates often necessitate a high degree of management judgment. Management considers historical experience, as well as the effects of any changes in conditions, such as seasonality trends and changes in subscriber population and the services and benefits provided. Costs of prepaid health care services are discussed further in chapter 13, "Financial Accounting and Reporting for Managed Care Services," of this guide.

Medical Malpractice Losses and Obligations

2.47 Risks also are associated with contingencies for medical malpractice losses and similar contingencies. Obligations to provide services under continuing care contracts can also result in a significant contingency. (See chapter 14, "Financial Accounting and Reporting by Continuing Care Retirement Communities.") A high degree of management judgment and complex analyses usually are involved in evaluating the related financial statement assertions. The measurement of estimates is inherently uncertain and depends on the outcome of future events. Because no one accounting estimate that involves a degree of management judgment can be considered accurate with certainty, material changes in such estimates do not indicate that the audit was not performed in
accordance with professional standards. Medical malpractice losses and other contingencies are discussed further in chapter 8, "Contingencies and Other Liabilities," of this guide.

Revenue Recognition

© Update 2-1 Accounting and Reporting: Revenue From Contracts With Customers

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606), issued in May 2014, is effective for annual reporting periods of public entities beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period. Early application is not permitted.

For nonpublic entities, FASB ASU No. 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018. Non-public entities may elect to adopt the standard earlier, however, only as of the following:

- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period (public entity effective date)
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within that reporting period

FASB ASU No. 2014-09 provides a framework for revenue recognition and supersedes or amends several of the revenue recognition requirements in FASB ASC 605, Revenue Recognition, as well as guidance within the 900 series of industry-specific topics. The standard applies to any entity that either enters into contracts with customers to transfer goods or services or enters into contracts for the transfer of nonfinancial assets unless those contracts are within the scope of other standards (for example, insurance or lease contracts).

Readers are encouraged to consult the full text of this ASU on FASB's website at www.fasb.org.


2.48 Because of the large monetary amounts and complexity of determining health care service revenue and receivables, risks are associated with health care service revenue recognition and the valuation of the related receivables. A significant portion of services is usually paid by third parties, such as Medicare, Medicaid, and various health insurance carriers, under statutory provisions or other arrangements in amounts that can be significantly different from, and frequently less than, the entity's established rates. Statement of Position (SOP) 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, AUD sec. 14,360), provides guidance to auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in health care third-party revenue recognition. SOP 00-1 is included as appendix D, "Statement
of Position 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables," of this guide.

2.49 Typically, a number of clinicians (for example, the attending physician, consulting physicians, radiologists, pathologists, therapists, and nurses) add documentation to a patient's medical record. Provider personnel generally review the medical record and assign a code (ICD-9-CM or CPT-4)\(^5\) to the record. The provider prepares and submits a bill that includes, among other things, the assigned ICD-9-CM or CPT-4 code. The Medicare fiscal intermediary or other third-party payor typically reviews the bill and assigns a specific payment code, such as a diagnosis related group (DRG) number. Payment is based on the assigned DRG number or other payment code. The provider may check the assigned payment code and follow up on any identified discrepancies. However, the final assignment of the payment code is generally determined by the third-party payor.

2.50 Errors can occur throughout this process, which can result in misstatements. Physicians or other clinicians may not document the appropriate procedure. Coding personnel may not notice or correctly interpret certain items in the medical record. Accordingly, an incorrect code may be assigned, and an erroneous amount may be paid.

2.51 The auditor's expertise is in accounting and auditing matters, rather than operational, clinical, or legal matters. Accordingly, the auditor's procedures focus on areas that normally are subject to internal controls relevant to financial reporting. However, the further that a potential misstatement is removed from the events and transactions ordinarily reflected in the financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of the misstatement and evaluate the effect on the financial statements. For example, determining whether a service was medically necessary; obtained through a legally appropriate referral; properly performed (including using only approved devices, rendered in a quality manner from a clinical perspective, and so on); adequately supervised; accurately documented and classified; or rendered and billed by non-sanctioned individuals typically is not within the auditor's professional expertise. As a result, an audit in accordance with GAAS is not designed to detect such matters.

2.52 Further, an audit conducted in accordance with GAAS does not include rendering an opinion or any form of assurance on an entity's compliance with laws and regulations.\(^6\) Nor does an audit under GAAS include providing any assurance on an entity's billings or cost report. In fact, cost reports typically are not prepared and submitted until after the financial statement audit has been completed.

2.53 Due to the higher inherent risk associated with revenue recognition, including the clinical coding process, the independent auditor may consider obtaining an understanding of internal controls over documentation of the

---

\(^5\) On January 16, 2009, the Department of Health & Human Services published a final rule adopting ICD-10-CM to replace ICD-9-CM in Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996. In April 2014, the compliance deadline for the nationwide conversion to ICD-10-CM was postponed again and not to be implemented prior to October 1, 2015.

\(^6\) Even when auditors undertake a special engagement designed to attest to compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grants (for example, an audit in accordance with Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations*), the auditor's procedures do not extend to testing compliance with laws and regulations related to Medicare and Medicaid fraud and abuse.
services rendered; clinical coding, including the use of groupers and supervisory reviews; and billing procedures (for example, admission, payor verification, and discharge). The auditor also may consider the results of the internal compliance program; the internal audit; and external reviews (consulting or regulator or payor), including denials.

2.54 For reasons previously discussed, an auditor would not find it necessary to consider the process of assigning codes in planning and performing an audit of the provider's financial statements. However, paragraph .17 of AU-C section 250, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards), states that if the auditor becomes aware of information concerning an instance of noncompliance or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations, the auditor should obtain (a) an understanding of the nature of the act and the circumstances in which it has occurred and (b) further information to evaluate the possible effect on the financial statements. In accordance with paragraph .18 of AU-C section 250, if the auditor suspects noncompliance may exist, the auditor should discuss the matter with management (at a level above those involved with the suspected noncompliance, if possible) and, when appropriate, those charged with governance. If management or, as appropriate, those charged with governance do not provide sufficient information that supports that the entity is in compliance with laws and regulations and, in the auditor's professional judgment, the effect of the suspected noncompliance may be material to the financial statements, the auditor should consider the need to obtain legal advice. If sufficient information about suspected noncompliance cannot be obtained, paragraph .19 of AU-C section 250 requires the auditor to evaluate the effect of the lack of sufficient appropriate audit evidence on the auditor's opinion. For example, after being informed about a special regulatory review that was performed, the auditor inquires about the results and considers whether performance of additional substantive audit procedures is necessary to evaluate the contingency, including the need for possible recognition or disclosure pursuant to FASB ASC 450, Contingencies.

2.55 The independent auditor typically obtains an understanding of the specific cost-reimbursement or other rate-setting methods used by third-party payors to determine final amounts reimbursable to the health care entity. These payment methods may require that a health care entity accumulate and report various statistical data, such as admissions, discharges, patient days, visits, beds, square footage, and pounds of laundry.

2.56 Among other duties, the Medicare fiscal intermediary is responsible for evaluating the propriety of submitted claims before processing them for payment. Absent the client committing an illegal act, the payment of a claim provides evidence that billed amounts were correct. As a result, the auditor generally obtains an understanding of the entity's billing and collection history, paying particular attention to the entity's historical denial rate or the significance of coding changes.

2.57 Generally, the notes to the financial statements disclose that amounts recognized as revenues are subject to retrospective review and laws and regulations that are extremely complex and subject to interpretation; as a result, a reasonable possibility exists that recorded estimates will change by a material amount in the near term. Therefore, the adequacy of the financial statement disclosures regarding the inherent risk relating to revenue recognition is an important consideration for health care entities and their auditors.
Additional Audit Considerations

Substantive Analytical Procedures

2.58 As discussed in paragraph 2.40, AU-C section 315 describes the use of analytical procedures as risk assessment procedures (which may be referred to as analytical procedures used to plan the audit). AU-C section 520, Analytical Procedures (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the auditor's use of analytical procedures as substantive procedures and the auditor's responsibility to perform analytical procedures near the end of the audit that assist the auditor when forming an overall conclusion on the financial statements.

2.59 According to paragraph .05 of AU-C section 520, when designing and performing analytical procedures, either alone or in combination with tests of details, as substantive procedures in accordance with section AU-C section 330, the auditor should

a. determine the suitability of particular substantive analytical procedures for given assertions, taking into account the assessed risks of material misstatement and tests of details, if any, for these assertions;

b. evaluate the reliability of data from which the auditor's expectation of recorded amounts or ratios is developed, taking into account the source, comparability, and nature and relevance of information available and controls over preparation;

c. develop an expectation of recorded amounts or ratios and evaluate whether the expectation is sufficiently precise (taking into account whether substantive analytical procedures are to be performed alone or in combination with tests of details) to identify a misstatement that, individually or when aggregated with other misstatements, may cause the financial statements to be materially misstated; and

d. determine the amount of any difference of recorded amounts from expected values that is acceptable without further investigation as required by paragraph .07 of AU-C section 520 and compare the recorded amounts, or ratios developed from recorded amounts, with the expectations.

Accounting Estimates

2.60 Certain areas of a health care entity's operations include accounting estimates that may be material in the preparation and presentation of financial statements. FASB ASC 275, Risks and Uncertainties, requires entities to include in their financial statements information about the use of estimates in the preparation of financial statements. In addition, if specified disclosure criteria in FASB ASC 275-10-50-8 are met, entities are required to include the disclosures about certain significant estimates described in paragraphs 6–15 of FASB ASC 275-10-50 in their financial statements. AU-C section 540, Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to accounting estimates, including fair value accounting estimates and related disclosures, in an audit of financial statements. Specifically, it expands on how AU-C sections 315 and 330, and other relevant AU-C sections are to be applied with regard to accounting estimates.
It also includes requirements and guidance related to misstatements of individual accounting estimates and indicators of possible management bias.

**Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards**

Paragraph .10 of AU section 342, *Auditing Accounting Estimates* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Interim Standards*), provides that for an integrated audit, auditors are required to obtain an understanding of the process that management used to develop estimates and to test controls over all relevant assertions related to the estimate.

**2.61** SOP 00-1 provides guidance for auditors regarding the sufficiency of audit evidence supporting accounting estimates recorded for the proper valuation of health care third-party revenues and related receivables.

**2.62** Although significant accounting estimates may affect many elements of a health care entity's financial statements, they most often affect the following:

- The provision for third-party payor contractual adjustments and allowances and the provision for estimated receivables and payables for final settlements with those payors and any other valuation allowances for revenue recognition matters, as discussed further in chapter 10, "Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables," of this guide
- The valuation of investments and derivative financial instruments
- The accruals for income taxes
- The provision for uncollectible accounts, notes, or pledges receivable
- Accruals for medical malpractice liabilities and other similar liabilities
- Accruals for obligations under continuing care contracts
- Accruals by providers of prepaid health care services for IBNR costs
- Accruals for loss contracts
- Obligations under defined benefit retirement plans or other postemployment benefits

**Transactions Processed by Service Organizations**

**2.63** Health care entities may engage outside service organizations to perform services that are part of the health care provider's information system.

**2.64** Examples of service organizations used by health care entities include the following:

- Investment managers that invest and service assets for health care entities
- Service organizations that process payroll, provide IT services, and perform other administrative functions
- Billing entities that prepare reimbursement claims to insurers and other third parties
Administrators of employee benefit plans who process and pay benefit claims and maintain participant records

2.65 Paragraphs .13–.14 of AU-C section 315 states that the auditor should obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit. Although most controls relevant to the audit are likely to relate to financial reporting, not all controls that relate to financial reporting are relevant to the audit. It is a matter of the auditor's professional judgment whether a control, individually or in combination with others, is relevant to the audit. When obtaining an understanding of controls that are relevant to the audit, the auditor should evaluate the design of those controls and determine whether they have been implemented by performing procedures in addition to inquiry of the entity's personnel. This understanding may encompass controls placed in operation by the health care entity and service organizations whose services are part of the health care entity's information system.

2.66 AU-C section 402, Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the user auditor's responsibility for obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence in an audit of the financial statements of a user entity that uses one or more service organizations. Specifically, it expands on how the user auditor applies AU-C sections 315 and 330, in obtaining an understanding of the user entity, including internal control relevant to the audit, sufficient to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement and in designing and performing further audit procedures responsive to those risks.

Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards

Auditing Standard No. 5 provides guidance regarding the use of service organizations for an integrated audit.

Compliance With Laws and Regulations

2.67 The Social Security Act provides for criminal penalties for individuals or entities that offer, pay, solicit, or receive remuneration to induce business that is reimbursed under Medicare or state health care programs. The types of remuneration covered by the anti-kickback statute of the Medicare and Medicaid Patient and Program Protection Act of 1987 include, with certain exceptions, kickbacks, bribes, and rebates made directly or indirectly, overtly or covertly, and in cash or in kind. In addition, prohibited conduct includes not only remuneration intended to induce referrals or patients but also remuneration intended to induce the purchasing, leasing, ordering, or arranging for any good, facility, service, or item paid for by Medicare or state health care programs. In addition, fraudulent activities may exist that are unrelated to Medicare or state programs, such as fraudulent billing and admitting practices.

Responsibility for Compliance With Laws and Regulations

2.68 The requirements of AU-C section 250 are designed to assist the auditor in identifying material misstatement of the financial statements due to noncompliance with laws and regulations. However, the auditor is not responsible for preventing noncompliance and cannot be expected to detect noncompliance with all laws and regulations.
Responsibility of Management

2.69 In accordance with paragraph .03 of AU-C section 250, it is the responsibility of management, with the oversight of those charged with governance, to ensure that the entity's operations are conducted in accordance with the provisions of laws and regulations, including compliance with the provisions of laws and regulations that determine the reported amounts and disclosures in an entity's financial statements.

Responsibility of the Auditor

2.70 As stated in paragraph .05 of AU-C section 250, the auditor is responsible for obtaining reasonable assurance that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether caused by fraud or error. In conducting an audit of financial statements, the auditor takes into account the applicable legal and regulatory framework. Because of the inherent limitations of an audit, an unavoidable risk exists that some material misstatements in the financial statements may not be detected, even though the audit is properly planned and performed in accordance with GAAS. In the context of laws and regulations, the potential effects of inherent limitations on the auditor's ability to detect material misstatements are greater for the following reasons:

- Many laws and regulations relating principally to the operating aspects of an entity typically do not affect the financial statements and are not captured by the entity's information systems relevant to financial reporting.
- Noncompliance may involve conduct designed to conceal it, such as collusion, forgery, deliberate failure to record transactions, management override of controls, or intentional misrepresentations made to the auditor.
- Whether an act constitutes noncompliance is ultimately a matter for legal determination, such as by a court of law.

Ordinarily, the further removed noncompliance is from the events and transactions reflected in the financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of, or recognize, the noncompliance.

2.71 Paragraph .06 of AU-C section 250 distinguishes the auditor's responsibilities regarding compliance with the following two categories of laws and regulations:

a. The provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, such as tax and pension laws and regulations.

b. The provisions of other laws and regulations that do not have a direct effect on the determination of the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements but compliance with which may be

   i. fundamental to the operating aspects of the business,
   ii. fundamental to an entity's ability to continue its business, or
   iii. necessary for the entity to avoid material penalties

   (for example, compliance with the terms of an operating license, regulatory solvency requirements, or environmental regulations); therefore, noncompliance
General Auditing Considerations

with such laws and regulations may have a material effect on the financial statements.

2.72 Differing requirements are specified for each of the previously mentioned categories of laws and regulations are set forth in paragraph .07 of AU-C section 250. For the category referred to in paragraph 2.71a, the auditor's responsibility is to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements that are determined by the provisions of those laws and regulations. For the category referred to in paragraph 2.71b, the auditor's responsibility is limited to performing specified audit procedures that may identify noncompliance with those laws and regulations that may have a material effect on the financial statements.

2.73 The auditor is required by paragraph .08 of AU-C section 250 to remain alert to the possibility that other audit procedures applied for the purpose of forming an opinion on financial statements may bring instances of identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations to the auditor's attention. Maintaining professional skepticism throughout the audit, as required by AU-C section 200, is important in this context, given the extent of laws and regulations that affect the entity.

2.74 Examples of laws and regulations, described in paragraph 2.71a, that are generally recognized by auditors to have a direct and material effect on the determination of amounts in financial statements of health care entities include tax laws affecting tax accruals and tax expense, as well as Medicare and Medicaid laws directly affecting the amount of revenue recognized during the accounting period, such as those concerning the submission of bills for fictitious patients.

2.75 Health care entities also may be affected by many other laws and regulations as described in paragraph 2.71b, such as those related to Medicare and Medicaid fraud and abuse, discrimination related to patients or residents, violation of patient or resident rights, securities trading, occupational safety and health, food and drug administration, environmental protection, equal employment opportunities, and price-fixing or other antitrust violations. Generally, these laws and regulations relate more to an entity's operating aspects than its financial and accounting aspects, and they may not have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An auditor ordinarily does not have a sufficient basis for recognizing possible noncompliance with such laws and regulations. Their effect is normally the result of the need to disclose a contingent liability because of the allegation or determination of noncompliance. For example, patients may be obtained based on noncompliant arrangements with physicians or other providers. Although the direct effects of the services rendered may be appropriately recorded, other effects, such as the possible contingent liability for noncompliance with Medicare and Medicaid fraud and abuse statutes, may not be appropriately disclosed. Even when noncompliance with such laws and regulations has material consequences to the financial statements, auditors may not become aware of the existence of the noncompliance, unless they are informed by the client or evidence exists of a governmental agency investigation or enforcement proceeding in the records, documents, or other information normally inspected in an audit of financial statements.
2.76 As required in paragraph .14 of AU-C section 250, the auditor should perform the following audit procedures that may identify instances of noncompliance with other laws and regulations described in paragraph 2.71b that may have a material effect on the financial statements:

a. Inquiring of management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance about whether the entity is in compliance with such laws and regulations

b. Inspecting correspondence, if any, with the relevant licensing or regulatory authorities

2.77 Paragraph .A4 of AU-C section 250 states whether an act constitutes noncompliance with laws and regulations is a matter for legal determination, which ordinarily is beyond the auditor's professional competence to determine. For example, determining whether admitting a patient or providing a service is medically necessary or whether a particular procedure or device was properly approved is not within the auditor's professional competence. Nevertheless, the auditor's training, experience, and understanding of the entity and its industry or sector may provide a basis to recognize that some acts coming to the auditor's attention may constitute noncompliance with laws and regulations.

Going-Concern Considerations

© Update 2-2 Financial Reporting: Going Concern
FASB ASU No. 2014-15, Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern, issued August 1, 2014, is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim and annual periods thereafter. Early adoption is permitted.

The amendments require management to assess an entity’s ability to continue as a going concern by incorporating and expanding upon certain principles that are currently in U.S. auditing standards. Specifically, the amendments (a) provide a definition of the term substantial doubt, (b) require an evaluation every reporting period including interim periods, (c) provide principles for considering the mitigating effect of management’s plans, (d) require certain disclosures when substantial doubt is alleviated as a result of consideration of management’s plans, (e) require an express statement and other disclosures when substantial doubt is not alleviated, and (f) require an assessment for a period of one year after the date that the financial statements are issued (or available to be issued).


2.78 AU-C section 570, The Auditor’s Consideration of an Entity’s Ability to Continue as a Going Concern (AICPA, Professional Standards), establishes requirements and provides guidance to auditors in conducting an audit of financial statements in accordance with GAAS with respect to evaluating whether there is substantial doubt about the entity’s ability to continue as a going concern. This section applies to all audits, regardless of which financial reporting framework, as defined in AU-C section 700, Forming an Opinion and Reporting
on Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards), and AU-C section 800, was used to prepare the financial statements.

The Auditor’s Responsibility

2.79 In accordance with paragraph .03 of AU-C section 570, the auditor should evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, based on the auditor's knowledge of relevant conditions or events that exist at or have occurred prior to the date of the auditor's report. As discussed in AU-C section 570, the auditor should consider whether the results of the procedures performed during the course of the audit identify conditions or events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time and consider the need to obtain additional information about such conditions or events, as well as the appropriate audit evidence to support information that mitigates the auditor's doubt.

Audit Procedures

2.80 Pursuant to paragraph .08 of AU-C section 570, the auditor should evaluate whether there is substantial doubt about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time based on the results of the audit procedures performed. The following are examples of procedures that may identify such conditions or events:

- Analytical procedures
- Review of subsequent events
- Review of compliance with the terms of debt and loan agreements
- Reading of minutes of meetings of board of directors and important committees of the board
- Inquiry of an entity's legal counsel about litigation, claims, and assessments
- Confirmation with related and third parties of the details of arrangements to provide or maintain financial support

Consideration of Conditions and Events

2.81 When performing audit procedures such as those described in paragraph 2.80, the auditor may identify information about certain conditions or events that, when considered in the aggregate, indicate there could be substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time. The significance of such conditions or events will depend on the circumstances, and some conditions or events may have significance only when viewed in conjunction with others. The following are examples of such conditions and events that may be encountered in audits of health care entities:

- Insufficient cash inflows to provide services
- A high ratio of expenses to revenues
- Insufficient resources (for example, medical expertise) to provide services and finance operations in a particular geographic location
- Loss of physicians or inability to recruit new physicians
Health Care Entities

- Activities that could jeopardize tax-exempt status, if a tax exempt entity
- Violation of debt covenants that allow the lender to accelerate payment of debt
- Concerns expressed by governmental authorities regarding alleged violations of relevant laws and regulation
- A loss of key governing board members or volunteers
- A loss of a major payer contract or major funding sources

**Consideration of Financial Statement Effects**

2.82 If, after considering the identified conditions or events in the aggregate, the auditor believes there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, the auditor should

a. obtain written representations from management
   i. regarding its plans that are intended to mitigate the adverse effects of conditions or events that indicate there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time and the likelihood that those plans can be effectively implemented, and
   ii. that the financial statements disclose all the matters of which management is aware that are relevant to the entity's ability to continue as a going concern, including principal conditions or events and management's plans.

b. obtain information about management's plans that are intended to mitigate the adverse effects of such conditions or events. The auditor should
   i. assess whether it is likely that the adverse effects would be mitigated by management's plans for a reasonable period of time;
   ii. identify those elements of management's plans that are particularly significant to overcoming the adverse effects of the conditions or events and plan and perform procedures to obtain audit evidence about them, including, when applicable, considering the adequacy of support regarding the ability to obtain additional financing or the planned disposal of assets; and
   iii. assess whether it is likely that such plans can be effectively implemented.

2.83 When prospective financial information is particularly significant to management's plans, the auditor should refer to paragraph .11 of AU-C section 570, which provides guidance on the assessment of such information.

**Consideration of the Effects on the Auditor’s Report When the Doubt Has Been Alleviated**

2.84 When the auditor concludes, primarily because of the auditor's consideration of management's plans, that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time has been alleviated, the auditor should consider the need for, and evaluate the adequacy
of, disclosure of the principal conditions or events that initially caused the auditor to believe there was substantial doubt. The auditor's consideration of disclosure should include the possible effects of such conditions or events, and any mitigating factors, including management's plans.

**Consideration of the Effects on the Auditor’s Report When the Doubt Remains**

2.85 If, after considering identified conditions or events and management's plans, the auditor concludes that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time remains, the auditor should include an emphasis-of-matter paragraph in the auditor's report to reflect that conclusion and includes the terms *substantial doubt* and *going concern*. Additionally, the auditor's opinion should be modified if the auditor determines that the entity's disclosures with respect to the ability to continue as a going concern are inadequate.

2.86 Additionally, if, after considering identified conditions or events in the aggregate and after considering management's plans, the auditor concludes that substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time remains, the auditor should communicate the following to those charged with governance:

a. The nature of the conditions or events identified
b. The possible effect on the financial statements and the adequacy of related disclosures in the financial statements
c. The effects on the auditor's report

**Documentation**

2.87 Paragraph .22 of AU-C section 570 states that if the auditor believes, before consideration of management's plans, there is substantial doubt about the ability of the entity to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time, the auditor should document the following:

a. The conditions or events that led the auditor to believe that there is substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time.

b. The elements of management's plans that the auditor considered to be particularly significant to overcoming the adverse effects of the conditions or events.

c. The audit procedures performed to evaluate the significant elements of management's plans and evidence obtained.

d. The auditor's conclusion regarding whether substantial doubt about the entity's ability to continue as a going concern for a reasonable period of time remains or is alleviated. If substantial doubt remains, the auditor also should document the possible effects of the conditions or events on the financial statements and the adequacy of the related disclosures. If substantial doubt is alleviated, the auditor also should document the auditor's conclusion as to the need for, and, if applicable, the adequacy of, disclosure of the principal conditions or events that initially caused the auditor to believe there was substantial doubt.

e. The auditor's conclusion with respect to the effects on the auditor's report.
Update 2-3 Accounting and Reporting: Liquidation Basis of Accounting

FASB ASU No. 2013-07, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205): Liquidation Basis of Accounting, issued in April 2013, is effective for entities that determine liquidation is imminent during annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2013, and interim reporting periods therein. Entities should apply the requirements prospectively from the day that liquidation becomes imminent. Early adoption is permitted. Refer to section A.01 in appendix A, "Guidance Updates," for more information on this ASU if applicable to your reporting period.

Written Representations

2.88 AU-C section 580, Written Representations (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the auditor's responsibility to obtain written representations from management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance in an audit of financial statements.

Written Representations as Audit Evidence

2.89 According to paragraphs .03–.04 of AU-C section 580, written representations are necessary information that the auditor requires in connection with the audit of the entity's financial statements. Accordingly, similar to responses to inquiries, written representations are audit evidence. Although written representations provide necessary audit evidence, they complement other auditing procedures and do not provide sufficient appropriate audit evidence on their own about any of the matters with which they deal. Furthermore, obtaining reliable written representations does not affect the nature or extent of other audit procedures that the auditor applies to obtain audit evidence about the fulfillment of management's responsibilities or about specific assertions.

Management From Whom Written Representations Are Requested

2.90 As explained in paragraph .A2 of AU-C section 580, written representations are requested from those with overall responsibility for financial and operating matters whom the auditor believes are responsible for, and knowledgeable about, directly or through others in the organization, the matters covered by the representations, including the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements. As such, in accordance with paragraph .09 of AU-C section 580, the auditor should request written representations from management with appropriate responsibilities for the financial statements and knowledge of the matters concerned.

2.91 Paragraph .A2 of AU-C section 580 further states that those individuals with overall responsibility may vary depending on the governance structure of the entity; however, management (rather than those charged with governance) is often the responsible party. Written representations may therefore be requested from the entity’s chief executive officer and chief financial

7 AU-C section 9700, Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements: Auditing Interpretations of Section 700 (AICPA, Professional Standards), contains frequently asked questions with answers on reporting on financial statements prepared on a liquidation basis of accounting.
officer or other equivalent persons in entities that do not use such titles. In some circumstances, however, other parties, such as those charged with governance, also are responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements.

**Written Representations About Management’s Responsibilities and Other Written Representations**

2.92 Paragraphs .10–.18 of AU-C section 580 discuss matters the auditor should request management to provide written representation about such as preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements, information provided and completeness of transactions, fraud, laws and regulations, uncorrected misstatements, litigation and claims, estimates, related party transactions, and subsequent events. If, in addition to such required representations and those addressed in other AU-C sections the auditor determines that it is necessary to obtain one or more written representations to support other audit evidence relevant to the financial statements or one or more specific assertions in the financial statements, paragraph .19 of AU-C section 580 states that the auditor should request such other written representations.

2.93 The auditor may consider the following examples of specific representations for receivables, cost reports filed with third parties, and contingencies related to health care third-party revenue recognition:

- For receivables, consider the following:
  - Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, estimated adjustments to revenue, such as for denied claims and changes to home health resource group, resource utilization group, ambulatory payment classification, and DRG assignments.
  - Recorded valuation allowances are necessary, appropriate, and properly supported.
  - All peer review organizations, fiscal intermediary, and third-party payor reports and information have been made available.

- For cost reports filed with third parties, auditors may consider the following:
  - All required Medicare, Medicaid, and similar reports have been properly filed.
  - Management is responsible for the accuracy and propriety of all filed cost reports.
  - All costs reflected on such reports are appropriate and allowable under applicable reimbursement rules and regulations and are patient-related and properly allocated to applicable payors.
  - The employed reimbursement methodologies and principles are in accordance with applicable rules and regulations.
  - Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, audit adjustments by intermediaries, third-party payors, or other regulatory agencies.
— All items required to be disclosed, including disputed costs that are being claimed to establish a basis for a subsequent appeal, have been fully disclosed in the cost report.

— Recorded third-party settlements include differences between filed (and to-be-filed) cost reports and calculated settlements, which are necessary based on historical experience or new or ambiguous regulations that may be subject to differing interpretations. Although management believes that the entity is entitled to all amounts claimed on the cost reports, management also believes the amounts of these differences are appropriate.

• For contingencies, auditors may consider the following:

— There are no instances of noncompliance with laws or regulations, such as those related to Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes, in any jurisdiction, whose effects are considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency other than those disclosed or accrued in the financial statements. This is including, but not limited to, the antikickback statute of the Medicare and Medicaid Patient and Program Protection Act of 1987, limitations on certain physician referrals (the Stark law), and the False Claims Act.

— Billings to third-party payors comply in all material respects with applicable coding guidelines (for example, ICD-10-CM and CPT-4) and laws and regulations, including those dealing with Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse, and billings reflect only charges for goods and services that were medically necessary; properly approved by regulatory bodies (for example, the Food and Drug Administration), if required; and properly rendered.

— There have been no internal or external investigations relating to compliance with applicable laws and regulations, including investigations in progress that would have an effect on the amounts reported in the financial statements or on the disclosure in the notes to the financial statements.

— There have been no oral or written communications from regulatory agencies, governmental representatives, employees, or others concerning investigations or allegations of noncompliance with laws and regulations in any jurisdiction, including those related to Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes; deficiencies in financial reporting practices; or other matters that could have a material adverse effect on the financial statements.
— Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, a continuing care retirement community's obligation to provide future services and the use of facilities to current residents.

— Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, a prepaid health care provider's obligation to provide future health care services.

— Guarantees, whether written or oral, under which the health care entity is contingently liable, including guarantee contracts and indemnification agreements pursuant to FASB ASC 460, Guarantees, have been properly recorded or disclosed in the (consolidated) financial statements.

2.94 The auditor of the health care entity also may obtain specific representations, if applicable, of the following items that are unique or pervasive in the health care industry:

- The health care entity is in compliance with the provisions of IRC Section 501(c)(3) and is exempt from federal income tax under IRC Section 501(a), as evidenced by a determination letter, and from state income tax.

- Information returns (Form 990) have been filed on a timely basis.

- The health care entity is in compliance with the requirements of the provisions of IRC Section 501(r)(1), as established by the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, in order to be treated as an entity described in IRC Section 501(c)(3).

- Provision has been made, when material, for estimated retroactive adjustments by third-party payors under reimbursement agreements.

- The health care organization is in compliance with bond indentures or other debt instruments.

- For each of its outstanding bond issues, the health care entity is in compliance with post-issuance requirements, as specified in the IRC, including, but not limited to, the areas of arbitrage and private business use.

- Pending changes in the organizational structure, financing arrangements, or other matters that could have a material effect on the financial statements of the entity are properly disclosed.

- The health care entity is in compliance with contractual agreements, grants, and donor restrictions.

- The health care entity has maintained an appropriate composition of net assets in amounts needed to comply with all donor restrictions.

- The internal controls over the receipt and recording of received contributions are adequate.

- The allocation of expenses reported in the notes to the financial statements is reasonable based on the health care entity's current operations.
The health care entity has properly classified equity securities with readily determinable fair values and all debt securities as either trading or other-than-trading securities and reported these investments at fair value.

The health care entity has reported to its risk management department all known asserted and unasserted claims and incidents. Adequate and reasonable provision has been made for losses related to asserted and unasserted malpractice, health insurance, worker's compensation, and any other claims.

The health care entity is (or is not) subject to the requirements of Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-133, Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations, or Title 45 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 74.26 because it expended (or did not expend) more than $500,000 in federal awards during the year.

The health care entity has classified net assets as unrestricted, temporarily restricted, or permanently restricted based on its assessment of the donor's intention, as specified in original donor correspondence, when available. When not available, the entity used other corroborating evidential matter, including minutes of the board, accounting records, and financial statements. To the extent that it was unable to review original donor correspondence to determine the amount of the original gift and donor additions, its determination of such amount was based on its best estimate considering the relevant facts and circumstances. Amounts classified as temporarily restricted are subject to donor-imposed purpose or time restrictions that precluded the health care entity from expending such amounts or recognizing such amounts as unrestricted as of the balance sheet date. Amounts classified as permanently restricted are subject to donor-imposed or statutory restrictions that require these amounts to be held in perpetuity. In addition, the health care entity has classified appreciation and income related to such donations in accordance with relevant donor or statutory restrictions. Losses on investments of a donor-restricted endowment fund have been classified in accordance with FASB ASC 958-205-45. Reclassifications between net asset classes are proper.

The health care entity has properly classified a portion of its donor-restricted endowment funds of perpetual duration as permanently restricted net assets based on explicit donor stipulations or the entity's interpretation of relevant law in the absence of explicit donor stipulations. Unless otherwise stated in the gift agreement, the entity has classified the portion of its donor-restricted endowment funds that is not classified as permanently restricted net assets as temporarily restricted net assets until appropriated for expenditure.

There have been no changes in the health care entity's interpretation of relevant law that underlies the health care entity's net asset classification of donor-restricted endowment funds. The health care entity's policy for the appropriation of endowment assets for expenditure is consistent with that interpretation.
The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) issued its final rule on Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards on December 26, 2013. The effective date for application of administrative requirements and cost principles is December 26, 2014. The audit requirements are to be implemented for fiscal years beginning on or after December 26, 2014, with no early implementation. This final guidance supersedes and streamlines requirements from OMB Circulars A-21, A-87, A-110, and A-122 (which have been placed in OMB guidance); Circulars A-89, A-102, and A-133; and the guidance in Circular A-50 on Single Audit Act follow-up. Note that for hospitals, although the administrative and audit requirements apply, the new cost principles will not apply.

2.95 An independent auditor may be engaged to audit the financial statements and compliance of a health care entity that expends federal awards from a governmental agency in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and OMB Circular A-133. Federal awards may take the form of grants, contracts, loans, loan guarantees, property, cooperative agreements, interest subsidies, and insurance or direct appropriations. Medicare payments to a nonfederal entity for providing patient care services to Medicare-eligible individuals are not considered expended federal awards under OMB Circular A-133. Medicaid payments to a subrecipient for providing patient care services to Medicaid-eligible individuals are not considered expended federal awards under OMB Circular A-133, unless a state requires the funds to be treated as expended federal awards because reimbursement is on a cost-reimbursement basis.

2.96 OMB Circular A-133 prescribes policies, procedures, and guidelines to implement the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and requires state and local governments and NFPs that expend total federal awards equal to, or in excess of, $500,000 in a fiscal year to have an audit performed in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and OMB Circular A-133.

2.97 Institutions covered by OMB Circular A-133 include NFP hospitals, public hospitals, institutions of higher education and their affiliated hospitals, voluntary health and welfare entities, and other community-based entities. However, codification of OMB Circular A-133 by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) also includes audit requirements for commercial entities, including for-profit hospitals, that receive federal awards under HHS programs. Generally, the entity has two options regarding audits: a financial-related audit of a particular award, in accordance with Government Auditing.
Federal research and development awards under grants and contracts administered by hospitals are subject to the requirements provided in appendix E, "Principles for Determining Costs Applicable to Research and Development Under Grants and Contracts With Hospitals," of 45 CFR 74. See 45 CFR 74.26(d) for further information.

2.98 AU-C section 935, Compliance Audits (AICPA, Professional Standards), is applicable when an auditor is engaged, or required by law or regulation, to perform a compliance audit in accordance with all of the following:

- GAAS
- Government Auditing Standards
- A government audit requirement that requires an auditor to express an opinion on compliance

An audit in accordance with OMB Circular A-133 requires all of the preceding. According to paragraph .12 of AU-C section 935, when performing a compliance audit, the auditor, using professional judgment, should adapt and apply the AU-C sections to the objectives of a compliance audit, except for the AU-C sections listed in paragraph .A41 of AU-C section 935. Furthermore, paragraph .14 of AU-C section 935 states a compliance audit is based on the premise that management is responsible for identifying the entity's government programs and understanding and complying with the compliance requirements. The auditor should determine which of those government programs and compliance requirements to test (that is, the applicable compliance requirements) in accordance with the governmental audit requirement.

2.100 When an independent auditor is engaged to perform an audit in accordance with OMB Circular A-133, both the financial statement audit and the compliance audit are performed in accordance with GAS issued by the U.S. Government Accountability Office. GAS incorporates by reference the AICPA standards and contains certain standards and requirements that are supplementary to those in GAAS, as well as guidance on how to apply those standards and requirements.

2.101 The Audit Guide Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits provides guidance on the auditor's responsibilities when conducting audit of financial statements in accordance with GAS and a single audit or program-specific audit in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and OMB Circular A-133. It discusses the auditor's responsibility for considering internal control and performing tests of compliance with applicable laws, regulations, and program compliance requirements. Further, it provides reporting guidance, including examples of the reports required by GAS and OMB Circular A-133.

9 The U.S. Government Accountability Office issued Government Auditing Standards (2011 revision) in December 2011. The most significant change in the 2011 revision relates to auditor independence. The 2011 revision supersedes the 2011 Internet Version of Government Auditing Standards (interim revision) that was issued in August 2011 and also replaces Government Auditing Standards, July 2007 Revision. The effective date of the 2011 revision for financial audits and attestation engagements is for periods ending on or after December 15, 2012. A practice aid, 2011 Yellow Book Independence—Non-Audit Services Documentation Practice Aid, has been developed by the AICPA Governmental Audit Quality Center (GAQC) to assist an auditor in evaluating nonaudit services and the effect of performing such services on auditor independence under the 2011 revision. More information about the practice aid and how to obtain it can be found on the Resources page of the GAQC website at www.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/GovernmentalAuditQuality/Resources/AuditPracticeToolsAids/Pages/YellowBookAuditToolsandAids.aspx.
2.102 Most health plans that provide insurance coverage and bear financial risk are regulated. Generally speaking, regulated insurers are required by their state of domicile to annually submit a set of audited financial statements that are prepared using that state's prescribed or permitted statutory accounting practices (statutory financial statements).

2.103 The National Association of Insurance Commissioners (NAIC) codified the statutory accounting practices for certain insurance entities, including regulated health plans. Annually, the NAIC issues a revised Accounting Practices and Procedures Manual (the NAIC Manual) reflecting revisions or additions to Statements of Statutory Accounting Principles (SSAPs) and interpretations of SSAPs. States generally require health plans to comply with the provisions of the NAIC Manual, unless the provisions are preempted by state statutes or regulations, or both. If the requirements of state laws, regulations, and administrative rules differ from the guidance provided in the NAIC Manual, such state laws, regulations, and administrative rules take precedence. Preparers and auditors of statutory financial statements might find it useful to monitor the status of the NAIC Manual, as well as all the prescribed and permitted practices of an insurer's domiciliary state. Any permitted practices granted by the domiciliary state to the health plan must be reconfirmed annually.

2.104 Statutory financial statements prepared in accordance with the NAIC Manual, as well as other prescribed and permitted statutory accounting practices, are considered to be prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework as defined in AU-C section 800. Paragraph .A34 of AU-C section 800 sets forth guidance in evaluating the adequacy and appropriateness of informative disclosures in financial statements prepared in accordance with a special purpose framework. Although nonauthoritative, the AICPA Practice Aids Applying OCBOA in State and Local Governmental Financial Statements and Accounting and Financial Reporting Guidelines For Cash- and Tax-Basis Financial Statements are additional resources when financial statements are prepared using an alternative accounting and financial reporting framework.

2.105 Various SSAPs included in the NAIC Manual specifically address issues related to health plans. These include SSAP No. 25, Accounting for and Disclosures about Transactions with Affiliates and Other Related Parties; No. 35, Guaranty Fund and Other Assessments; No. 47, Uninsured Plans; No. 50, Classifications and Definitions of Insurance or Managed Care Contracts in Force; No. 54, Individual and Group Accident and Health Contracts; No. 55, Unpaid Claims, Losses and Loss Adjustment Expenses; No. 61, Life, Deposit-Type and Accident and Health Reinsurance; No. 66, retrospectively Rated Contracts; No. 73, Health Care Delivery Assets—Supplies, Pharmaceutical and Surgical Supplies, Durable Medical Equipment, Furniture, Medical Equipment and Fixtures, and Leasehold Improvements in Health Care Facilities; No. 84, Certain Health Care Receivables and Receivables Under Government Insured Plans; No. 85, Claim Adjustment Expenses, Amendments to SSAP No. 55—Unpaid Claims, Losses and Loss Adjustment Expenses; No. 87, Capitalization Policy, An Amendment to SSAP Nos. 4, 19, 29, 73, 79 and 82; and No. 96, Settlement requirements for Intercompany Transactions, An Amendment to SSAP No. 25—Accounting for and Disclosures about Transactions with Affiliates and Other Related Parties. In addition to those noted previously, numerous other SSAPs
apply to health plans. Preparers and auditors should consider the applicability of all the SSAPs and apply the SSAPs to each health plan, as appropriate.

RBC Requirements

2.106 The risk-based capital (RBC) formula is one of the tools used by regulators to evaluate the financial health of regulated entities. The RBC formula generally consists of the following principal risk elements: (a) affiliated investment risk, (b) asset risk, (c) underwriting risk, (d) credit risk, and (e) general business risk. Based on the outcome of the RBC formula, an insurer may be classified into one of four regulatory action levels. In order of increasingly stringent level of regulatory response, the action levels are company action level, regulatory action level, authorized control level, and mandatory control level. At a minimum, the company action level classification requires the filing of an RBC plan with the respective state insurance commissioner that details conditions leading to the classification event and the insurer's proposals of corrective action. State laws vary regarding compliance with the RBC formula and required actions to be taken by the health plan. Additional information can be found on the NAIC website at www.naic.org.

2.107 When assessing the risks of material misstatement, an auditor might consider the RBC formula and the impact that the RBC formula might have on the health plan's accounting and reporting.

Deficiencies in Internal Control

2.108 AU-C section 265, Communicating Internal Control Related Matters in an Audit (AICPA, Professional Standards), and PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5 define the following terms: deficiency in internal control, material weakness, and significant deficiencies. The definitions in AU-C section 265, as detailed subsequently, are substantially consistent with PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5.

- **Deficiency in internal control.** A deficiency in internal control exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A deficiency in design exists when (a) a control necessary to meeting the control objective is missing, or (b) an existing control is not properly designed so that, even if the control operates as designed, the control objective would not be met. A deficiency in operation exists when a properly designed control does not operate as designed or when the person performing the control does not possess the necessary authority or competence to perform the control effectively.

- **Material weakness.** A deficiency or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected, on a timely basis.

- **Significant deficiency.** A deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.
Communicating Internal Control Matters in an Audit

2.109 Audits performed pursuant to AU-C section 265 require the auditor to communicate in writing to those charged with governance on a timely basis, significant deficiencies and material weaknesses identified during the audit, including those that were remediated during the audit. AU-C section 265 also requires communication to management at an appropriate level of responsibility, on a timely basis:

- In writing, significant deficiencies and material weaknesses that the auditor has communicated or intends to communicate to those charged with governance, unless it would be inappropriate to communicate directly to management in the circumstances.
- In writing or orally, other deficiencies in internal control identified during the audit that have not been communicated to management by other parties and that, in the auditor's professional judgment, are of sufficient importance to merit management's attention. If other deficiencies in internal control are communicated orally, the auditor should document the communication.

In accordance with paragraph .14 of AU-C section 265, the auditor's written communication of significant deficiencies and material weaknesses should include a description of the significant deficiencies and material weaknesses and an explanation of their potential effects.

Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards

Audits performed pursuant to Auditing Standard No. 5 require the auditor to communicate in writing to management and the audit committee all material weaknesses identified during the audit. The written communication should be made prior to the issuance of the auditor's report on internal control over financial reporting. If the auditor concludes that the oversight of the company's external financial reporting and internal control over financial reporting by the company's audit committee is ineffective, the auditor must communicate that conclusion in writing to the board of directors. Auditing Standard No. 5 also requires the following:

- The auditor also should consider whether there are any deficiencies, or combinations of deficiencies, that have been identified during the audit that are significant deficiencies and must communicate such deficiencies, in writing, to the audit committee.
- The auditor also should communicate to management, in writing, all deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting (that is, those deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting that are of a lesser magnitude than material weaknesses) identified during the audit and inform the audit committee when such a communication has been made. When making this communication, it is not necessary for the auditor to repeat information about such deficiencies that has been included in previously issued written communications, whether those communications were made by the auditor, internal audit function, or others within the organization.
Communications With Regulators and the Annual Financial Reporting Model Regulation

2.110 The NAIC Annual Financial Reporting Model Regulation, commonly referred to as the Model Audit Rule (MAR), incorporated the provisions of the extant standard, AU section 325, *Communications About Control Deficiencies in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules*, Interim Standards). MAR establishes requirements related to management reporting on the effectiveness of internal controls over statutory financial reporting, audit committees, auditor independence, and other statutory filing matters. Health plans with greater than $500 million in direct written and assumed premiums are required to file a written communication to its domiciliary state on the effectiveness of its internal control, similar to the requirements under Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. The NAIC developed a companion publication, *Implementation Guide for the Annual Financial Reporting Model Regulation*. The MAR implementation guide is intended to supplement MAR, not create additional requirements, by providing interpretative guidance and clarifying the meaning of terms used in MAR. The MAR implementation guide will be updated in the future, as necessary, and is included in the NAIC Manual.
Chapter 3

Unique Financial Statement Considerations for Not-for-Profit Health Care Entities

3.01 Not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities must apply the NFP financial reporting model described in FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 958, Not-for-Profit Entities, subject to, and in accordance with, additional financial reporting guidance provided in FASB ASC 954, Health Care Entities. The incremental financial reporting guidance in FASB ASC 954 tailors the NFP financial reporting model to better serve the needs of users of financial statements of health care entities.¹

Complete Set of Financial Statements

3.02 In accordance with FASB ASC 958-205-45-5, a set of financial statements of an NFP health care entity should include (either in the body of the statements or accompanying notes) information required by generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) that does not specifically exempt NFPs and information required by applicable, specialized accounting and reporting principles and practices.

3.03 The financial reporting for NFP business-oriented health care entities and investor-owned health care entities generally is consistent, except for transactions that clearly are not applicable. For example, NFP business-oriented health care entities would have nothing to report for shareholders' equity. On the other hand, investor-owned health care entities typically would not have anything to report for contributions.

3.04 According to FASB ASC 954-205-45-1, the basic financial statements of health care entities consist of a balance sheet, a statement of operations, a statement of changes in net assets (or equity), a statement of cash flows, and notes to the financial statements.²

3.05 Some NFP health care entities may use fund accounting for purposes of internal recordkeeping and managerial control. As noted in FASB ASC 958-205-45-3, reporting by fund groups is not a necessary part of external financial reporting; however, FASB ASC 958-205 does not preclude providing disaggregated information by fund groups. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-210-45-2, because receivables and payables between fund groups are not entity assets or liabilities, a statement of financial position should clearly label and arrange those interfund items to eliminate their amounts when displaying total assets or liabilities.

¹ See paragraph 1.07 of this guide for a discussion of the financial reporting objectives of not-for-profit entities (NFPs) that are essentially self-sustaining from fees they charge for goods and services.

² As noted in FASB Accounting Standards Codification 958-205-45-2, the terms balance sheet and statement of operations indicate the content and purpose of the respective statements and serve as possible titles for those statements. Other appropriately descriptive titles may also be used. For example, a statement reporting financial position could be called a statement of financial position, as well as a balance sheet. Current practice and purpose suggest, however, that a statement of cash flows only be titled "Statement of Cash Flows."
3.06 NFP health care entities are subject to the unique balance sheet reporting requirements for NFPs set forth in FASB ASC 958-210. That guidance is subject to the more specific reporting requirements for health care entities contained in FASB ASC 954-210. In addition, NFP health care entities also should apply the requirements of FASB ASC 210, Balance Sheet, that are not in conflict with the more specific industry requirements.

3.07 FASB ASC 958-210-45-1 requires that a statement of financial position focus on the NFP as a whole and report all of the following amounts: total assets; total liabilities; total net assets; and the amount of each of the three classes of net assets (permanently restricted, temporarily restricted, and unrestricted). FASB ASC 958-810-45-1 describes how to report non-controlling interests in the equity (net assets) of consolidated subsidiaries within the appropriate class(es) of net assets.

3.08 FASB ASC 954-210-45-1 requires health care entities, including NFP business-oriented health care entities, to classify assets and liabilities as current and noncurrent, as discussed in FASB ASC 210-10-45. However, rather than presenting a classified balance sheet, a continuing care retirement community may instead sequence assets according to their nearness of conversion to cash and may sequence liabilities according to the nearness of the maturity and resulting use of cash.

3.09 FASB ASC 958-225 describes the unique standards relating to the income statement (statement of activities) of an NFP. FASB ASC 954-225 modifies the requirements of FASB ASC 958-225 as they pertain to NFP health care entities.

3.10 Health care entities present the information included within the statement of activities in two separate statements: a statement of operations, which reports all changes in unrestricted net assets for the period, and a statement of changes in net assets. Alternatively, in accordance with FASB ASC 954-225-45-1, these may be combined into a single statement of operations and changes in net assets.

3.11 Revenues, expenses, gains, and losses increase or decrease net assets and are classified as provided in paragraphs 4–8 of FASB ASC 958-225-45 and are briefly discussed subsequently. Reclassifications, equity transfers, and equity transactions should be reported as separate items. A reclassification is the simultaneous increase of one class of net assets and decrease of another, usually as a result of the release or lapsing of restrictions. Paragraphs 12.74–.77 of this guide describe equity transfers, and paragraphs 12.78–.81 of this guide describe equity transactions.

3.12 FASB ASC 954-225-45-4 requires that the statement of operations for an NFP business-oriented health care entity include a performance indicator. The FASB ASC glossary states that a performance indicator reports results of operations. A performance indicator and the income from continuing operations reported by for-profit health care entities generally are consistent, except for transactions that clearly are not applicable to one kind of entity (for
example, for-profit health care entities typically would not receive contributions, and NFP health care entities would not award stock compensation). The performance indicator is analogous to income from continuing operations of a for-profit entity.

3.13 FASB ASC 954-225-45-4 also states that because of the importance of the performance indicator, it should be clearly labeled with a descriptive term, such as revenues over expenses, revenues and gains over expenses and losses, earned income, or performance earnings. NFP business-oriented health care entities should report the performance indicator in a statement that also presents the total changes in unrestricted net assets.

3.14 The performance indicator reports results of operations and represents an earnings measure for the entity.\(^3\) The section of the statement of operations below the performance indicator (referred to as "Other Changes in Unrestricted Net Assets") generally is regarded as the functional equivalent of other comprehensive income in an investor-owned entity.

3.15 FASB ASC 954-225-50-1 requires that the notes to the financial statements include a description of the nature and composition of the performance indicator.

3.16 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-225-45-7, the following items are excluded from the performance indicator:

\(a.\) Transactions with owners acting in that capacity.

\(b.\) Equity transfers involving other entities that control the reporting entity, are controlled by the reporting entity, or are under common control with the reporting entity.

\(c.\) Receipt of restricted contributions, including temporary restrictions, such as time or purpose, or permanent restrictions.

\(d.\) Contributions of, and assets released from donor restrictions related to, long-lived assets.

\(e.\) Items that are required to be reported in, or reclassified from, other comprehensive income, such as gains or losses, prior service costs or credits, and transition assets or obligations recognized in accordance with FASB ASC 715, *Compensation—Retirement Benefits*; foreign currency translation adjustments; and the effective portion of the gain or loss on derivative instruments designated and qualifying as cash flow hedging instruments.

\(f.\) Items that are required to be reported separately under specialized NFP standards. These include extraordinary items and the effect of discontinued operations. See paragraph 3.21.

\(g.\) Unrealized gains and losses on investments other than trading securities, in accordance with FASB ASC 954-320-45-1(b).

\(h.\) Investment returns restricted by donors or law. See also FASB ASC 954-320-45-2.

---

\(^3\) Investor-owned entities are required by generally accepted accounting principles to include discontinued operations within their net income measure. NFPs are required to report discontinued operations just before the change in net assets, preceded by a subtotal. See paragraph 3.21. Accordingly, the performance indicator is considered to be analogous to income from continuing operations, rather than net income, of an investor-owned health care entity. Further, the term *net income* is not an appropriate caption for describing the earnings measure of an NFP.
i. Investment losses that decrease unrestricted net assets if those losses reduce the assets of a donor-restricted endowment fund below the required level, as described in FASB ASC 958-205-45-22.

j. Investment gains that increase unrestricted net assets if those gains restore the fair value of the assets of a donor-restricted endowment fund to the required level, as described in FASB ASC 958-205-45-22.

k. An inherent contribution (see FASB ASC 958-805-25-31) received in an NFP acquisition transaction that increases temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net assets, as described in FASB ASC 954-805-45-2.

3.17 The preceding items that reflect increases or decreases in unrestricted net assets are reported below the performance indicator in the statement of operations. Items that reflect increases or decreases in temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net assets are reported in the statement of changes in net assets, rather than the statement of operations.

Other Intermediate Subtotals

3.18 As noted in paragraphs 5–6 of FASB ASC 954-225-45, classifying revenues, expenses, gains, and losses within classes of net assets does not preclude incorporating additional classifications within the performance indicator. For example, within a class or classes of changes in net assets, an NFP health care entity may classify items as operating and nonoperating, expendable and nonexpendable, earned and unearned, recurring and nonrecurring, or in other ways. The guidance neither requires nor precludes reporting such intermediate measures or subtotals. As discussed in paragraphs 9–12 of FASB ASC 958-225-45, NFPs have the flexibility to choose whether to report an operating measure.

3.19 FASB ASC 958-225-45-11 states that if an intermediate measure of operations is reported, other subtopics within FASB ASC impose limitations on an entity's use of that measure. If a subtotal is presented, such as income from operations, it should include the amounts of the following items:

a. An impairment loss recognized for a long-lived asset (asset group) that is to be held and used, pursuant to FASB ASC 360-10-45-4

b. Costs associated with an exit or a disposal activity that does not involve a discontinued operation, pursuant to FASB ASC 420-10-45-3

c. A gain or loss recognized on the sale of a long-lived asset (disposal group) that is not a component of an entity, pursuant to FASB ASC 360-10-45-5

d. Amortization expense and impairment losses for intangible assets, pursuant to FASB ASC 350-30-45-2

3.20 As required by FASB ASC 958-225-50-1, if an NFP health care entity's use of the term operations is not apparent from the details provided on the face of the statement, a note to the financial statements should describe the nature of the reported measure of operations or the items excluded from operations.

AAG-HCO 3.17


Extraordinary Items, Discontinued Operations, and Accounting Changes

3.21 As illustrated in FASB ASC 958-225-55-6, GAAP requires an NFP to appropriately report labeled subtotals for changes in classes of net assets before the effects of discontinued operating segments or extraordinary items, if any.

3.22 Normally, a FASB Accounting Standards Update will provide specific transition requirements. If a newly issued standard requires that the effect of an accounting change be reported as a cumulative-effect adjustment to the change in net assets of the period of the change, rather than by retrospective application, that amount would also be displayed with extraordinary items and discontinued operations, unless the transition requirements provided otherwise.

Revenues

3.23 FASB ASC 958-225-45-5 requires that revenues be reported as increases in unrestricted net assets, unless the use of the received assets is limited by donor-imposed restrictions.

3.24 The financial statement display requirements for patient service revenue and capitation revenue are discussed in chapter 10, "Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables," of this guide, and display of managed care revenue is discussed in chapter 13, "Financial Accounting and Reporting for Managed Care Services," of this guide.

3.25 As discussed in FASB ASC 954-605-05-4, other revenue, gains, or losses are derived from services other than providing health care services to patients, residents, or enrollees. These typically include the following:

- Interest and dividends from all funds held by a trustee, malpractice funds, or other miscellaneous investment activities
- Certain realized changes in fair values of marketable securities
- Fees from educational programs, which include tuition for schools, such as nursing, or laboratory and X-ray technology
- Rental of health care facility space
- Sales of medical and pharmaceutical supplies to employees, physicians, and others
- Fees charged for transcripts for lawyers, insurance companies, and others
- Proceeds from the sale of cafeteria meals and guest trays to employees, medical staff, and visitors
- Proceeds from the sale of scrap or used X-ray film
- Proceeds from sales at gift shops, snack bars, newsstands, parking lots, vending machines, or other service facilities operated by the health care entity

Expenses

3.26 FASB ASC 958-225-45-7 requires an NFP to report all expenses as decreases in unrestricted net assets. FASB ASC 958-720-45 provides standards for the presentation of expenses in the financial statements of an NFP.
3.27 Expenses may be reported on the face of the statement of operations using either a natural classification (for example, salaries and wages, supplies, and so on) or functional presentation (a method of grouping expenses according to the purpose for which costs are incurred). Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-205-55-11, NFPs that report using a natural classification of expenses on the face of the statement of operations are required to disclose expenses by functional classification in the notes to the financial statements.

3.28 According to FASB ASC 954-225-45-3, the primary functional classifications are program services and supporting activities. The extent of classification and subclassification of expenses depends on many factors, such as the nature and complexity of the health care entity. For example, in complying with the functional reporting requirements of FASB ASC 958-205-45-6, 958-720-05-4, and 958-720-45-2, some health care entities may present only two categories: health services, including inpatient services, outpatient procedures, home health services, and so forth, and general and administrative. Others may present additional distinctions, such as physician services, research, and teaching. Functional allocations should be based on full cost allocations.

**Statement of Changes in Net Assets (or Equity)**

3.29 The statement of changes in net assets (or equity) reports all changes that have occurred during the reporting period in each classification of net assets (unrestricted, temporarily restricted, and permanently restricted). As discussed in paragraph 3.10, this statement may be combined with the statement of operations or presented separately.

3.30 The statement of changes in net assets displays the four measures required by FASB ASC 958-225-45-1: the change in permanently-restricted net assets, the change in temporarily-restricted net assets, the change in unrestricted net assets, and the change in net assets for the entity as a whole. As illustrated in FASB ASC 958-205-55-16, typically, the information presented for the unrestricted net asset category in the statement of changes in net assets is highly aggregated.

3.31 Restricted contributions and restricted investment return, which are excluded from the performance indicator, are reported as increases or decreases in temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net assets in the statement of changes in net assets. Restricted contributions are discussed in chapter 11, "Contributions Received and Made," of this guide, and restricted investment return is discussed in paragraphs 4.32–.34 of this guide.

3.32 Because all expenses must be reported as decreases in unrestricted net assets, as discussed in paragraph 3.26, no expenses should be reported in the temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net asset categories. However, certain losses may be reported within those categories, as discussed in FASB ASC 958-225-45-8.

**Statement of Cash Flows**

3.33 The general standards for reporting cash flows are provided in FASB ASC 230, *Statement of Cash Flows*. FASB ASC 958-230 provides incremental guidance related to reporting NFP-specific transactions within this statement. According to FASB ASC 230-10-45, the statement of cash flows may be prepared using the direct or indirect method of reporting cash flows.
3.34 FASB ASC 230-10-45-28 requires an NFP to reconcile the change in net assets to net cash flows from operating activities. FASB ASC 958-205-55-20 provides an example of this reconciliation.

3.35 The reconciliation will need to accommodate certain items that are not included in cash flow statements prepared for investor-owned health care entities, such as equity transfers, contributions of long-lived assets, other contributions restricted for long-term purposes, unrealized gains and losses on certain investments, investment returns restricted for long-term purposes by donor or law, and the effective portion of fair value changes of cash flow hedging derivatives.

3.36 FASB ASC 958-230 expands the description of financing activities in FASB ASC 230 to encompass receipts of resources that are donor-restricted for long-term purposes. As discussed in FASB ASC 958-210-45-6, cash or other assets received with a donor-imposed restriction that limits their use to long term should not be classified on a statement of financial position with cash or other assets that are unrestricted and available for current use. Therefore, as discussed in FASB ASC 958-230-55-3, when an NFP reports cash received with a donor-imposed restriction that limits its use to long-term purposes, in conformity with FASB ASC 958-210-45-6, an adjustment is necessary for the statement of cash flows to reconcile beginning and ending cash and cash equivalents. To report in conformity with FASB ASC 230, the receipt of a cash contribution that is restricted for the purchase of equipment should be reported as a cash flow from financing activities (using a caption such as "Contributions Restricted for Purchasing Equipment"), and it should be simultaneously reported as a cash outflow from investing activities (using a caption such as "Purchase of Assets Restricted to Investment in Property and Equipment" or, if the equipment was purchased in the same period, "Purchase of Equipment"). An adjustment to reconcile the change in net assets to net cash used or provided by operating activities would also be needed if the contributed asset is not classified as cash or cash equivalents on the statement of financial position. When the equipment is purchased in a subsequent period, both the proceeds from the sale of assets restricted to investment in the equipment and the purchase of the equipment should be reported as cash flows from investing activities.

3.37 Cash receipts from sale of donated financial assets (for example, debt or equity instruments) by not-for-profit health care entities that upon receipt were directed without any not-for-profit imposed limitations for sale and were converted nearly immediately into cash should be classified as operating cash flows. If, however, the donor restricted the use of the contributed resource to a long-term purpose of the nature of those described in paragraph FASB ASC 230-10-45-14(c), then those cash receipts meeting all the conditions in this paragraph should be classified as a financing activity. This was effective prospectively for fiscal years, and interim periods within those years, beginning after June 15, 2013. Retrospective application to all prior periods presented upon the date of adoption is permitted.

Notes to the Financial Statements

3.38 The individual chapters of this guide discuss the notes to the financial statements that are unique to, or prevalent for, health care entities.
Subsequent Events

3.39 FASB ASC 855, *Subsequent Events*, establishes standards for accounting for, and disclosure of, events that occur after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued or available to be issued. In accordance with FASB ASC 855-10-25, an entity should recognize in the financial statements the effects of all subsequent events that provide additional evidence about conditions that existed at the date of the balance sheet, including the estimates inherent in the process of preparing financial statements. An entity should not recognize subsequent events that provide evidence about conditions that did not exist at the date of the balance sheet but arose after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued or available to be issued. Instead, nonrecognized subsequent events are disclosed if they are of such a nature that they must be disclosed to keep the financial statements from being misleading.

3.40 As discussed in paragraphs 7.06–.08 of this guide, because of their use of conduit debt that trades in public markets, many NFP health care entities fall into the class of entities that are required to evaluate subsequent events through the issuance date of their financial statements. However, if an NFP health care entity issued tax-exempt debt in a private placement, and the debt has not subsequently begun trading in a public market, the entity is not a conduit bond obligor for the purpose of FASB ASC 855 because its debt does not trade in a public market.

3.41 If an NFP health care entity does not have conduit debt that trades in a public market, it is required to evaluate subsequent events up through the date that the financial statements are available to be issued. The FASB ASC glossary definition of *financial statements are available to be issued* states that "[f]inancial statements are considered available to be issued when they are complete in a form and format that complies with GAAP and all approvals necessary for issuance have been obtained, for example, from management, the board of directors, and/or significant shareholders."

Example Financial Statements

3.42 Some health care entities choose to present very detailed financial statements; others present highly condensed statements, providing only summary totals of major classifications of revenue and expense. Each entity should use the presentation that it considers to be most informative given its own facts and circumstances, provided that the statements comply with the reporting parameters of GAAP.

3.43 Examples of financial statements of health care entities are not included in this guide. Examples may be found in the following places:

- The website for Electronic Municipal Market Access (EMMA), (http://emma.msrb.org) for financial statements of NFP health care entities. EMMA is the official source for municipal disclosures and market data maintained by the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board. EMMA contains official statements and continuing disclosures for NFPs with tax-exempt bonds.

- The website for the Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval (EDGAR) system (www.sec.gov/edgar/aboutedgar.htm) for financial statements of investor-owned health care entities that
are required to file forms with the SEC. EDGAR is the system for
the automated collection, validation, indexing, acceptance, and
forwarding of submissions by companies and others that are re-
quired by law to file forms with the SEC.

- The websites of health care entities that are considered peers of
the reporting entity.
- The websites of regulatory agencies, such as the secretary of state
or departments of health or insurance.
- The AICPA publications *Not-for-Profit Entities—Best Prac-
tices in Presentation and Disclosure* and *U.S. GAAP Finan-
cial Statements—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure*
(www.cpa2biz.com), which are useful for the disclosure examples,
even though they do not contain example financial statements of
health care entities.
Chapter 4

Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments

Cash and Cash Equivalents

4.01 Health care entities, both investor-owned and not for profit (NFP), hold cash balances to meet payments arising in the ordinary course of operations and unanticipated contingencies. These balances may be held as cash or cash equivalents. This chapter discusses the following industry-pervasive matters about accounting for cash and cash equivalents:

- Centralized cash management arrangements (see paragraphs 4.03–.06)
- Cash from restricted donations (see paragraph 4.07)
- Other restricted or designated cash amounts (see paragraphs 4.08–.11)

4.02 The FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) glossary defines a cash equivalent as short-term, highly liquid investments that have both of the following characteristics:

a. Readily convertible to known amounts of cash
b. So near their maturity that they present insignificant risk of changes in value because of changes in interest rates.

Generally, only investments with original maturities of three months or less qualify under that definition. Original maturity means original maturity to the entity holding the investment. For example, both a three-month U.S. Treasury bill and a three-year U.S. Treasury note purchased three months from maturity qualify as cash equivalents. However, a Treasury note purchased three years ago does not become a cash equivalent when its remaining maturity is three months. Examples of items commonly considered to be cash equivalents are Treasury bills, commercial paper, money market funds, and federal funds sold (for an entity with banking operations).

Centralized Cash Management Arrangements

4.03 Many health care entities have centralized cash management arrangements whereby excess cash is swept into a cash pool. Subsidiary cash requirements are met through withdrawals or borrowings from the cash pool. The cash pool is invested in assets, such as deposits at banks, that are in the parent company's name. Under this type of arrangement, the parent company and its subsidiaries have sweep arrangements with their respective banks whereby cash is transferred daily between the bank accounts of the entities (the parent and its subsidiaries). These arrangements serve to reduce lending costs and provide a higher rate of return on invested cash. Careful review of centralized cash management arrangements is necessary to determine the appropriate accounting and reporting of a subsidiary's deposit in the cash pool.

4.04 The FASB ASC glossary states that cash "includes not only currency on hand but demand deposits with banks or other financial institutions. Cash
also includes other kinds of accounts that have the general characteristics of demand deposits in that the customer may deposit additional funds at any time and also effectively may withdraw funds at any time without prior notice or penalty."

4.05 Funds deposited by a subsidiary in a parent company's cash account under a centralized cash management arrangement generally would not be classified as cash and cash equivalents in the subsidiary's financial statements if the subsidiary does not have legal title to the cash on deposit. Generally, legal title in a cash account is evidenced by the cash or cash equivalent being deposited in a demand deposit account at a bank or other financial institution in the subsidiary's name. A subsidiary's deposit in a cash pool generally is not a short-term highly-liquid investment, as contemplated in the definition of a cash equivalent in paragraph 4.02; rather, the deposit is considered a loan, and the subsidiary would classify the deposit in the cash pool as a receivable from an affiliated entity.

4.06 If the indirect method is used to prepare the statement of cash flows, changes in the subsidiary's receivable relating to a centralized cash management program are presented as investing activities—as such, balances are generally considered loans. Payments to, and receipts from, the cash pool would be presented on a gross or net basis, in accordance with the guidance in paragraphs 7–9 of FASB ASC 230-10-45.

Cash From Restricted Donations

4.07 FASB ASC 954-305-45-3 states that for fiduciary purposes, NFP business-oriented health care entities may maintain separate checking or savings accounts for restricted donations. However, unless required by FASB ASC 954-305-45-1, as discussed in paragraph 4.08, such accounts are not reported on a line separate from other cash and cash equivalents because donor restrictions generally relate to limitations on the use of net assets, rather than the use of specific assets.1

Other Restricted or Designated Cash Amounts

4.08 FASB ASC 954-305-45-1 states that cash and claims to cash that meet any of the following conditions should be reported separately and excluded from current assets:

a. They are restricted regarding withdrawal or use for other-than-current operations.

b. They are designated for expenditure in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets.

c. They are required to be segregated for the liquidation of long-term debt.

d. They are limited to use for long-term purposes by a donor-imposed restriction (see paragraph 11.25 of this guide).

Further, according to FASB ASC 954-210-45-4, internally designated funds should be reported separately from externally designated funds either on the face of the balance sheet or in the notes to the financial statements.

---

1 Per FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-305-45-3, a columnar presentation that highlights the three classes of net assets (permanently restricted, temporarily restricted, and unrestricted) is not precluded if the totals for the reporting entity as a whole are displayed.
4.09 For example, such amounts could be reported on a separate line and described as assets whose use has been limited or whose use is restricted, such as designated for construction, limited by donor-imposed restrictions, held by the trustee for liquidation of long-term debt, and so on.

4.10 FASB ASC 958-210-45-6 states that the asset whose use is limited should be described in the notes to the financial statements if its nature is not clear from the description on the face of the balance sheet.

4.11 Restricted cash is similar to investments in that the holder's ability to withdraw restricted cash amounts is contractually limited. As a result, deposits and withdrawals of principal balances in restricted cash accounts would be reported as investing activities in the statement of cash flows.

**Investments**

4.12 Health care entities can maintain and manage significant investment portfolios. The nature of such investments held by health care entities is dependent upon various factors, such as an entity's investment policies and strategies, donor and other external restrictions, and regulations. The legal structure, term, and features specific to an instrument, such as restrictions on disposing of the investment or other internal and external restrictions, can affect both the accounting and reporting of an investment and the valuation of the investment.

4.13 This chapter discusses the following industry-pervasive matters about accounting for investments:

- The fair value option to measure financial assets (see paragraphs 4.17–.22)
- Investments in equity securities that have readily determinable fair values and all investments in debt securities for which an entity has not elected to apply the fair value option (see paragraphs 4.23–.35)
- Investments for which a readily determinable fair value does not exist and for which an entity has not elected to apply the fair value option, including alternative investments, such as collective trusts, funds of funds, or hedge funds (see paragraphs 4.36–.38)
- Investment pools (see paragraphs 4.39–.47)
- Fair value measurement (see paragraph 4.48)
- Impairment of investments (see paragraphs 4.49–.59)
- Securities lending arrangements (see paragraph 4.60)
- Transfers of assets to an NFP or charitable trust for investment (see paragraphs 4.61–.63)
- Regulation (see paragraph 4.64)
- Other financial statement presentation matters (see paragraphs 4.65–.73)

4.14 The following investments are discussed elsewhere in this guide:

- Chapter 5, "Derivatives," discusses investments in derivative instruments that are accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging*. 

AAG-HCO 4.14
Chapter 12, "The Reporting Entity and Related Entities," discusses investments accounted for under the equity method if the investees are an integral part of the entity's operations, such as a physician hospital organization or joint venture. Chapter 12 also discusses investments in consolidated or combined entities.

4.15 According to FASB ASC 954-325-35-1, other types of investments that are not financial instruments, such as real estate or certain oil and gas interests, are reported at amortized cost and subject to impairment considerations consistent with the "Impairment or Disposal of Long-lived Assets" sections of FASB ASC 360-10.

4.16 Health care entities can use this chapter, NFP health care entities can use exhibit 12-1, and investor-owned health care entities can use paragraph 12.59 to assist with the determination of which investments are required to be consolidated and which are accounted for using the equity method if the entity has not elected to apply the fair value option, as discussed in paragraph 4.17.

**Fair Value Option**

4.17 Most investments owned by health care entities are financial assets, as defined in FASB ASC 825-10-20. The "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10 permit all entities to choose to measure eligible items at fair value (the fair value option) at specified election dates. Paragraphs 4–5 of FASB ASC 825-10-15 describe which financial assets are eligible items.

4.18 The decision about whether to elect the fair value option should be (a) applied instrument by instrument, except as discussed in FASB ASC 825-10-25-7; (b) irrevocable, unless a new election date occurs, as discussed in FASB ASC 825-10-25-4; and (c) applied only to an entire instrument, not specific risks, specific cash flows, or portions of that instrument.

4.19 Health care entities should follow the guidance in FASB ASC 820, Fair Value Measurement, to determine and report an investment's fair value. FASB ASC 825-10-25-3 requires that upfront costs and fees related to items for which the fair value option is elected be recognized in earnings as incurred and not deferred. Health care entities that elect to apply the fair value option to an instrument should refer to the guidance in FASB ASC 825-10-50 and 820-10-50 for the required financial statement disclosures. FASB ASC 825-10-45-3 requires that entities classify cash receipts and payments related to items measured at fair value according to their nature and purpose, as required by FASB ASC 230, Statement of Cash Flows.

4.20 In accordance with FASB ASC 825-10-35-4, investor-owned health care entities should report unrealized gains and losses on items for which the fair value option has been elected in earnings.

4.21 In accordance with FASB ASC 825-10-15-7, NFP health care entities should report unrealized gains and losses on items for which the fair value

---

2 This chapter discusses the accounting and reporting for equity investments accounted for under the equity method if such investment's purpose is investment income or return, such as collective trusts, funds of funds, hedge funds, or other alternative investments, versus an equity investment that represents an integral part of the reporting entity's operations, such as a physician hospital organization or joint venture.
option has been elected within the performance indicator or as part of discontinued operations, as appropriate. Consistent with the provisions of FASB ASC 958-10 and 954-225-45-5, an NFP health care entity may present such gains and losses either within or outside an intermediate measure of operations, unless such gains or losses are part of discontinued operations; however, that intermediate measure must be within the performance indicator. For NFPs, the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 825-10-50-30 apply not only with respect to the effect on performance indicators or other intermediate measures of operations, if presented, but also on the change in each of the net asset classes (unrestricted, temporarily restricted, and permanently restricted), if applicable.

4.22 Per FASB ASC 825-10-50-28(f), for investments that would have been accounted for under the equity method if the health care entity had not chosen to apply the fair value option, the health care entity should disclose the information required by FASB ASC 323-10-50-3, excluding the disclosures in FASB ASC 323-10-50-3(a)(3), (b), and (d).

Investments in Debt Securities and Certain Equity Securities With a Readily Determinable Fair Value That Are Not Recorded Under the Fair Value Option

4.23 This section discusses the accounting and reporting for investments in equity securities that have readily determinable fair values and all investments in debt securities held by investor-owned and NFPs for which the health care entity has not elected to apply the fair value option to the instrument, as discussed in paragraph 4.17.

Investor-Owned Entities

4.24 Investor-owned health care entities are subject to the accounting and reporting requirements of FASB ASC 320, Investments—Debt and Equity Securities. FASB ASC 320 does not apply to (a) instruments for which the health care entity elected to apply the fair value option, as discussed in paragraphs 4.17–22; (b) equity securities that, absent the election of the fair value option under FASB ASC 825-10-25-1, would be required to be accounted for under the equity method; (c) investments in consolidated entities; (d) investments in derivative instruments that are accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 815, and (e) except with respect to impairment guidance in FASB ASC 320-10-35, equity securities within the scope of FASB ASC 325 (that is, cost-method investments). FASB ASC 320-10-15 provides a more complete description of the scope of FASB ASC 320.

4.25 FASB ASC 320-10-25-1 states that at acquisition, an entity shall classify its debt and equity securities into one of three categories:

a. *Trading securities.* If a security is acquired with the intent of selling it within hours or days, the security should be classified as trading. However, at acquisition, an entity is not precluded from classifying as trading a security it plans to hold for a longer period. Classification of a security as trading should not be precluded simply because the entity does not intend to sell it in the near term.

b. *Available-for-sale securities.* Investments in debt securities and equity securities that have readily determinable fair values and are
not classified as trading securities or held-to-maturity securities should be classified as available-for-sale securities.

c. **Held-to-maturity securities.** Investments in debt securities should be classified as held to maturity only if the reporting entity has the positive intent and ability to hold those securities to maturity.

4.26 Per FASB ASC 320-10-35-1, investments in debt securities that are classified as held to maturity should be measured subsequently at amortized cost in the balance sheet. Investments that are classified as trading should be measured subsequently at fair value in the balance sheet, and unrealized holding gains and losses for trading securities should be included in earnings. Investments that are classified as available for sale should be measured subsequently at fair value in the balance sheet, and unrealized holding gains and losses for available-for-sale securities, including those classified as current assets, should be excluded from earnings and reported in other comprehensive income until realized, except as indicated in the following sentence. All or a portion of the unrealized holding gain and loss of an available-for-sale security that is designated as being hedged in a fair value hedge should be recognized in earnings during the period of the hedge, pursuant to paragraphs 1–4 of FASB ASC 815-25-35.

4.27 For investments within the scope of FASB ASC 320, investor-owned health care entities should follow the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 320-10-50.

**Not-for-Profit Entities**

4.28 NFP business-oriented health care entities are subject to the accounting and reporting requirements of FASB ASC 958-320 and 954-320. FASB ASC 958-320 does not apply to (a) instruments for which the health care entity elected to apply the fair value option, as discussed in paragraphs 4.17–22; (b) equity investments accounted for under the equity method; (c) investments in consolidated subsidiaries; (d) investments in derivative instruments that are accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 815; (e) investments held by a financially interrelated entity, as discussed in paragraph 12.75 of this guide; and (f) short sales of securities. FASB ASC 958-320-15 provides a more complete description of the scope of FASB ASC 958-320.

4.29 NFP health care entities can designate investment portfolios or portions of investment portfolios as trading. Investment returns from investments, inclusive of those securities designated as trading, accounted for under FASB ASC 958-320 should be included as changes in net assets, consistent with paragraphs 4.30–34.

4.30 FASB ASC 958-320-35 requires investments in equity securities with readily determinable fair values and all debt securities to be measured at fair value in the balance sheet. According to FASB ASC 954-320-45-1, investment returns, including realized and unrealized gains and losses, not restricted by donors or law should be classified as changes in unrestricted net assets as follows:

a. The following are included in the performance indicator (see paragraphs 3.12–17 of this guide):  
   i. Dividend, interest, and other similar investment income 
   ii. Realized gains and losses
iii. Unrealized gains and losses on trading securities
iv. Other-than-temporary impairment losses

b. The following is excluded from the performance indicator:
   i. Unrealized gains and losses on other-than-trading securi-

4.31 Because the performance indicator is analogous to income from con-
tinuing operations of an investor-owned health care entity, as discussed in
paragraph 3.12 of this guide, the performance indicator would also include un-
realized gains and losses on investments recorded under the fair value option
and equity earnings from investments in entities, such as investment compa-

nies and other alternative investments, accounted for under the equity method.
The performance indicator would exclude the portion of other-than-temporary
impairment losses on debt securities that is related to factors other than credit
losses, as discussed in paragraph 4.55.

4.32 Pursuant to paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 958-320-45, except as
described in paragraphs 4.33–.34, dividend, interest, and other investment in-
come and gains and losses should be reported as increases or decreases in unre-
stricted net assets, unless their use is temporarily or permanently restricted by
explicit donor stipulations or law. Donor-restricted investment income should
be reported as an increase in temporarily or permanently restricted net assets,
depending on the type of restriction.

4.33 FASB ASC 958-320-45-3 states that gains and investment income
that are limited to specific uses by donor-imposed restrictions may be reported
as increases in unrestricted net assets if the restrictions are met in the same
reporting period as the gains and income are recognized, provided that the
NFP has a similar policy for reporting received contributions, as discussed in
paragraphs 3–5 of FASB ASC 958-605-45; reports consistently from period to
period; and discloses its accounting policy. The classification of these gains and
investment income within unrestricted net assets should be consistent with
paragraph 4.30.

4.34 Paragraphs 16–35 of FASB ASC 958-205-45 describe the accounting
for gains and losses on investments of donor-restricted endowment funds. FASB
ASC 958-205-45-22 states that in the absence of donor stipulations or law
to the contrary, losses on the investments of a donor-restricted endowment
fund should reduce temporarily restricted net assets to the extent that donor-

imposed temporary restrictions on net appreciation of the fund have not been
met before the loss occurs. Any remaining loss should reduce unrestricted
net assets. FASB ASC 954-225-45-7 requires that the portion of the loss that
reduces the assets of a donor-restricted endowment fund below the required
level\(^3\) be excluded from the determination of the performance indicator. FASB
ASC 958-205-45-24 states that if losses reduce the assets of a donor-restricted
endowment fund below the level required by the donor stipulations or law, gains
that restore the fair value of the assets of the endowment fund to the required

---
\(^3\) Donors that create endowment funds can require that their gifts be invested in perpetuity
or for a specified term. Some donors may require that a portion of income, gains, or both be added
to the gift and invested, subject to similar restrictions. Not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities in
states that have adopted the Uniform Prudent Management of Institutional Funds Act should refer
to paragraphs 28–32 of FASB ASC 958-205-45 for additional information about the classification of
net assets of donor-restricted endowment funds. NFP health care entities in other states should refer
to paragraphs 33–35 of FASB ASC 958-205-45.
level should be classified as increases in unrestricted net assets. FASB ASC 954-225-45-7 requires that those gains be excluded from the determination of the performance indicator.

4.35 NFP health care entities should follow the disclosure requirements included in FASB ASC 954-320 and 958-320-50.

**Investments in Certain Other Financial Instruments Without a Readily Determinable Fair Value That Are Not Recorded Under the Fair Value Option**

4.36 In an effort to improve investment returns, health care entities may invest in investment companies structured as limited liability companies, limited partnerships, institutional trusts, common and collective trusts, or financial instruments that do not have a readily determinable fair value. These types of investments are commonly referred to as alternative investments. Assuming that the health care entity has not elected to apply the fair value option to account for these investments, the accounting for these types of investments can vary depending upon the legal structure of the investment, as well as the investment's terms and features. An alternative investment may have a formal notification period that requires the investor to provide the investee 60, 90, or 360 day's notification prior to redeeming the investment for cash. Additionally, the legal structure of certain alternative investments provides the investor ownership rights and responsibilities similar to a limited partnership whereas others do not provide such ownership rights to the investor. The terms and features of each alternative investment must be carefully considered before concluding on the appropriate method of accounting. Exhibit 12-1 of this guide provides helpful guidance for determining the appropriate method of accounting for NFP health care entities and investor-owned health care entities, respectively. Paragraphs 4.39–.47 provide additional discussion for investment pools.

4.37 Determining the fair value of alternative investments may be necessary for recognition or disclosure purposes. Many of these investees provide their investors with a net asset value (NAV) per share or its equivalent that has been calculated in a manner consistent with FASB ASC 946, *Financial Services—Investment Companies*. If those investments do not have readily determinable fair values, FASB ASC 820-10-35-59 permits a reporting entity, as a practical expedient, to estimate the fair value of an investment within the scope of paragraphs 4–5 of FASB ASC 820-10-15 using the NAV per share of the investment or its equivalent, such as member units or an ownership interest in partners' capital to which a proportionate share of net assets is attributed, if the NAV per share of the investment or its equivalent is calculated in a manner consistent with the measurement principles of FASB ASC 946 as of the reporting entity's measurement date. FASB ASC 820-10-50-6A requires certain disclosures for alternative investments measured at fair value, regardless of whether NAV is used as a practical expedient for fair value.

4.38 Sections .18–.26 of Technical Questions and Answers (TIS) section 2220, *Long-Term Investments* (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*), are intended to assist reporting entities in applying the provisions of FASB ASC 820, which are discussed in the preceding paragraph. TIS section 2220.27, "Determining Fair Value of Investments When the Practical Expedient Is Not Used or Is Not Available" (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*), assists reporting entities in
determining the fair value of investments in circumstances in which the practical expedient NAV is not used or available.

**Investment Pools**

**4.39** In order to effectively manage investments and improve total investment returns, many NFP health care entities pool part or all of their investments with other NFP health care entities. The NFPs may or may not be financially-interrelated entities, as discussed in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2 and paragraph 12.79 of this guide. The pooled investments are generally managed by a sponsoring entity's treasury department (for example, a parent treasury division) in a manner similar to a mutual fund arrangement. When a pool is established, ownership interests are initially assigned (typically through unitization) to the various pool investors (sometimes referred to as participants) based on the fair value of the cash and securities placed in the pool by each investor (participant). Current fair value is generally used to determine the number of units allocated to additional assets placed in the pool and to value withdrawals from the pool (for example, the sponsor calculates a NAV per unit, and the investor's [participant's] purchases and sales are based on the NAV unit value). Investment income, realized gains and losses, and any recognized unrealized gains and losses are allocated equitably based on the number of units assigned to each investor (participant). Generally the investor's (participant's) ownership interest in the pool is due on demand; however, in certain arrangements, investors (participants) may be required to provide notification to the pool sponsor prior to divesting, or further limitations on withdrawal may be imposed on the investors (participants). The investors (participants) generally do not have rights or interests in specific assets or investments held in the pool but, instead, own a beneficial-type interest in the pool. These pools typically do not have a formal legal structure, and no security, as defined by either FASB ASC 825, Financial Instruments, or FASB ASC 958-320, is created. Paragraphs 4.40–.47 provide the Financial Reporting Executive Committee's (FinREC's) recommendation on how to implement the standards in FASB ASC 958-20 and the "Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others" sections of FASB ASC 958-605 when they are applied to investment pools.

**4.40** The underlying investments are owned by the sponsor and included in the sponsor's assets. The investor's (participant's) recognition of its beneficial-type interest in the pool depends upon the relationship of the sponsor and investor (participant), as follows:

- If the investor (participant) and sponsor are neither affiliates nor financially interrelated entities (see paragraph 12.75 of this guide), the investor (participant) should recognize its beneficial-type interest as described in paragraphs 4.41–.42.

- If the investor (participant) and sponsor are affiliates or otherwise financially interrelated entities, the investor (participant) should recognize its beneficial-type interest as described in paragraphs 4.43–.45.

**4.41** If the investor (participant) (beneficiary) and sponsor (recipient entity) are neither affiliates nor financially interrelated entities, the investor (participant) would recognize its rights to the assets held by the sponsor as a beneficial interest in an identifiable pool of assets, as described in FASB ASC 958-605-25-33(d). FASB ASC 958-605-30-14 and 958-605-35-3 state that if a
beneficiary has an unconditional right to receive all or a portion of the specified cash flows from a charitable trust or other identifiable pool of assets, the beneficiary should measure and subsequently remeasure that beneficial interest at fair value.

4.42 Changes in fair value of the beneficial interest in the investment pool are reported above (included in) the performance indicator in the statement of operations if the investment return was unrestricted. In the investor's (participant's) balance sheet, the interest in the pool might be reported using a caption such as "Beneficial Interest in Investment Pool" or "Interest in Investment Pool." If the investor's (participant's) balances are due on demand, the change in value of the beneficial interest that related to purchases and sales of pool units would be reported net in the "Investing" section of the cash flow statement. However, if the balances are not due on demand, the purchases and sales of pool units would be recorded gross in the investor's (participant's) "Investing" section of the cash flow statement, unless the cash flows qualified for net reporting, as discussed in paragraphs 7–9 of FASB ASC 230-10-45. The change in value of the beneficial interest related to unrealized gains and losses would be reported in the cash flow statement in the same manner as unrealized gains and losses on investments are reported.

4.43 If the investor (participant) and sponsor are financially-interrelated entities, as discussed in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2 and paragraph 12.75 of this guide, the investor (participant) (beneficiary) would account for its investment in the pool as part of its interest in the sponsor (recipient entity). FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires that if a beneficiary and recipient entity are financially-interrelated entities, the beneficiary should recognize its interest in the net assets of the recipient entity. Recognizing an interest in the net assets of the recipient entity and adjusting that interest for a share of the change in net assets of the recipient entity is similar to the equity method, which is described in FASB ASC 323-10. Alternatively, the investor (participant) may elect the fair value option described in the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10.

4.44 Sections .36–.43 of TIS section 6400, Health Care Entities (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), which are reproduced in appendix A, "TIS Section 6400, Health Care Entities," of chapter 11, "Contributions Received and Made," of this guide, discuss how a beneficiary should report and classify its interest in the net assets of a recipient entity and changes in that interest. In the investor's (participant's) balance sheet, the interest in the pool might be reported using a caption such as "Beneficial Interest in Investment Pool" or "Interest in Investment Pool." If the investor's (participant's) balances are due on demand, the change in value of the beneficial interest that related to purchases and sales of pool units would be reported net in the "Investing" section of the cash flow statement. However, if the balances are not due on demand, the purchases and sales of pool units would be recorded gross in the investor's (participant's) "Investing" section of the cash flow statement, unless the cash flows qualified for net reporting, as discussed in paragraphs 7–9 of FASB ASC 230-10-45. The change in value of the beneficial interest related to unrealized gains and losses would be reported in the cash flow statement in the same manner as all unrealized gains and losses on investments are reported.

4.45 TIS section 6400.42, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity)—Accounting for Unrealized Gains and
Losses on Investments Held by the Foundation" (AICPA, *Technical Practice Aids*), discusses how a beneficiary should display unrealized gains and losses related to investments held for its benefit by a financially interrelated entity. It states that in circumstances in which the beneficiary (investor or participant) can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity (pool sponsor) to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient entity to the beneficiary, changes in a beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient entity should be included in, or excluded from, the beneficiary's performance indicator in the same manner that they would have been had the beneficiary held the investments directly. Thus, the beneficiary should include in the performance indicator the portion of the change attributable to unrealized gains and losses on trading securities that are not restricted by donors or law and should exclude from the performance indicator the portion of the change attributable to all other unrealized gains and losses. This manner of reporting is similar to the reporting by an investor that combines its proportionate share of an investee's other comprehensive income amounts with its own other comprehensive income items, as described in FASB ASC 323-10-45-3. TIS section 6400.42 also discusses how to report unrealized gains and losses in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient organization to such an extent that it can determine the timing and amount of distributions that it receives from the recipient entity.

4.46 As noted in FASB ASC 958-20-45-3, if the beneficiary and recipient entity are included in consolidated financial statements, the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient entity should be eliminated, in accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-45-1. Therefore, if the investor (participant) and sponsor were both included in consolidated financial statements, the interest in the investment pool and changes in that interest would be eliminated.

4.47 To determine the sponsor's accounting, the pooling arrangement would be carefully reviewed to determine if the sponsor has legal ownership and rights to the underlying investments (for example, would the pool sponsor's creditors have claim against the investments in the pool in bankruptcy) or if the sponsor is merely acting as an agent for the investors (participants). If the investments in the pool are legally owned by the sponsor, then the sponsor would report the pool of investments and related activities in its financial statements on a gross basis. At each reporting period, the sponsor would record 100 percent of the pooled investments in its balance sheet, along with a corresponding liability to the respective pool investor (participant). The sponsor would report the pool's investment returns gross in its statement of operations. If the sponsor is an NFP that is acting as an agent, FASB ASC 958-320 and 958-325 require investments held as agent and investment return to be reported as assets and liabilities, rather than changes in net assets. However, if the sponsor is an investor-owned entity merely acting as an agent, it may be appropriate for the sponsor to record the investments and related liability to the investors (participants) on a net basis in the sponsor's financial statements.

**Fair Value Measurements**

4.48 FASB ASC 820 defines *fair value*, establishes a framework for measuring fair value, and requires extensive disclosures about fair value measurements. Health care entities that are required to apply fair value measures and that provide fair value disclosures are advised to read FASB ASC 820 in its entirety.
Impairment of Investments

4.49 The following guidance should be considered when determining and evaluating whether an investment’s impairment is other than temporary:

- Paragraphs 17–35 of FASB ASC 320-10-35
- Paragraphs 1A–2 of FASB ASC 325-20-35
- Paragraphs 8–13 of FASB ASC 958-325-35

Paragraphs 4.50–.58 summarize some of the more significant matters included in those paragraphs. The list is not meant to be all-inclusive. Health care entities should refer to the aforementioned guidance for comprehensive guidance of matters to consider.

4.50 According to FASB ASC 320-10-35-20, impairment is assessed at the individual security level (referred to as an investment). Individual security level means the level and method of aggregation used by the reporting entity to measure realized and unrealized gains and losses on its debt and equity securities. FASB ASC 320-10-35-21 states that an investment is impaired if the fair value of the investment is less than its cost.

4.51 Per FASB ASC 320-10-35-25, because the fair value of cost-method investments is not readily determinable, the evaluation of whether an investment is impaired should be determined as follows:

a. If an entity has estimated the fair value of a cost-method investment (for example, for disclosure under FASB ASC 825-10-50), that estimate should be used to determine if the investment is impaired for the reporting periods in which the entity estimates fair value.

b. For reporting periods in which an entity has not estimated the fair value of a cost-method investment, the entity should evaluate whether an event or a change in circumstances has occurred in that period that may have a significant adverse effect on the fair value of the investment (an impairment indicator, examples of which are provided in paragraphs 27–28 of FASB ASC 320-10-35).

4.52 Per FASB ASC 320-10-35-30, if the fair value of an investment is less than its amortized cost basis at the balance sheet date of the reporting period for which impairment is assessed, the impairment is either temporary or other than temporary. Other than temporary does not mean permanent. The standards for measuring other-than-temporary impairment are dependent upon the type of investment: equity securities or debt securities. Per FASB ASC 320-10-35-17, entities should not look through the form of their investment to the nature of the securities held by an investee. For example, an investment in shares of a mutual fund that invests primarily in debt securities would be assessed for impairment as an equity security under FASB ASC 320-10-35.

4.53 For equity securities, FASB ASC 320-10-35-32A states that an entity should apply guidance that is pertinent to the determination of whether an impairment is other than temporary, such as FASB ASC 325-40-35. Additionally, FASB ASC 320-10-35-33 states that when an entity has decided to sell an impaired available-for-sale security, and the entity does not expect the fair value of the security to fully recover before the expected time of sale, the security should be deemed other-than-temporarily impaired in the period in which the decision to sell is made, not the period in which the sale occurs. However, an entity should recognize an impairment loss when the impairment is deemed
other than temporary, even if a decision to sell has not been made. Further, FASB ASC 325-20-35-2 states that a series of operating losses of an investee or other factors may indicate that a decrease in value of the investment has occurred that is other than temporary and that should be recognized. FASB ASC 320-10-S99-1 provides guidance in the form of Topic No. 5(M), "Other Than Temporary Impairment of Certain Investments in Equity Securities," of the Securities and Exchange Commission's Codification of Staff Accounting Bulletins.

4.54 For a debt security, an other-than-temporary impairment should be considered to have occurred if an entity (a) has decided to sell the debt security, as discussed in FASB ASC 320-10-35-33A, or (b) has not decided to sell the debt security, but the entity more likely than not will be required to sell the security before recovery of its amortized cost basis, as discussed in FASB ASC 320-10-35-33B. Paragraphs 33C–33I of FASB ASC 320-10-35 provide additional guidance for making an assessment of whether an impairment of a debt security is other than temporary, including guidance for determining whether the entire amortized cost basis of the debt security will be recovered.

4.55 In accordance with FASB ASC 320-10-35-34C, if the health care entity does not intend to sell the debt security, and it is not more likely than not that the health care entity will be required to sell the security before recovery of its amortized cost basis less any current-period credit loss, the other-than-temporary impairment should be separated into both of the following:

a. Amounts representing the credit loss
b. Amounts related to all other factors

4.56 In accordance with FASB ASC 320-10-45-8A, in periods in which an investor-owned health care entity determines that a security's decline in fair value below its amortized cost basis is other than temporary, the entity should present the total other-than-temporary impairment in the statement of earnings, with an offset for the amount of the total other-than-temporary impairment, if any, that is recognized in other comprehensive income, in accordance with FASB ASC 320-10-35-34D (for example, the portion of the loss on a debt security that is due to factors other than the credit loss). The amount of the total other-than-temporary impairment on a debt security that is related to the other factors should be recognized in other comprehensive income net of applicable taxes. An NFP health care entity would report the total other-than-temporary impairment within the performance indicator, with an offset for the portion of the loss on a debt security that is due to factors other than the credit loss. The amount of the total other-than-temporary impairment on a debt security that is related to the other factors should be recognized outside of the performance indicator.

4.57 FASB ASC 320-10-35-34 states that the measurement of the impairment of an equity security should not include partial recoveries subsequent to the balance sheet date. The fair value of the investment would then become the new amortized cost basis of the investment and should not be adjusted for subsequent recoveries in fair value.

4.58 FASB ASC 320-10-35-34E states that for debt securities, the previous amortized cost basis less the other-than-temporary impairment recognized in earnings becomes the new amortized cost basis of the debt security. That new amortized cost basis should not be adjusted for subsequent recoveries in fair value.
value. However, the amortized cost basis should be adjusted for accretion and amortization, as prescribed in FASB ASC 320-10-35-35.

4.59 FinREC believes that if a health care entity engages an external investment manager and grants the manager broad discretion to purchase and sell investments to achieve a stated portfolio objective, the health care entity may not be able to assert that it has both the intent and ability to hold equity investments that have unrealized losses until those unrealized losses can be recovered. Further, if a debt security was sold shortly after year-end, the health care entity may not be able to assert that there was not the intent to sell the debt security at the balance sheet date. If the health care entity cannot make the necessary assertions, then the entity should recognize an other-than-temporary impairment loss. If a health care entity develops procedures to determine whether the manager has made a decision at the balance sheet date to sell any debt securities, it will be able to document when the decision was made, by whom, the factors that drove the decision to sell, and when the health care entity became aware of those factors.

Securities Lending Activities

4.60 A health care entity that has a significant investment portfolio may enter into securities lending arrangements. These arrangements allow the health care entity to increase the overall yield from the investment activity. Depending on the terms of the security lending agreements, collateral received may be required to be shown separately on the transferor's balance sheet, with a corresponding liability to show the obligation to return the collateral. Each agreement should be carefully reviewed, and the guidance in FASB ASC 860-30 should be considered to determine the appropriate accounting and reporting.

Transfers of Assets to an NFP or Charitable Trust for Investment

4.61 Sometimes, a health care entity transfers assets, including investments, to an NFP or charitable trust (the recipient entity) that accepts those assets and agrees to use them on behalf of the health care entity or transfer them or their investment return, or both, back to the health care entity or its affiliate. Examples of this type of reciprocal transfer include (a) a health care entity that transfers assets to a community foundation to establish an endowment for the benefit of the health care entity or its affiliate and (b) a health care entity that transfers assets to a foundation that it creates to hold those assets.

4.62 FASB ASC 958-605-25-33 states that a transfer of assets to a recipient entity is not a contribution if the resource provider (the health care entity) specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary of the transfer. Paragraphs 4–7 of FASB ASC 958-20-25 describe the following two types of reciprocal transfers:

- An equity transaction, which is a transfer of assets to a recipient entity that meets all of the following conditions: (a) the resource provider (health care entity) specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary; (b) the resource provider (health care entity) and the recipient entity are financially interrelated entities; and (c) neither the resource provider (health care entity) nor its affiliate expects payment of the transferred assets, although payment of investment return on the transferred assets may be expected. Paragraph 12.75 of this guide discusses financially interrelated entities.
The resource provider (health care entity) specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary, and the transfer is not an equity transaction (one or both of criteria \((b)\) and \((c)\) in the previous bullet are not met).

**4.63** According to FASB ASC 958-605-25-33, if the transfer in which the resource provider specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary is not an equity transaction, the resource provider (health care entity) should report an asset, and the recipient entity should report a liability. Accounting for equity transactions is discussed in paragraphs 12.70–73 of this guide. If the resource provider (the health care entity) transfers assets to a recipient entity and specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary, it should disclose the following information for each period for which a statement of financial position is presented, in accordance with FASB ASC 958-605-50-6:

- The identity of the recipient entity to which the transfer was made.
- Whether variance power was granted to the recipient entity and, if so, a description of the terms of the variance power. Because of their reciprocal nature, such transfers are presumed not to be contributions received or made, even if the health care entity granted variance power at the time of transfer.
- The terms under which amounts will be distributed to the health care entity or its affiliate.
- The aggregate amount recognized in the statement of financial position for those transfers and whether that amount is recorded as an interest in the net assets of the recipient entity or as another asset (for example, as a beneficial interest in assets held by others or a refundable advance).

**Regulation**

**4.64** Because health plans have a public responsibility to be able to meet their obligations to policy holders, state statutes and regulations prescribe standards and limitations on investment activities. Regulatory requirements and restrictions vary by state. Most states require health plans to invest a certain percentage of policy reserves in specified classes of investments. Once the state regulatory agency’s minimum standards are met, the health plan may invest in other types of investments. However, many states specify a maximum percentage of assets that may be invested in particular classes of investments. State regulations may also prescribe methods for reporting investments, set requirements regarding matters such as the location and safeguarding of assets, and set limitations on investing in derivatives. For example, a regulatory authority may require some investments to be deposited with the state insurance department as a condition of writing business in that state. Insurance statutes and regulations vary by state, but the regulations of the state of domicile have precedence; however, compliance provisions in states in which the plan does business also must be followed. An understanding of the statutory requirements to be followed by a health plan concerning investments is advisable, so that their impact on investment strategy, as well as accounting and reporting, are appropriately considered.
Other Financial Statement Presentation Matters

Classification

4.65 Securities should be reported as either current or noncurrent, as appropriate, under the provisions of FASB ASC 210-10-45. According to the FASB ASC glossary, the term *current assets* is used to designate cash and other assets or resources commonly identified as those that are reasonably expected to be realized in cash or sold or consumed during the normal operating cycle of the business. According to FASB ASC 210-10-45-1, current assets include marketable securities representing the investment of cash available for current operations, including investments in debt and equity securities classified as trading securities under FASB ASC 320-10. FASB ASC 210-10-45-3 indicates that a one-year time period should be used as a basis for the segregation of current assets in cases when several operating cycles occur within a year. FASB ASC 210-10-45-4 states that the concept of the nature of current assets contemplates the exclusion from that classification cash and claims to cash that are restricted regarding withdrawal or use for other-than-current operations, designated for expenditure in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets, or segregated for the liquidation of long-term debts. Even though not actually set aside in special accounts, funds that are clearly to be used in the near future for the liquidation of long-term debts, payments to sinking funds, or similar purposes should also, under this concept, be excluded from current assets. However, if such funds are considered to offset maturing debt that has been set up properly as a current liability, they may be included within the current asset classification. FASB ASC 958-205-55-7 explains that when a statement of financial position that sequences assets and liabilities based on their relative liquidity is presented, cash and cash equivalents of permanent endowment funds held temporarily until suitable long-term investment opportunities are identified are included in the long-term investments classification.

4.66 According to FASB ASC 230-10-45-19, cash receipts and payments resulting from purchases, sales, and maturities of trading securities, as discussed in FASB ASC 320, should be classified as investing or operating cash flows based on the nature and purpose for which the securities were acquired. According to FASB ASC 230-10-45-11, cash flows from purchases, sales, and maturities of available-for-sale securities should be classified as cash flows from investing activities and reported gross in the statement of cash flows. FASB ASC 320-10-45-13 states that if entities report certain investments in debt securities as cash equivalents, in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC 230, the notes to the financial statements should reconcile the reporting classifications used in the statement of financial position.

4.67 Paragraphs 4.28–.34 discuss the classification of investment income, realized and unrealized gains and losses on investments, and equity earnings from investments in investment companies accounted for under the equity method by an NFP health care entity.

Disclosure

4.68 All health care entities with investments that meet the definition of *financial instruments* set forth in the FASB ASC glossary are subject to
the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 825-10-50. Investor-owned health care entities with investments in equity and debt securities should refer to the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 320-10-50 and 323-10-50. NFP health care entities should refer to the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 958-320-50 and 958-325-50.

4.69 If the health care entity has concentrations of credit risk related to financial instruments, the disclosure requirements of paragraphs 20–22 of FASB ASC 825-10-50 should be followed. Examples of potential exposure to credit risk include funds deposited with a single financial institution in excess of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation limits and investments in obligations that are not insured or guaranteed by the government.

4.70 Health care entities that are accounting for investments under the equity method, including alternative investments held for investment-return purposes, should consider the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 323-10-50.

4.71 FASB ASC 860-30-50 requires entities that enter into securities lending transactions or repurchase agreements to disclose their policies for requiring collateral or other security. FASB ASC 860-30-50 also requires the disclosure of (a) the fair value of collateral at the reporting date and (b) the portion of the collateral that has been sold or repledged if an entity accepts collateral that is permitted by contract or custom to be sold or repledged. Health care entities that are public entities should also consider the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 860-10-50.

4.72 Health care entities should consider the fair value disclosure requirements in FASB ASC 820-10-50.

4.73 NFP health care entities that have investments held in donor-restricted endowment funds should consider the disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 958-205-50.

Auditing

4.74 Auditing objectives and procedures for investments of health care entities generally are similar to those of other entities. AU-C section 501, Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items (AICPA, Professional Standards), among other matters, provides guidance to auditors in planning and performing auditing procedures for assertions about investments in securities that are made in an entity's financial statements. The guidance in AU-C section 501 applies to debt and equity securities. AU-C section 540, Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the auditor's responsibilities relating to accounting estimates, including fair value accounting estimates and related disclosures in an audit of financial statements. AU-C section 600, Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors) (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses auditing investments accounted for using the equity method of accounting. The AICPA Audit Guide Special Considerations in Auditing Financial Instruments

4 Disclosures about the fair value of financial instruments prescribed in FASB ASC 825-10-50 are optional for an entity that meets the criteria in FASB ASC 825-10-50-3.
also provides guidance on audit evidence that may be relevant to the fair value of derivative instruments and investments in securities.

**Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards**

Paragraph .11 of AU section 332, *Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Interim Standards*), states that when performing an integrated audit of financial statements and internal control over financial reporting, paragraph 39 of PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5, *An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards*), states that "[t]he auditor should test those controls that are important to the auditor's conclusion about whether the company's controls sufficiently address the assessed risk of material misstatement to each relevant assertion." Therefore, in an integrated audit of financial statements and internal control over financial reporting, if relevant assertions exist that are related to the company's investments in derivatives and securities, the auditor's understanding of controls should include controls over derivatives and securities transactions from their initiation to their inclusion in the financial statements and should encompass controls placed in operation by the entity and service organizations whose services are part of the entity's information system.

PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 2, *Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, PCAOB Staff Guidance, sec. 400.02*), provides guidance on auditors' responsibilities for auditing fair value measurements of financial instruments and when using the work of specialists under the existing standards of the PCAOB. PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alerts are not rules of the PCAOB nor have they been approved by the PCAOB.

4.75 Guidance for auditors of nonissuers on the existence and valuation assertions associated with auditing investments for which a readily determinable fair value does not exist (collectively referred to in the practice aid as alternative investments) is provided in the AICPA Practice Aid *Alternative Investments—Audit Considerations*. The auditing portion of that practice aid is an other auditing publication, as defined in AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Other auditing publications have no authoritative status; however, they may help the auditor understand and apply Statements on Auditing Standards.

4.76 In addition, the independent auditor may need to consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures that are presented in exhibit 4-1.

---

5 The auditing content in this guide focuses primarily on generally accepted auditing standards issued by the Auditing Standards Board and is applicable to audits of nonissuers. These standards are codified in AICPA *Professional Standards* and referenced by "AU-C" section numbers within the codification. The AU-C identifier was established to avoid confusion with references to existing "AU" sections, which will remain in AICPA *Professional Standards* through 2013. The AU-C identifier had been scheduled to revert back to the AU identifier at the end of 2013, by which time the previous AU sections would be superseded for all engagements. However, in response to user requests, the AU-C identifier will be retained indefinitely.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, Professional Standards), states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, Professional Standards).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Account Balances</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existence, completeness, rights and obligations, and valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Marketable securities are fairly stated and properly classified, described, and disclosed.</td>
<td>An independent trustee manages the investments. The trustee's reports are reviewed by a responsible employee.</td>
<td>Verify existence through confirmation. Test the valuation of equity and debt securities not intended to be held to maturity by comparing the recorded values with the fair values reported by the trustee or another independent source. For fair value estimates obtained from third-party sources, the auditor should consider the applicability of the guidance in AU-C section 620, <em>Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist</em> (AICPA, <em>Professional Standards</em>); AU-C section 402, <em>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organizations</em> (AICPA, <em>Professional Standards</em>); or AU section 324, <em>Service Organizations</em> (AICPA, <em>PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Interim Standards</em>).¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation, rights and obligations</td>
<td>Endowment funds are properly stated at their required value, and related gains and losses are properly classified.</td>
<td>Value of endowment funds are reviewed periodically to ensure that the balance is at its required level.</td>
<td>Verified that values of endowment are at required levels through confirmation. Review treatment of gains and losses on endowment funds to ensure that they are properly classified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Please refer to the appropriate sections of the AICPA standards for detailed guidance.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transactions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accuracy and completeness</td>
<td>Investment income and gains or losses, or both, are recorded in accordance with donor restrictions.</td>
<td>Review investment transactions to ensure that they are recorded in compliance with donor restrictions.</td>
<td>Test the recording of selected transactions to ensure that amounts are properly classified in accordance with donor restrictions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presentation and Disclosure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification and understandability</td>
<td>Securities are properly classified.</td>
<td>Classification is monitored periodically and is based on management's intent or ability to dispose of excess funds that are available for operations within an operating cycle.</td>
<td>Test the classification of investments as trading, available for sale, or held to maturity to determine whether gains and losses are properly classified within or outside the performance indicator (for NFP health care entities) or within the income statement or statement of other comprehensive income (for investor-owned health care entities).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Paragraphs .06 and .A11–.A19 of AU-C section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items* (AICPA, Professional Standards), establish requirements and provide guidance to auditors on audit evidence that may be used to support assertions about the fair value of securities. The AICPA Audit Guide *Special Considerations in Auditing Financial Instruments* also provides guidance on that topic and should be considered in the context of specific accounting requirements. AU-C section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures* (AICPA, Professional Standards), provides guidance on auditing fair value measurements and disclosures contained in financial statements. AU-C section 540 does not address specific types of assets, liabilities, components of equity, transactions, or industry-specific practices.
Chapter 5

Derivatives

Introduction

5.01 Health care entities use a wide range of derivative products,\(^1\) with the objective of more effectively managing their financial risks related to debt, investments, and other assets and liabilities and transactions. FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 815-10-15-83 describes a derivative instrument as a financial instrument or other contract with all of the following characteristics:

a. Underlying, notional amount, payment provision. The contract has both of the following terms, which determine the amount of the settlement or settlements, and, in some cases, whether or not a settlement is required:
   1. One or more underlyings
   2. One or more notional amounts or payment provisions or both.

b. Initial net investment. The contract requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors.

c. Net settlement. The contract can be settled net by any of the following means:
   1. Its terms implicitly or explicitly require or permit net settlement.
   2. It can readily be settled net by a means outside the contract.
   3. It provides for delivery of an asset that puts the recipient in a position not substantially different from net settlement.

5.02 FASB ASC 815-10-15-88 states that an underlying is a variable that, along with either a notional amount or payment provision, determines the settlement of a derivative instrument. FASB ASC 815-10-15-88 provides examples of underlyings, which include a security price or security price index, a commodity price or commodity price index, and an interest rate or interest rate index. As explained in FASB ASC 815-10-15-92, a notional amount is a number of currency units, shares, bushels, pounds, or other units specified in the contract. FASB ASC 815-10-15-93 states that a payment provision specifies

\(^1\) Chapter 18, "Derivative Instruments: Futures, Forwards, Options, Swaps, and Other Derivative Instruments," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide Depository and Lending Institutions: Banks and Savings Institutions, Credit Unions, Finance Companies, and Mortgage Companies provides useful background information on various types of derivative instruments and hedging activities and the risks associated with various forms of contracts and transactions.
Health Care Entities

a fixed or determinable settlement to be made if the underlying behaves in a specified manner. Paragraphs 83–139 of FASB ASC 815-10-15 provide a more complete definition of a derivative instrument.

5.03 One of the most common uses of derivatives by health care entities is in conjunction with borrowings. The objective is that the combined cash flows of the derivative and the debt will effectively create long-term fixed-rate or variable-rate debt at an aggregate cost lower than traditional fixed- or variable-rate debt. Common examples include the following:

- An interest rate swap that is intended to effectively convert variable-rate debt to fixed-rate debt.
- An interest rate swap that is intended to effectively convert fixed-rate debt to variable-rate debt.
- A basis swap in which counterparties exchange payments based on the changes of two variable rates.
- An option on an interest rate swap—a swaption—that gives the purchaser the right but not the obligation to enter into an interest rate swap. The purchaser pays a premium to the issuer or writer.
- An interest rate cap specifically purchased to give the purchaser protection against rates rising above a given level.

5.04 Derivative instruments also might be used to

- lock in the interest rate for an anticipated future borrowing. At times, a health care entity may need to borrow money in the near term and wish to fix the interest rate on the borrowing at the current rate, even though the money will not be needed until sometime in the future. Derivative instruments, such as interest-rate options or forward contracts, can accomplish this objective.
- lock in the current price of a commodity, such as electricity, for anticipated purchases. This hedging strategy often involves the use of forward contracts or option combinations that can be settled net. A derivative instrument that is used to fix the price of anticipated future purchases could be a cash flow hedge if the derivative instrument does not meet the conditions for the normal purchase exception.

5.05 FASB ASC 815-10-55-2 contains a diagram that depicts the process for determining whether a freestanding contract is within the scope of FASB ASC 815, Derivatives and Hedging. The diagram is a visual supplement to the written standards. It should not be interpreted to alter any requirements of FASB ASC 815 nor should it be considered a substitute for the requirements. In addition, FASB ASC 815-15 excludes certain contracts from being accounted for using the guidance in FASB ASC 815, even though, technically, the contract may meet the definition of a derivative instrument.
Private Company Alternative Issued by the Private Company Council

© Update 5-1 Accounting: Certain Interest Rate Swap Hedge Accounting Approach

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-03, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Accounting for Certain Receive-Variable, Pay-Fixed Interest Rate Swaps—Simplified Hedge Accounting Approach (a consensus of the Private Company Council), will be effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2015, with early adoption permitted. Private companies have the option to apply the amendments in this update using either (a) the modified retrospective approach or (b) the full retrospective approach. These two approaches are described in further detail in the ASU.

The accounting alternative, if elected, permits a private company that is not a financial institution, the option to use a simplified hedge accounting approach to account for interest rate swaps that are entered into for the purpose of economically converting variable-rate interest payments to fixed-rate payments. The ASU provides that no ineffectiveness may be assumed for swaps designated in a cash flow hedging relationship provided all of the criteria in FASB ASC 815-20-25-131D are met. To address cost and complexity concerns regarding measurement of the swaps, the simplified hedge accounting approach provides private companies an option to measure the designated swap at its settlement value (primarily excluding nonperformance risk), instead of fair value.

General Guidance

5.06 FASB ASC 815 establishes accounting and reporting standards for derivative instruments and hedging activities. FASB ASC 815-10-05-4 explains that FASB ASC 815 requires that an entity recognize derivative instruments, including certain derivative instruments embedded in other contracts, as either assets or liabilities in the statement of financial position and measure them at fair value. If certain conditions are met, an entity may elect to designate a derivative instrument in any one of the following ways: (a) a hedge of the exposure to changes in the fair value of a recognized asset or liability or of an unrecognized firm commitment that is attributable to a particular risk (referred to as a fair value hedge), (b) a hedge of the exposure to variability in the cash flows of a recognized asset or liability or of a forecasted transaction that is attributable to a particular risk (referred to as a cash flow hedge), or (c) a hedge of foreign currency exposure.2

5.07 FASB ASC 954-815-25-2 states that except as provided in FASB ASC 954-815-50-1 and as discussed in paragraph 5.43, not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities should apply the provisions of FASB ASC 815, including the provisions pertaining to cash flow hedge accounting, in the same manner as for-profit entities. The gain or loss items that affect a for-profit entity's

---

2 Health care entities do not frequently enter into foreign currency hedges; therefore, this chapter focuses on matters pertaining to fair value and cash flow hedges.
income from continuing operations similarly should affect the NFP health care entity's performance indicator, and the gain or loss items that are excluded from a for-profit entity's income from continuing operations, such as items reported in other comprehensive income, similarly should be excluded from the performance indicator by the NFP health care entity. As explained in FASB ASC 954-815-45-1, the absence of a requirement to report a separate component of equity in the balance sheet of an NFP business-oriented health care entity should not preclude those entities from using comprehensive income reporting for qualifying gains and losses on cash flow hedges. Although accumulated other comprehensive income will inherently be carried forward in an NFP health care entity's net assets, no compelling need exists for it to be reported separately in the balance sheet.

5.08 FASB ASC 815-10-35-2 states that the accounting for changes in the fair value (that is, gains and losses) of a derivative instrument depends on whether it has been designated and qualifies as part of a hedging relationship and, if so, the reason for holding it.

Fair Value Hedges

5.09 FASB ASC 815-20-35-1(b) states that the gain or loss on a derivative instrument designated and qualifying as a fair value hedging instrument, as well as the offsetting loss or gain on the hedged item attributable to the hedged risk, should be recognized currently in earnings in the same accounting period, as provided in paragraphs 1–6 of FASB ASC 815-25-35-1.

5.10 Thus, investor-owned health care entities recognize the gain or loss on the derivative in earnings in the period of change, together with the offsetting loss or gain on the hedged item attributable to the risk being hedged. Similarly, NFP health care entities report the derivative gains and losses, together with the offsetting loss or gain on the hedged item, in the performance indicator in the period of change.

Cash Flow Hedges

5.11 FASB ASC 815-20-35-1(c) states that the effective portion of the gain or loss on a derivative instrument designated and qualifying as a cash flow hedging instrument should be reported as a component of other comprehensive income (outside earnings) and reclassified into earnings in the same period(s) during which the hedged forecasted transaction affects earnings, as provided in FASB ASC 815-30-35-3 and paragraphs 38–41 of FASB ASC 815-30-35. The remaining gain or loss on the derivative instrument, if any, should be recognized currently in earnings, as provided in FASB ASC 815-30-35-3. If an entity's defined risk management strategy for a particular hedging relationship excludes a specific component of the gain or loss (or related cash flows) on the hedging derivative from the assessment of hedge effectiveness, as explained in paragraphs 81–83 of FASB ASC 815-20-25, that excluded component of the gain or loss should be recognized currently in earnings.

5.12 FASB ASC 815-30-35-39 states that if the hedged transaction results in the acquisition of an asset or the incurrence of a liability, the gains and losses in accumulated other comprehensive income should be reclassified into earnings in the same period(s) during which the acquired asset or incurred liability affects earnings, such as in the periods that depreciation expense, interest expense, or cost of sales is recognized.
5.13 Thus, for an investor-owned health care entity, the effective portion of the derivative's gain or loss is initially reported as a component of other comprehensive income (outside earnings) and subsequently reclassified into earnings when the forecasted transaction affects earnings. For an NFP health care entity, the effective portion of the derivative's gain or loss is initially excluded from the performance indicator and subsequently reclassified into the performance indicator when the forecasted transaction affects earnings. For example, the accumulated gain or loss of a derivative instrument that hedges the variability of the cash flows of long-term debt is amortized into earnings or the performance indicator over the remaining term of the debt instrument (that is, as long as the debt remains outstanding), even if the cash flow hedge itself is terminated. Any ineffective portion of the gain or loss is immediately reported in earnings or the performance indicator.

**Derivatives Not Designated as a Hedging Instrument**

5.14 The gain or loss on a derivative instrument not designated as a hedging instrument should be recognized in current earnings or, in the case of an NFP health care entity, the performance indicator.

**Hedge Accounting**

5.15 A primary purpose of hedge accounting is to link items or transactions whose changes in fair values or cash flows are expected to offset each other.

5.16 To qualify for hedge accounting, at inception of the hedge, there must be formal documentation of all the information identified in FASB ASC 815-20-25-3. Specific documentation requirements include identifying the hedging relationship, the hedging instrument, the hedged item or transaction, the nature of the risk being hedged, the method that will be used to retrospectively and prospectively assess hedge effectiveness, and the method that will be used to measure hedge ineffectiveness, among others.

5.17 To qualify for hedge accounting, the hedging relationship, both at inception of the hedge and on an ongoing basis, should be expected to be highly effective. An entity should consider hedge effectiveness in two different ways: in prospective considerations and retrospective evaluations. Paragraphs 74–119 of FASB ASC 815-20-25 provide the criteria for assessing hedge effectiveness that are applicable to both fair value hedges and cash flow hedges.

5.18 FASB ASC 815-20-35-2 states that at least quarterly, the hedging entity should determine whether the hedging relationship has been highly effective in having achieved offsetting changes in fair value or cash flows through the date of the periodic assessment. If the hedge fails the effectiveness test at any time (that is, if the entity does not expect the hedge to be highly effective at achieving offsetting changes in fair values or cash flows), the hedge ceases to qualify for hedge accounting. The shortcut method for hedges of interest rate risk, which is described in paragraphs 5.22–.30, assumes no hedge ineffectiveness.

5.19 FASB ASC 815-25-40-1 and 815-30-40-1 state that an entity must discontinue prospectively specialized hedge accounting for an existing hedge

---

3 The requirement to assess hedge effectiveness at least every three months applies to health care entities that issue quarterly financial statements as well as entities that issue financial statements only on an annual basis.
if any one of the following occurs: (a) any criteria in FASB ASC 815-20-25 is no longer met; (b) the derivative instrument expires or is sold, terminated, or exercised; or (c) the entity removes the designation of the hedge.

5.20 Documentation that the criteria described in FASB ASC 815-20-25 are met for the entire period to which hedge accounting is being applied is critical. Derivative instruments are designated as hedges only if appropriate, contemporaneous documentation of both the election and periodic assessment of effectiveness has been executed in conformity with FASB ASC 815.

5.21 For private companies adopting the simplified hedge accounting approach under ASU No. 2014-03, documentation required by FASB ASC 815-20-25-3 to qualify for hedge accounting may be completed by the date on which the first annual financial statements are available to be issued after hedge inception rather than contemporaneously at hedge inception.

Shortcut Method

5.22 As noted in paragraph 5.03, one of the most common uses of derivatives by health care entities is entering into interest rate swaps in connection with borrowings. If an entity enters into transactions to hedge interest rate risk related to a recognized liability, a shortcut method for determining effectiveness is available if certain conditions are met.

5.23 Paragraphs 102–117 of FASB ASC 815-20-25 describe a set of conditions that determine which hedging relationships qualify for a shortcut version of hedge accounting, which does not immediately recognize hedge ineffectiveness. If all of the applicable conditions in the list in FASB ASC 815-20-25-104 are met, an entity may assume no ineffectiveness in a relationship hedging interest rate risk that involves a recognized interest-bearing asset or liability and an interest rate swap. In addition, FASB ASC 815-20-25-105 provides incremental conditions that apply to fair value hedges only, and FASB ASC 815-20-25-106 provides incremental conditions that apply to cash flow hedges only. Special rules apply to a firm commitment arising on the trade (pricing) date to purchase or issue an interest-bearing asset or liability. The set of conditions and resulting assumption of ineffectiveness are known as the shortcut method. FASB ASC 815-20-25-103 notes that implicit in the conditions for the shortcut method is the requirement that a basis exist for concluding on an ongoing basis that the hedging relationship is expected to be highly effective in achieving offsetting changes in fair values or cash flows. If a hedging relationship qualifies for use of the shortcut method, the effectiveness of the hedge does not have to be proven in order to qualify for hedge accounting.

5.24 FASB ASC 815-20-25-102 states that given the potential for not recognizing hedge ineffectiveness in earnings under the shortcut method, its application should be limited to hedging relationships that meet each and every applicable condition. All the conditions applicable to fair value hedges must be met to apply the shortcut method to a fair value hedge, and all the conditions applicable to cash flow hedges must be met to apply the shortcut method to a cash flow hedge. A hedging relationship cannot qualify for application of the shortcut method based on an assumption of no ineffectiveness justified by applying other criteria.

5.25 If an interest rate swap does not qualify for use of the shortcut method, the entity must prove (initially and on an ongoing basis, as discussed in FASB ASC 815-20-25) that the hedging relationship between the hedging
instrument and hedged item (the liability being hedged) is highly effective in achieving the offset of changes in those fair values or cash flows that are attributable to the hedged risk.

5.26 As a condition for using the shortcut method, FASB ASC 815-20-25-104(f) requires that the index on which the variable leg of the interest rate swap is based match the benchmark interest rate designated as the interest rate risk being hedged for that hedging relationship. FASB ASC 815-20-25-6A states that in the United States, currently, only the interest rates on direct Treasury obligations of the U.S. government and, for practical reasons, the London Interbank Offered Rate (LIBOR) swap rate and the Fed Funds Effective Swap Rate (also referred to as the Overnight Index Swap rate) are considered to be benchmark interest rates. In each financial market, only the one or two most widely used and quoted rates that meet these criteria may be considered benchmark interest rates. The prime rate, the Federal National Mortgage Association (Fannie Mae) par mortgage rate, and the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association (SIFMA) Municipal Swap Index (formerly called the Bond Market Association/PSA Municipal Swap Index) should not be used as the benchmark interest rate in the United States.

5.27 Many health care entities use swaps whose underlying is the SIFMA Municipal Swap Index as hedges of interest rate risk associated with variable-rate tax-exempt debt. Because the SIFMA Municipal Swap Index does not constitute a benchmark interest rate for purposes of applying the shortcut method, if the variable leg of a swap is indexed to the SIFMA Municipal Swap Index (or any rate other than Treasury obligations, LIBOR, or Fed Funds Effective Swap Rate), the hedging relationship does not qualify for the shortcut method. Similarly, if a bond's variable coupon references the SIFMA Municipal Swap Index or any rate other than Treasury obligations, LIBOR, or Fed Funds Effective Swap Rate, the hedging relationship does not qualify for use of the shortcut method, even if the variable leg of the interest rate swap is indexed to Treasury obligations, LIBOR, or Fed Funds Effective Swap Rate.


5.29 In cash flow hedges of variable-rate debt, interest rate risk cannot be hedged, unless the cash flows of the hedged transaction are explicitly based on the same benchmark interest rate. Many NFP health care entities have issued a form of variable-rate debt referred to as auction-rate debt. The interest rate is reset through a Dutch auction process.4

5.30 FASB ASC 815-20-55-42 states that a variable-rate financial asset or liability that is reset through an auction process is not based on a benchmark interest rate. Although the interest rate may be described as a designated benchmark interest rate plus or minus an adjustment specified by the bidder, the clearing rate is effectively established by a bidding process that does not provide for transparent separation of interest rate risk and credit risk. Thus, the designated risk being hedged in an auction rate note cannot be interest rate risk. However, health care entities wishing to hedge auction rate debt may be

---

4 In a Dutch auction, investors bid for the bonds, which are sold at the lowest yield necessary to sell the entire issue.
able to do so as a cash flow hedge of a risk of overall changes in the hedged cash flows, as described in FASB ASC 815-20-55-43.

Hybrid Instruments, Host Contracts, and Embedded Derivatives

5.31 FASB ASC 815-15-05-1 explains that contracts that do not meet the definition of a derivative instrument in their entirety, such as bonds, insurance policies, and leases, may contain embedded derivatives. Embedded derivatives, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary, are "[i]mplicit or explicit terms that affect some or all of the cash flows or the value of other exchanges required by a contract in a manner similar to a derivative instrument." The effect of embedding a derivative instrument in another type of contract (the host contract) is that some or all of the cash flows or other exchanges that otherwise would be required by the host contract, whether unconditional or contingent on the occurrence of a specified event, will be modified based on one or more underlyings. FASB ASC 815-15 applies to embedded derivatives. A contract that embodies both an embedded derivative and a host contract is referred to as a hybrid instrument.

5.32 If an embedded derivative is within the scope of FASB ASC 815-15, as defined in FASB ASC 815-15-15, and all of the criteria in FASB ASC 815-15-25-1 are met, the embedded derivative instrument must be separated from the host contract and accounted for separately as a derivative instrument pursuant to FASB ASC 815-10. However, if a hybrid instrument is a financial instrument, paragraphs 4–6 of FASB ASC 815-15-25 allow an entity to irrevocably elect to initially and subsequently measure the hybrid financial instrument in its entirety at fair value, with changes in fair value recognized in earnings, instead of requiring bifurcation. Alternatively, the entity may elect to measure the hybrid financial instrument at fair value, as described in the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10.

5.33 Although the requirement to separate an embedded derivative from a host contract applies to both parties to a contract, application of the requirements of FASB ASC 815-15 may result in different conclusions regarding the need for bifurcation based on whether the reporting entity is the holder or issuer of the hybrid instrument.

5.34 The most common host for an embedded derivative is a debt instrument that pays a fixed-rate, floating-rate, or zero-coupon rate of interest. When applying the clearly- and closely-related criteria in FASB ASC 815-15-25-1 to debt hosts, the focus is on determining whether the economic characteristics and risks of the embedded derivative have features unrelated to interest rates, such as equity-like or commodity-like features, or, if the characteristics of the derivative are related to interest rates, whether the features involve leverage or do not change in the same direction as interest rates (an inverse floater). Host contracts with debt characteristics are discussed in paragraphs 23–51 of FASB ASC 815-15-25.

Calls and Puts in Debt

5.35 Bonds and other forms of long-term debt often are structured with call and put options. An entity applies paragraphs 26–27 and 40–43 of FASB
ASC 815-15-25 to determine whether embedded calls and puts are derivatives that must be accounted for separately from the debt host contract. Additional guidance is provided by the table in FASB ASC 815-15-55-13.

5.36 Issuance of convertible debt securities when the conversion feature is a written call option may involve a host of potential embedded derivatives. In such case, the need for bifurcation of embedded derivatives may differ for the holder of the debt instrument than for the issuer, particularly if the conversion is contingent on the occurrence of a specified event.

Derivatives Embedded in Split-Interest Agreements

5.37 The FASB ASC glossary defines a split-interest agreement as "[a]n agreement in which a donor enters into a trust or other arrangement under which a not-for-profit entity . . . receives benefits that are shared with other beneficiaries."5 The amount of benefit to each beneficiary often is a function of the fair value of the donated assets over the term of the agreement. NFPs that are trustees or fiscal agents for a split-interest agreement report a liability for the obligation to make future payments to the other beneficiaries of the agreement. Although that liability is initially measured at its fair value, it will not reflect fair value in future periods because the discount rate used in remeasuring the liability each period is not revised to reflect current interest rates, unless a fair value election is made. Because the liability is not measured at fair value, the potential for an embedded derivative exists.

5.38 Paragraphs 7–14 of FASB ASC 958-30-25 and FASB ASC 958-30-55 provide guidance for determining whether a split-interest agreement includes an embedded derivative and, if so, whether the embedded derivative must be separated from its debt host contract and accounted for separately. As explained in FASB ASC 958-30-25-8, if the obligation is solely life contingent (that is, contingent upon the survival of an identified individual, in which case the payments are made only if the individual is alive when the payments are due), that obligation would qualify for the exception from bifurcation in paragraphs 52–57 of FASB ASC 815-10-15. If the payments are variable, and the agreement is period certain rather than life contingent, FASB ASC 958-30-25-12 states that, generally, the liability representing an obligation under a split-interest agreement contains an embedded derivative. The embedded derivative should be bifurcated and accounted for as a derivative instrument pursuant to the requirements of FASB ASC 815-15-25-1, unless a fair value election is made pursuant to FASB ASC 815-15-25 or the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10.

5.39 Irrevocable split-interest agreements held by an independent third-party trustee generally do not give rise to embedded derivatives. Neither do (a) revocable split-interest agreements or (b) situations in which an NFP holds a split-interest agreement in the capacity of an independent trustee without having any beneficial interest in the arrangements (that is, acting similar to a financial institution or fiscal agent).

---

5 See FASB Accounting Standards Codification 958-30 and chapter 6, "Split-Interest Agreements and Beneficial Interests in Trusts," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities for a detailed discussion of split-interest agreements.
Financial Statement Presentation and Disclosure

5.40 Paragraphs 8–9 of FASB ASC 815-25-35 provide standards for the changes in fair value of the hedged item. The adjustment of the carrying amount of a hedged asset or liability required by FASB ASC 815-25-35-1(b) (for a fair value hedge) should be accounted for in the same manner as other components of the carrying amount of that asset or liability. An adjustment of the carrying amount of a hedged interest-bearing financial instrument should be amortized to earnings. Amortization should begin no later than when the hedged item ceases to be adjusted for changes in its fair value that are attributable to the risk being hedged.

5.41 FASB ASC 815-30-35-44 states that if a reclassification to earnings of the amount in accumulated comprehensive income resulting from a cash flow hedge of debt is required when debt is extinguished, the amount reclassified from accumulated comprehensive income to earnings should be excluded from extinguishment gain or loss.

Non-Hedging Derivatives

5.42 Some derivatives may represent hedges for risk management purposes (entered into to hedge a specific exposure) that do not receive special hedge accounting either because the hedge relationship does not qualify for hedge accounting under the criteria in FASB ASC 815 or because an entity does not elect hedge accounting. Alternatively, non-hedging derivatives may be entered into for speculative purposes. Gains and losses related to non-hedging derivatives are reported in earnings (that is, included in the performance indicator) in the period of change.

Additional Requirements for NFP Health Care Entities

5.43 According to FASB ASC 954-815-50-2, FASB ASC 815 discusses how certain financial statement presentation and disclosure requirements related to derivative instruments and hedging activities should be applied by NFP business-oriented health care entities. Certain aspects of presentation and disclosure relative to classification of derivative gains and losses are highlighted subsequently.

5.44 Paragraphs 5.09–.13 describe how to report the gains and losses on cash flow hedges and fair value hedges. FASB ASC 815-10-50-4G states that for purposes of the disclosure requirements beginning in FASB ASC 815-10-50-4A, NFP health care entities should present a similarly formatted table. They should refer to amounts within their performance indicator, instead of in income, and amounts outside their performance indicator, instead of in other comprehensive income. All NFPs also would indicate which class or classes of net assets (unrestricted, temporarily restricted, or permanently restricted) are affected.

5.45 FASB ASC 954-815-50-1 requires NFP business-oriented health care entities to separately disclose the beginning and ending accumulated derivative gain or loss that has been excluded from the performance indicator, as discussed in paragraph 5.07; the related net change associated with current-period hedging transactions; and the net amount of any reclassifications into the performance indicator in a manner similar to that described in FASB ASC 815-30-50-2. Similarly, FASB ASC 954-815 requires NFP health care entities to provide disclosures that are analogous to those required by paragraphs 1–3.
of FASB ASC 815-30-50 and FASB ASC 815-35-50-2 for for-profit enterprises, including the disclosure of anticipated reclassifications into the performance indicator of gains and losses that have been excluded from that measure and reported in accumulated derivative gain or loss as of the reporting date.

5.46 In accordance with FASB ASC 958-225-45-8, the changes in fair value of derivative instruments or hedged items are classified as increases or decreases in unrestricted net assets, unless their use is temporarily or permanently restricted by explicit donor stipulations or law.

Auditing

5.47 AU-C section 501, Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items (AICPA, Professional Standards), provides guidance on auditing procedures for assertions that are made in an entity's financial statements about derivative instruments and hedging activities. The AICPA Audit Guide Special Considerations in Auditing Financial Instruments also provides guidance on audit evidence that may be relevant to the fair value of derivative instruments and investments in securities.
Chapter 6

Property and Equipment and Other Assets

Overview

6.01 Health care entities use various kinds of property and equipment. Those assets are generally significant to the financial position of institutional health care entities, such as hospitals and nursing homes. Typical accounts used to record property and equipment transactions are land, land improvements, buildings and improvements, leasehold improvements, fixed and movable equipment, leased property and equipment, accumulated depreciation and amortization, and construction in progress.

6.02 Health care entities also have intangible assets, which may be acquired in connection with business combinations or purchases or developed from other resources of the entity. Intangibles with finite lives are amortized according to their useful life. Examples of intangibles include the following:

- Health plans, which include the following:
  - Customer relationships, such as employer groups or members
  - Provider networks
  - Trademarks
  - Trade names
  - Software
  - Licenses
  - Favorable leases
  - Noncompete agreements
  - Goodwill

- Hospitals and other health care facilities, which include the following:
  - Licenses
  - Certificates of need
  - Managed care contracts
  - Goodwill

- Physician practices, which include the following:
  - Medical charts
  - Noncompete agreements
  - Managed care contracts
  - Goodwill

6.03 Supplies inventories are generally not very significant to the financial position of health care entities. However, because of the volume and cost of supplies used, they may be much more significant to operating expenses.
and the statement of operations. Supplies typically include medical and surgical supplies; pharmaceuticals; linens, uniforms, and garments; food and other commodities; and housekeeping, maintenance, and office supplies. In addition, entity management must safeguard items such as certain pharmaceuticals, which may be very expensive per unit, or have a high risk of drug diversion.

6.04 Health care entities, whether investor owned or not for profit, may receive donations in the form of property, equipment, or supplies. Donations of property, equipment, and supplies are measured at fair value at the date of donation, which then becomes the cost basis for the assets, and are recorded as an increase to fixed assets, inventory, or supplies expense, as appropriate. Entities should ensure they properly account for assets acquired through government or private grants with reversionary interest of proceeds (that is, if an entity disposes of such an asset and it receives cash or trade-in value).

6.05 Accounting policies and disclosure requirements for property and equipment, supplies, and certain other assets of health care entities are similar to those used by other business entities. Health care entities should apply the guidance in FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 360, Property, Plant, and Equipment, and FASB ASC 340, Other Assets and Deferred Costs, except when the guidance conflicts with the specialized guidance in FASB ASC 954, Health Care Entities.

Capitalized Interest

6.06 Many not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities finance acquisitions, additions, and renovations of facilities by issuing tax-exempt debt, as discussed in chapter 7, "Municipal Bond Financing," of this guide. If the proceeds of tax-exempt borrowings are externally restricted to finance the acquisition of specified qualifying assets or to service the related debt, the amount of interest cost to be capitalized is determined in accordance with paragraphs 8–12 of FASB ASC 835-20-30. If the health care entity uses taxable debt or otherwise does not qualify for interest capitalization under those paragraphs, then the amount of interest cost to be capitalized is determined pursuant to paragraphs 2–7 of FASB ASC 835-20-30. Frequently, NFP health care entities are required to capitalize interest under paragraphs 2–7 of FASB ASC 835-20-30 for some projects and paragraphs 8–12 of FASB ASC 835-20-30 for others.

6.07 Among the differences between the two sets of guidance are the interest cost to be capitalized and the capitalization period. For interest costs on qualifying assets acquired with proceeds of tax-exempt borrowings that are externally restricted, FASB ASC 835-20-30-11 requires that the amount of capitalized interest be all interest cost of the borrowing less any interest earned on related interest-bearing investments acquired with proceeds of the related tax-exempt borrowings from the date of the borrowing until the assets are ready for their intended use. For other borrowings, paragraphs 2–7 of FASB ASC 835-20-25 use a weighted average construction expenditures concept that is applied during the period for which the three criteria in FASB ASC 835-20-25-3 are present. Those criteria are (a) expenditures for the asset have been made, (b) activities that are necessary to get the asset ready for its intended use are in progress, and (c) interest cost is being incurred.
6.08 In accordance with FASB ASC 835-20-30-12, the interest cost of a tax-exempt borrowing should be eligible for capitalization on other qualifying assets of the entity when the specified qualifying assets are no longer eligible for interest capitalization. The entire interest cost on that portion of the proceeds that is available for other uses, such as refunding an existing debt issue other than a construction loan related to those assets, also is eligible for capitalization on other qualifying assets. Example 1 in FASB ASC 835-20-55-4 illustrates this guidance.

6.09 In certain circumstances in which an entity has an investment (equity, loans, and advances) accounted for by the equity method, and the investee has not begun its planned principal operations, FASB ASC 835-20-35-2 requires capitalization of interest cost. As explained in FASB ASC 835-20-15-5(c), the investor's investment in the investee, not the individual assets or projects of the investee, is the qualifying asset for purposes of interest capitalization. Interest is capitalized while the investee has activities in progress necessary to commence its planned principal operations, provided that the investee's activities include the use of funds to acquire qualifying assets for operations.

6.10 FASB ASC 835-20-15 specifies the types of assets for which interest is not capitalized. Among the listed items are assets acquired with gifts and grants that are restricted by the donor or grantor to acquisition of those assets, to the extent that funds are available from such gifts and grants; interest earned from the temporary investment of those funds that is similarly restricted should be considered an addition to the gift or grant for this purpose. Other items include assets not included in the consolidated balance sheet of the parent company and consolidated subsidiaries and assets that are not being used in the earning activities of the entity and not undergoing the activities necessary to get them ready for use.

6.11 Some health care entities finance construction projects with municipal securities that have both taxable and tax-exempt components. The aggregate proceeds are to finance a specific construction project and are restricted by a common indenture or trust agreement to use only for construction of the project, repayment of the debt, or both. In such situations, the interest to be capitalized on the taxable portion of the issue is accounted for separate from the interest on the tax-exempt portion, based on paragraphs 2–7 of FASB ASC 835-20-30.

Supplies, Rebates, and Discounts

6.12 Many health care entities receive rebates and discounts from purchase agreements or other arrangements with vendors. Time may pass between the purchase of supplies and receipt of the rebate. Rebates and discounts are credited to the related expense or asset account. Paragraphs 10–12 of FASB ASC 605-50-25 and paragraphs 12–15 of FASB ASC 605-50-45 provide guidance when a health care entity is given cash considerations, rebates, refunds, or other up-front considerations by vendors.

6.13 Supply purchase contracts or other arrangements that include the use of vendor equipment may be considered to include a lease, as discussed in FASB ASC 440-10-25.
Lessee Involvement in Fixed Asset Construction

6.14 Frequently, health care entities, such as hospitals and the hospitals’ employed physicians, enter into agreements with real estate developers for the construction of satellite buildings (for example, ambulatory surgery centers and medical office buildings). If the health care entity agrees to lease space in the building, the transaction is referred to as a build-to-suit transaction.

6.15 In these situations, FASB ASC 840-40-15-5 states that the health care entity (lessee) should be considered the owner of an asset during the construction period and, thus, be subject to FASB ASC 840-40 if it bears substantially all of the construction period risks; effectively, a sale and leaseback of the asset occurs when construction of the asset is complete, and the lease term begins. Paragraphs 2–16 of FASB ASC 840-40-55 provide specific criteria to apply in order to determine whether the health care entity (lessee) should be considered the owner of the asset during the construction period. If deemed to be the owner, the health care entity (lessee) should account for the arrangement as a sale-leaseback, in accordance with FASB ASC 840-40.

6.16 Thus, if the health care entity (lessee) bears substantially all of the construction-period risks, it should recognize construction in progress and a related financing obligation during the construction period. When the construction of the asset is complete, the health care entity (lessee) determines if it has met the requirements of sale-leaseback accounting, and if so, the deemed sale is recognized.

6.17 Additional guidance for build-to-suit transactions is found in the following standards:

- Paragraphs 42–47 of FASB ASC 840-40-55 provide guidance for costs incurred by a lessee before entering into a lease agreement with the developer-lesser.
- Paragraphs 7–16 of FASB ASC 958-810-55 provide guidance if an NFP health care entity is engaged in leasing transactions with a special-purpose-entity lessor.

Asset Retirement and Environmental Remediation Obligations

6.18 Many health care entities operate facilities that were originally constructed prior to the existence of modern building codes. FASB ASC 410, Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations, provides guidance for a facility that, upon disposal or abandonment, would be required by current regulations to remove, treat, or dispose of items such as asbestos; hazardous chemicals; test equipment; and building improvements, such as lead shielding or underground storage tanks, and to remediate environmental liabilities.

6.19 FASB ASC 410-20 addresses financial accounting and reporting for obligations associated with the retirement, sale, abandonment, recycling, disposal, or other-than-temporary idling of tangible long-lived assets and the associated asset retirement costs. It applies to legal obligations associated with

---

1 On September 13, 2013, FASB issued a proposed Accounting Standards Update (ASU), Leases (Topic 842): a revision of the 2010 proposed FASB Accounting Standards Update, Leases (Topic 840), which would make significant changes to the accounting requirements for both lessees and lessors. Readers should be alert to the issuance of a final standard.
the retirement of long-lived assets that result from the acquisition, construction, development, or normal operation of a long-lived asset, except for certain obligations. Paragraphs 8.62–.64 of this guide provide additional information about asset retirement obligations.

6.20 FASB ASC 410-30 requires that an entity recognize a liability for obligations associated with environmental remediation liabilities that relate to pollution arising from some past act, generally as a result of the provisions of Superfund, the corrective-action provisions of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, or analogous state and non-U.S. laws and regulations. Generally, an environmental remediation liability results from the improper operation of a long-lived asset; an environmental remediation liability that results from the normal operation of a long-lived asset and is associated with the retirement of that asset is an asset retirement liability, as discussed in paragraph 6.19. FASB ASC 410-30 provides a brief overview of environmental laws and regulations, which may be helpful in understanding potential remediation liabilities.

Impairment or Disposal

6.21 The "Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets" sections of FASB ASC 360-10 provide guidance whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of a long-lived asset (asset group)\(^2\) may not be recoverable. FASB ASC 360-10-35-17 states that an impairment loss should be recognized only if the carrying amount of the long-lived asset or asset group is not recoverable and exceeds its fair value.

6.22 Some of the following changes in circumstances of health care providers may indicate that the carrying amount of a long-lived asset group is not recoverable:

- There has been an adverse change in the use of the assets, such as the loss of certain core services to a specialty hospital or other competing facility.
- Patient volumes have significantly declined.
- Market conditions, such as the payment rates being received, increased competition, declining market demographics, or other conditions, have changed in such a manner that operating cash flow losses have been incurred or are projected to occur.
- The provider has lost its eligibility to be paid for services by a major payor, such as Medicare, or has lost a significant contract with a nongovernmental third-party payor.
- The provider has lost its federal or state tax exemption.

6.23 FASB ASC 360-10-35-23 requires that for purposes of recognition and measurement of an impairment loss, a long-lived asset or assets be grouped with other assets and liabilities at the lowest level for which identifiable cash flows are largely independent of the cash flows of other assets and liabilities. Further, because FASB ASC 205-20 requires discontinued operations to be

---

\(^2\) The FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) glossary defines an asset group as "the unit of accounting for a long-lived asset or assets to be held and used, which represents the lowest level for which identifiable cash flows are largely independent of the cash flows of other groups of assets and liabilities." The FASB ASC glossary states that "[a] disposal group for a long-lived asset or assets to be disposed of by sale or otherwise represents assets to be disposed of together as a group in a single transaction and liabilities directly associated with those assets that will be transferred in the transaction."
reported separately from continuing operations at the level of a component of an entity, a health care entity needs to determine whether a disposal group is a component of an entity. The FASB ASC glossary states that a *component of an entity* "comprises operations and cash flows that can be clearly distinguished, operationally and for financial reporting purposes, from the rest of the entity."

6.24 It may be difficult for health care systems to apply those guidelines due to arrangements that affect numerous entities under common control, such as multi-entity managed care contracts, centralized billing offices, and shared purchasing operations and arrangements with physicians involved in providing services at multiple locations. Additionally, it is not uncommon for health care entities that operate multiple entities to support a service or facility that generates ongoing negative cash flows because the related services may be either (a) central to the furtherance of the overall entity's mission or (b) offered in order to reach a market segment that management believes will ultimately utilize other services within the entity to generate positive cash flows.

6.25 If a health care entity commits to a plan to abandon a long-lived asset before the end of its previously estimated useful life, FASB ASC 360-10-35-47 requires depreciation estimates to be revised, in accordance with paragraphs 17–20 of FASB ASC 250-10-45 and FASB ASC 250-10-50-4, to reflect the use of the asset over the shortened useful life.

6.26 Paragraphs 9–11 of FASB ASC 360-10-45 provide the criteria for classifying a long-lived asset group as held for sale. Consideration of those criteria by NFP health care entities may be complicated by multiple levels of corporate governance and the interests of other authorities, such as the state attorney general, in the use of the assets. Large health care systems may be organized in such a way that the sale of certain assets must be approved by the governing board of the entity that owns the assets; any parent corporations; and, potentially, appointed representatives of groups that sponsor the system, such as religious congregations. Additionally, many transactions require approval by the state attorney general. These factors will affect the assessment of whether management has the authority to approve a sale and may also affect the timing of the completion of the transaction and, thus, the probability that the sale will be completed within one year.

6.27 In accordance with FASB ASC 360-10-35-44, if the health care entity decides not to sell a long-lived asset (disposal group) previously classified as held for sale, the asset (disposal group) should be reclassified as held and used. A long-lived asset that is reclassified should be measured individually at the lower of (a) its carrying amount before the asset (disposal group) was classified as held for sale, adjusted for any depreciation (amortization) expense that would have been recognized had the asset (disposal group) been continuously classified as held and used, or (b) its fair value at the date of the subsequent decision not to sell.

**Discontinued Operations**

6.28 Per FASB ASC 205-20-45-1, the results of operations of a component of a health care entity that either has been disposed of or is classified as held for sale under the requirements of FASB ASC 360-10-45-9 should be reported in discontinued operations, in accordance with FASB ASC 205-20-45-3, if both of the following conditions are met: (a) the operations and cash flows of the component have been or will be eliminated from the ongoing operations of the health care entity as a result of the disposal transaction, and (b) the
health care entity will not have any significant continuing involvement in the operations of the component after the disposal transaction. FASB ASC 205-20-55 provides implementation guidance to help an entity determine whether the two conditions are met.

6.29 In evaluating those criteria, consideration may be given to the geographic proximity of similar facilities operated by the health care entity, the existence of plans to relocate services to facilities under common control, whether the medical staff utilizing the disposed facility will be utilizing a facility within the same health care entity, and whether the health care entity will be continuing to utilize any of the long-lived assets previously included in the disposed component.

6.30 Per FASB ASC 205-20-45-3, the results of discontinued operations less applicable income taxes (benefit) should be reported as a separate component of income before extraordinary items. For NFP health care entities, FASB ASC 954-225-45-7 requires that discontinued operations be reported separately from the performance indicator.

© Update 6-1 Financial Reporting: Discontinued Operations

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-08, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205) and Property, Plant, and Equipment (Topic 360): Reporting Discontinued Operations and Disclosures of Disposals of Components of an Entity, is effective prospectively for public business entities and not-for-profit entities that have issued, or are conduit bond obligors for, securities that are traded, listed, or quoted on an exchange or an over-the-counter market, for

- all disposals (or classifications as held for sale) of components of an entity that occur with annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within those years.
- all businesses or nonprofit activities that, on acquisition, are classified as held for sale that occur within annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within those years.

The amendments in ASU No. 2014-08 are effective prospectively for all other entities for

- all disposals (or classifications as held for sale) of components of an entity that occur within annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2015.
- all businesses or nonprofit activities that, on acquisition, are classified as held for sale that occur with annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2015.

Entities should not apply these amendments to a component of an entity, or a business or nonprofit activity that is classified as held for sale before the effective date, even if the component of an entity, or business or nonprofit activity is disposed of after the effective date.

Early adoption is permitted, but only for disposals (or classifications as held for sale) that have not been reported in the financial statements previously issued or available for issuance.
The amendments redefine discontinued operations, and require expanded disclosures about discontinued operations that will provide financial statement users with more information about the assets, liabilities, income, and expenses of discontinued operations as well as an entity's significant continuing involvement with a discontinued operation.

Users of this guide are encouraged to consult the full text of ASU No. 2014-08, available at www.fasb.org.

Nonreciprocal Transfers

6.31 A health care entity may transfer ownership of its long-lived assets, either individual pieces of equipment or an entire facility, to another health care entity in a nonreciprocal transaction.

6.32 FASB ASC 720-25 applies if such transactions are contributions, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary. Accounting for contributions made is discussed in paragraph 11.47 of this guide.

6.33 Similar to the recording of an impairment of long-lived assets, a gain or loss recognized to adjust to fair value would be included in income from continuing operations before income taxes in the income statement of an investor-owned health care entity or in the performance indicator in the statement of operations of an NFP entity. If a subtotal, such as "Income From Operations," is presented, it would include the amounts of those gains or losses.

Other Long-Lived Assets

6.34 Health care entities that incur costs for upgrading or improving computer systems (for example, ICD-10 upgrades) should follow the guidance in FASB ASC 350-40 for costs of computer software developed or obtained for internal use and FASB ASC 720-45 for business and technology reengineering. Business and technology reengineering may include software development, software acquisition, software implementation, training, and ongoing support. FASB ASC 720-45-55-1 illustrates the typical cost components of a business process reengineering or IT transformation project and whether they should be expensed or capitalized.

6.35 Many health care entities have other long-lived or intangible assets, such as goodwill, trademarks, prepaid benefits, patents, and costs associated with certificates of need. These assets may be acquired by purchase, through internal development, or through research and development efforts, among other activities.

6.36 The cost of an intangible asset acquired other than in an acquisition by an NFP entity or business combination is capitalized in accordance with FASB ASC 350, Intangibles—Goodwill and Other. Costs of start-up activities, including organization costs, should be expensed as incurred, as discussed in FASB ASC 720-15.

6.37 In accordance with FASB ASC 350-20, goodwill that is not written off on the acquisition date, as discussed in paragraph 12.104 of this guide, should not be amortized. Instead, it should be tested for impairment at a level of reporting referred to as a reporting unit. Paragraphs 33–46 of FASB ASC 350-20-35 provide guidance on determining reporting units. Impairment is the
condition that exists when the carrying amount of goodwill exceeds its implied fair value. The fair value of goodwill can be measured only as a residual and cannot be measured directly. FASB ASC 350-20-35 includes a methodology to determine an amount that achieves a reasonable estimate of the value of goodwill for purpose of measuring an impairment loss. That estimate is referred to as the implied fair value of goodwill. Paragraphs 3A–3G of FASB ASC 350-20-35 allow an entity to first assess qualitative factors to determine if it is more-likely-than-not that the fair value of the reporting unit is less than the carrying amount before performing the two-step quantitative assessment of the goodwill impairment test which is discussed in paragraphs 4–19 of FASB ASC 350-20-35. If determined to be necessary, the two step impairment test should be used to identify potential goodwill impairment and measure the amount of goodwill impairment loss to be recognized, if any.

Private Company Alternative Issued by the Private Company Council

© Update 6-2 Accounting: Goodwill

FASB ASU No. 2014-02, Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Accounting for Goodwill (a consensus of the Private Company Council), should be applied prospectively to goodwill existing as of the beginning of the period of adoption and new goodwill recognized in annual periods beginning after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2015. Early application is permitted, including application to any period for which the entity’s annual or interim financial statements have not yet been made available for issuance.

The accounting alternative, if elected, permits a private company to subsequently amortize goodwill on a straight-line basis over a period of ten years, or less if the company demonstrates that another useful life is more appropriate. It also permits a private company to apply a simplified impairment model to goodwill.

Users of this guide are encouraged to consult the full text of FASB ASU No. 2014-02, available at www.fasb.org.

6.38 Under the requirements of FASB ASC 350-30, accounting for a recognized intangible asset is based on its useful life to the reporting entity. An intangible asset with a finite useful life should be amortized; an intangible asset with an indefinite useful life should not be amortized. If an intangible asset has a finite useful life, but the precise length of that life is not known, that intangible asset should be amortized over the best estimate of its useful life. The method of amortization should reflect the pattern in which the economic benefits of the intangible asset are consumed or otherwise used up. If that pattern cannot be reliably determined, a straight-line amortization method should be used. An intangible asset that is subject to amortization should be reviewed for impairment in accordance with the “Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets” sections of FASB ASC 360-10 by applying the recognition and measurement provisions in paragraphs 17–35 of FASB ASC 360-10-35.

6.39 If an intangible asset is determined to have an indefinite useful life, it should not be amortized until its useful life is determined to be no longer indefinite. An entity should evaluate the remaining useful life of an intangible
asset that is not being amortized each reporting period to determine whether events and circumstances continue to support an indefinite useful life. If an intangible asset that is not being amortized is subsequently determined to have a finite useful life, the asset should be tested for impairment in accordance with paragraphs 18–19 of FASB ASC 350-30-35. That intangible asset should then be amortized prospectively over its estimated remaining useful life and accounted for in the same manner as other intangible assets that are subject to amortization.

6.40 An intangible asset that is not subject to amortization should be tested for impairment annually and more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that it is more likely than not that the asset is impaired. An entity may first perform a qualitative assessment, as described in "Pending Content" in paragraphs 18B–18F of FASB ASC 350-30-35, to determine whether it is necessary to perform the quantitative impairment test as described in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19. An entity has an unconditional option to bypass the qualitative assessment for any indefinite-lived intangible asset in any period and proceed directly to performing the quantitative impairment test as described in "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-19. An entity may resume performing the qualitative assessment in any subsequent period. If an entity elects to perform a qualitative assessment, it first should assess qualitative factors to determine whether it is more likely than not (that is, a likelihood of more than 50 percent) that an indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired. In assessing whether it is more likely than not that an indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired, an entity should assess all relevant events and circumstances that could affect the significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset.

6.41 "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-18B includes examples of events and circumstances that may affect the assessment of whether it is more likely than not that an indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired. An entity should assess all relevant events and circumstances that could affect the significant inputs used to determine the fair value of the indefinite-lived intangible asset. "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 350-30-35-18C provides considerations that the entity should consider when determining whether it is more likely than not that the indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired.

Financial Statement Presentation

6.42 Financial statement presentation of property and equipment, supplies, and other assets of health care entities is similar to that of other business entities.

6.43 FASB ASC 954-205-45-9 states that the expiration of donor-imposed restrictions on long-lived assets should be recognized when the asset is placed in service, rather than as depreciated, as permitted by FASB ASC 958-205-45-12. Thus, if contributions of long-lived assets with explicit donor restrictions

---

3 FASB ASU No. 2012-02, Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Testing Indefinite-Lived Intangible Assets for Impairment, amendments are intended to reduce cost and complexity by providing an entity with the option to make a qualitative assessment about the likelihood that an indefinite-lived intangible asset is impaired to determine whether it should perform a quantitative impairment test. ASU No. 2012-02 also permits an entity to assess qualitative factors to determine whether it is necessary to calculate the asset's fair value when testing an indefinite-lived intangible asset for impairment, which is equivalent to the impairment testing requirements for other long-lived assets.
are reported as temporarily-restricted support, a health care entity reports expirations of those donor restrictions when the stipulation is fulfilled, and the assets are placed in service. Similarly, donations of cash or other assets that must be used to acquire long-lived assets are reported as temporarily-restricted support in the period received, and expirations of those donor restrictions are reported when the acquired long-lived assets are placed in service, and donor-imposed restrictions are satisfied.

6.44 According to FASB ASC 954-360-45-1, property held for investment purposes is presented as part of investments.

6.45 FASB ASC 958-360-50-4 requires that donor or legal restrictions on the use of, or proceeds from, the disposition of donated property and equipment or property and equipment purchased with cash restricted for the acquisition of long-lived assets be disclosed.

Auditing

6.46 Auditing objectives for property and equipment, supplies, and other assets of health care entities are similar to those in audits of other business entities. The auditor may be able to assess the risks of material misstatement for these accounts as being relatively low because the transactions therein are generally small in number, relatively simple in nature, and do not involve the use of complex estimates. As discussed in paragraph .02 of AU-C section 315, Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement (AICPA, Professional Standards), the objective of the auditor is to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and relevant assertion levels through understanding the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, thereby providing a basis for designing and implementing responses to the assessed risks of material misstatement.

6.47 A health care entity may have access to the use of property and equipment under a variety of arrangements. It may (a) own property and equipment; (b) rent property and equipment from an independent or related entity; (c) use property and equipment provided by a related entity, such as a religious order, or an unrelated entity under an affiliation program; or (d) use property and equipment provided by a government agency or unit or government-related hospital district. The independent auditor may inquire into, and the financial statements might disclose, the nature of any relationship between the health care entity and lessors, bailors, or other owners of property.

6.48 In evaluating the entity's capitalization policies, the independent auditor should consider whether interest has been capitalized in accordance with the provisions of FASB ASC 835-20.

6.49 In evaluating the entity's depreciation policies, the auditor may wish to refer to the American Hospital Association's Estimated Useful Lives of Depreciable Hospital Assets, which is revised periodically (most recently in 2013) and sets forth plant asset classifications and the estimated useful lives of depreciable assets. Additionally, social, economic, and scientific advances in the health care industry make obsolescence an important factor to be considered when evaluating depreciation policies and methods.

6.50 In considering a health care entity's application of the "Impairment or Disposal of Long-Lived Assets" sections of FASB ASC 360-10, auditors may
obtain an understanding of the policies and procedures used by management to determine whether all impaired assets have been properly identified. In addition to evaluating the entity's procedures for identifying indicators of impairment, the auditor may consider information obtained during the audit in determining whether the health care entity has identified appropriate indicators of impairment. For example, a change in the use of a facility from an acute-care hospital to an ambulatory surgery center may require that the asset be reviewed for impairment.

6.51 In obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to property and equipment, supplies, and other assets, the auditor may consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures that are presented in exhibit 6-1.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315. Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Donated Property Equipment</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Account Balances</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Donated property and equipment is reported at fair value at the date of donation.¹</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that the donation of property and equipment is known and recorded and that documentation supports the determination of the fair value.</td>
<td>Review the documentation supporting the determination of the fair value.²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presentation and Disclosure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification and understandability</td>
<td>The receipt of donated property and equipment is properly reported.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Review material donated property and equipment transactions to ensure the propriety of the reporting. Ensure any reversionary interest has been properly accounted for in any disposals of donated or grant acquired assets.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Property and Equipment Not Held for Use in Operations

#### Presentation and Disclosure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification and understandability</th>
<th>Property and equipment not used for operations is reported separately.</th>
<th>Property records segregate property and equipment not used for operating purposes.</th>
<th>Determine that property held for nonoperating purposes is reported separately.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### Property and Equipment Additions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rights and obligations</th>
<th>The appropriate health care planning agency or other regulatory agency approvals, if required, have been obtained for property and equipment additions.</th>
<th>Management regularly monitors compliance with health care planning agency regulations related to additions of property and equipment.</th>
<th>For material new construction, determine compliance with health care planning agency or other regulatory agency requirements.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Existence and valuation and allocation</th>
<th>Recorded property and equipment are owned by the entity and carried at the appropriate amounts.</th>
<th>Inventory of property and equipment is taken periodically. Detailed property records are periodically reconciled to the recorded amounts.</th>
<th>Review a summary of property and equipment (cost and accumulated depreciation), including additions, deletions, and transfers.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 For additional discussion on fair value measurements, refer to chapter 4, "Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments," of this guide.

2 AU-C section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance on auditing fair value measurements and disclosures contained in financial statements. AU-C section 540 does not address specific types of assets, liabilities, components of equity, transactions, or industry-specific practices.

**Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards**

PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 2, *Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists* (AICPA, *PCAOB Standards and Related Rules*, PCAOB Staff Guidance, sec. 400.02), provides guidance on auditors’ responsibilities for auditing fair value measurements of financial instruments and when using the work of specialists under the existing standards of the PCAOB. This practice alert is focused on specific matters that are likely to increase audit risk related to the fair value of financial instruments in a rapidly changing economic environment. This practice alert also highlights certain requirements in the auditing standards related to fair value measurements and disclosures in the financial statements and certain aspects of generally accepted accounting principles that are particularly relevant to the current economic environment. PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alerts are not rules of the PCAOB nor have they been approved by the PCAOB.
Chapter 7

Municipal Bond Financing

Introduction

7.01 Although health care entities utilize many forms of debt financing, this chapter focuses on municipal bonds issued on behalf of not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities. Because of its capital-intensive nature, health care is among the largest industry sectors that raise funds through the municipal securities market.

7.02 Typically, a qualified governmental agency, such as a health care financing authority (the issuer), issues the securities and then lends the proceeds to the health care entity (the obligor). In these conduit financings, although the securities bear the name of the issuing government, the issuer has no obligation for repayment of the debt; the bondholders' principal and interest will be paid solely from resources of the obligor.

7.03 Most municipal bonds issued on behalf of health care entities are revenue bonds. For revenue bond issues, the health care entity pledges a specific revenue stream, typically revenue derived from the project or enterprise being funded. There may also be a mortgage on the financed property and other restrictive covenants. To obtain project financing, a financing authority may require a health care entity to enter into a lease arrangement, a sublease arrangement, or both. It is also common practice for a health care system to create an obligated group of affiliated entities, the assets and revenues of which serve as collateral for the debt.

7.04 Municipal bonds are issued with either a variable or fixed interest rate. A fixed-rate bond bears interest at a specified, constant rate. Variable-rate (floating-rate) bonds bear interest at a rate that is reset from time to time. Some documents provide the ability to change the interest mode (for example, from auction rate\(^1\) to variable rate). In addition, financing strategies have emerged that convert a variable-rate obligation into a fixed-rate obligation, or vice versa, using derivative instruments. For example, a common financing structure involves creating fixed-rate debt by initially issuing lower cost variable-rate debt coupled with a floating-to-fixed interest rate swap. Additional considerations related to interest rate swaps are discussed in chapter 5, "Derivatives," of this guide.

7.05 The type of project(s) that is funded with municipal bond proceeds affects the taxability of income received by the bond holders and, thus, whether the bonds are characterized as tax exempt or taxable. Generally, tax-exempt bonds are issued to finance services or facilities that are for the public good. Interest paid to holders of tax-exempt bonds is often exempt from all federal income taxes and sometimes state or local taxes, as well. Taxable bonds may be issued for uses not qualifying for tax-exempt financing (for example, medical office buildings). Tax considerations are discussed in paragraphs 7.40–.44.

\(^1\) In a Dutch auction, investors bid for the bonds, which are sold at the lowest yield necessary to sell the entire issue.
Conduit Bonds That Trade in Public Markets

7.06 Certain accounting standards require entities that have securities that trade in public markets to provide more extensive disclosures than is required for entities that do not have securities trading in public markets. Generally, the rationale behind these requirements is that the entity's financial statements are being utilized in public markets for making decisions about whether to buy, sell, or hold that entity's securities.

7.07 The FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) glossary has multiple definitions for the term public entity. Generally, these are entities that have debt or equity securities that trade in public markets. When applying accounting standards that refer to public entities, careful attention should be paid to the requirements to determine which definition applies and whether the definition includes conduit bond obligors within its scope. If within its scope, it is also necessary to determine whether the obligor's securities trade in public markets (for example, over-the-counter markets). As discussed in paragraph 7.12, if conduit bonds have been issued on behalf of a health care entity in a competitive or negotiated offering, they are deemed to trade in public markets. Bonds issued in a private placement would not be deemed to trade in public markets for as long as the bonds are privately held.

7.08 The fact that an NFP health care entity with conduit bonds that trade in public markets is considered a public entity does not change that entity's status for purposes of applying accounting standards with requirements that are specific to NFPs or that explicitly exclude NFPs. If the scope of an accounting standard that contains expanded disclosure requirements or additional accounting requirements for public entities explicitly excludes NFPs, NFP health care entities would not apply that standard. Additionally, classification as a public entity under generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) does not impose SEC or other regulatory filing requirements (such as Regulations S-X or S-K) on NFP health care conduit debt obligors. It also does not result in an NFP health care entity being required to comply with the portions of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 that apply only to issuers, as defined by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

Credit Enhancement

7.09 Health care entities may utilize credit enhancements to make their bonds more attractive to investors or to allow them to access the market at more favorable rates. Credit enhancement involves the use of the credit standing of an entity, other than the issuer or obligor, to provide additional security in a bond or note financing. Credit enhancement typically refers to bond insurance, bank letters of credit, and similar facilities but also may refer more broadly to the use of any form of guaranty; secondary source of payment; or similar, additional credit-improving instruments.

7.10 When credit enhancement is provided through a bank letter of credit, the bonds bear the rating of the issuing bank that commits to pay the principal and interest on the securities in the event that the obligor is unable to do so. Letters of credit cover a specified time period. Bond insurance is an unconditional and irrevocable commitment from a municipal bond insurance company.

---

2 Paragraph 7.70 discusses the fair value of bonds with third-party credit enhancements, whether measured for purposes of disclosure or reporting under the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB Accounting Standards Codification 825-10.
to make scheduled bond debt service payments in the event of nonpayment by the obligor. Bonds secured by a municipal bond insurance policy carry the rating of the municipal bond insurer. Once acquired, a bond insurance policy generally is in place for the life of the bonds. Government programs, such as the Federal Housing Administration Section 242 mortgage insurance program, enable some obligors to enhance their credit using the creditworthiness of the federal government.

7.11 Because credit-enhanced bonds are rated based on the credit standing of another entity, downgrades of the other entity's ratings can have implications for the obligor's own credit ratings, as well as potentially triggering defaults under debt agreements and derivative contracts. See related discussion in paragraph 7.83.

Issuance of Municipal Bonds

7.12 Municipal bonds are issued through negotiated sales, competitive bids, or private placements. In a negotiated sale, the issuer or obligor negotiates a price with one or more underwriters. In a competitive bid sale, the securities are sold to one or more underwriters who submitted the best acceptable bid(s). The underwriters then resell the securities to the general investing public. Municipal bonds issued in negotiated sales or competitive bids are deemed to be traded in public markets; thus, conduit borrowers under those arrangements are considered public entities for purposes of providing certain disclosures under accounting standards, as discussed in paragraph 7.06. In addition, when underwriters sell municipal securities to the general investing public, the SEC imposes certain requirements on the underwriters, who in turn require the obligors to file certain disclosure documents. An overview of SEC considerations related to municipal bonds is provided in appendix A, "Municipal Securities Regulation," of this chapter. In a private placement, the securities generally are sold directly to qualified investors (for example, an institutional investor), rather than through an offering to the general investing public. Municipal bonds issued in private placements are not deemed to trade in public markets because the investors typically are subject to restrictions on resale.

7.13 A health care entity that is issuing municipal bonds through a financing authority prepares an official statement that offers the securities for sale and provides appropriate financial and other information about the offering, the health care entity, and any guarantors or credit-enhancement providers. Financial advisers; bond counsel; and, frequently, engineers and appraisers assist the health care entity in preparing information for the official statement. Auditor involvement with municipal securities offerings are discussed in paragraph 7.86. The following are important stages in a municipal securities offering (the time periods between these stages may vary):

- The preliminary official statement is issued to all prospective buyers of the securities.
- The financing authority, health care entity, and underwriters execute the bond purchase agreement.
- The official statement is issued at the time of sale (sometimes referred to as the effective date) and identifies the actual debt service requirements of the securities.
The closing date is the date that the transaction is finalized, and the proceeds are transferred from the buyers to the health care entity.

Extinguishment and Modification Transactions

7.14 NFP health care entities generally follow the same accounting and financial reporting standards for extinguishment and modification of debt as investor-owned entities. Those standards are found in FASB ASC 405-20 and 470-50.

7.15 FASB ASC 405-20-40 states that a liability is extinguished either when the debtor pays the creditor and is relieved of its obligation for the liability or when the debtor is legally released from being the primary obligor under the liability, either judicially or by the creditor. FASB ASC 405-20-40-1(a)(4) states that paying the creditor includes reacquisition by the debtor of its outstanding debt securities, regardless of whether the securities are cancelled or held as Treasury bonds.

7.16 Thus, a debt obligation is derecognized if a health care entity reacquires its bonds through open market purchases, regardless of whether the reacquired securities are then held by the debtor as Treasury bonds or retired. Treasury bonds that are held should never be reported as an asset of the health care entity, even if the entity intends to remarket the bonds at a future date or hold and manage them as part of its investment portfolio.

7.17 Another way that a health care entity may extinguish its debt is by issuing new bonds whose proceeds are used to repay the previously-issued bonds (a refunding transaction). If the new bonds are held by the same creditor as the old bonds, the refunding may be a modification of debt terms, rather than an extinguishment, as discussed in paragraphs 6–12 of FASB ASC 470-50-40. See also paragraphs 7.27–.31. Three types of refunding transactions exist: current refunding, advance refunding, and crossover refunding. In a current refunding, the new debt proceeds may be used to repay the old bonds within 90 days of the first call date or maturity of the bonds to be refunded. In an advance refunding, the new debt proceeds are placed with an escrow agent and invested until they are used to pay principal and interest of the old debt at a future time; outstanding securities are refinanced more than 90 days prior to their call or maturity date.3 In a crossover refunding, bonds referred to as crossover bonds are issued for the purpose of paying off an existing bond issue (referred to as the refunded bonds). The crossover bonds are initially collateralized by an escrow of investments purchased with the crossover bond proceeds, and the refunded bonds continue to be secured by their original collateral or revenue stream. On a specified date, the investments held in escrow are sold, and the refunded bonds are redeemed. Then, the crossover bonds become collateralized by the original collateral or payable from the original revenue stream. In refunding transactions, the entity must either call the bonds (if allowed) to redeem them early or irrevocably set aside the funds to pay them off in a defeasance. These situations are discussed subsequently.

---

3 Per the Tax Reform Act of 1986, new money bonds issued prior to January 1, 1986, can be advance refunded twice, but bonds issued on or after that date can only be advance refunded once.
Calls and Mode Conversions

7.18 Some bond contracts allow a health care entity to repay the bonds prior to their scheduled maturity date, which is referred to as a call option. Typically, new bonds are issued to pay off the outstanding bonds (a refunding).

7.19 Some bonds are structured as multimodal, which permits the health care entity to exercise an interest mode conversion. A multimodal feature provides the health care entity with a contractual right to change the interest feature of the bond from one form to another (for example, an auction-based interest rate to a fixed-rate or index-based variable interest rate). In most cases, a mode conversion involves a call (referred to as a mandatory tender) of the old bonds and marketing of new bonds to new investors, as well as existing bondholders. Thus, the mode conversion is similar to a traditional refunding, and the same accounting considerations apply to mode conversions as refunding.

Defeasance

7.20 If the health care entity would like to retire the debt early but does not have a call option, defeasance is a financing tool that allows it to obtain some or all of the benefits of repaying bondholders prior to actually retiring the debt. In a defeasance, the health care entity purchases government securities for deposit into an escrow account and irrevocably pledges the securities to the payment of the outstanding bonds. The securities and their related earnings are sufficient to pay the principal and interest on the bonds when they come due. In essence, the health care entity is substituting collateral on the debt. Often, some or all of the funds deposited into the escrow account arise from an advance refunding. Generally, the revenues originally pledged as security on the outstanding securities switch over to become security for payment of the refunding bonds (the new issue) on the date that the advance refunding bonds are issued.

7.21 Defeasances are categorized as legal or economic. The terms of some bond contracts allow for legal defeasance, which is the termination of the rights and interests of the bondholders and their lien on the pledged revenues or other security. When the conditions specified in the bond contract for legal defeasance are met, the health care entity's obligation for repayment of the bonds is satisfied in full, and the debt is extinguished.

7.22 In other situations, sometimes referred to as an in-substance or economic defeasance, establishing a defeasance escrow account makes the revenues pledged as collateral available for other purposes without actually effecting a legal defeasance. This might be used if, for example, the bond contract does not provide a procedure for termination of the bondholders' rights and interests other than through redemption of the bonds. In an economic defeasance, if for some reason the escrowed funds prove insufficient to make future payments on the old debt, the health care entity is still legally obligated to make payment on such debt from the pledged revenues.

7.23 FASB ASC 405-20-55 provides implementation guidance on the extinguishment of liabilities, including in-substance and legal defeasances.

7.24 When a defeasance occurs, the debtor has not paid the creditor. Therefore, liabilities are considered extinguished for accounting purposes only if the debtor is legally released from being the primary obligor under the liability, either judicially or by the creditor. In a legal defeasance, generally, the
creditor legally releases the debtor from being the primary obligor under the liability; however, the question of whether the debtor has in fact been legally released is a matter of law, not an accounting determination. A legal opinion may be required. An in-substance defeasance transaction normally does not meet the derecognition criteria for either the liability or escrowed assets, unless a legal release is obtained.

7.25 Paragraphs 4–6 of FASB ASC 860-10-40 provide standards for determining whether financial assets should be derecognized.

7.26 Derecognition of the assets in the defeasance trust may need to be separately evaluated, even if the defeased debt has met the criteria for derecognition. Because the obligor must surrender control over the assets transferred to the trust, and the transferred assets must be legally isolated from the obligor (for example, presumptively put beyond the reach of the obligor and its creditors, even in bankruptcy or other receivership), if the obligor has any type of continuing involvement with the transferred assets (for example, if the obligor has the ability to direct the investment of trust assets or is entitled to residual assets upon termination of the trust), a separate legal isolation opinion may be required in order to conclude that the conditions for derecognition have been met.

Modifications

7.27 When one debt instrument is replaced with another, such as occurs in refundings or interest mode conversions, and the new debt instrument is held by the same creditor(s) as the old, questions may arise about whether the transaction is considered a debt modification or debt extinguishment.

7.28 Paragraphs 6–12 of FASB ASC 470-50-40 provide guidance for determining whether a replacement of one debt instrument with another is a modification of the original debt terms or the extinguishment of one obligation and issuance of another. FASB ASC 470-50-40-6 states that an exchange of debt instruments with substantially different terms is a debt extinguishment and should be accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 405-20-40-1 by derecognizing the liability. FASB ASC 470-50-40-10 states that from the debtor's perspective, an exchange of debt instruments between a debtor and creditor in a nontroubled debt situation is deemed to have been accomplished with debt instruments that are substantially different if the present value of the cash flows under the terms of the new debt instrument is at least 10 percent different from the present value of the cash flows under the terms of the original instrument. However, if the debt modification is considered a troubled debt restructuring, the guidance in FASB ASC 470-60 would apply.

7.29 When evaluating whether a modification or an exchange has occurred with a public debt issuance, the debt instrument is the individual security held by an investor, and the creditor is the security holder. Thus, the unit of account is not for the bond issue in total but on a bondholder-by-bondholder basis. As a practical matter, if the bonds are widely held, it may be reasonable to conclude that the issuance of new bonds to pay off old bonds is not a refinancing of debt with the same creditors; thus, it is an extinguishment, rather than a modification. If the bonds are not widely held, and the transaction is in essence a refinancing of debt with the same creditor(s), it is necessary to determine whether the difference between the present value of the remaining cash flows associated with the original obligation and the present value of the cash flows...
associated with the new obligation is less than 10 percent. If the difference is less than 10 percent, the transaction is a modification.

7.30 For a conduit bond offering involving a governmental financing agency, a health care entity should determine whether the financing agency is acting as a principal or an agent of the obligor in order to determine whether the transaction is an extinguishment or a modification.

7.31 Paragraphs 19–20 of FASB ASC 470-50-40 and paragraphs 4–7 of FASB ASC 470-50-55 provide guidance and indicators to consider in making such a determination.

**Gain or Loss on Debt Extinguishment**

7.32 FASB ASC 470-50 addresses how a gain or loss on a debt extinguishment should be measured. It applies to all extinguishments of debt, regardless of whether the extinguishment is early, except debt that is extinguished through a troubled debt restructuring or convertible debt. Per FASB ASC 470-50-40-2, the difference between the reacquisition price and net carrying amount of the extinguished debt should be recognized currently in income of the period of extinguishment as losses or gains and identified as a separate item. Gains and losses should not be amortized to future periods. Classification of the gain or loss is discussed in FASB ASC 470-50-45. See paragraph 7.65 for additional discussion.

7.33 The reacquisition price of debt is the amount paid on extinguishment, including a call premium and miscellaneous costs of reacquisition. If extinguishment is achieved by a direct exchange of new securities, the reacquisition price is the fair value of the new securities. The net carrying amount of the extinguished debt is the amount due at maturity, adjusted for unamortized premium, discount, and cost of issuance.

**Debt Issuance Costs**

7.34 Paragraphs 17–18 of FASB ASC 470-50-40 provide guidance for reporting costs incurred by the debtor in connection with an exchange or a modification of debt instruments. The accounting treatment depends on whether the fees are paid to the creditor or other third parties. The following paragraph summarizes that guidance but is not a substitute for reading the referenced paragraphs.

7.35 If the exchange or modification is to be accounted for in the same manner as a debt extinguishment, and the new debt instrument is initially recorded at fair value, then (a) the fees between the debtor and creditor are included in determining the debt extinguishment gain or loss to be recognized, and (b) the third-party costs are amortized over the term of the new debt instrument using the interest method in a manner similar to debt issue costs. If the exchange or modification is not accounted for in the same manner as a debt extinguishment, then (a) the fees between the debtor and creditor, along with any existing unamortized premium or discount, are amortized as an adjustment of interest expense over the remaining term of the replacement or modified debt instrument using the interest method, and (b) the third-party costs are expensed as incurred.

7.36 As discussed in FASB ASC 470-50-40, in the event of a mode conversion, modification, or extinguishment of debt, there may be effects on the
related prepaid bond issuance costs or deferred issuance costs, such as writing off all or a portion of these costs or revised amortization periods.

**Puts or Tender Options**

7.37 Some bond contracts allow the bonds to be repaid prior to their stated maturity at the option of the bondholder. The bondholder’s right to request earlier payment is referred to as a tender option (or sometimes a put option). Some health care entities utilize bank agreements, such as letters of credit or standby bond purchase agreements (a liquidity facility), to provide liquidity for the put or tender feature. If a bondholder exercises its put option, the health care entity generally will seek to sell the put bonds to another investor through its remarketing agent. If another investor is found who accepts the same terms as the original bondholder, the transaction occurs between the bondholders and does not affect the accounting by the health care entity. The proceeds of the resale are used to pay the original bondholder. If another investor cannot be found (for example, a failed remarketing), the health care entity is required to pay the bondholder. If the health care entity has a liquidity facility, then the liquidity provider generally advances the funds needed to pay the bondholder. At that point, ownership of the bonds transfers to the liquidity provider, and they become bank bonds. The interest rate payable on bank bonds converts to the rate stipulated in the liquidity facility agreement. Efforts continue to remarket the bank bonds for the period of time stipulated in the liquidity facility agreement. If another bondholder is found within that period, the proceeds generally are used to pay off the liquidity facility; the interest rate returns to the terms in the original bond agreement; and the bonds revert to their normal status, with the one exception discussed in paragraph 7.15.

7.38 If another buyer cannot be found after a certain period, the liquidity facility generally ceases to be interest only and converts to a term loan. The health care entity repays the debt over a relatively short period of time, rather than over the original stated maturity of the bonds. In effect, the bank (the liquidity facility) exchanges the term loan for the bond, and the bond is derecognized because its terms are substantially different from those of the term loan.

7.39 In some cases, health care entities may forego using an external liquidity facility. If a failed remarketing occurs, the health care entity pays the holder of the put bonds using its own cash and liquid investments (self-liquidity). In these situations, the bonds are considered extinguished when the failed remarketing occurs, regardless of whether the put bonds are retained by the health care entity as Treasury bonds or retired.

**IRS Considerations**

7.40 As discussed in paragraph 7.05, interest paid to holders of tax-exempt bonds is often exempt from all federal income taxes and sometimes state or local taxes, as well. In order to maintain the bonds’ tax-exempt status, health care entities must comply with all applicable federal tax laws and Treasury regulations, including, but not limited to, the use of bond-financed property and arbitrage requirements. The IRS encourages IRC Section 501(c)(3) organizations to implement procedures that will enable them to adequately safeguard against postissuance violations that could result in the loss of the tax-exempt status of the bonds. IRS Publication 4078, *Tax-Exempt Private Activity Bonds* (available
Municipal Bond Financing

for download at www.irs.gov/pub/irs-pdf/p4078.pdf) is a helpful source of information regarding the requirements. Requirements related to arbitrage and the qualified use of proceeds are briefly summarized subsequently.

7.41 Tax-exempt bonds bear interest at lower rates than taxable bonds due to the inherent federal tax subsidy. Safeguards exist, so that entities do not attempt to inappropriately benefit from this subsidy by issuing tax-exempt bonds and then investing the proceeds to earn arbitrage, which is the difference between the interest earned on the invested funds and the interest rate that the health care entity must pay to the bondholders. Specific IRS requirements control arbitrage and dictate which bond issues are subject to rebate (for example, remitting excess earnings to the federal government) and when the yield on investments must be restricted. Certain exceptions apply to these provisions based on the nature and timing of the expenditures paid by the bond proceeds.

7.42 FASB ASC 954-470-25-2 states that IRS regulations concerning tax-exempt debt prohibit the yield realized from the investment of the proceeds of tax-exempt debt from exceeding the interest rate to be paid on such debt. Whenever a health care entity invests tax-exempt bond proceeds, and the ultimate yield is higher than the interest rate on the bonds, the entity may be subject to an arbitrage rebate liability. The arbitrage determination is made as of the date of the issue; however, intentional acts undertaken after the date of the issue can retroactively disqualify the issue. The earnings in excess of interest expense represent a liability that must be paid to the Department of the Treasury in order for the bonds to maintain their tax-exempt status. The arbitrage rebate liability may be a substantial amount if the bond proceeds are not spent as quickly as planned. For example, this may occur if a provider encounters a delay in a major construction project.

7.43 The type of project(s) that is funded by a bond affects the taxability of income received by the bondholders. Conduit bonds issued for projects that only benefit private parties (private activity bonds) normally are taxable. Conduit bonds issued to finance facilities owned and utilized by IRC Section 501(c)(3) nonprofit organizations are exempt from federal income tax if they are qualified 501(c)(3) bonds. To qualify for tax exemption, at least 95 percent of the net bond proceeds must be used for exempt activities. Thus, no more than 5 percent of the net proceeds may be used in any private business use or by the NFP in an unrelated trade or business activity. Bond issuance costs are considered part of the 5 percent private use and reduce the available net proceeds for other types of private use. IRC Section 501(c)(3) borrowers must ensure that the IRS rules on private use are met both at the time that the bonds are issued and throughout the life of the bonds.

7.44 Treasury regulations provide for certain remedial actions to cure uses of proceeds that would otherwise cause the qualified 501(c)(3) bonds to lose their exempt status. Those remedial actions can include redemption or defeasance of bonds, alternative qualified use of disposition proceeds, or alternative use of the bond-financed facilities. Entities may also be eligible to enter into a closing agreement under IRS Notice 2008-31, Voluntary Closing Agreement Program For Tax-Exempt Bonds and Tax Credit Bonds, which is available at www.irs.gov/pub/irs-drop/n-08-31.pdf.
Balance Sheet

7.45 According to FASB ASC 954-470-25-1, when a financing authority issues tax-exempt bonds or similar debt instruments and uses the proceeds for the benefit of a health care entity, the obligation should be reported as a liability in the entity’s balance sheet if the health care entity is responsible for repayment. In some cases, this obligation may take the form of a liability arising from a capital lease. If a health care entity has no obligation to make payments of principal and interest on the debt or capital or operating lease payments on related buildings or equipment, the entity should not reflect the liability on its balance sheet. In such circumstances, proceeds from the bond issue shall be reported as contributions from the sponsoring entity.

7.46 Although bonds typically have a stated maturity of many years, careful consideration should be given to classification of the liability as current or noncurrent based on the features of the debt. Debt that appears to be long term based on its legal maturity might not be considered long term for financial reporting purposes because of subjective acceleration clauses or due-on-demand (put) provisions. Careful consideration of the bond agreements and related documents (for example, bond indenture, loan and trust agreement, liquidity facility, and so on) may be required in order to make a determination of whether debt is properly classified.

7.47 The principal guidance for evaluating the appropriate balance sheet classification of debt obligations is found in FASB ASC 210-10-45, 470-10-45, and 470-10-55.

Classification of Debt With Due-on-Demand or Put Provisions

7.48 FASB ASC 470-10-45-10 states that the current liability classification should include obligations that, by their terms, are due on demand or will be due on demand within one year (or operating cycle, if longer) from the balance sheet date, even though liquidation may not be expected within that period.

7.49 For example, some variable-rate bonds have a demand feature (a put or tender option) whereby the bondholder may require the health care entity or its remarketing agent to repurchase the bonds, often on short notice. Demand obligations normally are classified as current liabilities, despite the fact that the bond’s stated maturities cover many years. However, such obligations often are supported by a liquidity facility, such as a standby bond purchase agreement or letter of credit from a financial institution, that provides the health care entity with the ability to refinance, on a long-term basis, any obligation that may arise if tendered bonds cannot immediately be remarketed to another investor, as discussed in paragraph 7.37.

7.50 FASB ASC 470-10-55-8 states that debt agreements that allow a debt holder to redeem (or put) a debt instrument on demand (or within one year) should be classified as short-term liabilities despite the existence of a best-efforts remarketing agreement. Unless the issuer (health care entity) of the redeemable debt instrument has the ability and intent to refinance the debt on a long-term basis, as provided for in FASB ASC 470-10-45-14, the debt should be classified as a current liability.
7.51 FASB ASC 470-10-45-14 requires that the intent to refinance the short-term obligation on a long-term basis be supported by an ability to consummate the refinancing that is demonstrated in either of the following ways: (a) postbalance sheet date issuance of a long-term obligation or equity securities or (b) a financing agreement. If a financing agreement is used to justify noncurrent classification of the bonds, FASB ASC 470-10-45-14(b) requires that before the balance sheet is issued or available to be issued, the entity must have entered into a financing agreement that clearly permits the entity to refinance the short-term obligation on a long-term basis on terms that are readily determinable, and all three conditions in FASB ASC 470-10-45-14(b) must be met.

7.52 In summary, those three conditions are as follows:

a. The agreement does not expire within one year from the date of the entity's balance sheet, and during that period, the agreement is not cancelable by the lender, except for violation of a provision with which compliance is objectively determinable or measurable. Further, any obligations incurred under the agreement are not callable during that period.

b. No violation of any provision in the financing agreement exists at the balance sheet date, and no available information indicates that a violation has occurred thereafter, or if a violation has occurred thereafter, a waiver has been obtained.

c. The lender is expected to be financially capable of honoring the agreement.

However, the conditions are very complex, and the preceding summary is not intended as a substitute for reading paragraphs 14–20 of FASB ASC 470-10-45.

7.53 If the liquidity facility, which is the financing agreement, contains a subjective acceleration clause, the liquidity facility does not meet the first condition in the previous paragraph because compliance with that clause is not objectively determinable or measureable. The health care entity is not deemed to have the ability and intent to finance on a long-term basis and, thus, cannot classify the debt as noncurrent, even if the repayment terms of the liquidity facility would otherwise support such classification. See paragraph 7.55 for the definition of a subjective acceleration clause. The probability of the subjective acceleration clause being exercised is irrelevant when attempting to demonstrate the ability to refinance a short-term obligation on a long-term basis. See related discussion in paragraph 7.56.

7.54 Rather than utilizing a liquidity facility issued by an external third party, some health care entities choose to utilize their own funds for satisfying puts or tenders. Health care entities that do so have no basis for excluding those put and tender obligations from current liabilities because no third party provides liquidity that would effectively allow the entity to refinance the debt on a long-term basis.

Classification of Debt With a Subjective Acceleration Clause

7.55 The FASB ASC glossary defines a subjective acceleration clause as "a provision in a debt agreement that states that the creditor may accelerate the scheduled maturities of the obligation under conditions that are not objectively determinable (for example, if the debtor fails to maintain satisfactory operations or if a material adverse change occurs)." For long-term obligations,
Health Care Entities

the effect of a subjective acceleration clause on balance sheet classification is determined by FASB ASC 470-10-45-2. That paragraph states that in some situations, the circumstances (for example, recurring losses or liquidity problems) would indicate that long-term debt subject to a subjective acceleration clause should be classified as a current liability. Other situations would indicate only disclosure of the existence of such clauses. Neither reclassification nor disclosure would be required if the likelihood of the acceleration of the due date was remote, such as if the lender historically has not accelerated due dates of loans containing similar clauses and the financial condition of the borrower is strong and its prospects are bright.

7.56 In other words, a long-term obligation could continue to be classified as noncurrent, unless it was probable it would be called. For an obligation that by its terms is short term, FASB ASC 470-10-55-1 states that a higher standard is required for a financing agreement that permits an entity to refinance a short-term obligation on a long-term basis than is required for an existing long-term loan for which early repayment might be requested. As discussed in paragraph 7.53, if at financing agreement that permits an entity to refinance a short-term obligation on a long-term basis contains a subjective acceleration clause, its mere presence is enough to preclude long-term classification.

Classification of Long-Term Debt With a Covenant Violation

7.57 Violations of covenants could cause termination of the financing agreement or demand for immediate repayment. Thus, debt covenant violations can affect the balance sheet classification.

7.58 Paragraphs 11–12 of FASB ASC 470-10-45 discuss the classification of long-term obligations that are callable by the creditor because the debtor's violation of a provision of the debt agreement at the balance sheet date either makes the obligation callable or may become callable because the violation, if not cured within a specified grace period, will make the obligation callable. Those paragraphs require that such callable obligations be classified as current liabilities, unless either of the two conditions in FASB ASC 470-10-45-11 is met.

7.59 In summary, those two conditions are as follows:

a. The creditor has waived or subsequently lost the right to demand repayment more than one year from the balance sheet date.

b. The long-term obligation contains a grace period within which the debtor may cure the violation, and it is probable that the violation will be cured within that period.

However, the conditions are complex, and the preceding summary is not intended as a substitute for reading paragraphs 11–12 of FASB ASC 470-10-45.

7.60 If neither of those two conditions is met, the debt is classified as short term, regardless of the fact that the creditor has not demanded repayment, and no indication exists that the creditor intends to do so within the next year. Further, no distinction between significant and insignificant violations should be drawn. That is the right of the creditor, and if the violation is considered insignificant by the creditor, the debtor should be able to obtain a waiver.

7.61 Paragraphs 2–6 of FASB ASC 470-10-55 provide examples of classification of long-term debt when a debt covenant violation at the balance sheet
date is waived by a lender for a period greater than one year, but the entity must meet the covenant on a quarterly or semiannual basis.

Subsequent Events

7.62 Events occurring subsequent to the balance sheet date but before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued may need to be reflected in the financial statements, either by changing the balance sheet classification of the debt or by disclosure. For example, bond restructuring transactions occurring after the balance sheet date may have an effect on the debtor's current or noncurrent balance sheet classifications as of that balance sheet date, and extinguishing or modifying the terms of a bond issue may require disclosure. Chapter 3, "Unique Financial Statement Considerations for Not-For-Profit Health Care Entities," of this guide includes additional information about subsequent events, including a discussion of whether a health care entity evaluates subsequent events through the issuance date of the financial statements or the date that the financial statements are available to be issued.

Assets Limited as to Use

7.63 Debt-financing instruments may require either cash or investments, or both, to be set aside in special accounts that can only be used for debt-related purposes, such as unexpended proceeds of debt issues and funds deposited with a trustee and limited to use in accordance with the requirements of a bond indenture or similar document (for example, sinking funds, debt reserve funds, or defeasance-related escrows). Such assets are usually reported in the balance sheet caption "Assets Limited as to Use." The portion of assets whose use is limited (that is, required for liquidation of current liabilities) is reported as current assets, with the remainder reported as noncurrent assets.

Statement of Operations

7.64 If the proceeds of tax-exempt borrowings are externally restricted to the acquisition of specified qualifying assets or to service the related debt, the amount of interest cost capitalized should be determined in accordance with paragraphs 10–12 of FASB ASC 835-20-30. Those considerations are discussed in chapter 6, "Property and Equipment and Other Assets," of this guide.

7.65 Pursuant to FASB ASC 470-50-40-2, gains or losses on the extinguishment of debt should be recognized currently in income of the period of extinguishment and identified as a separate item. Paragraphs 2–7 of FASB ASC 225-20-45 provide the criteria that must be met for gains and losses from the extinguishment of debt to be classified as extraordinary items.

Disclosures

7.66 General disclosure requirements for debt, such as description of the debt, collateral, interest rate, covenants, and guarantees, are set forth in FASB ASC 470-10-50. If debt was considered to be extinguished by in-substance defeasance under the provisions of FASB Statement No. 76, Extinguishment of Debt—an amendment of APB Opinion No. 26, before the effective date of FASB Statement No. 125, Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities (that is, before December 31, 1996), FASB ASC 470-10-50-1 requires disclosure of the amount of the debt and a
description of the transaction as long as the debt remains outstanding. FASB ASC 860-30-50-2 provides disclosure requirements for assets that are set aside solely for the purpose of satisfying scheduled payments of a specific obligation.

7.67 If short-term obligations are classified in the balance sheet as a long-term liability because the health care entity has the ability and intent to refinance the debt on a long-term basis, as discussed in paragraph 7.51, those obligations need to be included in the disclosure of the combined aggregate amount of maturities and sinking fund requirements for all long-term borrowings that is required by FASB ASC 470-10-50-1. In those situations, the health care entity must ensure that disclosure is made of both the debt repayment schedule of the liquidity facility and the stated maturity of the bonds. This can be done by either (a) including one repayment schedule in the table and providing a narrative disclosure related to the other or (b) providing two tabular schedules (one for the liquidity facility payment schedule and the other based on the stated maturity of the bonds).

7.68 As discussed in paragraphs 7.06–.08, additional disclosures are required for entities defined as public entities. Generally, public entities are those that have debt or equity securities that trade in public markets. Because FASB ASC has multiple definitions for the term public entity, careful attention should be paid to such disclosure requirements to determine if their scope includes conduit bond obligors whose bonds trade in public markets.

7.69 Paragraphs 10–19 of FASB ASC 825-10-50 require that public entities disclose the fair value of all financial instruments, whether recognized or not recognized in the statement of financial position, for which it is practicable to estimate that value. The disclosure is also required of nonpublic entities if their assets are $100 million or more on the date of the financial statements or if they have derivative instruments.

7.70 As discussed in paragraphs 7.09–.11, some health care entities may utilize a credit enhancement to make their bonds more attractive to investors or to allow them to access the market at more favorable rates. FASB ASC 820-10-35-18A states that an entity should not include the effect of an inseparable third-party credit enhancement in the fair value measurement of the liability. For the issuer (obligor), the unit of accounting for a liability measured or disclosed at fair value does not include the third-party credit enhancement. Thus, when disclosing the fair value of debt obligations that have a third-party credit enhancement that is inseparable from the liability, such as bond insurance, the fair value measurement should consider only the credit standing of the health care entity, rather than the credit standing of the guarantor. If fair value is determined based on the prices at which the bonds are trading in markets, an adjustment needs to be made for the difference between the credit standing of the guarantor (on which the market trades are based) and the credit standing of the health care entity.

7.71 FASB ASC 855-10-55-2 cites the sale of a bond after the balance sheet date but before financial statements are issued or available to be issued as an example of an event that requires disclosure in the notes to the financial statements.

7.72 Other events occurring after the balance sheet date, such as failed auctions, potential or actual cancellation of a liquidity facility, defaults, or a mandatory tender of bonds may also need to be disclosed in the financial statements as subsequent events.
Obligated Group Reporting

7.73 Some debt agreements involving obligated groups require audited financial statements for the obligated group to use in the bond offering document and thereafter to be provided in the continuing disclosure documents, or both, on an annual, ongoing basis. Often, these special purpose financial statements will exclude, based on the contractual agreement, entities otherwise required to be consolidated in a health care entity's general-purpose financial statements. For special purpose financial statements prepared in accordance with the contractual basis of accounting, paragraph .20 of AU-C section 800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks (AICPA, Professional Standards), requires that the auditor's report on special purpose financial statements include an other-matter paragraph, under an appropriate heading, that restricts the use of the auditor's report solely to those within the entity and the parties to the contract or agreement.

7.74 Many obligated groups are required to annually submit audited financial statements to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board's (MSRB's) Electronic Municipal Market Access (EMMA) system, which is a system for disseminating the information to investors in municipal securities and other interested parties. See appendix A of this chapter for additional information. In practice, frequently the financial statements filed with EMMA are the entity's general-purpose financial statements accompanied by supplemental consolidating schedules that include obligated group members' financial information (in lieu of presenting standalone special purpose financial statements for the obligated group members). However, there are instances where standalone special purpose obligated group financial statements are issued. Because EMMA makes the financial statements and accompanying auditor's report broadly available, it is not advisable to submit standalone special purpose obligated group financial statements that are accompanied by an auditor's restricted-use report. However, standalone special purpose obligated group financial statements, accompanied by an auditor's restricted-use report, may be included with general-purpose external financial statements that are accompanied by an auditor's general-use report.4

Interim Financial Reporting

7.75 Often, continuing disclosure agreements entered into by a health care entity in connection with municipal bond financings will require the entity to provide financial information to investors on both a quarterly and an annual basis. In such situations, the entity should consider the requirements of FASB ASC 270, Interim Reporting, which provides guidance on accounting and disclosure issues peculiar to interim reporting and sets forth minimum disclosure requirements for interim financial reports of publicly-traded companies. FASB ASC 270-10-50-3 states that it is presumed that users of summarized interim financial data will have read the latest published annual report, including the financial disclosures required by GAAP and management's commentary concerning the annual financial results, and that the summarized interim data will be viewed in that context.

4 See paragraph .A5 of AU-C section 905, Alert That Restricts the Use of the Auditor's Written Communication (AICPA, Professional Standards).
7.76 FASB ASC 270-10-50-1 provides the minimum requirements for summarized financial information at interim dates, including reports on fourth quarters, presented by publicly-traded companies. In addition, FASB ASC 270-10-50-4 encourages publicly-traded companies to publish balance sheet and cash flow data at interim dates because this data often assists users of the interim financial information in their understanding and interpretation of the reported income data. If condensed interim balance sheet information or cash flow data is not presented at interim reporting dates, significant changes since the last reporting period with respect to liquid assets, net working capital, long-term liabilities, and stockholders' equity (net assets) should be disclosed.

Auditing

General

7.77 Auditing objectives and procedures for long-term debt issued by health care entities generally are similar to those of other entities. In obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to long-term debt, the auditor may consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures that are presented in exhibit 7-1.

7.78 The amount, type, and classification of bonds in the financial statements is of interest to investors, bond rating agencies, and others who influence the supply of financial resources, such as financial guarantors. As discussed in the accounting sections of this chapter, many bond-related transactions and accounts involve special accounting measurement, presentation, and disclosure principles that require particular audit attention. The auditor should read financing instruments carefully to be sure that the financing is properly classified and described in the financial statements. Determining whether debt is considered long term or short term for accounting purposes has pervasive implications for financial reporting and compliance with debt covenants. Audit implications of certain other matters are highlighted subsequently, including compliance with debt covenants, credit-related triggers in debt agreements, and implications of transactions related to the issuance, remarketing, and refinancing of debt.

Covenants

7.79 The auditor should consider reviewing restrictive covenants of the various bond-related agreements to evaluate the health care entity's compliance with covenants and the appropriateness of the presentation and disclosure of covenants in the financial statements. A borrower's failure to comply with financial covenants may be a signal that the borrower is facing financial troubles and that the debt may become callable, changing the historical classification and disclosure requirements associated with its debt. If a default on a bond covenant has occurred, the auditor should evaluate the appropriateness of classification of debt as long term. If several types of financing are outstanding, the auditor should compare transactions in each type with the restrictions and provisions of the others. For example, some debt obligations contain a cross-default provision, which could result in acceleration of the lender's right of repayment because of default under, or violation of, other agreements. The existence of certain types of covenants can have implications for classification of the bonds, even in the absence of a covenant violation.
7.80 The auditor should obtain written waivers of conditions of noncompliance of debt covenants directly from the responsible lending officers or trustees. It is not appropriate for the auditor to rely solely on management's written or oral representations or representations from the client's legal counsel that lenders or trustees have waived the violations. In reviewing a waiver of debt covenant violations to determine whether the liability should be classified as current or long term, the auditor should obtain assurance that the waiver is unconditional for a period greater than one year from the balance sheet date and that it specifically and appropriately addresses each event of noncompliance.

7.81 Some covenants take the form of a subjective acceleration clause in which the creditor may accelerate the scheduled maturities of the obligation under conditions that are not objectively determinable (for example, if the debtor fails to maintain satisfactory operations or a material adverse change occurs). The mere presence of a subjective acceleration clause in a lending document has implications for balance sheet classification, even if it is not in danger of being triggered. In evaluating those implications, the auditor will need to carefully consider whether the underlying debt is considered long term or short term (see paragraphs 7.53 and 7.55–.56).

Credit Ratings

7.82 Credit rating downgrades of material counterparties to debt-related transactions of the health care entity can have implications for the entity's own credit standing. For example, if bonds are credit enhanced, the credit rating on the health care entity's bonds is based on the credit rating of the guarantor or letter of credit provider, rather than the financial stability of the health care entity itself. A downgrade in the credit rating of the credit enhancer will automatically trigger a downgrade of the rating on the health care entity's bonds, even if the health care entity's financial health has not deteriorated. Credit rating downgrades of others may trigger clauses in derivative agreements that result in the automatic termination of a swap, a demand presented to a health care entity for immediate payment of a swap liability, or a requirement for a health care entity to post collateral based on the downgrade of either the derivative counterparty (or its guarantor) or the health care entity.

Debt Restructuring

7.83 Changes in market conditions may cause health care entities to restructure their bonds in various ways. Some may seek to issue new bonds, to change the interest mode on existing bonds, or buy back their own bonds. In such situations, the auditor may be required to evaluate management's analysis of whether the transaction represented a modification of debt or an extinguishment. In addition, such actions may affect the balance sheet classification of the liabilities. A refinancing from long-term debt to short-term debt (for example, from fixed-rate or auction-rate bonds to variable-rate demand obligations) can potentially cause changes in the balance sheet classification and potentially trigger liquidity covenants. Debt restructuring may result in the discontinuation of hedge accounting for related interest rate swaps, which can also have bond covenant compliance implications.

7.84 An advance refunding transaction that results in defeasance may trigger the need for audit evidence supporting assertions of legal release from liabilities or legal isolation of escrowed assets. Although no direct auditing
guidance regarding the form and content of a typical legal letter governing a legal defeasance exists, the principles outlined in Interpretation No. 1, "The Use of Legal Interpretations as Audit Evidence to Support Management's Assertion That a Transfer of Financial Assets Has Met the Isolation Criterion in Paragraphs 7–14 of Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 860-10-40," of AU-C section 620, Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 9620 par. .01–.21), may be helpful in determining whether documentation obtained by the health care entity is adequate audit evidence that the debtor has been legally released as the primary obligor of the bonds. Based on the facts and circumstances of a particular defeasance transaction, in the auditor's judgment, a legal opinion obtained by the health care entity may be needed as audit evidence to support the assertion that the assets transferred to the defeasance escrow trust have met the isolation criterion discussed in paragraph 7.26.

7.85 Some bonds (for example, variable-rate demand obligations) may involve the use of remarketing agreements and backup liquidity facilities. Failed remarketings and resulting draws upon liquidity facilities may create or exacerbate liquidity problems for a health care entity. As discussed in paragraph 7.37, if a significant amount of bonds are tendered and ultimately become bank bonds, the health care entity must repay those obligations based on the much shorter debt repayment schedule of the liquidity facility, rather than the expected maturity of the bonds. In some cases, the financial viability of the liquidity provider may be in question. The implications of such matters should be considered when assessing debt covenant compliance, liquidity, and going concern.

Auditor Involvement With Municipal Securities Filings

Conditions Affecting Auditor Involvement

7.86 Because there is no SEC requirement for auditor involvement with governmental official statements, an auditor generally is not required to participate in, or undertake any procedures with respect to, a government's official statement.5 The auditor may become involved in the following activities with respect to the official statement:

- Assisting in preparing the financial information6 included in the official statement
- Reviewing a draft of the official statement at the government's request
- Signing (manually or electronically) the independent auditor's report for inclusion in a specific official statement7
- Providing written agreement (for example, through a consent letter or signed authorization form) for the use of the independent auditor's report in a specific official statement (see paragraphs 7.92–.96)
- Providing a revised independent auditor's report8 for inclusion in a specific official statement

---

5 Some auditors require that they become involved with a governmental health care entity's official statements, even though the conditions described in this paragraph establishing involvement would not otherwise exist. See the discussion in paragraph 7.90.

AAG-HCO 7.85
Municipal Bond Financing

- Issuing a comfort letter, the letter described in paragraph .12 of AU-C section 920, *Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties* (AICPA, Professional Standards), or an attestation engagement report in lieu of a comfort or similar letter on information included in the official statement (see paragraphs 7.98–.101)

- Issuing a report on an attestation engagement relating to the debt offering (see paragraph 7.103)

7.87 Although AU-C section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses auditor responsibilities with respect to other information contained in documents, such as annual reports, paragraph .02 of AU-C section 720 states that it may be applied, adapted as necessary in the circumstances, to other documents to which the auditor devotes attention. Therefore, if the auditor is involved with an official statement, the guidance in AU-C section 720 may be applied.

7.88 If the guidance in AU-C section 720 is applied, the auditor should communicate the auditor’s responsibility for other information in a document containing audited financial statements, any procedures performed, and the results. That requirement pertains to the financial statements currently being issued, and thus would not apply retroactively to official statements. However, that communication could supply that information for official statements issued during the current audit period and through the auditor’s report date, whether or not the auditor was involved with those official statements.

7.89 The auditor is not required to participate in, or undertake any procedures with respect to, a client’s continuing disclosure documents, even though they may include audited financial statements because a client’s continuing disclosures are not required to be submitted to or disseminated from the distributing organizations as a single document. Any attention the auditor devotes to other information included with audited financial statements in continuing disclosure documents at the client’s request should be considered a consulting engagement under the provisions of AICPA Statement on Standards for Consulting Services No. 1, *Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards* (AICPA, Professional Standards, CS sec. 100).

**Auditor-Established Involvement**

7.90 Although an auditor is not required to become involved with a client’s official statements, some auditors include a provision in the terms of the engagement requiring the client to obtain permission from the auditor before

---

6 For the purpose of this requirement, *financial information* does not include the financial statements covered by the auditor’s opinion or, for governmental health care entities, the required supplementary information (RSI) or supplementary information other than RSI accompanying those financial statements that the auditor already considered during the audit of the financial statements.

7 This situation involves an original manual or electronic signature on the auditor’s report, not a reproduction of an auditor’s report that was manually or electronically signed. For example, the underwriter or bond counsel may require a copy of the auditor’s report with an original manual or electronic signature to file with the official closing documents for the offering.

8 A revised report would, for example, eliminate the references made by the auditor in the original report to (a) supplementary information that the auditor reported on in relation to the basic financial statements or (b) the audit and reports required by *Government Auditing Standards* (also referred to as the Yellow Book), issued by the Comptroller General of the United States.
using the independent auditor's report in the official statement. Such a provision may be used by the auditor to establish a requirement that the auditor become involved with the client's official statements when the client requests the required permission from the auditor.

**Clarification in the Official Statement When There Is No Auditor Involvement**

7.91 When the auditor and client agree not to include a provision in the terms of the engagement that would require auditor involvement, as discussed in paragraph 7.86, the auditor may include in the terms of the engagement a requirement that any official statements issued by the client with which the auditor is not involved clearly indicate that the auditor is not involved with the contents of such official statements. Such a disclosure could read as follows: "[Name of firm], our independent auditor, has not been engaged to perform and has not performed, since the date of its report included herein, any procedures on the financial statements addressed in that report. [Name of firm] also has not performed any procedures relating to this official statement."

**Auditing Interpretations Regarding Official Statements**

7.92 Paragraphs 16–20 of exhibit A, "Background," of AU-C section 925, Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933 (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses the auditor's agreement to (a) being named in and (b) the use of an auditor's report in an offering document other than one registered under the of 1933 Act.10

7.93 Paragraphs 16–18 of exhibit A in AU-C section 925 state the term expert has a specific statutory meaning under the Securities Act of 1933. Outside the Securities Act of 1933 context, the term expert is typically undefined. Accordingly, when an issuer wishes to make reference to the auditor's role in an offering document in connection with a securities offering that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933 (such as a municipal securities offering), the caption to that section of the document would generally be titled "Independent Auditors" (or something similar) rather than "Experts" with no reference to the auditor as an "expert" anywhere in the document. Exhibit B, "Illustrative Disclosures and Reports," of AU-C section 925 provides the following example of a typical description of the auditor's role when an issuer wishes to make reference to the auditor in such an offering document:11

**Independent Auditors**

The financial statements of [name of entity] as of December 31, 20XX and for the year then ended, included in this offering circular, have been audited by ABC & Co., independent auditors, as stated in their report appearing herein.

---

9 The term consent is an SEC term that relates to registered securities, and municipal securities are not registered securities. Therefore, this guide uses the term agreement, even though the AICPA interpretations discussed refer to consent.

10 As discussed in footnote 1, governments generally refer to the offering document or offering circular for municipal securities as an official statement.

11 As discussed in paragraph 7.91, if the auditor is not involved with the offering document, and the terms of the engagement require disclosure of this fact, additional disclosure similar to that illustrated in paragraph 7.91 should be included here.
If the client refuses to delete from the offering document the reference to the auditor as an "expert," the auditor should not permit inclusion of the auditor's report in the offering document.

7.94 Paragraphs 19–20 of exhibit A in AU-C section 925 state that when an auditor's report is used in connection with an offering transaction that is not registered under the Securities Act of 1933, it is usually not necessary for the auditor to provide any type of written consent. If the auditor is asked to provide a written consent for use in connection with a document other than a Securities Act of 1933 registration statement, then the auditor may provide a letter indicating that the auditor agrees to the inclusion of the auditor's report on the audited financial statements in the offering materials. This letter would not typically be included in the offering materials. The following example language may be used:

We agree to the inclusion in the offering circular of our report, dated February 5, 20XX, on our audit of the financial statements of [name of entity].

As stated in paragraph .08 of AU-C section 925, the auditor should determine that the auditor's name is not being used in a way that indicates that the auditor's responsibility is greater than the auditor intends. Therefore if the client refuses to delete from the offering document the reference to the auditor as an expert, then the auditor should not permit inclusion of the auditor's report in the offering document.

7.95 When the auditor is asked to issue a letter agreeing to the inclusion of the auditor's report in the offering document, the effective date of the letter can be the preliminary official statement date or the official statement date, as defined in paragraph 7.13.

Using Government Auditing Standards Reports and References in an Official Statement

7.96 An auditor may be engaged to audit the financial statements of a health care entity that expends federal awards and is subject to an audit in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133 Audits of States, Local Governments, and Nonprofit Organizations (Circular A-133). Circular A-133 also requires the financial statement audit to be performed in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in Government Auditing Standards, which results in the auditor reporting on the entity's financial statements and issuing a report on compliance and internal control over financial reporting. If the auditor is involved with the client's official statement and the audit is performed in accordance with Government Auditing Standards, the auditor should consider which auditor's reports the client presents in the official statement. It is generally advisable for the official statements to use an auditor's report on the financial statements that does not refer to the Government Auditing Standards audit or to those separate reports because those references, without the presentation of the reports in the official statements, could confuse the users of the official statement.

12 Note that this circular and others will be superseded by the Uniform Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements. Refer to chapter 2, "General Auditing Considerations," for details of this update.
Many obligated groups are required to annually submit audited financial statements to the MSRB’s EMMA system. When obligated group financial statements exclude entities that are required under GAAP to be consolidated, the auditor’s reports should restrict the use of the financial statements to specified parties. Because inclusion in the EMMA system of financial statements for such an obligated group would make those financial statements broadly available, it is not advisable to submit standalone special-purpose financial statements accompanied by a restricted-use report (see paragraph 7.74). Instead, consolidating schedules presenting the obligated group as supplemental information to the consolidated financial statements may meet the requirements within the bond contract.

Letters for Underwriters

Underwriting agreements between a health care entity and its underwriters may require the auditor to prepare a comfort letter addressed to the underwriters. AU-C section 920 defines the term underwriters and gives guidance to auditors when engaged to issue letters to underwriters and certain other requesting parties in connection with a nonissuer entity’s financial statements included in registration statements filed with the SEC under the 1933 Act. An auditor may provide a comfort letter to a broker-dealer or other financial intermediary acting as principal or agent in offerings of securities that are exempt from registration under the 1933 Act only if the broker-dealer or other financial intermediary provides the required representation letter described in paragraph .11 of AU-C section 920. The required elements of the representation letter from the broker-dealer or other financial intermediary are as follows:

- The letter should be addressed to the auditor.
- The letter should contain the following:
  
  The review process applied to the information relating to the issuer, is or will be, substantially consistent with the due diligence process that we would perform if this securities offering were being registered pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933. We are knowledgeable with respect to that due diligence process.
- The letter should be signed by the requesting broker-dealer or other financial intermediary.

When a party requesting a comfort letter has provided the auditor with the required representation letter, the auditor should refer to the requesting party’s representations in the comfort letter. See paragraph .A93-2 of AU-C section 920, which is a typical comfort letter in a non-1933 Act offering, including the required underwriter representations. If the required representation letter is not provided by the broker-dealer or other financial intermediary, paragraph .12 of AU-C section 920 provides requirements and guidance for auditors.

13 Because of its use in SEC literature, certain auditing literature uses the term accountant to refer to the auditor; however, this chapter replaces the term accountant with the term auditor.
7.100 As discussed in paragraph .13 of AU-C section 920, when a comfort letter is requested by a party other than the underwriter, broker-dealer, or other financial intermediary, the auditor should not provide that party with a comfort letter or the letter described in paragraph .12 of AU-C section 920. Instead, the auditor may provide the party with a report on agreed-upon procedures and should refer to AT section 201, Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements (AICPA, Professional Standards), for additional specific guidance.

7.101 Auditors may be asked to comment upon information other than audited financial statements. Guidance for the procedures to be performed and the form of the comments is provided by the following paragraphs of AU-C section 920:

a. Unaudited condensed interim financial information (paragraphs .45–.49)
b. Capsule financial information (paragraphs .50–.51)
c. Pro forma financial information (paragraphs .52–.53)
d. Financial forecasts (paragraphs .54–.57)
e. Subsequent changes (paragraphs .58–.64)
f. Tables, statistics, and other financial information (paragraphs .65–.71)

7.102 When the auditor is asked to prepare a letter for the underwriter, the letter can be as of the preliminary official statement date or the official statement date, as defined in paragraph 7.13, with updating letters issued as of the official statement date, if applicable, and the closing date. Paragraphs .A24–.A25 of AU-C section 920 state that the letter ordinarily is dated on, or shortly after, the underwriting agreement is signed, and the underwriting agreement ordinarily specifies the date, often referred to as the cutoff date, to which certain procedures described in the letter are to relate (for example, a date five days before the date of the letter). A factor in considering whether to accept the engagement is whether the period between the cutoff date and the date of the letter provides sufficient time to allow the auditor to perform the procedures and prepare the letter.

Attestation Engagements Related to Securities Issuance

7.103 During the process of issuing municipal securities, health care entities or other involved parties often engage practitioners to provide certain needed information. For example, a health care entity or its bond counsel may engage an auditor to review the health care entity's compliance with the revenue coverage requirements on outstanding bonds or to verify the calculation of escrow account requirements for an advance refunding of bonds. Those engagements should be conducted in accordance with AT section 201.15 If the auditor of the financial statements included in the official statement also provides an

---

14 The five-day cut-off period in AU-C section 920, Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties (AICPA, Professional Standards), is illustrative only and does not set a standard, but practice generally does not exceed a five day cut-off period.

15 Generally, these attestation engagements are performed only in accordance with the AICPA’s Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements. However, if the auditor is performing the engagement in accordance with Government Auditing Standards, the auditor should apply the guidance of Government Auditing Standards, including chapter 5, “Standards for Attestation Engagements.” The auditor also should consider the guidance in Interpretation No. 6, “Reporting on Attestation (continued)
attestation engagement report relating to a debt offering, that establishes an involvement with the official statement, as indicated in paragraph 7.86. An attestation engagement report relating to a debt offering need not be referred to or included in the official statement to associate the auditor of the financial statements with the official statement. Sometimes, the attestation engagement report may only be included in the official closing documents for the offering. Also, if the practitioner providing the attestation engagement report is not the auditor of the financial statements included in the official statements, the issuance of the attestation engagement report does not, by itself, involve either the auditor of the financial statements or the practitioner who issued the attestation report with the official statement.

7.104 SEC Final Rule Release No. 34-70462, Registration of Municipal Advisors, amends SEC Rule 15Ba 1-1 to exclude from its definition of municipal adviser, accountants that provide audit or other attest services, prepare financial statements, or issue letters for underwriters for or on behalf of, a municipal entity or obligated person. The types of services described in paragraph 7.103 are considered attest services and would not meet the SEC's definition of municipal adviser, therefore accountants would not be required to register as a municipal adviser for the purposes of those attest services.

(footnote continued)

Engagements Performed in Accordance With Government Auditing Standards," of AT section 101, Attest Engagements (AICPA, Professional Standards, AT sec. 9101 par. .56–58), which explains how an attestation report should be modified when the engagement is performed in accordance with Government Auditing Standards and provides an illustrative attestation report.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonds Payable</td>
<td>Bond liabilities properly classified in the financial statements, and related disclosures are adequate.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that the health care entity appropriately classifies debt based on its terms and monitors its compliance with restrictive debt covenants.</td>
<td>Review the terms of the bond indenture for the presence of any put options. Review the terms of lines of credit or other liquidity facilities underlying puttable bonds. Review the debt instruments for the presence of any restrictive debt covenants, including subjective acceleration clauses and cross-default provisions. Test compliance with restrictive debt covenants.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Currently, municipal securities are exempt from all the provisions of the Securities Act of 1933 (the 1933 Act) and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the 1934 Act), except the antifraud provisions of Section 17(a) of the 1933 Act and Section 10(b) of the 1934 Act and the associated SEC Rule 10b-5. Those antifraud provisions prohibit any person from misrepresenting or omitting material facts in the offering or sale of securities. Instances of the application of the antifraud provisions in SEC enforcement actions offer guidance within the context of actual transactions.

The SEC published its views with respect to the disclosure obligations of participants in the municipal securities markets under the antifraud provisions of the federal securities laws in its 1994 Release No. 33-7049, Statement of the Commission Regarding Disclosure Obligations of Municipal Securities Issuers and Others. In it, the SEC reviews numerous municipal disclosure practices needing improvement in light of the antifraud provisions.

SEC Rule 15c2-12 and associated SEC releases impose certain requirements on the underwriters of municipal securities. Because of Rule 15c2-12, obligors of most municipal securities offerings over set dollar amounts must provide certain disclosure documents when issuing securities (primary market disclosures), as well as at certain times thereafter (referred to as continuing disclosures or secondary market disclosures). Primary market disclosures are made by issuing an official statement. Secondary market disclosures consist of (a) annual continuing disclosures as contractually established and (b) material events notices. Both primary and secondary market disclosure documents are available through the nationally-recognized municipal securities information repository known as the Electronic Municipal Market Access (EMMA) system and state information depositories, if one exists in the obligor’s state.

The Office of Municipal Securities (OMS) coordinates the SEC’s municipal securities activities, advises the SEC on policy matters relating to the municipal bond market, and provides technical assistance in the development and implementation of major SEC initiatives in the municipal securities area. In addition, the OMS assists the Division of Enforcement and other SEC offices and divisions on a wide array of municipal securities matters. The OMS works closely with the municipal securities industry to educate state and local officials and conduit borrowers about risk-management issues and foster a thorough understanding of the SEC’s policies. The OMS also maintains a website of helpful information specifically directed to municipal securities issues and conduit obligors (www.sec.gov/info/municipal.shtml).

In 1994, as a condition of the issuance of debt securities, the SEC issued rules requiring that the obligor agree to implement a system of continuing disclosure that remains in effect as long as the bonds are outstanding. The core of this system is the continuing disclosure agreement (sometimes referred to

---

1 For the adopting release, see www.sec.gov/rules/final/adpt6.txt.
as a 15c2-12 contract or 15c2-12 agreement). This is a covenant entered into by
the obligor in which the obligor agrees to provide certain specified information
to bondholders and beneficial owners throughout the life of the bond issue. The
terms of the obligor's continuing disclosure agreement are spelled out in the
indenture or bond resolution and also are summarized in the official statement.

A-6 The system is much less prescriptive than the system of periodic reporting
required of publicly-traded companies. The primary elements are (a) annual
reporting of financial and operating information and (b) material events re-
porting. Quarterly reporting is encouraged but not required, unless agreed to
in the continuing disclosure covenant for a particular issue.

A-7 Similar to Form 10-K, no prescribed reporting format exists for submission
of the annual financial and operating information. The specific list of items to be
included in the annual report will be agreed upon by the parties to the financ-
ing transaction and enumerated in the continuing disclosure agreement and an
appendix to the official statement. Usually, it consists largely of audited financial
statements and updates of specified categories of financial information and
operating data or specific sections and charts in the final official statements.

A-8 Unlike Form 10-K filings, no statutory due date exists for filing annual
financial information. Instead, the filing deadline is contractually agreed to
in the continuing disclosure agreement. If an obligor fails to file information
by the agreed-upon deadline and subsequently issues an official statement for
new bonds, it must disclose its failure to file in that official statement. Fail-
ure to disclose this information constitutes a material omission in the official
statement.

A-9 The annual report does not have to be submitted all at once in a single
document; it may be submitted as a single document or separate documents
comprising a package.

A-10 Similar to Form 8-K filings, the continuing disclosure agreement also
requires the obligor to file disclosures related to significant events within 10
days of their occurrence. The following events are required disclosures:

- Principal and interest payment delinquencies
- Unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial
difficulties
- Unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial
difficulties
- Substitution of credit or liquidity providers or their failure to per-
form
- Adverse tax opinions or events affecting the tax status of the
security
- Defeasances
- Rating changes
- Tender offers
- Bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the obli-
gated person
- Notices of failure to provide annual financial information on or
before the date specified on the continuing disclosure agreement

The following events must be disclosed, if material:

- Appointment of successor or additional trustees or the change of name of a trustee
- Nonpayment-related defaults
- Modifications to rights of security holders
- Bond calls
- Matters affecting collateral (for example, release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the securities)
- Consummation of a merger, consolidation or acquisition involving an obligated person, or the sale of substantially all the assets of an obligated person, other than in the ordinary course of business; the entry into definitive agreements to undertake such an action; or the termination of an agreement as it relates to any such sale, other than pursuant to its terms

**EMMA System**

**A-11** Effective July 1, 2009, EMMA became the nationally recognized municipal securities information repository for filing annual reports, material event notices, and voluntarily-submitted information. EMMA is an Internet-based centralized database that provides free public access to disclosure and transaction information about municipal bonds to the municipal market. EMMA also provides access to official statements, advance refunding documents, real-time trade and historical trade information, daily market information, and other educational materials about municipal bonds. Essentially, EMMA makes municipal disclosure information available to the market in a manner similar to the SEC's Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval system for the disclosures of publicly-traded companies. Rule 15c2-12 requires all continuing disclosure information to be filed using EMMA. EMMA's website is www.emma.msrb.org. The SEC release concerning this amendment to Rule 15c2-12 is available at www.sec.gov/rules/sro/msrb/2008/34-59061.pdf.
Chapter 8

**Contingencies and Other Liabilities**

**8.01** Health care entities are similar to other industries, as relates to recording liabilities associated with accounts payable; salaries and payroll taxes; deferred revenue; commitments and contingencies; and other accruals for pension or profit sharing contributions, compensated absences, and income and other taxes. This chapter considers those liabilities that are not discussed elsewhere in this guide. This chapter also discusses certain tax considerations relevant to not-for-profit (NFP) entities.

**Contingencies and Commitments**

**8.02** Self-insured obligations, other contingencies, and commitments may include the following:

- a. Losses arising from medical malpractice, worker's compensation, and other self-insured claims
- b. Contingencies related to risk contracting
- c. Construction contract commitments
- d. Commitments and guarantees that include contractual agreements with physicians, specialists, and others who perform services by agreement with health care entities
- e. Losses arising from litigation and other regulatory matters, such as Medicare and Medicaid fraud and abuse settlements

**The Essentials of Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure for Contingencies**

**8.03** The following locations provide the primary standards for contingencies and commitments:

- Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 440, *Commitments*, which provides general guidance regarding commitments such as those for plant acquisition; unused letters of credit; and obligations to reduce debts, maintain working capital, or restrict dividends
- FASB ASC 450, *Contingencies*, which provides general guidance regarding loss contingencies
- FASB ASC 460, *Guarantees*, which provides general guidance regarding guarantees, including minimum revenue guarantees and guarantees of the indebtedness of others
- FASB ASC 275, *Risks and Uncertainties*, which provides general guidance regarding disclosure of certain significant risks and uncertainties

**8.04** FASB ASC 450-20-25 states that when it is probable that a loss has been incurred, and the available information indicates that the loss is within a range of amounts, it follows that some amount of loss has occurred and can be reasonably estimated, and the loss should be recognized. According to FASB ASC 450-20-30-1, if some amount within a range of loss appears at the time to be a better estimate than any other amount within the range, that amount
should be accrued. However, when no amount within the range is a better estimate than any other amount, the minimum amount in the range should be accrued. FASB ASC 450-20-50-3 requires that disclosure of the contingency be made if at least a reasonable possibility exists that a loss or an additional loss may have been incurred, and either an exposure to loss exists in excess of the accrued amount or an accrual is not made for a loss contingency because any of the conditions in FASB ASC 450-20-25-2 are not met.

8.05 According to FASB ASC 954-450-35-1, estimated losses are reviewed and changed, if necessary, at each reporting date. The amounts of the changes are recognized currently as additional expense or a reduction of expense.

8.06 Consistent with the guidance in FASB ASC 210-10-45-6, accrued unpaid claims and expenses that are expected to be paid during the normal operating cycle (generally within one year of the date of the financial statements) are classified as current liabilities. All other accrued unpaid claims and expenses are classified as noncurrent liabilities.

**Recognition of Insurance Recoveries**

8.07 The amount of a contingency should be determined independently from any potential claim for recovery, and an asset relating to the recovery may be recognized only when realization of the claim for recovery is deemed probable.

8.08 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-450-25-2, the liability for malpractice or similar claims should not be presented net of anticipated insurance recoveries. Per FASB ASC 954-450-25-2, to the extent that an entity is indemnified for those liabilities, the entity should recognize an insurance receivable at the same time that it recognizes the liability, measured on the same basis as the liability and subject to the need for a valuation allowance for uncollectible amounts. Per FASB ASC 720-20-25-5, if a purchased insurance contract includes coverage for legal and other costs, the accounting for those costs should be consistent between the asset and liability. If the entity's accounting policy is to accrue legal and other costs, then the insurance receivable should reflect those costs if they are covered under the terms of the insurance policy. If an entity's accounting policy is not to accrue for those costs, then the insurance receivable should not reflect those costs on an accrual basis. See paragraph 8.17 for further discussion on the accrual of legal costs.

8.09 FASB ASC 954-720-25-1 states that insurance recoveries from a retrospectively-rated insurance policy whose ultimate premium is based primarily on the health care entity's loss experience should not be recognized until the estimated losses exceed the stipulated maximum premium. Technical Questions and Answers (TIS) section 6400.52, "Insurance Recoveries From Certain Retrospectively Rated Insurance Policies" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), provides an example of the accounting for insurance recoveries for a health care entity that is insured by a retrospectively-rated insurance policy.

**Managing Risk of Loss**

8.10 Health care entities typically use commercial insurance to manage some portion of the risk of loss from medical malpractice, workers' compensation, and employee health claims. However, as the cost of commercial insurance has continued to rise, many health care entities are managing their risk through higher deductibles, self-insured retentions, retrospective premiums,
and reduced or no coverage under their insurance policies. In some cases, a health care entity will form its own insurance company, known as a captive insurance company, to manage its risk. It is important for the health care entity to identify its risk and the portion of that risk that is insured. Generally, a health care entity uses actuaries to assist in identifying and quantifying the retained risk. An assessment of the risk that is insured is necessary for the determination of anticipated insurance recoveries.

8.11 Insurance policies may be issued on either an occurrence basis or a claims-made basis. Occurrence basis policies provide coverage for insured events occurring during the contract period, regardless of the length of time that passes before the insurance company is notified of the claim. A claims-made policy only covers claims reported to the insurer during the contract period; however, in practice, claims-made policies generally cover claims reported to either the insurer or insured during the contract period. As a result, claims might be reported to the insurer after the contract expires. Even if claims have been reported to the insurer during the contract period, it may take several months for the insurer to investigate and establish a case reserve for reported claims. In practice, most claims-made insurance policies contain extended reporting clauses or endorsements that, in specified circumstances, provide for coverage of claims occurring during the contract period but reported after the expiration of the policy.

8.12 Although paragraphs 8.13–.47 provide specific guidance relating to accounting for medical malpractice, the guidance may be helpful in accounting for other self-insured liabilities, including workers' compensation and employee health insurance.

Medical Malpractice

8.13 According to FASB ASC 954-450-25-2, a health care entity should evaluate its exposure to losses arising from claims and record a liability, if appropriate. The provisions in FASB ASC 720-20-25 and 944-40 discuss the accounting for insurance claims costs, including estimates of costs relating to incurred-but-not-reported (IBNR) claims.

8.14 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-450-25-2, the liability for malpractice or similar claims should not be presented net of anticipated insurance recoveries. TIS section 6400.49, "Presentation of Claims Liability and Insurance Recoveries—Contingencies Similar to Malpractice" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), clarifies that similar contingent liabilities include liabilities of a similar nature, such as workers' compensation and director and officers claims. TIS section 6400.51, "Presentation of Insurance Recoveries When Insurer Pays Claims Directly" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), further explains that unless a health care entity has a valid right of setoff (which is not common), as described in FASB ASC 210-20-45, the health care entity should report the gross amount of its claims liabilities (including legal costs) as its obligations, regardless of whether covered by insurance, and should record a receivable as if it were entitled to receive insurance recoveries to offset those obligations as discussed in FASB ASC 954-450-25-2. It is expected that in most cases, this results in reporting a receivable that mirrors the amount of estimated losses accrued that are covered by insurance.

8.15 In determining the best estimates of the ultimate costs of malpractice claims, health care entities should consider the guidance for contingencies in FASB ASC 450-20 and 954-450. Health care entities should take into
Health Care Entities

consideration how malpractice claims develop over time (for example, the fact that some claims require a number of years before they are settled). FASB ASC 944-40 discusses accounting for claims costs, including estimates of costs relating to IBNR claims. Although health care entities are not required to apply the guidance in FASB ASC 944-40, that guidance may be helpful in estimating loss liabilities. Governmental health care entities should also consider the accounting and disclosure requirements of GASB Statement No. 10, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Risk Financing and Related Insurance Issues, as amended.

8.16 According to FASB ASC 954-450-25-2, the ultimate costs of malpractice claims, which include costs associated with litigating or settling claims, should be accrued when the incidents that give rise to the claims occur. However, as described in TIS section 6400.50, "Accrual of Legal Costs Associated With Contingencies Other Than Malpractice" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), the guidance in FASB ASC 954-450-25-2A (which requires an accrual of estimated costs associated with settling claims to be included in the accrual for malpractice losses) is applicable only to malpractice claims and is not applicable to other similar contingent liabilities. In accounting for legal costs associated with contingent liabilities other than malpractice, some health care entities follow guidance in FASB ASC 450-20-S99-2, which permits making a policy election to either expense claims-related legal fees in the period(s) in which the costs are actually incurred or to estimate and accrue them in the period in which the associated claim arises.

8.17 FASB ASC 954-450-30-1 states that estimated losses from asserted and unasserted medical malpractice claims should be accrued either individually or on a group basis, based on the best estimates of the ultimate costs of the claims and the relationship of past reported incidents to eventual claims payments. The accrual includes an estimate of the losses that will result from unreported incidents, which are probable of having occurred before the end of the reporting period. All relevant information, including industry experience, the entity's own historical experience, the entity's existing asserted claims, and reported incidents should be used in estimating the expected amount of claims.

8.18 FASB ASC 954-450-30-2 states that in estimating losses from malpractice claims, a health care entity may need to modify data drawn from industry experience, so it is relevant to developing an estimate that is specific to the entity. Various factors, such as the nature of operations, size, and the entity's past experience, are considered in assessing comparability. Further, industry data that is not current may not be relevant.

8.19 According to FASB ASC 954-720-25-3, an accrual for malpractice losses should be based on estimated ultimate losses and costs associated with litigating and settling claims.

8.20 FASB ASC 954-450-25-2A indicates that accruals should not be based on recommended funding amounts, which in addition to a provision for the actuarially-determined liability may also include a provision for (a) credit for investment income and (b) an excess margin for risk of adverse deviation. FASB ASC 954-450-25-2B provides the following examples of factors to consider and adjustments that may be required to convert actuarially-determined malpractice funding amounts to an appropriate loss accrual to be reported in the financial statements:
The risk of adverse deviation is an additional cost factor applied to bring a funding requirement to a selected confidence level. This factor does not meet the criteria for recognition as a liability in accordance with FASB ASC 450.

An evaluation should be made of the extent and validity of industry data when the credibility factor actuarial technique is used. The lower the credibility factor, the greater the blending of industry data. This may create an unacceptable level of industry data at lower confidence levels. Further, a low credibility factor may indicate that provider-specific data is not sufficient to support the claims liability estimation process.

A review of the discounting approach that is used is necessary to develop the required disclosure. The impact on the discounting calculation of any other adjustment made to the actuarially-determined amounts, such as risk of adverse deviation or the credibility of the risk-management system, has to be evaluated.

A review of the expenses included in the loss estimation process should be made. Such expenses include the expense of settlement and litigation (that is, allocated loss-adjustment expenses).

8.21 Limitations on the availability of provider-specific data, lack of a sufficient patient population for claims projection purposes, a very low credibility factor, and a variety of other factors may cause the actuary's estimate of loss to be of limited value in developing an estimate of the liability under generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

8.22 According to FASB ASC 954-450-30-2, in estimating the probability that unreported incidents have occurred, some health care entities may develop a range of possible estimates of the number of unreported incidents, including zero. However, the greater the volume of a health care entity's operations, the greater the likelihood that the entity's minimum estimate of the number of probable unreported incidents will be greater than zero.

8.23 If a health care entity cannot estimate losses from asserted or unasserted malpractice claims, and therefore, an accrual is not made, FASB ASC 450-20-50-3 requires disclosure of the contingency if at least a reasonable possibility exists that a loss or an additional loss may have been incurred.

8.24 Further guidance about specific risk-management approaches is provided as follows:

- Policies written by captive insurance companies are discussed in paragraphs 8.30–.33.
- Claims-made insurance policies are discussed in paragraphs 8.34–.36.
- Retrospectively-rated insurance policies are discussed in paragraphs 8.37–.43.
- Self-funded trust funds are discussed in paragraphs 8.44–.47.

**Discounting of Medical Malpractice Liabilities**

8.25 The Financial Reporting Executive Committee (FinREC) believes that the accrued liabilities for medical malpractice claims may be discounted to reflect the time value of money if all of the following are true: (a) the amount of the liability, individually or in the aggregate, is fixed or reliably determinable;
The objective of discounting loss reserves is to account for the time value of money in a way that accurately reflects the anticipated future cash flows based on the characteristics of the obligation. Reasonable diversity exists regarding what rates should be used for discounting liabilities for unpaid claims and claim adjustment expenses and how they are applied. If an entity decides to discount, it might analogize to the following guidance in determining an appropriate discount rate:

- FASB ASC 340-30-35-6 states that for the insurer or assuming entity, the discount rate used to determine the deposit liability should be the current rate on U.S. government obligations with similar cash flow characteristics.

- FASB ASC 450-20-S99-1 states that the rate used to discount the cash payments should be the rate that will produce an amount at which the environmental or product liability could be settled in an arm's-length transaction with a third party. Statement of Position (SOP) 96-1, Environmental Remediation Liabilities, further states that the discount rate used to discount the cash payments should not exceed the interest rate on monetary assets that are essentially risk free, as described in FASB Concepts Statement No. 7, and have maturities comparable to that of the environmental or product liability.

- FASB ASC 944-20-S99-1 notes that pending authoritative guidance resulting from those efforts, the SEC staff will raise no objection if a registrant follows a policy for GAAP reporting purposes of discounting liabilities for unpaid claims and claim adjustment expenses at the same rate that it uses for reporting to state regulatory authorities with respect to the same claim liabilities.

8.27 Careful consideration of the facts and circumstances surrounding a change in the discount rate for the liabilities for unpaid claims is needed to determine the proper accounting for the change (change in accounting principle or change in accounting estimate). A change from not discounting loss reserves to discounting loss reserves would generally be a change in accounting principle.

8.28 FASB ASC 954-450-50-2 requires that health care entities that discount accrued malpractice claims disclose in the notes to the financial statements the carrying amount of accrued malpractice claims that are discounted in the financial statements and the interest rate(s) used to discount those claims.

8.29 FinREC recommends that a health care entity that discounts accrued malpractice claims also disclose the following information: (a) its policy concerning the timing of recognition of insurance recoveries; (b) its policy for discounting accrued malpractice claims and, if it has any, recognized insurance recoveries.
recoveries; (c) the interest rate(s) used to discount its insurance recoveries receivable; and (d) the undiscounted amount of accrued malpractice claims that are discounted in the financial statements.

**Captive Insurance Companies**

8.30 Health care entities may be insured by wholly-owned or multi-provider captive insurance companies. See chapter 12, "The Reporting Entity and Related Entities," of this guide for a discussion of considerations related to consolidation and the use of the equity method for equity interests, including equity interests in captive insurance companies.

8.31 The economic substance of the terms of an insurance policy with a captive insurance company may more closely resemble a claims-funding mechanism than an instrument that provides rights for recovery of loss from an external third party. The health care entity should consider whether the economic substance of a captive insurance company is sufficient that the health care entity can recognize anticipated insurance recoveries. For example, any anticipated insurance recoveries under a policy with a wholly-owned captive insurance company would be eliminated in the consolidation of the entities. Because the captive insurance company is part of the reporting entity, the liability for asserted and unasserted claims is assessed for both the parent and wholly-owned subsidiary at the reporting entity level.

8.32 FASB ASC 954-720-50-3 requires that a health care entity that is insured by a multiprovider captive insurance company disclose in its financial statements (a) that it is insured by such an entity; (b) its ownership percentage in the captive company; and (c) the method of accounting for its investment in, and the operations of, the captive entity.

8.33 Retrospectively-rated policies written by captive insurance companies are discussed in paragraphs 8.41–.43.

**Claims-Made Insurance**

8.34 A claims-made insurance policy provides rights for recovery of losses within the policy limits for asserted claims and incidents reported to the insurance carrier during the policy period. However, the policy does not provide rights for recovery of losses for claims and incidents not reported to the insurance carrier during the policy period. Unless the policy is continually renewed or tail coverage is purchased, the health care entity is uninsured for claims reported after the termination of the policy, even if the event occurred during the period in which the policy was in force.

8.35 As discussed in FASB ASC 720-20-25-14, a health care entity that is insured under a claims-made insurance policy recognizes the estimated cost of those IBNR claims and incidents to the insurance carrier if the loss is both probable and reasonably estimable. The "Claims-Made Contracts" sections of FASB ASC 720-20 apply if a health care entity purchases a claims-made insurance policy, subject to the measurement guidance in the following paragraph.

8.36 FASB ASC 720-20-30-2 states that for claims-made policies, the estimated cost of purchasing tail coverage is not relevant in determining the loss to be accrued because FASB ASC 210-20-45-1 prohibits netting the insurance receivable against the claim liability. However, if the insured health care entity had the unilateral option to purchase tail coverage at a premium not to exceed a specified fixed maximum, then the entity could record a receivable for
expected insurance recoveries, after considering deductibles and policy limits, for the portion of the IBNR liability that is insurable under the tail coverage. In that case, the health care entity would need to record as a cost the expected premium for the coverage. The purchase of tail coverage does not eliminate the need to determine if an additional liability should be accrued because of policy limits or other factors.

**Retrospectively-Rated Premium Policies**

8.37 An insurance policy with a premium that is adjustable based on actual experience during the policy term is known as a retrospectively-rated premium policy. Under this type of policy, a deposit premium is generally paid to the insurer at the beginning of the coverage period. This usually consists of a minimum premium representing the insurance company's expenses and profits and an additional amount for estimated claims. The portion for estimated claims is adjusted during the term of the policy, subject to any minimums or maximum limitations specified in the policy. The economic substance of the terms of a retrospectively-rated insurance policy may more closely resemble a claims-funding mechanism.

8.38 The "Retroactive Contracts" and "Multiple-Year Retrospectively Rated Contracts" sections of FASB ASC 720-20 provide guidance for those insurance contracts, subject to the guidance in paragraphs 8.39–.40. For a multiple-year retrospectively-rated contract accounted for as insurance, FASB ASC 720-20-25-15 states that the health care entity should recognize either of the following:

- A liability to the extent that the insured has an obligation to pay cash or other considerations to the insurer that would not have been required, absent experience under the contract
- An asset to the extent that any cash or other consideration would be payable by the insurer to the insured based on experience to date under the contract

Per FASB ASC 720-20-30-3, the amount to be recognized in the current period should be computed using a with and without method as the difference between the health care entity's total contract costs before and after the experience under the contract as of the reporting date, including costs such as premium adjustments, settlement adjustments, and impairments of coverage. The amount of premium expense related to impairments of coverage should be measured in relation to the original contract terms. Future experience under the contract (that is, future losses and future premiums that would be paid regardless of past experience) should not be considered in measuring the amount to be recognized. The liability would be measured in accordance with FASB ASC 720-20-30-4 if the health care entity could terminate the contract before the end of its term and if termination would change the paid amounts.

8.39 FASB ASC 954-720-25-1 states that a health care entity with a retrospectively-rated insurance policy whose ultimate premium is based primarily on the health care entity's loss experience accounts for the minimum premium as an expense over the period of coverage under the policy.

8.40 FASB ASC 954-720-35-1 requires that a health care entity insured under a retrospectively-rated policy whose ultimate premium is based primarily on the experience of a group of health care entities amortize the initial premium to expense on a pro rata basis over the policy term.
954-720-25-2 states that the health care entity also should accrue additional premiums or refunds on the basis of the group's experience to date, which includes a provision for the ultimate cost of asserted and unasserted claims before the financial statement date, whether reported or unreported. FASB ASC 954-720-50-1 requires a health care entity insured under a retrospectively rated policy whose ultimate premium is based primarily on the experience of a group of health care entities disclose that (a) it is insured under a retrospectively-rated policy, and (b) premiums are accrued based on the ultimate cost of the experience to date of a group of entities.

**Retrospectively-Rated Policy Written by a Captive Insurance Company**

8.41 A health care entity insured by an unconsolidated multiprovider captive insurance company for medical malpractice claims under a retrospectively-rated insurance policy whose ultimate premium is based primarily on the health care entity's experience up to a maximum premium, if any, accounts for such insurance as indicated in paragraph 8.39.

8.42 FASB ASC 954-720-35-2 states that a health care entity insured by an unconsolidated multiprovider captive insurance company for medical malpractice claims under a retrospectively-rated policy, whose ultimate premium is based primarily on the experience of a group of health care entities, accounts for such insurance as indicated in FASB ASC 954-720-25-2 and further discussed in paragraph 8.40.

8.43 According to FASB ASC 954-720-50-2, the health care entity should disclose that (a) it is insured under a retrospectively-rated policy of a multiprovider captive insurance company, and (b) the premiums are accrued based on the captive insurance company's experience to date.

**Trust Funds**

8.44 Some health care entities establish a medical malpractice self-funded trust fund for the purpose of paying medical malpractice claims.

8.45 FASB ASC 954-810-45-4 states that in general, a trust fund, whether legally revocable or irrevocable, should be included in the financial statements of the health care entity. A portion of the fund equal to the amount of assets expected to be liquidated to pay malpractice claims classified as current liabilities is classified as a current asset; the balance of the fund, if any, is classified as a noncurrent asset. Revenues and administrative expenses of the trust fund are included in the statement of operations. In some circumstances, the foregoing may not be possible (for example, if a common trust fund exists for a group of health care entities; if the health care entity is part of a common municipality risk-financing internal-service fund; or if the legal, regulatory, or indenture restrictions prevent the inclusion of a trust fund in a health care entity's financial statements). In those circumstances, the provisions of FASB ASC 954-450-25-3, 954-720-25-5, and 954-810-50-1 apply; those provisions are included in the following two paragraphs.

8.46 FASB ASC 954-450-25-3 states that estimated losses from asserted and unasserted claims should be accrued and reported, as indicated in paragraphs 1–2 of FASB ASC 954-450-30 (see paragraphs 8.16–.18). The estimated losses are not based on payments to the trust fund. FASB ASC 954-720-25-5 states that an entity that participates in a common trust fund and forfeits its rights to any excess funding should expense its contributions and account for
Health Care Entities

its participation in the trust fund based on the type of obtained coverage (for example, occurrence basis, claims made, or retrospectively rated).

8.47 FASB ASC 954-810-50-1 requires that the existence of the trust fund and whether it is irrevocable be disclosed in the financial statements.

Disclosures for Medical Malpractice

8.48 Disclosures about medical malpractice should be consistent with the requirements of FASB ASC 450-20-50. Disclosure of a contingency should be made if at least a reasonable possibility exists that a loss or an additional loss may have been incurred, and an accrual is not made for a loss contingency because any of the conditions in FASB ASC 450-20-25-2 are not met. The guidance further states that disclosure is preferable to accrual when a reasonable estimate of loss cannot be made.

8.49 In addition to the disclosures required by FASB ASC 450-20-50 and those discussed in paragraphs 8.13, 8.28–29, 8.32, 8.40, 8.43, and 8.47, FASB ASC 954-450-50-1 requires that a health care entity disclose its program of medical malpractice insurance coverages.

8.50 FinREC recommends that those disclosures include the nature of the insurance coverage (for example, claims made or occurrence); related terms (for example, self-insured retention and excess levels); and expected insurance recoveries and the basis for any related loss accruals.

8.51 If the entity cannot estimate losses relating to a particular category of malpractice claims (for example, asserted claims, reported incidents, or unreported incidents), the potential losses related to that category of claims are not accrued. However, the contingency is disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

8.52 FinREC recommends that health care entities disclose the reasons for significant changes in the costs of incurred claims recognized in the income statement or statement of operations, including the costs associated with litigating or settling those claims. In addition to medical malpractice, this disclosure is recommended for all significant claims obligations, such as workers' compensation and employee health insurance.

8.53 FASB ASC 275-10-50 requires disclosures regarding an estimate when, based on known information available before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued, as discussed in FASB ASC 855-10-25, it is reasonably possible that the estimate will change in the near term, and the effect of the change will be material. For more information, see paragraphs 8.100–.106 of this guide.

Physician Guarantees and Other Agreements With Physicians

8.54 The physicians practicing at health care entities may be employees of the entity or affiliated entity or independent of the entity. These physicians join the entity's medical staff and agree to abide by those bylaws and govern themselves accordingly. Health care entities enter into a variety of agreements with physicians. Although this section provides accounting guidance relating to certain of these agreements, health care entities and their independent auditors also should consider the associated regulatory issues. See chapter 1, "Overview and Unique Considerations of Health Care Entities," of this guide for a discussion of those regulatory issues.
8.55 Health care entities sometimes guarantee nonemployee physicians that the revenue of the physicians' business or a specific portion of the business for a specified period of time will be at least a specified amount. Some of these guarantees are structured as minimum revenue guarantees (see paragraph 8.56); others are structured as financing transactions (see paragraph 8.57).

8.56 FASB ASC 460 applies to minimum revenue guarantees, which the FASB ASC glossary defines as "[a] guarantee granted to a business or its owners that the revenue of the business (or a specific portion of the business) for a specified period of time will be at least a specified minimum amount." FASB ASC 460-10-55-11 provides an example of a minimum revenue guarantee granted to a nonemployee physician by an NFP health care facility. In the example, the health care facility has recruited the physician to move to the facility's geographical area to establish a practice. The health care facility, as the guarantor, has agreed to make payments to the newly arrived physician (the guaranteed party) at the end of specific periods of time if gross revenues (gross receipts) generated by the physician's new practice during that period of time do not equal or exceed a specific dollar amount. FASB ASC 460 applies to minimum revenue guarantees granted to physicians, regardless of whether the physician's practice qualifies as a business, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary. FASB ASC 460-10 requires that at the inception of a guarantee, the health care entity, as a guarantor, should recognize in its statement of financial position a liability for that guarantee. The liability should be initially measured at fair value.

8.57 Certain income guarantees are structured as advances whereby the physician is required to repay the outstanding balance of all advances after the end of the guarantee period, although a forgiveness clause may be included in exchange for the physician’s commitment to stay in the community for a specified period of time. If the health care entity is tax exempt, the agreement is often structured as an advance to avoid potential problems associated with private inurement. See paragraphs 8.92–.93 for a discussion of private inurement. In determining the appropriate accounting for a physician income guarantee, it is important to evaluate the substance of the agreement. Such agreements may be promissory notes. In those situations, the income guarantee may be a financing arrangement. As noted in TIS section 6400.45, "Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), financing arrangements are excluded from the scope of FASB ASC 460 and, generally, would be accounted for as loans.

8.58 Another common recruitment incentive is a guarantee of a physician’s personal home mortgage for his or her residence in the health care entity's service area. If the physician is not an employee, TIS section 6400.46, "Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Guarantor’s Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others—Mortgage Guarantees" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), notes that the agreement is considered a guarantee under FASB ASC 460. The presence of the health care entity's guarantee, obtained through a local bank, reduces the interest rate on the physician's mortgage loan. At inception, the health care entity would record an obligation to stand ready to perform in an amount equal to the fair value of the guarantee. In the preceding situation, the health care entity typically would be released from risk as the physician’s outstanding mortgage obligation is reduced.
8.59 In current practice, most health care entities offset the entry recognizing the liabilities for the guarantees described in paragraphs 8.56 and 8.58 by recognizing an intangible asset. That intangible asset is then amortized over the life of the contract.

8.60 Health care entities need to ensure that they maintain adequate physician coverage to support their operations. This means that the entity needs to have certain specialties available based on the needs of the patients. For example, a patient who arrives at the emergency room may require surgery, and as a result, the entity needs to have physician coverage to provide this service. Historically and in many cases, the physicians have provided this service to the entity free of charge as part of their responsibilities of being on the medical staff; however, this practice has changed. Health care entities are routinely reimbursing physicians to provide emergency room coverage. This might be done through paying stipends, actual claims for services provided to uninsured or Medicaid patients, or through other agreements negotiated with the physicians. These agreements may include settlement provisions based on volumes or the mix of patients. In all cases, these costs should be accrued as incurred by the health care entity.

8.61 In addition, health care entities contract with certain physicians as medical directors to provide clinical oversight. These medical director agreements may be at a specific stipend, hourly rate, or even involve more complex formulas based on the services and needs of the entity. In all cases, these costs should be accrued as incurred by the entity.

Other Liabilities

Asset Retirement Obligations

8.62 An asset retirement obligation is an obligation associated with the other-than-temporary removal of a tangible long-lived asset from service. That term encompasses sale, abandonment, recycling, or disposal in some other manner. Chapter 6, "Property and Equipment and Other Assets," provides examples of asset retirements that may cause obligations. The FASB ASC glossary defines conditional asset retirement obligation as "[a] legal obligation to perform an asset retirement activity in which the timing and (or) method of settlement are conditional on a future event that may or may not be within the control of the entity." FASB ASC 410-20-25-7 states that an entity should recognize a liability for the fair value of a conditional asset retirement obligation if the fair value of the liability can be reasonably estimated. Paragraphs 4–5 of FASB ASC 410-20-25 require an entity to recognize the fair value of a liability for an asset retirement obligation in the period in which it is incurred, if a reasonable estimate of fair value can be made, and increase the carrying amount of the related long-lived asset by the same amount as the liability. An expected present value technique incorporates uncertainty about the timing and method of settlement into the fair value measurement. Uncertainty is factored into the measurement of the fair value of the liability through assignment of probabilities to cash flows.

8.63 FASB ASC 410-20-25-13 states that if current law, regulation, or contract, including the doctrine of promissory estoppel, requires an entity to perform an asset retirement activity when an asset is sold, abandoned, recycled, dismantled, demolished, or disposed of in some other manner, an unambiguous
requirement exists to perform the retirement activity, even if that activity can be indefinitely deferred. At some time, deferral will no longer be possible because no tangible asset will last forever, except land. Therefore, the obligation to perform the asset retirement activity is unconditional, even though uncertainty exists about the timing or method, or both, of settlement.

8.64 The evaluation of the existence of an asset retirement obligation is generally performed on an asset-by-asset basis. The health care industry is capital intensive, and many health care entities have older physical plant facilities. Health care entities may have asset retirement obligations associated with these assets because federal, state, and local regulations typically require one or more specified activities to be performed upon abandonment, disposal, or significant renovation of long-lived assets. These activities typically relate to asbestos removal but may also relate to the disposal of medical waste, certain medical equipment, or underground storage tanks. A provision may even be included to restore a leased asset to its original condition upon termination of a lease.

Compensation and Related Benefits

© Update 8-1 Accounting: Stock Compensation
FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-12, Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Accounting for Share-Based Payments When the Terms of an Award Provide that a Performance Target Could Be Achieved after the Requisite Service Period (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force), issued June 1, 2014, is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim and annual periods thereafter. Entities may apply the amendments either prospectively to all awards granted or modified after the effective date or retrospectively to all awards with performance targets that are outstanding as of the beginning of the earliest annual period presented in the financial statements and to all new or modified awards thereafter. If retrospective transition is adopted, the cumulative effect of applying this Update as of the beginning of the earliest annual period presented in the financial statements should be recognized as an adjustment to the opening retained earnings balance at that date. Additionally, if retrospective transition is adopted, an entity may use hindsight in measuring and recognizing the compensation cost. Early adoption is permitted.

The amendments require that a performance target that affects vesting, and that could be achieved after the requisite service period, be treated as a performance condition. A reporting entity should apply existing guidance in FASB ASC 718 as it relates to awards with performance conditions that affect vesting to account for such awards.

Users of this guide are encouraged to consult the full text of FASB ASU No. 2014-12, available at www.fasb.org.

8.65 Health care entities are usually labor intensive and compete for a limited number of qualified employees. The workforce at some health care entities is unionized, subjecting the entity to collective bargaining agreements that outline the compensation and benefits provided to employees. In many cases, more than one union will be present at the entity, resulting in multiple collective bargaining agreements. In addition, NFPs have additional regulatory restrictions
regarding the amount and structure of compensation arrangements and benefit plans for their employees. These environmental factors have resulted in health care entities developing and maintaining multiple compensation and benefit plans.

8.66 Careful consideration of the compensation arrangements is required in order to apply the appropriate standards. FASB ASC 710-10-15 may be helpful in locating the appropriate standards. The following four FASB ASC topics provide guidance for compensation:

- FASB ASC 710, Compensation—General
- FASB ASC 712, Compensation—Nonretirement Postemployment Benefits
- FASB ASC 715, Compensation—Retirement Benefits
- FASB ASC 718, Compensation—Stock Compensation

Complex Pay Practices

8.67 For many health care entities, the majority of employees are nonexempt (subject to overtime compensation for hours worked over certain statutory limits) and compensated under complex pay practices. To attract and retain staff in many critical positions, employees may be paid multiple pay differentials, in addition to their base rate. The determination of benefit eligibility or calculation of benefit amounts may relate to only some of the pay practices of the entity. As a result, these practices require entities to develop systems to capture time worked in a manner consistent with the practice or benefit plans, or both.

Incentive and Deferred Compensation Plans

8.68 Health care entities typically maintain an incentive compensation plan for all or certain groups of employees. When compensation is based on attaining a particular goal or set of goals over a period of time, such as achieving a certain operating margin or quality score, it is accrued over the period in relation to the results achieved to date.

8.69 Due to the regulations relating to deferred compensation for NFPs, health care entities utilize a variety of structures to provide deferred compensation benefits to their employees that are competitive with other entities, including for-profit entities. These deferred compensation plans are designed for highly compensated employees and are considered nonqualified plans. Some plans are considered eligible plans by the IRS (for example, 457(b) plans); in other cases, they are considered nonqualified plans. In the simplest form, deferred compensation plans provide that an employee may defer a portion of his or her salary until a later date. That date may be after the employee has left the entity or retired. More complex deferred compensation plans provide for payments of periodic amounts or noncompete arrangements for a specified period of time, or both.

8.70 Although many scope limitations exist, and care should be taken when determining the appropriate standards, in general, guidance for deferred compensation is found in the following locations:

- FASB ASC 715-10 and 715-30 provide guidance for individual deferred compensation contracts if those contracts, taken together, are equivalent to a defined benefit pension plan.
- FASB ASC 715-10 and 715-60 provide guidance for individual deferred compensation contracts if those contracts, taken together, are equivalent to a defined benefit other postretirement benefit plan.
- FASB ASC 710-10 provides guidance for rabbi trusts.
- FASB ASC 710-10 provides guidance for individual deferred compensation arrangements that do not fall within the scope of other topics in FASB ASC.

8.71 Typically, any funding for these deferred compensation arrangements provided by the health care entity is available to its general creditors. An entity may establish a trust to fund compensation for a certain group of management or highly paid executives. In some cases, the executives or management may invest these funds in a select group of securities.

8.72 FASB ASC 710-10-25-18 requires that assets held by a rabbi trust be accounted for in accordance with GAAP for the particular asset and that the deferred compensation obligation be classified as a liability. Paragraphs 16–17 of FASB ASC 710-10-25 apply if the rabbi trust is invested in the employer's stock.

8.73 In addition, a health care entity may utilize split-dollar life insurance policies to fund its obligation under the deferred compensation agreements. The "Split-Dollar Life Insurance Arrangements" sections of FASB ASC 715-60 provide guidance for accounting for these benefits.

Sabbaticals and Other Compensated Absences

8.74 Health care entities typically provide employees with compensated absences, such as for holidays, vacations, and illness. These liabilities should be accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 710-10. In addition to these typical compensated absences, FASB ASC 710-10 also provides guidance for health care entities that have a sabbatical program for certain employees.

Postretirement and Postemployment Benefit Plans

8.75 Similar to other industries, health care entities historically have provided pension benefits to their employees. Over the last several years, many health care entities have converted their traditional defined benefit plans to cash balance or defined contribution plans. In addition, some health care entities have agreed to provide postretirement health benefits.

8.76 Although many scope limitations exist, and care should be taken when determining the appropriate standards, in general, guidance for postretirement and postemployment benefits is found in the following locations:
- FASB ASC 715-20 and 715-30 provide guidance for pension benefits provided through defined benefit pension plans.
- FASB ASC 715-20 and 715-60 provide guidance for other postretirement benefits provided through defined benefit plans.
- FASB ASC 715-70 provides guidance for defined contribution plans.
- FASB ASC 715-80 provides guidance for multiemployer pension and other postretirement benefit plans, including those provided pursuant to one or more collective bargaining agreements.
FASB ASC 712-10 provides guidance for special or contractual termination benefits that are payable before retirement and not payable from a pension or other postretirement plan, including guidance for health care entities that have a formal severance plan as part of their health and welfare plans.

FASB ASC 712-10 also provides guidance for all types of other postemployment benefits provided to former or inactive employees, their beneficiaries, and covered dependents after employment but before retirement.

Joint and Several Liability Arrangements

8.77 FASB ASC 405-40-15-1 applies to obligations resulting from joint and several liability arrangements for which the total amount under the arrangement is fixed at the reporting date, except for obligations accounted as follows:

- FASB ASC 410, Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations
- FASB ASC 450
- FASB ASC 460
- FASB ASC 715
- FASB ASC 740, Income Taxes

For the total amount of an obligation under an arrangement to be considered fixed at the reporting date there can be no measurement uncertainty at the reporting date relating to the total amount of the obligation subject to FASB ASC 405-40-15-1. However, the total amount of the obligation may change subsequently because of factors that are unrelated to measurement uncertainty. For example, the amount may be fixed at the reporting date but change in future periods because an additional amount was borrowed under a line of credit for which an entity is jointly and severally liable or because the interest rate on a joint and several liability arrangement changed.

8.78 A health care entity should recognize obligations resulting from joint and several liability arrangements subject to FASB ASC 405-40-15-1 at the inception of the arrangement (for example, a debt arrangement) or after the inception of the arrangement (for example, when the total amount of the obligation becomes fixed). The corresponding entry or entries depend on facts and circumstances of the obligation, examples of which are as follows:

- Cash for proceeds from a debt arrangement
- An expense for a legal settlement
- A receivable (that is assessed for impairment) for a contractual right
- An equity transaction with an entity under common control

8.79 Obligations resulting from joint and several liability arrangements subject to FASB ASC 405-40-15-1 included initially should be measured as the sum of the following:

- The amount the reporting entity agreed to pay on the basis of its arrangement among its co-obligors.
- Any additional amount the reporting entity expects to pay on behalf of its co-obligors. If some amount within a range of the
additional amount the reporting entity expects to pay is a better estimate than any other amount within the range, that amount should be the additional amount included in the measurement of the obligation. If no amount within the range is a better estimate than any other amount, then the minimum amount in the range should be the additional amount included in the measurement of the obligation.

8.80 Obligations resulting from joint and several liability arrangements subject to FASB ASC 405-40-15-1 subsequently should be measured using the guidance in FASB ASC 405-40-30.

8.81 A health care entity should disclose the following information about each obligation, or each group of similar obligations, resulting from joint and several liability arrangements subject to FASB ASC 405-40-15-1:

- The nature of the arrangement, including
  - how the liability arose
  - the relationship with other co-obligors
  - the terms and conditions of the arrangement
- The total outstanding amount under the arrangement, which should not be reduced by the effect of any amounts that may be recoverable from other entities
- The carrying amount, if any, of an entity's liability and the carrying amount of a receivable recognized, if any
- The nature of any recourse provisions that would enable recovery from other entities of the amounts paid, including any limitations on the amounts that might be recovered
- In the period the liability is initially recognized and measured or in a period the measurement changes significantly, the corresponding entry and where the entry was recorded in the financial statements

These disclosures do not affect the related-party disclosure requirements in FASB ASC 850, Related Party Disclosures.

Agency Funds

8.82 As described in FASB ASC 954-305-45-4, health care entities may receive and hold assets owned by others under agency relationships. For example, they may perform billing and collection services for physicians. In accepting responsibility for those assets, the health care entity incurs a liability to the principal under the agency relationship to return the assets in the future or, if authorized, disburse them to another party on behalf of the principal. If held by NFP business-oriented health care entities, such agency funds shall be reported as unrestricted assets.

8.83 As a result, physician fees collected by the health care entity as a conduit are reported as a liability to the physicians and not recognized in the statement of income or operations and changes in net assets.
Fees Paid to the Federal Government by Health Insurers

8.84 On or after January 1, 2014, if an entity provides health insurance, it is required to pay a fee to the federal government in accordance with the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act (the acts).

8.85 In accordance with FASB ASC 720-50, health insurers should record a liability for annual fee. It should be estimated and recorded in full once the entity provides qualifying health insurance in the applicable calendar year in which the fee is payable with a corresponding deferred cost that is amortized to expense using a straight-line method of allocation, unless another method better allocates the fee over the calendar year that it is payable. The annual fee imposed on health insurers does not represent a cost related to the acquisition of policies that is consistent with the definition of an acquisition cost in FASB ASC 944-30.

Tax Considerations for NFP Health Care Entities

8.86 NFP health care entities generally are exempt from taxation. Tax exemption is a privilege and not a right. At the federal level, the IRS has the authority to revoke an entity's exempt status for any one of several reasons. Furthermore, individual states have regulatory bodies that oversee NFPs and can revoke their state tax-exempt status without regard to their federal tax-exempt status and even prevent them from operating. Many potential threats exist to an entity's federal tax-exempt status, of which the following are particularly important:

- Material changes in the entity's character, purpose, or method of operation
- Private inurement
- Private benefit
- Commerciality
- Lobbying
- Political campaign activities
- Unrelated business income
- Failure of the entity to meet the commensurate test
- Violation of public policy by the entity

8.87 NFPs should be aware of relevant federal and state tax laws and regulations and their potential impact on the entity and its financial statements. An entity's failure to maintain its tax-exempt status could have serious financial consequences. As discussed in chapter 2, "General Auditing Considerations," of this guide, failure to comply with tax laws and regulations could be an illegal act that may have either a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts (for example, the result of an incorrect accrual for taxes on unrelated business income) or a material indirect effect on the financial statements that would require appropriate disclosures (for example, the result of a potential loss of tax-exempt status).

8.88 NFP health care entities usually seek exemption from federal income tax under IRC Section 501(a). Under IRC Section 501(a), entities organized and operated exclusively for religious, charitable, or educational purposes, as
described in IRC Section 501(c)(3), are exempt from federal income taxes. The following are additional requirements for such entities:

- No part of the organization's net earnings, either directly or indirectly, inures to any private shareholder or individual.
- No substantial part of the organization's activities consists of carrying on propaganda or otherwise attempting to influence legislation. IRC Section 501(h) provides a limited exception to the general rule that public charities may not incur expenditures to influence legislation.
- The organization does not participate or intervene in any political campaign on behalf of, or in opposition to, any candidate for public office.

8.89 The term charitable is used in IRC Section 501(c)(3) in its generally accepted legal sense. Providing health care to the community is considered a charitable activity when provided by a health care organization not organized or operated for the benefit of private interests, such as designated individuals, the founder or founder's family, shareholders of the organization, or people directly or indirectly controlled by such private interests.

8.90 FASB ASC 954-740-50-1 requires that an NFP health care entity disclose its tax-exempt status.

8.91 Health care entities must file annual information returns (Form 990) with the IRS. Most states also have their own registration and filing requirements, some of which include using Form 990 as part of an annual report. In 2008, the IRS issued a completely revised Form 990 with expanded reporting requirements in the areas of governance and compensation of officers, directors, and other key employees. Other changes include an increased focus on the determination of public charity status and public support, supplemental financial statement reporting, and fundraising. Separately, the IRS Exempt Organizations (TE/GE) Hospital Compliance Project Final Report, issued in February 2009, places increased emphasis on community benefit reporting and executive compensation. Additional changes are expected because of health care reform, which is discussed further in chapter 1 of this guide.

Private Inurement and Intermediate Sanctions

8.92 Under IRC Section 501(c)(3), no part of the net earnings of the charitable organization shall inure to the benefit of any private shareholder, individual, or insider. A private shareholder, individual, or insider refers to a person(s) having a private or personal interest in the activities of the organization. Insiders are individuals with a personal or private interest in the organization, such as governing board members, officers, certain employees, and substantial contributors. The IRS has stated that physicians have a personal or private interest in the activities of a health care organization and could be subject to the private inurement proscription. Transactions between insiders and NFPs are permitted, but the NFP has the burden of proving that the transactions do not result in private inurement. The NFP must be able to satisfy the IRS that the transaction was reasonable, was adequately documented, had independent approval, and did not violate any law or regulation. Employee compensation can create an inurement problem if it is judged to be unreasonably high.

8.93 The IRS instituted intermediate sanctions regulations that allow the IRS to penalize the individuals who received and approved the excess benefit...
transactions. The intermediate sanctions regulations are designed to curtail excess benefits (private inurement) provided to individuals with substantial influence over the affairs of the NFP (organizational insiders). The intermediate sanctions regulations provide the IRS with the ability to punish those who participate in private inurement (excess benefit) transactions. An insider (generally, certain members of management, officers, physicians, and board members) is subject to a 25 percent tax or up to 200 percent if the amount of an excess benefit is not repaid within a certain period of time. However, even if an insider does not benefit from the transaction, he or she may be subject to the 10 percent tax if he or she knowingly and willfully approved a transaction subsequently determined by the IRS to be an excess benefit transaction.

**Unrelated Business Income**

8.94 Although NFPs may be exempt from federal income tax, they may be subject to tax on unrelated business income. The objective of the tax on unrelated business is to place such activities on the same basis as that of taxable entities. *Unrelated business income* is the income from any regularly carried on trade or business, the conduct of which is not substantially related to the exercise or performance of the organization’s tax-exempt purpose or function. The fact that proceeds from an activity are used exclusively for the organization’s tax-exempt purpose does not make the activity substantially related to its tax-exempt purpose or function. As is the case with most tax-related definitions, qualifications and exceptions exist.

**State and Local Taxes**

8.95 Tax-exempt entities may also be subject to property taxes or other state and local business and occupancy taxes. Exemptions from state and local sales, real estate, and other taxes vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction and may be different than for federal taxes. Entities are generally subject to the laws of the state of incorporation, as well as the laws of states in which they conduct significant activities. Each state’s laws govern exemption from its taxes and should be consulted for the applicable definitions and requirements.

**Tax Positions**

8.96 The tax considerations discussed in this chapter often result in an entity or its for-profit or NFP subsidiaries making a determination about whether a transaction or event must be reported in a tax return. The term *tax position* refers to a position in a previously-filed tax return or a position expected to be taken in a future tax return that is reflected in measuring current or deferred income tax assets and liabilities for interim or annual periods. The term *tax position* encompasses, but is not limited to, the following:

- An entity's status, including its status as a tax-exempt NFP
- A decision to classify a transaction, entity, or other position in a tax return as tax exempt or subject to a lower rate of tax
- A decision not to file a tax return, such as a decision that Form 990-T need not be filed
- The characterization of income, such as a characterization of income as passive, or a decision to exclude reporting taxable income in a tax return
8.97 The validity of a tax position is a matter of tax law. It is not controversial to recognize the benefit of a tax position in financial statements when the degree of confidence is high that that tax position will be sustained upon examination by a taxing authority. However, in some cases, the law is subject to varied interpretation, and whether a tax position will ultimately be sustained may be uncertain. FASB ASC 740-10-25-6 limits the recognition of uncertain tax positions to only those positions that are more likely that, based on the technical merits, the position will be sustained on examination.

Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs

8.98 The Medicaid program is set up on a state-by-state basis to provide medical assistance to the indigent. Although state administered, the program is actually a joint federal and state program for which the federal government funds a portion of the cost. Under this arrangement, the federal government matches a percentage of the total amount paid by the state to health care entities. This matching is referred to as federal financial participation. States have attempted to increase the amount of federal matching funds for which they are eligible by increasing the amount of medical assistance they provide. In order to pay for the increased medical assistance, some states have imposed a tax on health care entities or sought donations or other voluntary payments from them, or both. As a result, the states have been able to generate additional federal matching funds without expending additional state funds.

8.99 TIS section 6400.30, "Accounting for Transactions Involving Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), notes that the accounting for these types of programs is dependent on the individual facts and circumstances. For example, if a guarantee exists that specific monies given to the state by the health care entity will be returned to the entity from the state, those amounts should be recorded as receivables. In addition, if the health care entity has met all the requirements to be legally entitled to additional funds from the state, the revenue or gain should be recognized. However, if the monies go into a pool with other contributions that are then disbursed based on factors over which the health care entity has little or no control, the payments should be recognized as an expense. Any subsequent reimbursements would be recognized as revenue or gain when the entity is entitled to them and payment is assured. Care should be taken to avoid delayed recognition of expenses or improperly recognizing contingent gains. Because of the complexities that are involved, it may be necessary for the health care entity to consult with legal counsel.

Risks and Uncertainties

8.100 FASB ASC 275-10-50 requires entities to include in their financial statements information about risks and uncertainties in the following areas as of the date of those statements:

- The nature of their operations
- Use of estimates in the preparation of financial estimates
- Certain significant estimates
- Current vulnerability due to certain concentrations
8.101 FASB ASC 275-10-50-6 requires discussion of estimates when, based on known information available before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued, as discussed in FASB ASC 855-10-25, it is reasonably possible that the estimate will change in the near term, and the effect of the change will be material. The estimate of the effect of a change in a condition, situation, or set of circumstances that existed at the date of the financial statements should be disclosed, and the evaluation should be based on known information available before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued.

8.102 Examples of estimates that may be included in financial statements of health care entities that are particularly sensitive to changes in the near term include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Third-party revenue and related receivables
- Provision for bad debts
- Obligation by continuing care retirement communities to provide future services and the use of facilities to current residents
- IBNR relating to medical malpractice and prepaid health care services liabilities
- Accruals for loss contracts under managed care agreements
- Assets subject to impairment (for example, goodwill)
- Environmental remediation-related obligations
- Litigation-related contingencies (for example, fraud and abuse actions by regulators)
- Estimated risk pool settlements arising from managed care contracting
- Amounts reported for long-term obligations, such as amounts reported for pensions and postemployment benefits
- Estimated net proceeds recoverable or the provisions for expected loss to be incurred, or both, on the disposition of a business or assets

8.103 In the health care environment, it almost always is reasonably possible that estimates regarding third-party payments could change in the near term as a result of one or more future confirming events (for example, regulatory action reflecting local or national audit or enforcement initiatives). Paragraph .07 of SOP 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, AUD sec. 14,360), provides examples of risks unique to the government-contracting environment that make it difficult to estimate net realizable third-party revenues and receivables. For most entities with significant third-party revenues, the effect of the change could be material to the financial statements. When material exposure exists, the uncertainty regarding revenue realization is disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. A sample disclosure is presented in paragraph .37 of SOP 00-1. Among other things, the sample disclosure indicates that laws and regulations governing the Medicare and Medicaid programs are extremely complex and subject to interpretation. As a result, at least a
reasonable possibility exists that recorded estimates will change by a material amount in the near term.¹

8.104 FASB ASC 275-10-50-16 requires that financial statements disclose certain concentrations (those described in the following paragraph) if, based on information known to management before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued, as discussed in FASB ASC 855-10-25, all of the following criteria are met:

- The concentration exists at the date of the financial statements.
- The concentration makes the entity vulnerable to the risk of a near-term severe impact.
- It is at least reasonably possible that the events that could cause the severe impact will occur in the near term.

8.105 Examples of concentrations that may meet those criteria and that require disclosure in the financial statements of health care entities include the following:

- Concentrations in the volume of business transacted with a particular payor, supplier, lender, grantor, or contributor
- Concentrations in revenue from particular products, services, or fund-raising events
- Concentrations in the available sources of supply of material, labor, or services or licenses or other rights used in the entity's operations
- Concentrations in the market or geographic area in which an entity conducts its operations

8.106 FASB ASC 275-10-50-20 requires health care entities to disclose the percentage of the labor force covered by a collective bargaining agreement and the percentage of labor force covered by a collective bargaining agreement that will expire within one year.

Auditing Contingencies and Other Liabilities

8.107 Auditing objectives and procedures for contingencies and other liabilities generally are similar to those of other entities. The independent auditor may need to consider the specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures presented in exhibit 8-1.

Auditing Medical Malpractice Loss Contingencies

8.108 Although this chapter focuses on medical malpractice loss contingencies, the auditing objectives and procedures that are discussed also are relevant to other self-insured obligations. The existence of an insurance policy, by itself, is no assurance that malpractice contingencies are assumed by others. The independent auditor should review the insurance contracts and determine

---

¹ Statement of Position (SOP) 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, AUD sec. 14.360), provides guidance to independent auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in health care revenue recognition. SOP 00-1 is included as appendix D, "Statement of Position 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables," of this guide.
the extent of the risk retained by the entity. Specific auditing procedures to consider include the following:

- Determine the type, such as occurrence basis or claims made, and level (per occurrence or in the aggregate) of insurance protection that the entity has obtained.
- Determine if the coverage actually provides for the recovery of losses from malpractice risks. Is the insurance with a related party (for example, a captive insurance company)? Does it provide for retrospective premiums or similar adjustments?

Once the extent of the retained risk is understood, the independent auditor will be able to determine the nature, extent, and timing of other auditing procedures.

8.109 Paragraph 8.36 discusses the conditions for which an insured health care entity can recognize a receivable for expected insurance recoveries, even though tail coverage has not been purchased at the balance sheet date. In evaluating the amount of the receivable, the independent auditor should consider the extent to which the claim liability is insurable under the coverage. The receivable cannot be recognized if the insured entity did not have the unilateral option to purchase the tail coverage at the balance sheet date and record as an expense the premium for the tail coverage. See paragraphs 8.34–36 for a discussion of accounting for claims-made insurance policies and tail coverage.

8.110 Management's intent to renew a claims-made policy is not sufficient to recognize a receivable for expected insurance recoveries as of the balance sheet date, unless management contractually obligates itself for renewal before the issuance date of the financial statements, and the cost is expensed in the period covered by the financial statements. The requirement to renew a claims-made policy or purchase and expense tail coverage applies even if state regulations require that renewal of claims-made coverage be offered continually.

8.111 If the health care entity discounts accrued malpractice claims, the auditor should consider whether that discounting is appropriate (for example, that the conditions in paragraph 8.25 are met). The auditor should consider tests of the estimates of the amount and timing of cash payments based on the health care entity's specific experience. The auditor should also consider whether the discount rate is reasonable. Paragraph 41 of FASB Concepts Statement No. 7 and paragraphs 12–13 of FASB ASC 835-30-25 provide general principles for present value measurements and determining an appropriate discount rate. Also, see paragraph 8.26 for additional discussion on determining an appropriate discount rate.

**Auditinig Accounting Estimates**

8.112 Management is responsible for making the accounting estimates that are included in the financial statements. Management is also responsible for providing proper disclosure of (a) the use of estimates in the preparation of financial statements and (b) certain significant estimates. The independent

---

2 See paragraphs 8.62–76.
Contingencies and Other Liabilities

157

8.113 In evaluating management's estimates of asserted and unasserted claims, the independent auditor should consider factors such as management's description and evaluation of asserted and unasserted claims arising from reported incidents; the lawyer's and, if appropriate, the outside risk manager's assessment of asserted claims and reported incidents not covered by insurers; and the actuary's evaluations of the aggregate liability covering asserted and unasserted claims arising from reported and unreported incidents.

8.114 Paragraph .15 of AU-C section 580, *Written Representations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), requires the auditor request management to provide written representations that all known actual or possible litigation and claims whose effects should be considered by management when preparing the financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor and accounted for in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework.

8.115 Paragraph .13 of AU-C section 501, *Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states the auditor should design and perform audit procedures to identify litigation, claims, and assessments involving the entity that may give rise to a risk of material misstatement, including

a. inquiring of management and, when applicable, others within the entity, including in-house legal counsel;

b. obtaining from management a description and evaluation of litigation, claims, and assessments that existed at the date of the financial statements being reported on and during the period from the date of the financial statements to the date the information is furnished, including an identification of those matters referred to legal counsel;³

c. reviewing minutes of meetings of those charged with governance; documents obtained from management concerning litigation, claims, and assessments; and correspondence between the entity and its external legal counsel; and

³ For purposes of this section, the term *legal counsel* refers to the entity's in-house legal counsel and external legal counsel.

AAG-HCO 8.115
d. reviewing legal expense accounts and invoices from external legal counsel.

8.116 Unless the audit procedures required by paragraph .16 of AU-C section 501 indicate that no actual or potential litigation, claims, or assessments that may give rise to a risk of material misstatement exist, the auditor should, in addition to the procedures required by other AU-C sections, seek direct communication with the entity’s external legal counsel. The auditor should do so through a letter of inquiry prepared by management and sent by the auditor requesting the entity’s external legal counsel to communicate directly with the auditor. A letter of audit inquiry to the lawyer handling the claims is the auditor’s primary means of obtaining corroboration of the information furnished by management concerning claims made and known incidents for which claims have not been made that are either uninsured or in excess of the insurance coverage. In evaluating the information provided by legal counsel, it may be necessary to supplement the written representations with inquiries if the representations are not clear regarding the probability of the litigation outcome or potential range of loss. Paragraph .24 of AU-C section 501 requires the auditor to modify the opinion in the auditor’s report, in accordance with AU-C section 705, * Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report* (AICPA, Professional Standards), if (a) the entity’s legal counsel refuses to respond appropriately to the letter of inquiry and the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence by performing alternative audit procedures or (b) management refuses to give the auditor permission to communicate or meet with the entity’s external legal counsel.

8.117 The independent auditor should consider the frequency of losses due to unreported incidents and the magnitude of prior losses and underlying causes for the IBNR claims. If a basis for an accrual exists, the independent auditor should then determines whether the entity's prior history supports the estimation of the number of claims and probable settlement value.

Use of Actuaries and Actuarial Methods

8.118 Developing the estimate of the medical malpractice loss amount often requires special skill or knowledge. In the auditor's judgment, the work of a specialist may be required to obtain appropriate audit evidence. An actuary may be engaged by management to help prepare or review management's estimate of the medical malpractice loss amount (or range of amounts) or to assist in developing certain factors and assumptions used in estimating the malpractice liability. The decision to use an actuary should be based on a consideration of whether (a) the estimated claim liability is potentially material to the fair presentation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP and (b) special skill or knowledge is required to estimate the claim liability.

8.119 If an actuary is involved in a substantial way in determining the amount of an entity's malpractice self-insurance liability, the independent auditor should follow the requirements of AU-C section 620, *Using the Work of an Auditor’s Specialist* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Paragraph .09 of AU-C section 620 states the auditor should evaluate whether the auditor's specialist has the necessary competence, capabilities, and objectivity for the auditor's purposes. In the case of an auditor's external specialist, the evaluation of objectivity should include inquiry regarding interests and relationships that may create a threat to the objectivity of the auditor's specialist. Based on the
guidance in paragraph .11 of AU-C section 620, the auditor should agree, in writing when appropriate, with the auditor's specialist regarding

- the nature, scope, and objectives of the work of the auditor's specialist;
- the respective roles and responsibilities of the auditor and the auditor's specialist;
- the nature, timing, and extent of communication between the auditor and the auditor's specialist, including the form of any report to be provided by the auditor's specialist; and
- the need for the auditor's specialist to observe confidentiality requirements.

8.120 Paragraph .12 of AU-C section 620 requires the auditor to evaluate the adequacy of the work of the auditor's specialist for the auditor's purposes, including

- the relevance and reasonableness of the findings and conclusions of the auditor's specialist and their consistency with other audit evidence.
- if the work of the auditor's specialist involves the use of significant assumptions and methods,
  - obtaining an understanding of those assumptions and methods and
  - evaluating the relevance and reasonableness of those assumptions and methods in the circumstances, giving consideration to the rationale and support provided by the specialist, and in relation to the auditor's other findings and conclusions.
- if the work of the auditor's specialist involves the use of source data that is significant to the work of the auditor's specialist, the relevance, completeness, and accuracy of that source data.

If the auditor determines that the work of the auditor's specialist is not adequate for the auditor's purposes, the auditor should

- agree with the auditor's specialist on the nature and extent of further work to be performed by the auditor's specialist or
- perform additional audit procedures appropriate to the circumstances.

8.121 The independent auditor should perform an appropriate test of the accounting data provided to the actuary by the client. Such accounting data may include historical claim experience; policy terms, such as coverage, expiration, deductibles, presence of retrospectively-determined premiums, and indemnity limitations; exposure data, such as the number of beds, high-risk medical specialties, outpatient visits, and emergency room visits; and information about risk-management systems, personnel, and procedures. Other factors that might be considered include inflation rates, judicial decisions assessing liability and noneconomic damages, changes in legislation affecting payment levels and settlement practices, changes in the entity's experience or trends in loss reporting and settlements, divergence in an entity's experience relative to industry experience, reinsurance programs and changes therein, and recent catastrophic occurrences.
Evaluating Lawyers’ Responses

8.122 Determining the outcome of pending or threatened litigation, claims, and assessments, including unasserted claims and assessments, normally is beyond the independent auditor's professional competence. Accordingly, the independent auditor's evaluation of the need for disclosures or report modifications is based primarily on the opinion of the lawyer handling the matter. The American Bar Association (ABA) has adopted a *Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers’ Responses to Auditors’ Requests for Information* under which lawyers accept certain responsibility for responses to independent auditors' inquiries. However, the ABA statement is not enforceable by the ABA in the same way that the AICPA is able to enforce its standards under the accounting profession's Code of Professional Conduct. As a result, lawyers' responses may vary widely.

8.123 Paragraph .A65 of AU-C section 501 includes the following examples of evaluations concerning litigation that may be considered to provide sufficient clarity that the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome is remote, even though they do not use that term, are the following:

- "We are of the opinion that this action will not result in any liability to the company."
- "It is our opinion that the possible liability to the company in this proceeding is nominal in amount."
- "We believe the company will be able to defend this action successfully."
- "We believe that the plaintiff's case against the company is without merit."
- "Based on the facts known to us, after a full investigation, it is our opinion that no liability will be established against the company in these suits."

8.124 On the other hand, the lawyer may use terms, such as *meritorious defenses*, that have different meanings to different lawyers. Paragraph .A65 of AU-C section 501 includes the following examples of legal counsel's evaluations that are unclear regarding the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome:

- "This action involves unique characteristics wherein authoritative legal precedents do not seem to exist. We believe that the plaintiff will have serious problems establishing the company's liability under the act; nevertheless, if the plaintiff is successful, the award may be substantial."
- "It is our opinion that the company will be able to assert meritorious defenses to this action." (The term "meritorious defenses" indicates that the company's defenses will not be summarily dismissed by the court; it does not necessarily indicate counsel's opinion that the company will prevail.)
- "We believe the action can be settled for less than the damages claimed."
- "We are unable to express an opinion as to the merits of the litigation at this time. The company believes there is absolutely no merit to the litigation." (If client's counsel, with the benefit of all relevant information, is unable to conclude that the likelihood of
an unfavorable outcome is "remote," it is unlikely that management would be able to form a judgment to that effect.

- "In our opinion, the company has a substantial chance of prevailing in this action." (A "substantial chance," a "reasonable opportunity," and similar terms indicate more uncertainty than an opinion that the company will prevail.)

8.125 If the auditor is uncertain about the meaning of the legal counsel's evaluation, clarification either in a follow-up letter or conference with the legal counsel and entity, appropriately documented, may be appropriate. If the legal counsel is still unable to give an unequivocal evaluation of the likelihood of an unfavorable outcome in writing or orally, the auditor is required by AU-C section 700, Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards), to determine the effect, if any, of the legal counsel's response on the auditor's report.

Income Taxes

8.126 The auditor should perform procedures to determine whether the health care entity has obtained a qualifying income tax exemption from the appropriate governmental authority and whether disclosures relating to the entity's tax-exempt status are appropriate.

Auditing Considerations

8.127 The auditor may need to consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures for contingencies and other liabilities that are presented in exhibit 8-1.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Malpractice Loss Contingencies</strong></td>
<td>Existence and occurrence, completeness, rights and obligations, and valuation</td>
<td>The liability for malpractice claims is properly reported in the balance sheet.</td>
<td>Review the amount of insurance coverage, the type of coverage (claims made or occurrence), the deductible provisions, and so on to determine the level of risk that is retained by the entity. Consider the financial viability of the insurance carrier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insurance coverage is reviewed regularly, including the financial viability of the insurer. The risk-management system identifies and monitors malpractice incidents and evaluates associated losses.</td>
<td>Send letters of inquiry to malpractice insurance carriers and legal counsel, in accordance with AU-C section 501,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Outside legal counsel and insurance carriers review and monitor all claims.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AAG-HCO 8.127
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items</strong> (AICPA, Professional Standards).</td>
<td>The adequacy of malpractice accruals is regularly reviewed by management, including information obtained from qualified specialists. Information supplied to specialists is reviewed for accuracy and completeness. Actuarial assumptions are reviewed for compliance with generally accepted accounting principles.</td>
<td>Review and test the method of estimating accruals (for example, review actuarial reports and prior historical loss experience). If the accrual is discounted, review and test the present value calculation, including the reasonableness of the inputs. Determine that additional premiums charged by insurers for retrospectively-related policies are reported as a liability.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Changes in the risk-management system are communicated on a timely basis.</td>
<td>Review prior estimates and historical loss experience. Determine whether uncertainties related to medical malpractice claims need to be disclosed in the independent auditor's report.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presentation and disclosure</td>
<td>The program of medical malpractice insurance coverage and the basis for any loss accruals are adequately disclosed in the financial statements.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Income Taxes**

| Rights and obligations | The NFP has obtained a qualifying income tax exemption from the appropriate governmental authority. | Management monitors compliance with applicable tax regulations. Transactions are reviewed for their effect on the tax status and tax liabilities, including IRC Section 4958. | Determine that the NFP has obtained a determination of its tax-exempt status. Consider the effect of new, expanded, or unusual activities on the NFP's tax status. Inquire if tax returns have been filed on a timely basis. Determine the status of the tax returns under examination. Read the prior year's tax returns. Read the minutes and accounting for evidence of significant unrelated business activities. Review for reasonableness the unrelated business income tax liability. Review transactions with disqualified persons, as defined in IRC Section 4958. |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Financial Statement Assertions</strong></th>
<th><strong>Specific Auditing Objectives</strong></th>
<th><strong>Selected Control Objectives</strong></th>
<th><strong>Auditing Procedures</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Presentation and disclosure</td>
<td>The entity's tax-exempt status and its tax contingencies are disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Determine that the entity's tax-exempt status is disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 9

Net Assets (Equity)

Investor-Owned Health Care Entities

9.01 The equity accounts of investor-owned health care entities are similar to those of other investor-owned entities.

Not-for-Profit Entities

9.02 The FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) glossary defines net assets as "[t]he excess or deficiency of assets over liabilities of a not-for-profit (NFP) entity, which is classified into three mutually exclusive classes according to the existence or absence of donor-imposed restrictions."¹

9.03 As a residual interest, net assets cannot be measured independently of an NFP's assets and liabilities. Changes in net assets result from transactions and other events and circumstances in which total assets and total liabilities change by different amounts. In many NFPs, such changes include nonreciprocal transfers of assets received from donors who do not expect to receive either repayment or proportionate economic benefit in return. See chapter 11, "Contributions Received and Made," of this guide for further discussion. Display of, and disclosures about, net assets and changes in them are intended to assist donors and other users in assessing an entity's efforts to provide goods and services to its constituencies, its efficiency and effectiveness in providing such services, and its continuing ability to do so.

9.04 Changes in net assets result from revenue, expenses, gains, losses, and equity transfers; those changes are discussed in other chapters of this guide. This chapter describes the principles for reporting total net assets in statements of financial position and changes in total net assets in statements of operations, as well as related disclosures.

Net Asset Classes

9.05 Paragraphs 9–11 of FASB ASC 958-210-45 provide guidance for the classification of net assets. According to FASB ASC 958-210-45-1, the statement of financial position (balance sheet) of an NFP health care entity should focus on the entity as a whole and report separate amounts for each of three classes of net assets: (a) permanently-restricted net assets, (b) temporarily-restricted net assets, and (c) unrestricted net assets.² Net assets are included in one of the three classes depending on the presence and type of donor-imposed restrictions.

¹ Although some health care entities may use other terms, such as equity, this guide uses the term net assets to describe the residual interest.

² As explained in FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 958-210-55-3, FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities, encourages the use of the terms unrestricted, temporarily restricted, and permanently restricted net assets; however, other labels exist. For example, equity may be used for net assets, and other or not donor restricted may be used with care to distinguish unrestricted net assets from the temporarily and permanently restricted classes of net assets.
9.06 The FASB ASC glossary defines a donor-imposed restriction as [a] donor stipulation that specifies a use for a contributed asset that is more specific than the broad limits resulting from the following:
   a. The nature of the not-for-profit entity (NFP)
   b. The environment in which it operates
   c. The purposes specified in its articles of incorporation or bylaws or comparable documents for an unincorporated association.

A donor-imposed restriction on an NFP's use of the asset contributed may be temporary or permanent. Some donor-imposed restrictions impose limits that are permanent, for example, stipulating that resources be invested in perpetuity (not used up). Others are temporary, for example, stipulating that resources may be used only after a specified date, for particular programs or services, or to acquire buildings and equipment.

9.07 In addition to the three classes of net assets—permanently restricted, temporarily restricted, and unrestricted—further disaggregation of total net assets may also be reported. For example, unrestricted net assets may be subdivided into board-designated net assets and undesignated net assets. Donor-imposed restrictions limit an NFP health care entity's ability to use or dispose of specific contributed assets or the economic benefits embodied in those assets. Donor stipulations should not be considered restrictions, unless they include limitations on the use of contributed assets that are more specific than the broad limits imposed by the NFP health care entity's purpose and nature.

9.08 As explained in FASB ASC 958-210-45-3, generally, restrictions apply to net assets, not specific assets. However, assets may be restricted by donors. For example, land could be restricted to use as a public park.

Permanently-Restricted Net Assets

9.09 The FASB ASC glossary defines permanently restricted net assets as [t]he part of net assets of a not-for-profit entity (NFP) resulting from the following:
   a. Contributions and other inflows of assets whose use by the NFP is limited by donor-imposed stipulations that neither expire by passage of time nor can be fulfilled or otherwise removed by the actions of the NFP
   b. Other asset enhancements and diminishments subject to the same kinds of stipulations
   c. Reclassifications from or to other classes of net assets as a consequence of donor-imposed stipulations.

9.10 Permanently-restricted net assets must be maintained by the NFP health care entity in perpetuity. For example, contributions of cash or securities restricted by the donor with the stipulation that they be invested in perpetuity (donor-restricted endowment funds) are recognized as increases in permanently-restricted net assets.

9.11 Permanently-restricted net assets also may change as a result of increases and decreases in assets that are subject to permanent restrictions.
FASB ASC 958-205-45-18 provides the following examples. If a donor stipulates that net gains be added to the principal of its gift until that endowed gift plus accumulated gains increases to a specified dollar level, the gains are permanently restricted. Similarly, if a donor states that a specific investment security must be held in perpetuity, the gains and losses on that security are subject to that same permanent restriction, unless the donor specifies otherwise. However, if a donor allows the NFP to choose suitable investments, the gains are not permanently restricted, unless the donor or law requires that an amount be permanently retained.

**Temporarily-Restricted Net Assets**

9.12 The FASB ASC glossary defines temporarily restricted net assets as the part of net assets of a not-for-profit entity (NFP) resulting from the following:

a. Contributions and other inflows of assets whose use by the NFP is limited by donor-imposed stipulations that either expire by passage of time or can be fulfilled and removed by actions of the NFP pursuant to those stipulations

b. Other asset enhancements and diminishments subject to the same kinds of stipulations

c. Reclassification from or to other classes of net assets as a consequence of donor-imposed stipulations, their expiration by passage of time, or their fulfillment and removal by actions of the NFP pursuant to those stipulations.

9.13 Temporarily-restricted net assets are those net assets whose use by the NFP health care entity have been limited by donors to (a) later periods or after specified dates or (b) specified purposes. For example, contributions restricted by the donor to be used by the entity over the next five years or support a specific future program are recognized as increases in temporarily-restricted net assets. Contributions of assets, such as equipment or buildings, that by their nature are used up over time and that the donor stipulates must be used by the entity also are recognized as increases in temporarily-restricted net assets. Paragraphs 9.25–31 discuss the temporarily-restricted net assets of endowment funds.

9.14 Temporarily-restricted net assets also may change as a result of increases and decreases in assets or the economic benefits embodied in those assets that are subject to donor-imposed temporary restrictions. For example, as explained in paragraphs 9.28–29, if a donor has stipulated that assets be held in perpetuity as a donor-restricted endowment fund, the net appreciation of those assets and their income are temporarily restricted until appropriated for expenditure by the NFP health care entity.

**Unrestricted Net Assets**

9.15 The FASB ASC glossary defines unrestricted net assets as the part of net assets of a not-for-profit entity (NFP) that is neither permanently restricted nor temporarily restricted by donor-imposed restrictions.

---

3 As described in paragraph 11.13 of this guide, contributions received with restrictions that are met in the same reporting period may be reported as unrestricted if the health care entity discloses its policy and consistently reports from period to period.
stipulations. The only limits on the use of unrestricted net assets are the broad limits resulting from the following:

a. The nature of the NFP
b. The environment in which the NFP operates
c. The purposes specified in the NFP's articles of incorporation or bylaws
d. Limits resulting from contractual agreements with suppliers, creditors, and others entered into by the NFP in the course of its business.

Unrestricted net assets generally result from revenues from providing services, producing and delivering goods, receiving unrestricted contributions, and receiving dividends or interest from investing in income-producing assets, less expenses incurred in providing services, producing and delivering goods, raising contributions, and performing administrative functions.

9.16 In accordance with FASB ASC 958-210-50-2, information about significant limits resulting from contractual agreements with suppliers, creditors, and others, including the existence of loan covenants, generally is provided in the notes to the financial statements. FASB ASC 958-210-45-11 states that information about self-imposed limits also may be useful, including information about voluntary resolutions by the governing board of an entity to designate a portion of its unrestricted net assets to function as an endowment (sometimes called a board-designated endowment). That information may be presented in notes to, or on the face of, the financial statements.

9.17 For example, a health care entity might include information about voluntary resolutions to designate a portion of its unrestricted net assets for funded depreciation.

9.18 FASB ASC 958-810-45-1 states that non-controlling interests in the equity (net assets) of consolidated subsidiaries should be reported as a separate component of the appropriate class of net assets in the consolidated statement of financial position of an NFP. That amount should be clearly identified and described (for example, as non-controlling ownership interest in subsidiaries) to distinguish it from the components of net assets of the parent, which includes the parent's controlling financial interest in its subsidiaries. The effects of donor-imposed restrictions, if any, on a partially-owned subsidiary's net assets should be reported in accordance with FASB ASC 958-205 and 958-320. Paragraphs 17–25 of FASB ASC 958-810-55 illustrate one way in which the consolidated financial statements of a hospital might satisfy the presentation and disclosure requirements for non-controlling interests in a consolidated subsidiary and subsequent changes in ownership interests of that subsidiary.

Reclassifications

9.19 FASB ASC 958-225-45-13 states that reclassifications of net assets (that is, simultaneous increases in one net asset class and decreases in another) should be made if any of the following events occur: (a) the NFP fulfills the purposes for which the net assets were restricted, (b) donor-imposed restrictions expire with the passage of time or death of a split-interest agreement

---

4 A non-controlling interest is the portion of equity in a subsidiary that is not directly or indirectly attributable to a parent.
beneficiary\(^5\) (if the net assets are not otherwise restricted), (c) a donor withdraws or court action removes previously-imposed restrictions, or (d) donors impose restrictions on otherwise unrestricted net assets.

9.20 For example, the amount of a donor’s contribution that must be used by the health care entity for a specified program would be reclassified from temporarily-restricted to unrestricted net assets in the period in which the health care entity conducts the program. A purpose restriction is often fulfilled when the entity incurs an expense or recognizes a liability to a vendor to acquire goods or services that satisfies the restriction.

9.21 FASB ASC 958-205-45-9 states that if two or more temporary restrictions are imposed on a contribution, the effect of the expiration of those restrictions should be recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired. Expirations of donor-imposed restrictions are reported as reclassifications, decreasing temporarily-restricted net assets and increasing unrestricted net assets. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-225-45-3, reclassifications of amounts between net asset classes are reported separately from other transactions in the statement of operations.

9.22 As explained in FASB ASC 958-205-45-11, if an expense is incurred for a purpose for which both unrestricted and temporarily-restricted net assets are available, a donor-imposed restriction is fulfilled to the extent of the incurred expense, unless the expense is for a purpose that is directly attributable to another specific external source of revenue. Temporarily-restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

9.23 For example, an employee’s salary may meet donor-imposed restrictions to support the activity on which the employee is working. In that situation, the restriction is met to the extent of the incurred salary expense, unless incurring the salary will lead to inflows of revenue from a specific external source, such as revenue from a cost reimbursement contract or a conditional promise to give that becomes unconditional when the health care entity incurs the salary expense.

9.24 As explained in FASB ASC 954-210-50-1 and 954-205-45-9, health care entities are prohibited from implying a time restriction that expires over the useful life of a donated long-lived asset. Thus, if contributions of long-lived assets with explicit donor restrictions are reported as temporarily-restricted support, a health care entity reports expirations of those donor restrictions when the stipulation is fulfilled, and the assets are placed in service. Similarly, donations of cash or other assets that must be used to acquire long-lived assets are reported as temporarily-restricted support in the period that they are received, and expirations of those donor restrictions are reported when the acquired long-lived assets are placed in service, and donor-imposed restrictions are satisfied.

\(^5\) FASB ASC 958-30 provides guidance for reporting arrangements under which a not-for-profit (NFP) entity shares the benefits of assets with other beneficiaries (a split-interest agreement). Those other beneficiaries generally are not NFPs. For example, a donor may give an NFP the right to receive all or a portion of the specified cash flows from a charitable trust or other identifiable pool of assets that is held either by the NFP or an unrelated third party, such as a bank, trust company, foundation, or private individual. Chapter 6, “Split-Interest Agreements and Beneficial Interests in Trusts,” of the Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities provides additional guidance on split-interest gifts.
9.25 In some circumstances, NFPs correct net asset classifications previously reported in prior years' financial statements due to an error in recognition, measurement, or classification resulting from mathematical mistakes, mistakes in the application of accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America, or oversight or misuse of facts that existed at the time the financial statements were prepared. Technical Questions and Answers (TIS) section 6140.23, "Changing Net Asset Classifications Reported in a Prior Year" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), states that the individual net asset classes, rather than net assets in the aggregate (total net assets), are relevant in determining whether an entity's correction of net asset classifications previously reported in prior years' financial statements is an error in previously issued financial statements. TIS section 6140.23 quotes paragraph 106 of FASB Concepts Statement No. 6, Elements of Financial Statements, and paragraph 74 of FASB Statement No. 117, Financial Statements of Not-for-Profit Organizations (which was not codified in FASB ASC), noting that "since donor-imposed restrictions affect the types and levels of service a not-for-profit organization can provide, whether an organization has maintained certain classes of net assets may be more significant than whether it has maintained net assets in the aggregate."

Classification of Donor-Restricted Endowment Funds

9.26 The FASB ASC glossary defines a donor-restricted endowment fund as "[a]n endowment fund that is created by a donor stipulation requiring investment of the gift in perpetuity or for a specified term. Some donors may require that a portion of income, gains, or both be added to the gift and invested subject to similar restrictions." FASB ASC 958-205-45-14 states that when classifying an endowment fund, each source—original gift, gains and losses, and interest and dividends—must be evaluated separately. Each source is unrestricted, unless its use is temporarily or permanently restricted by explicit donor stipulations or law. Thus, an endowment fund that is created by a governing board from unrestricted net assets is classified as unrestricted because all three sources are free of donor restrictions. If an endowment fund is created by a donor, the donor may have placed different restrictions on each of the three sources. Classification of the original gifts and the income earned by endowments generally is straightforward because, usually, donors explicitly state any time or purpose restrictions on those two sources. Determining how to classify gains on endowments may not be as easy because agreements with donors often are silent on how gains should be used and whether losses must be restored immediately from future gains or not at all.

9.27 FASB ASC 958-205-05-9 notes that because donor stipulations and laws vary, NFPs must assess the relevant facts and circumstances for their endowment gifts and relevant laws to determine if net appreciation on endowments is available for spending or permanently restricted. Paragraphs 13–35 of FASB ASC 958-205-45 provide guidance for reporting the net assets of endowment funds and the changes in those net assets. The guidance for states that have enacted a version of the Uniform Prudent Management of Institutional Funds Act (UPMIFA) is summarized in the following four paragraphs, but it is not intended as a substitute for reading the standards themselves.

9.28 An NFP that is subject to an enacted version of UPMIFA should classify a portion of a donor-restricted endowment fund of perpetual duration as permanently-restricted net assets. The amount classified as permanently...
restricted should be either (a) the amount of the fund that must be permanently retained in accordance with explicit donor stipulations, as explained in paragraphs 3–4 of FASB ASC 958-605-45, or (b) the amount of the fund that, in the absence of explicit donor stipulations, the NFP's governing board determines must be permanently retained (preserved), consistent with the relevant law or regulation, as explained in FASB ASC 958-205-45-21.

9.29 The relevant law of a state that has enacted a version of UPMIFA may include the limitation "[u]nless stated otherwise in the gift instrument, the assets in an endowment fund are donor-restricted assets until appropriated for expenditure by the institution," which is from subsection 4(a) of UPMIFA. For each donor-restricted endowment fund for which the restriction described in subsection 4(a) of UPMIFA applies, an NFP should classify the portion of the fund that is not classified as permanently-restricted net assets as temporarily-restricted net assets (time restricted) until appropriated for expenditure by the NFP.

9.30 Upon appropriation for expenditure, the time restriction expires to the extent of the amount appropriated and, in the absence of any purpose restrictions, results in a reclassification of that amount to unrestricted net assets. If the fund is also subject to a purpose restriction, the reclassification of the appropriated amount to unrestricted net assets would not occur until that purpose restriction also has been met, in accordance with the guidance beginning in FASB ASC 958-205-45-9. Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-205-45-11, temporarily-restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

9.31 In the absence of donor stipulations or law to the contrary, losses on the investments of a donor-restricted endowment fund should reduce temporarily-restricted net assets to the extent that donor-imposed temporary restrictions on net appreciation of the fund have not been met before a loss occurs. Any remaining loss should reduce unrestricted net assets. The amount of permanently-restricted net assets is not reduced by losses on the investments of the fund or an NFP's appropriations from the fund. If losses or, as UPMIFA states, appropriations reduce the assets of a donor-restricted endowment fund below the level required by the donor stipulations or law, gains that restore the fair value of the assets of the endowment fund to the required level should be classified as increases in unrestricted net assets. After the fair value of the assets of the endowment fund equals the required level, gains that are restricted by the donor should be classified as increases in temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net assets, depending on the donor's restrictions on the endowment fund.

9.32 Paragraphs 3.16, 4.21, and 4.30 of this guide provide information about whether the income, gains, and losses of donor-restricted endowment funds are included or excluded from the performance indicator.

Disclosure

9.33 FASB ASC 958-210-45-9 requires that information about the nature and amounts of different types of permanent or temporary restrictions be provided either by reporting their amounts on the face of the financial statements or including relative details in the notes to financial statements.
9.34 For example, information about the following would be shown on the face of the financial statements or in the notes:

- Different kinds of permanent restrictions, such as specific assets to be held in perpetuity and assets that have been contributed by donors with stipulations that they be invested in perpetuity
- Different kinds of temporary restrictions, such as those concerning the support of specific operating activities, use in specific future periods, or acquisition of long-term assets

9.35 Separate disclosures of significant limitations other than those imposed by donors, such as those imposed by governing boards or regulatory bodies, are permitted to be made on the face of the financial statements or in the notes to the financial statements.

9.36 Paragraphs 1A–2A of FASB ASC 958-205-50 require disclosures for both donor-restricted and board-designated endowment funds. A health care entity should disclose information about net asset classification, net asset composition, changes in net asset composition, spending policies, and related investment policies.

9.37 FASB ASC 958-810-50-1 requires that if consolidated financial statements are presented, the reporting entity (parent) should disclose any restrictions made by entities outside of the reporting entity on distributions from the controlled NFP (subsidiary) to the parent and any resulting unavailability of the net assets of the subsidiary for use by the parent.

Auditing

9.38 The independent auditor may need to consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures relating to net assets (equity) that are presented in exhibit 9-1.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, Professional Standards), states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, Professional Standards).

## Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Net Assets (Equity)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account Balances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rights and obligations</td>
<td>Resources are used and accounted for in accordance with donor and grantor restrictions.</td>
<td>Management monitors compliance with these restrictions.</td>
<td>Review the minutes of board and board committee meetings for evidence of donor restrictions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presentation and Disclosure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification and understandability</td>
<td>Net assets are presented and disclosed properly in the financial statements.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure proper authorization, recording, and presentation.</td>
<td>Test significant net asset transactions to determine that they are properly authorized and recorded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temporarily-restricted net assets are reclassified as unrestricted net assets when donor-imposed restrictions have been fulfilled.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that reclassification of temporarily-restricted net assets occurs when donor-imposed restrictions have been fulfilled.</td>
<td>Determine compliance with donor and grantor restrictions. Test expenditures to determine that restricted net assets are used for their restricted purposes.</td>
<td>Determine that appropriate reclassifications are reported in the statement of activities when donor-imposed restrictions have been fulfilled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

AAG-HCO 9.38
Chapter 10

Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)

FASB ASU No. 2014-09, issued in May 2014, is effective for annual reporting periods of public entities, as defined, beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period. Early application is not permitted.

For other entities, ASU No. 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018. Other entities may elect to adopt the standard earlier, however, only as of the following:

- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period (public entity effective date)
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within that reporting period

ASU No. 2014-09 provides a framework for revenue recognition and supersedes or amends several of the revenue recognition requirements in FASB ASC 605, Revenue Recognition, as well as guidance within the 900 series of industry-specific topics, including FASB ASC 954, Health Care Entities. The standard applies to any entity that either enters into contracts with customers to transfer goods or services or enters into contracts for the transfer of nonfinancial assets unless those contracts are within the scope of other standards (for example, insurance or lease contracts).

Readers are encouraged to consult the full text of this ASU on FASB’s website at www.fasb.org.

The AICPA has formed 16 industry task forces to assist in developing a new Accounting Guide on revenue recognition that will provide helpful hints and illustrative examples for how to apply the new standard. Revenue recognition implementation issues identified by the Health Care Entities Revenue Recognition Task Force will be available for informal comment, after review by the AICPA Financial Reporting Executive Committee, at www.aicpa.org/InterestAreas/FRC/AccountingFinancialReporting/RevenueRecognition/Pages/RRTF-HealthCare.aspx.

Readers are encouraged to submit comments to revreccomments@aicpa.org.

Overview of the Health Care Environment

10.01 A unique aspect of the health care industry is the involvement of multiple parties in the provision of, and payment for, health care services. As many as four parties may be involved in a health care service transaction, including the following:

- The patient who receives the care
- The physician who orders the services on behalf of the patient
- The health care entity that provides the setting or administers the treatment (for example, hospital, home health company, and so on)
- The third-party payor(s) that provides payment to the health care entity on behalf of the patient

10.02 The third-party payor may be a government program, such as Medicare or Medicaid; a commercial insurer, such as a managed care plan; a commercial insurance company; a preferred provider organization (PPO); or a self-funded employer plan. In managed care entities, the physician, health care entity, and third-party payor may all be part of the same reporting entity.

10.03 The extent to which third-party payors are involved in paying for services varies by type of health care facility. For hospitals, rehabilitation facilities, and home health companies, third-party payors typically pay for the majority of provided services. In the nursing home sector, a certain portion of the patients are considered private pay (that is, the patient or his or her family pays for the care); for the remainder, Medicaid is the dominant third-party payor for care provided to low-income individuals. Minimal commercial insurance coverage presently exists for nursing home care, and Medicare provides limited nursing home benefits for short stays. In continuing care retirement communities (CCRCs), the residents themselves typically pay entrance and monthly service fees, and third-party payor involvement is limited to the payment of some services that may be provided in the nursing care portion of the facility.

10.04 Revenue recognition and the valuation of related receivables of health care entities are subject to inherent uncertainties and complexities, including the following:

- Rate setting with third-party payors, including settlements that are not known with certainty until after a considerable period of time has elapsed after the related services were rendered
- The regulations and laws on which governmental third-party payments are based
- The determination of what constitutes charity care

Rate Setting With Third-Party Payors

10.05 Third-party payors typically do not pay the health care entity's full established rates. The paid amount may be based on government regulations for Medicare, Medicaid, and other government programs or contractual arrangements for PPOs, health maintenance organizations, or HMOs, workers' compensation insurers, and commercial insurers. When multiple third-party payors are involved, payment rates and coverages often vary by payor.
Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables

10.06 As noted in FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-605-05-5, payment rates established by regulations or contractual agreements may be determined either prospectively or retrospectively. Some rate-setting methods described as prospective, such as the Medicare Prospective Payment System (PPS), may include provisions for retrospective adjustments (for example, billing denials, coding changes, and settlements with third-party payors). Some third parties pay prospective rates for certain services and retrospective rates for other services.

10.07 Prospective rate setting is a method used to set payment rates in advance of the delivery of health care services. Such payment rates determine what third parties will pay for health care services during the rate period (generally one year). Prospective rate setting may result from a contractual agreement with a third party, or it may be mandated through legislation. The intent of prospective rate setting is to establish payment rates before the period to which they will apply and that are not subject to change.

10.08 Under retrospective rate setting, third parties usually determine an interim payment rate and, during the rate period (generally one year), pay the health care entity for rendered services using that rate. After the rate period has ended, a final settlement is made in accordance with federal or state regulations or contractual agreements.

10.09 When rates are subject to retrospective adjustments, the amounts of the final settlements may not be known with certainty until a considerable period of time has elapsed from when the related services were rendered. Reasonable estimates of such settlements are central to the revenue recognition process in health care in order to avoid recognizing revenue that the health care entity will not ultimately realize or failing to recognize revenues that will ultimately be realized. The basis for such estimates may range from relatively straightforward calculations using information that is readily available to highly complex judgments based on assumptions about future decisions. The estimation process is further complicated by the complexities of billing and reimbursement regulations. Estimating revenues from third-party payors is discussed in paragraphs 10.20–24.

10.10 FASB ASC 954-605-25-9 requires that rate-setting methods that are described as prospective but provide for retrospective adjustments should be accounted for as retrospective rate-setting systems for the services to which they apply.

The Government-Contracting Environment

10.11 The largest third-party payor in the United States is the federal government, which purchases health care services through its Medicare, Medicaid, TRICARE, and Federal Employees Health Benefits programs. Most institutional health care providers and many managed care plans serve Medicare or Medicaid beneficiaries, or both, to some extent. Consequently, most health care entities are considered to be government contractors. The contractual relationship is defined by regulations written by government agencies and enforced by an elaborate oversight network of government auditors and contract administrators. For example, Medicare administers its own contracts and subcontracts audits and claims processing functions to private-sector Medicare Administrative Contractors (MACs) and Recovery Audit Contractors (RACs). The regulations and laws on which they are based are inherently political and subject to frequent change and differing interpretations.
Health care entities doing business with governmental payors (for example, Medicare and Medicaid) are subject to the following risks that are unique to the government-contracting environment, that are hard to anticipate and quantify, and that may vary from entity to entity:

- A health care entity's revenues and allowable costs may be subject to adjustment as a result of examination by government agencies or contractors. The audit process and resolution of significant related matters, including disputes based on differing interpretations of the regulations, often are not finalized until several years after the services were rendered.
- Different MACs and RACs (entities that contract with the federal government to assist in the administration of the Medicare program) may interpret governmental regulations differently.
- Differing opinions on a patient's principal medical diagnosis, including the appropriate sequencing of codes used to submit claims for payment, can have a significant effect on the payment amount.
- Otherwise valid claims may be determined to be nonallowable after the fact due to differing opinions on medical necessity.
- Claims for rendered services may be nonallowable if they are later determined to have been based on inappropriate referrals.
- Government agencies may make changes in program interpretations, requirements, or conditions of participation, some of which may have implications for previously-estimated amounts.
- Certain states determine rates of payment for Medicare or Medicaid payments, or both, in accordance with the statewide rate-setting method, which is different from the method used by the federal government.
- Government agencies have the right to withhold or reduce contract payments for an extended period of time.
- Health care entities may receive add-on payments for serving a disproportionately high percentage of low-income patients.
- Extensive and complex reimbursement methodologies exist for teaching institutions.

As a result of such risks, retrospective adjustments can be particularly difficult to estimate with respect to governmental payors. The delay between rendering services and reaching final settlement, as well as the complexities and ambiguities of billing and reimbursement regulations, makes it difficult to estimate net patient service revenue associated with government programs. However, despite the difficulty, health care entities paid through programs that are subject to retrospective adjustments need to estimate amounts that ultimately will be realizable in order for revenues associated with those payment systems to be fairly stated in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP). Estimating revenues from government programs is discussed in paragraphs 10.20–.24.

In addition, risks may result from the applicability of certain laws that provide for potentially significant penalties to be assessed if the contractor violates them. For example, a contractor that submits a false claim to the government may be subject to penalties ranging from a monetary penalty for each submitted false claim to suspension or exclusion from the program. Thus,
Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables

noncompliance could result in a material contingent liability, a material loss of future revenue, or cause the health care entity to be unable to continue as a going concern.

Charity Care

10.15 The FASB ASC glossary states that "[c]harity care represents health care services that are provided but are never expected to result in cash flows. Charity care is provided to a patient with demonstrated inability to pay. Each entity establishes its own criteria for charity care consistent with its mission statement and financial ability." Distinguishing charity care from bad-debt expense requires the exercise of judgment. Charity care is discussed further in paragraphs 10.25–.28.

Types of Health Care Revenue

10.16 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-605-45-1, health care revenue should be classified based on the type of services rendered or contracted to be rendered. Examples include the following:

- Patient service revenue, which is derived from fees earned in exchange for providing services to patients
- Resident service revenue, which is derived from fees charged to residents of a long-term care facility, such as a skilled nursing facility or CCRC
- Capitation revenue, which is derived from capitation-type arrangements with third-party payors by which fees are earned by agreeing to provide services to qualified beneficiaries, not necessarily as a result of actually providing the care
- Premium revenue, which is the primary source of revenue of prepaid health care plans
- Refundable and nonrefundable advance fees received by certain types of CCRCs

Types of Payment Methodologies

10.17 Common payment methodologies utilized by third-party payors include the following:

- Fee-for-service. Under fee-for-service arrangements, payment is based on the specific services that are provided to the patient; therefore, the health care entity earns revenue as a result of providing those services. Payment may be at the health care entity's full established rates, with a predetermined discounted rate (for example, percent of charges), or based on a fee schedule agreed to by the health care entity and third-party payor.

---

1 Refer to chapter 14, "Financial Accounting and Reporting by Continuing Care Retirement Communities," of this guide for additional information.
2 Refer to chapter 13, "Financial Accounting and Reporting for Managed Care Services," of this guide for additional information.
3 See footnote 2.
4 See footnote 1.
• **Per diem.** Under a per diem arrangement, the health care entity is paid a flat rate per day of inpatient care, regardless of the level of intensity of the provided care. Therefore, revenue is earned as a result of the patient occupying an inpatient bed for a particular day. The Medicare PPS for skilled nursing facility services is an example of a per diem methodology. The contract specifies the manner in which partial days of care, such as the day of admission or discharge, will be paid, and revenue for those days is recognized accordingly. A prorated payment may be made for a partial day of care. Alternatively, the terms of the payor's policy may provide for a full payment for the day of admission and pay nothing for the day of discharge.

• **Per case.** When payment is made on a per-case basis, the health care entity is paid a predetermined amount based on the patient's discharge category. The Medicare PPS for hospital inpatient services is an example of a per-case payment methodology. Under per-case payment, revenue is earned as a result of the patient receiving treatment from the health care entity. If the contract calls for payment on a per-case basis, and the patient is hospitalized at the end of the accounting period, a portion of the total revenue for the case will be earned in one period, with the balance earned in the next period. In such situations, the total revenue for the case is allocated between the two accounting periods using an allocation method that fairly apportions the revenue between periods.

• **Episodic.** Under an episodic payment methodology, the health care entity is paid a predetermined amount for services provided to patients during an episode of care (for example, a stipulated period of time). Revenue normally is earned based on the passage of time. Medicare's PPS for home health services is an example of an episodic payment methodology.

• **Capitation.** Generally, capitation payments are received at the beginning of each month and obligate the health care entity to stand ready to render covered services during the month. Capitation revenue is earned as a result of agreeing to provide services to qualified beneficiaries, not as a result of actually providing the care. If the health care entity's accounting system records patient charges and establishes patient receivables as services are rendered, appropriate valuation allowances or adjustments are recorded, so only the amount of contract revenue is reported.

• **Risk-based contracts.** Under a risk-based contract, the provider agrees to furnish specified health care services for a negotiated price, which may be an amount per episode, case, bundle, service, or day; the price may vary based on the volume of services furnished during the contract period. As an alternative, the provider may contract to provide all defined health care services to a specific beneficiary group in return for a predetermined fee. A risk-based contract may also provide for a sharing of risk, designed to create financial incentives to the providers and, in some instances, to the payer, to improve quality and control costs. Examples of risk-based contracts can be shared savings/shared loss contracts, risk pools and pay-for-performance contracts. Other risk-based contracts may be any combination of the preceding examples.
Patient (or Resident) Service Revenue

Revenue Recognition

10.18 Paragraph 83 of FASB Concepts Statement No. 5, Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises, provides a general rule that revenue is earned when an entity has substantially accomplished what it must do to be entitled to those revenues.

10.19 With respect to third-party payor arrangements, governmental regulations or contractual terms will specify the performance requirements or conditions that the health care entity must meet in order to be entitled to revenue under the contract or provider agreement. Regulations or contracts also will address payment terms and the degree of risk that is to be assumed by the health care entity. Consequently, a thorough understanding of the terms of the health care entity’s arrangements with significant third-party payors is important for appropriate revenue recognition.

Estimating Revenue Related to Government Programs and Other Third-Party Payors

10.20 The amount of revenue earned under arrangements with government programs is determined under complex rules and regulations that subject the health care entity to the potential for retrospective adjustments in future years. Several years may elapse before all potential adjustments related to a particular fiscal year are known and before the amount of revenue to which the health care entity is entitled is known with certainty. As noted in paragraph .10 of Statement of Position (SOP) 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, AUD sec. 14,360), management makes a reasonable estimate of amounts that ultimately will be realized, considering, among other things, adjustments associated with regulatory reviews, future program audits, billing reviews, investigations, or other proceedings. In making these estimates, management also considers the potential for regulatory investigations that may result in the denial of otherwise valid claims for payment. These matters are discussed in SOP 00-1, which, among other matters, provides guidance to auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in third-party revenue recognition.5

10.21 As noted in paragraph .06 of SOP 00-1, health care entities need to estimate amounts that ultimately will be realizable in order for revenues to be fairly stated in accordance with GAAP. Thus, in the period in which services are rendered, health care entities estimate the amount to which they ultimately will be entitled for providing those services and report that amount as revenue. The difference between that estimated amount and the amount of payments received prior to the balance sheet date is reflected as a receivable or payable in the balance sheet. The difference between gross patient service revenues and the estimated amount is a contractual adjustment that, along with courtesy and policy discounts and other adjustments and deductions, adjusts gross service revenues, which excludes charity care, to arrive at net service revenues in

---

5 Statement of Position 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, AUD sec. 14,360), is included as appendix D, “Statement of Position 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables,” of this guide.
the statement of operations. The relationship between various amounts can be depicted as follows:6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gross charges</td>
<td>XXX,XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less charges associated with charity patients</td>
<td>(XX,XXX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gross patient service revenue</td>
<td>XXX,XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less deductions from revenue:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractual allowances</td>
<td>(XXX,XXX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courtesy/policy/other discounts</td>
<td>(XX,XXX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient service revenue (net of contractual allowances and discounts)</td>
<td>XXX,XXX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less provision for bad debts</td>
<td>(XX,XXX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Net patient service revenue less provision for bad debts</td>
<td>XXX,XXX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.22 Management's estimates relating to third-party contractual adjustments are based on subjective, as well as objective, factors. This requires judgment that normally is based on management's knowledge of, and experience with, past and current events and its assumptions about conditions that it expects to exist and courses of action that it expects to take.

10.23 Approaches for making estimates of third-party contractual adjustments vary from entity to entity, depending on individual facts and circumstances. Some entities with significant prior experience may attempt to quantify the effects of individual potential intermediary or other governmental (for example, Office of Inspector General or Department of Justice) or private payor adjustments based on detailed calculations and assumptions regarding potential future adjustments. Some entities may prepare cost report analyses7 to estimate the effect of potential adjustments. Other entities may base their estimates on an analysis of potential adjustments in the aggregate, in light of the payors involved; the nature of the payment mechanism; the risks associated with future audits; and other relevant factors.

10.24 In some situations (for example, Medicare or Medicaid provider agreements), payments received under contracts with third-party payors are subject to adjustment after the contract term is completed, based on findings of audits, reviews, or investigations. In such cases, net service revenue also includes a provision for estimated future retroactive adjustments. Such provisions are accrued on an estimated basis in the period that the related services are rendered and adjusted in future periods as additional information is obtained or adjustments become known, or both. That accrual is subsequently adjusted as events occur that change the estimate of earned revenue. Such adjustments have the potential to materially affect the health care entity's

---

6 This example assumes the health care entity recognizes significant amounts of patient service revenue at the time the services are rendered even though it does not assess the patient's ability to pay. See paragraph 10.34 of this guide.

7 Medicare cost reimbursement is based on the application of highly complex technical rules, some of which are ambiguous and subject to different interpretations, even among Medicare's Administrative Contractors. To estimate the effects of potential adjustments, some health care entities will prepare a cost report based on alternative assumptions.
financial position and results of operations. Accounting for the subsequent adjustments is discussed beginning at paragraph 10.46.

**Charity Care**

10.25 Each health care entity establishes its own criteria for charity care consistent with its mission statement, its financial ability, the current economy, and other circumstances. In some instances, prior to any care being provided, a health care entity is able to obtain information regarding a patient's financial status and determine whether that patient meets the criteria for uncompensated care. If so, the patient would be classified as charity prior to receiving treatment. In other cases, such as trauma care, patient financial information may not be available at the time that treatment is provided to the patient. A health care entity may provide care because it either is required to do so by law (for example, emergency care) or chooses to do so, with the understanding that a charity care application will be completed in the future.

10.26 FASB ASC 954-605-25-10 states that charity care does not qualify for recognition as revenue in the financial statements. Distinguishing charity care from bad-debt expense requires the exercise of judgment. Only the portion of a patient's account that meets the health care entity's charity care criteria is recognized as charity. As noted in FASB ASC 954-605-25-11, although it is not necessary for the entity to make this determination upon admission or registration of an individual, the entity determines at some point whether the individual meets the established criteria for charity care.

10.27 This determination is made as quickly as practicably possible, generally before any substantial collection effort is initiated. Charity care does not include contractual adjustments that result from third-party arrangements, such as Medicare, Medicaid, government funding programs, or other third-party arrangements, because the health care entity has accepted the payment terms for the services provided by agreement. In addition, charity care does not include discounts given to uninsured or underinsured patients if those patients do not qualify under the health care entity's charity care policy.

10.28 Pursuant to FASB ASC 954-605-50-3, management's policy for providing charity care, as well as the level of charity care provided, should be disclosed in the financial statements. The level of charity care provided should be measured based on the health care entity's direct and indirect costs of providing charity care services. If costs cannot be specifically attributed to services provided to charity care patients (for example, based on a cost accounting system), management may estimate the costs of those services using reasonable techniques. For example, one such estimation technique might involve calculating a ratio of cost to gross charges and then multiplying that ratio by the gross uncompensated charges associated with providing care to charity patients. Other reasonable techniques also are permitted. The method used to identify or estimate such costs should be disclosed. Funds received to offset or subsidize provided charity services (for example, from gifts or grants restricted for charity care or from an uncompensated care fund) also should be separately disclosed.

**Estimating Revenue Related to Care Not Covered by Third-Party Payors**

10.29 A portion of a health care entity's charges typically will not be paid by third-party payors, and the patient will be responsible. This self-pay portion of revenue comprises revenue for services provided to uninsured patients;
insurance copays and deductibles; as well as noncovered services (for example, cosmetic surgery). Estimating revenue for the self-pay portion also may be challenging, but as noted in paragraph .06 of SOP 00-1, health care entities need to estimate amounts that ultimately will be realizable in order for revenues to be fairly stated in accordance with GAAP. The predominant industry practice for reporting revenue from self-pay patients is to recognize gross service revenue for those patients at the health care entity’s gross charges (that is, full established billing rates) when the services are provided and adjust for bad debts based on collection assessments. No revenues are recognized for patients identified as receiving charity care services. If the health care entity offers a discount to uninsured patients, those discounts are recorded as a reduction to gross service revenues, so that the resulting net service revenue is recorded in the statement of operations. The provision for bad debts is recognized based on collection assessments and presented as discussed in the following paragraphs.

**Accounting and Financial Reporting Requirements**

10.30 Per FASB ASC 954-605-25-3, in general, gross service revenue is recorded in the accounting records on an accrual basis at the health care entity’s established rates, regardless of whether the health care entity expects to collect that amount.

10.31 That amount that is used for internal record-keeping purposes is referred to as gross service revenues. The revenues are recorded as services are rendered. Any difference between the established rates for provided services and amounts agreed to under agreements with third parties is accounted for as a contractual adjustment. An estimate of the contractual adjustment is recorded in the same period that the services were provided. In addition, some health care entities offer discounts (for example, a discount to uninsured patients that do not qualify for charity care or other courtesy, prompt pay, or employee discounts). The discount also is recorded in the same period that the services were provided. Thus, internal records will generally reflect the gross patient service revenues offset by the contractual adjustments and discounts.

10.32 Per FASB ASC 954-605-25-4, the provision for contractual adjustments (that is, the difference between established rates and third-party payors’ payments) and discounts (that is, the difference between established rates and the collectible amount) are recognized on an accrual basis and deducted from gross services revenue to determine net service revenue. For financial reporting purposes, FASB ASC 954-605-45 requires that revenue be classified based on the type of rendered service and that service revenue, including patient service revenue, be reported net of contractual and other adjustments in the statement of operations.

10.33 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-605-25-6, estimates of contractual adjustments, other adjustments, and the allowance for uncollectibles should be reported in the period during which the services are provided, even though the actual amounts may become known at a later date. This later date may be any one of the following: (a) when the patient is discharged, (b) subsequent to discharge or completion of service, (c) when the third party is billed, or (d) when payment or partial payment is received. Also, as discussed in paragraph 10.26, charity care does not qualify for recognition as revenue in the financial statements.

10.34 As set forth in FASB ASC 954-605-45-4, some health care entities may perform services for patients for which the ultimate collection of all or
a portion of the amounts billed or billable cannot be determined at the time services are rendered. For example, some health care entities have a policy of providing services to patients and recording patient service revenue regardless of their ability to pay and, in some cases (for example, hospital emergency departments), are required by law to treat emergency conditions regardless of a patient's ability to pay. As a result, those health care entities might record revenue along with a relatively high bad debt provision in the period of service. A health care entity that recognizes significant amounts of patient service revenue at the time the services are rendered even though it does not assess the patient's ability to pay should present all of the following as separate line items on the face of the statement of operations:

a. Patient service revenue (net of contractual allowances and discounts)

b. The provision for bad debts\(^8\) (the amount related to patient service revenue and included as a deduction from patient service revenue)

c. The resulting net patient service revenue less the provision for bad debts

10.35 As further stated in FASB ASC 954-605-45-5, bad debts that should continue to be presented as an operating expense in the statement of operations are the following:

a. Bad debts related to receivables from revenue other than patient service revenue

b. Bad debts related to receivables from patient service revenue if the entity only recognizes revenue to the extent it expects to collect that amount

10.36 FASB ASC 954-310-50-3 also states a health care entity that recognizes significant amounts of patient service revenue at the time the services are rendered even though it does not assess the patient's ability to pay should disclose both of the following for interim and annual periods:

a. Its policy for assessing the timing and amount of uncollectible patient service revenue recognized as bad debts by major payor source of revenue. Major payor sources of revenue should be identified by the entity and be consistent with how the entity manages its business (for example, how it assesses credit risk). For example, one entity's accounting system may classify patient accounts receivables arising from deductibles and coinsurance as part of third-party receivables, another may classify deductibles and coinsurance as self-pay receivables, and another may classify deductibles and coinsurance as either third-party or self-pay receivables on the basis of which party has the primary remaining financial responsibility.

b. Qualitative and quantitative information about significant changes in the allowance for doubtful accounts related to patient accounts receivable. This may include information such as significant changes in estimates and underlying assumptions, the amount of

---

self-pay writeoffs, the amount of third-party payor writeoffs, and other unusual transactions impacting the allowance for doubtful accounts.

**Premium and Capitation Revenues**

10.37 As noted in FASB ASC 954-605-05-6, in many cases, revenues are generated as a result of an agreement to provide health care, rather than from the actual provision of services. For example, an integrated delivery system may agree to provide all health-related services for a specified group residing within its primary service area for an agreed-upon amount per member per month. These revenues are premium revenues, not patient service revenues, because they are earned by agreeing to provide care, regardless of whether services are rendered.

10.38 FASB ASC 954-405-25-1 states that if a capitation contract obligates the health care entity to assume the risk of physician referrals and other outside services, a liability for unpaid claims, including incurred but not reported claims, should be established. A lag analysis may be helpful in estimating the liability.

10.39 In addition to the capitation payments, the amount of contract revenue may be affected by factors such as reinsurance recoveries, deductibles, coinsurance, and risk pool adjustments. Risk pool adjustments may be based on factors such as utilization or cost targets.

10.40 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-605-45-3, significant revenue earned under capitation arrangements should be reported separately.

**Patient Receivables**

10.41 Patient receivables may include amounts due \((a)\) from patients, third-party payors, and employers for provided health care services and \((b)\) for premiums and stop-loss insurance recoveries. Premiums and stop-loss insurance recoveries are discussed in chapter 13, "Financial Accounting and Reporting for Managed Care Services," of this guide.

10.42 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-310-30-1, contractual adjustments, discounts, and an allowance for uncollectibles should be recorded to initially measure the receivables for health care services at net realizable value. FASB ASC 954-605-25-6 explains that estimates of contractual adjustments, other adjustments, and the allowance for uncollectibles should be reported in the period during which the services are provided, even though the actual amounts may become known at a later date. FASB ASC 954-310-45-1 states that although the aggregate amount of receivables may include balances due from patients and third-party payors, including final settlements and appeals, the amounts due from third-party payors for retroactive adjustments of items such as final settlements or appeals should be reported separately in the financial statements.

10.43 Accounts receivable of health care entities generally are subject to the same financial disclosure requirements as those of other business entities. Health care entities with loans and trade receivables follow the presentation and disclosure guidance in FASB ASC 310-10 to the extent that guidance is applicable.
Paragraphs 20–22 of FASB ASC 825-10-50 set forth disclosure requirements concerning significant concentrations of credit risk arising from all financial instruments, including trade accounts receivable. Concentration of credit risk frequently is an issue because most health care entities tend to treat patients from their local or surrounding communities. Accordingly, disclosure is made of the primary service area of patients. It should be noted that concentration of credit risk may be a significant issue in stand-alone financial statements issued for a member hospital of a large, national multihospital system but may not be an issue for financial statements prepared for the hospital system. When the individual facilities' financial statements are consolidated into statements prepared for the entire system, the credit risk is dispersed over a much larger base of health plans, patients, and geographies and, therefore, is not as concentrated.

Off-balance-sheet risk exists when the potential accounting loss from a financial instrument is not reflected on the balance sheet. Health care entities (most notably hospitals) may enter into arrangements in which they will factor or securitize their patient accounts receivable as a cash flow management strategy or to manage their concentrations of customer credit risk. These arrangements may not qualify for sale transactions under the criteria of FASB ASC 860, Transfers and Servicing. Consequently, the patient accounts receivable and the corresponding financing obligation would be reflected on the balance sheet of the health care entity. Health care entities should follow the presentation and disclosure guidance in paragraphs 9–10 of FASB ASC 310-10-50 regarding credit losses on off-balance-sheet instruments to the extent that guidance is applicable.

Estimated Final Settlements

Under a retrospective rate-setting system, a health care entity may be entitled to receive additional payments or required to refund amounts received in excess of amounts earned under the system. Although final settlements are not made until a subsequent period, as discussed in paragraphs 10.20–24, they are usually subject to reasonable estimation and reported in the financial statements in the period in which services are rendered. For example, as noted in FASB ASC 954-310-05-3, some third-party payors retrospectively determine final amounts that are reimbursable for services rendered to their beneficiaries based on allowable costs. These payors reimburse the health care entity on the basis of interim payment rates until the retrospective determination of allowable costs can be made. In most instances, the accumulation and allocation of allowable costs and other factors result in final settlements that are different from the interim payment rates. Final settlements are determined after the close of the fiscal periods to which they apply.

The balance sheet accounts "Settlements Due to Third-Party Payors" and "Settlements Due From Third-Party Payors" reflect management's best estimate of amounts expected to be payable or receivable. As a result of the complex nature of government reimbursement rules and the fact that settlements may occur years after the services are provided, it is not unusual for actual settlement amounts to differ significantly from estimated amounts.

FASB ASC 954-605-35-1 requires that differences between original estimates and subsequent revisions, including final settlements, be included
in the period in which the revisions are made. FASB ASC 954-605-50-2 states that those differences should be disclosed. Those differences are not treated as restatements of prior periods, unless they meet the definition of an error in previously issued financial statements, as defined in FASB ASC 250, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections.

10.50 As explained in paragraphs .15 and .17 of SOP 00-1, the fairness or reasonableness of the financial statement presentation of estimates is not dependent on the outcome of the uncertainty (for example, management’s ability to predict the future with accuracy) but, rather, on the quality and nature of the evidence supporting management’s assertions at the time that the estimate is made. The fact that future events may differ materially from management’s assumptions or estimates does not necessarily mean that management’s estimates were not reasonable or valid at the time that they were made.

10.51 The likelihood for subsequent revisions of estimates, coupled with their potential material effect on the financial statements, generally requires disclosure in accordance with FASB ASC 275-10-50. Such disclosures might include the significance of government program revenues to the entity’s overall revenues and a description of the complex nature of applicable laws and regulations indicating that the possibility of future government review and interpretation exists. Paragraph .37 of SOP 00-1 provides a sample disclosure for the possibility of material differences between an original estimate and subsequent revisions.

10.52 FASB ASC 275-10-50-6 states that a discussion of estimates is required when, based on known information available before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued, it is reasonably possible that the estimate will change in the near term, and the effect of the change will be material. The estimate of the effect of a change in a condition, situation, or set of circumstances that existed at the date of the financial statements should be disclosed, and the evaluation should be based on known information available before the financial statements are issued or available to be issued. In addition, FASB ASC 954-405-50-1 requires that, with regard to contractual adjustments and third-party settlements, identification and explanation of the estimated amounts that are payable by the entity should be disclosed.

10.53 The Financial Reporting Executive Committee recommends that the following additional disclosures also be included in the financial statements:

- Disclose settlement amounts due to and from each significant third-party payor.
- For each significant third-party payor, provide a summary of activity for each operating period. The summary would distinguish settlements relating to prior years from those relating to the current year’s activity and would identify current-year changes to settlement amounts estimated in prior periods.
- Disclose the status of third-party settlement claims.

10.54 In accordance with FASB ASC 210-10-45, settlements due to or from third-party payors should be classified as current or noncurrent, depending on the expected timing of the settlements. Settlements can be netted only if a right of setoff exists, as described in FASB ASC 210-20-45.
In general, receivables, particularly those arising from health care services, are material to the financial position of health care entities. Examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures that may be considered by the independent auditor as they relate to the major components of receivables of health care entities are presented in exhibit 10-1.

SOP 00-1 provides guidance to auditors in evaluating the reasonableness of management's estimates regarding the proper valuation of health care third-party revenues and receivables embodied in the financial statements. SOP 00-1 is included as appendix D, "Statement of Position 00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables," of this guide.

Paragraphs .17–.18 of SOP 00-1 state that the auditor's judgment regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence is based on the evidence that is available or can reasonably be expected to be available in the circumstances. If after considering the existing conditions and available evidence, the auditor concludes that the evidence is sufficient and appropriate and supports management's assertions about the valuation of revenues and receivables and their presentation and disclosure in the financial statements, ordinarily, an unqualified opinion is appropriate. The inability to obtain relevant evidence that the auditor needs may require the auditor to express a qualified opinion or disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation.

Accounts Receivable Confirmations

Generally, the amount receivable for a patient's care is not determinable until the medical coding process is complete; thus, alternative procedures, rather than confirmation, are performed for receivables from patients for whom care is continuing. Further, many patients whose accounts are expected to be paid by a third-party payor may not have received bills, and many third-party payors may be unable to respond to confirmation requests on specific account balances. In addition, obtaining confirmation of receivables from patients who are not discharged or final billed may be impracticable because those patients may not yet know the amount of their indebtedness. However, there may be instances when direct confirmation may be an appropriate audit procedure to be considered to obtain evidence about the existence and accuracy of amounts that are due.

Paragraph .20 of AU-C section 330, Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained (AICPA, Professional Standards), states that the auditor should use external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable, except when one or more of the following is applicable: (a) the overall account balance is immaterial, (b) external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable would be ineffective, or (c) the auditor's assessed level of risk of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level is low, and the other planned substantive procedures address the assessed risk. In many situations, the use of external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable and the performance of other substantive procedures are necessary to reduce the assessed risk of material misstatement to an acceptably low level.

If confirmation of amounts that are due from patients and third-party payors is determined to be ineffective, the independent auditor should
document this decision in accordance with AU-C section 330 and should perform alternative procedures such as the following:

- Performing an analytical procedure or testing the details of subsequent cash receipts
- Reviewing third-party contracts or payment agreements
- Comparing billings with documentation in medical records and census data
- Reviewing the results of third-party payor audits and, if available, independent review or internal audit reports
- Examining or confirming interim payments with third-party payors
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330 states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, Professional Standards).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Receivables for Health Care Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Account Balances</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existence</td>
<td>Amounts reported in the financial statements represent valid receivables, which do not include charity care balances.</td>
<td>Charges are generated automatically when services are performed.</td>
<td>Review and test subsequent cash receipts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A medical record is prepared.</td>
<td>Compare billing information to the documentation contained in the medical records or census records.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)

---

9 SOP 00-1 discusses matters for auditors to consider in testing third-party revenues and related receivables and provides guidance to auditors regarding the sufficiency of evidential matter and reporting on financial statements of health care entities exposed to material uncertainties. SOP 00-1 is included as appendix D of this guide.
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Completeness</strong></td>
<td>Amounts reported in the financial statements are complete and properly calculated and accumulated.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that (a) detailed accounts receivable records are routinely compared with control accounts and third-party payor logs; (b) differences are investigated and reconciled; and (c) adjustments, if necessary, are promptly made.</td>
<td>Compare detailed accounts receivable records with control accounts and third-party payor logs, and investigate reconciling items.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Procedures ensure that amounts due from third-party payors for individual accounts are properly supported.

Review the independent review or internal audit, if any, and insurance company reviews for evidence that might indicate receivables may not be realized.

Procedures ensure the proper recording of cash receipts.

Trace the receipts applicable to patient accounts to the accounts receivable records.

Procedures ensure that charity care balances are identified and excluded from gross receivables.

Review the management policy for determining charity care. Review the reasonableness of charity care measurement.
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Receivables are reported in the financial statements at net realizable value.</td>
<td>Allowances for uncollectibles and contractual adjustments are periodically reviewed by management to ensure that receivables are reported at estimated net realizable value.</td>
<td>Review third-party contracts, and recompute patient receivables. Examine contracts or confirm interim third-party payments with third-party payors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write-offs and allowances for uncollectibles are identified and approved in accordance with the entity's established policy.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Review and test the method used to determine the allowances for uncollectible accounts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Determine that patient accounts are appropriately classified by payor (for example, Medicare or self-pay) to evaluate collectibility.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Test Medicare logs for accuracy and completeness.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Test and analyze aged accounts receivable trial balances, collection trends, delinquent accounts, subsequent period write-offs, and economic or other factors used to determine the allowance for uncollectible accounts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
## Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Presentation and Disclosure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification and understandability</td>
<td>Significant contractual arrangements with third parties are disclosed.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Determine that significant contractual arrangements with third parties are disclosed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Estimated Third-Party Settlements</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Account Balances</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existence</td>
<td>Amounts reported in the financial statements represent valid receivables or payables, or both.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that estimated third-party settlements are determined in accordance with the reimbursement and rate-setting methodologies applicable to the entity.</td>
<td>Review correspondence from significant third-party payors related to (a) interim payment rates applicable to periods for which final settlements have not been made and (b) the amount of interim or final settlements made during the period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transactions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completeness and accuracy and valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Amounts included in the financial statements are accurate and complete.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that estimated third-party settlements are reasonably calculated and reported.</td>
<td>Test the reasonableness of settlement amounts, including specific and unallocated reserves, in light of the involved payors, the nature of the payment mechanism, the risks associated with future audits, and other relevant factors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Review third-party payor audit reports and adjustments for prior years' cost reports or settlements to consider whether (a) the effect of such adjustments has been properly reported in the financial statements and (b) adjustments of a similar nature apply to the current period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Obtain a representation from management that provisions for estimated retroactive adjustments by third-party payors under reimbursement agreements for open years are adequate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Presentation and Disclosure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification and understandability</th>
<th>Amounts reported in the financial statements are properly presented, and all required disclosures are made.</th>
<th>Determine that the tentative nature of third-party settlement amounts is properly disclosed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

(continued)
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Determine that differences between original estimates and subsequent revisions, including final settlements, are included in the statement of operations in the period in which the revisions are made and disclosed, if material.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Revenue and Gains for Health Care Services

**Transactions, Account Balances, Presentation, and Disclosure**

| Existence and occurrence, completeness, and classification and understandability | Revenue and gains are reported in the proper period using the accrual basis of accounting and are properly classified by the type of service rendered. | Procedures help ensure that revenue is accrued as services are performed or contractual obligations are satisfied. | Perform a walk-through of the revenue system. Compare the current period's revenue with prior periods' revenue or budgets, or both, and obtain explanations for large or unusual variances. |

| Management establishes and monitors controls over the recognition of revenue. | Consider the adequacy of the controls over the revenue recognition process. |
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the statement of operations, revenue from health care services is reported net of contractual adjustments and other adjustments in the proper period and is properly classified.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that deductions from revenue are recorded in the proper period and properly classified. Contractual and other adjustments are authorized, controlled, and properly recorded. Charity care, bad-debt write-offs, and courtesy and policy discounts are authorized, controlled, and properly recorded.</td>
<td>Review the financial statements to determine that revenue is reported net of contractual adjustments and other adjustments and the provision for bad debts (the amount related to patient service revenue if health care entity that recognizes significant amounts of patient service revenue at the time the services are rendered even though it does not assess the patient's ability to pay). Test contractual adjustments, other adjustments, and bad debts to determine that they are accounted for both in accordance with the respective contracts and the entity's policy.</td>
<td>Review third-party payor contracts and methods of payment, and test the entity's computation of estimated adjustments to revenue as required under such contracts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 11

Contributions Received and Made

11.01 Health care entities that receive contributions are subject to the requirements of the "Contributions Received" sections of FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 958-605. Health care entities that make contributions are subject to the requirements of FASB ASC 720-25.

11.02 This chapter summarizes some of the key concepts of contributions received and made as they relate to health care entities. For a complete discussion on this topic, readers should refer to chapter 5, "Contributions Received and Agency Transactions," of the Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities.

Distinguishing Contributions From Other Transactions

11.03 A contribution, by definition, must be a voluntary transfer. Some resource providers may be required to transfer assets or provide services to health care entities involuntarily; for example, to settle legal disputes or to pay fines. Those transactions are not contributions. Accounting for contributions is different from accounting for other kinds of voluntary transfers, such as conditional transfers, agency transactions, and exchange transactions.

11.04 To determine the accounting for transactions in which an entity voluntarily transfers assets to a health care entity, it is first necessary to assess the extent of discretion the health care entity has over the use of the assets that are received. If it has little or no discretion, the transaction is an agency transaction. If it has discretion over the assets' use, the transaction is a contribution, an exchange, or a combination of the two.

11.05 FASB ASC 958-605-55-4 states that foundations, business entities, and other types of entities may provide resources to health care entities under programs referred to as grants, awards, or sponsorships. Those asset transfers are contributions if the resource providers receive no value in exchange for the transferred assets or if the value received by the resource provider is incidental to the potential public benefit from using the transferred assets.

11.06 Because some exchange transactions may appear to be much like contributions, a careful assessment of the characteristics of the transaction from the perspectives of both the resource provider and recipient is required to determine whether the recipient of a transfer of assets has given up an asset or incurred a liability of commensurate value. Additional guidance can be found in FASB ASC 958-605-55-8.

11.07 For example, a research grant made by a foundation to a hospital would likely be a contribution if the research program is to be planned and carried out by the hospital, and the hospital has the right to publish the results. However, if the grant is made by a pharmaceutical manufacturer that provides potential new medications to be tested in the hospital's research facilities and retains the right to any patents or other results, the grant would likely be an exchange transaction.

11.08 As noted in FASB ASC 958-605-55-6, a single transaction may be in part an exchange and in part a contribution. For example, if a donor transfers...
a building to an entity at a price significantly lower than its fair value, and no unstated rights or privileges are involved, the transaction is in part an exchange of assets and in part a contribution to be accounted for as required by the "Contributions Received" sections of FASB ASC 958-605. The Financial Reporting Executive Committee (FinREC) believes that in circumstances in which the transaction is in part a contribution and in part an exchange, not-for-profit (NFP) entities should first determine the fair value of the exchange portion of the transaction, with the residual (excess of the resources received over the fair value of the exchange portion of the transaction) reported as contributions.

Contributions Received

11.09 FASB ASC 958-605-25-2 states that except as provided for contributed services and art collections, contributions received should be recognized as revenues or gains in the period received and as assets, decreases of liabilities, or expenses depending on the form of the benefits received. FASB ASC 958-605-55-26 observes that contributions are received in several different forms. Most often, the contributed item is an asset, but it also can be forgiveness of a liability. The types of assets commonly contributed include cash, marketable securities, land, buildings, the use of facilities or utilities, materials and supplies, intangible assets, other goods or services, and unconditional promises to give those items in the future. FASB ASC 958-605-30-2 requires that contributions received be measured at their fair values. FASB ASC 820, Fair Value Measurement, establishes a framework for measuring fair value.

11.10 Accounting for contributions depends on whether the transfer of assets is received by the NFP with donor-imposed conditions, donor-imposed restrictions, or both. Donor-imposed conditions create a barrier that must be overcome before a contribution can be recognized; by definition, a contribution is unconditional. Donor-imposed restrictions do not affect recognition; instead, they affect the classification of the contribution revenue.

11.11 Donations received without restrictions attached are reported as unrestricted support in the statement of operations within the performance indicator, unless they are contributions of long-lived assets. Donations with explicit donor restrictions attached are reported as restricted support. Some restrictions permanently limit the NFP’s use of contributed assets (for example, permanent endowments). Other restrictions are temporary in nature, limiting the NFP’s use of contributed assets to (a) later periods or after specific dates (time restrictions), (b) specific purposes (purpose restrictions), or (c) both. As noted in paragraph 3.17 of this guide, items that reflect increases or decreases in temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net assets are reported in the statement of changes in net assets, rather than the statement of operations.

Expiration of Donor-Imposed Restrictions

11.12 Paragraphs 9–12 of FASB ASC 958-205-45 and FASB ASC 958-225-45-13 provide guidance for reporting reclassifications for the expiration of donor-imposed restrictions. A restriction expires when the stipulated time has elapsed, when the stipulated purpose for which the resource was restricted has been fulfilled, or both. If two or more temporary restrictions are imposed on a contribution, the effect of the expiration of those restrictions should be recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired. When
the restriction expires, the temporarily-restricted net assets are reclassified to unrestricted net assets and reported in the statement of operations as "Net Assets Released From Restriction." In accordance with FASB ASC 958-225-45-3, reclassifications are presented as separate items. FASB ASC 954-225-45-7 provides guidance on the presentation of these items within or outside of the performance indicator.

11.13 FASB ASC 958-605-45-4 states that donor-restricted contributions whose restrictions are met in the same reporting period may be reported as unrestricted support, provided that an NFP health care entity has a similar policy for reporting investment gains and income, as explained in FASB ASC 958-320-45-3; reports consistently from period to period; and discloses its accounting policy.

11.14 Paragraph 11.21 provides guidance for the expiration of restrictions on unconditional promises to give. Paragraphs 9.19–24 of this guide provide guidance for the expiration of other donor-imposed restrictions.

**Promises to Give in Future Periods (Pledges)**

11.15 Health care entities involved in fund-raising campaigns frequently are the recipients of promises to give, with payments due in future periods. Pledge drives are a common example. Health care entities may also be the beneficiaries of fund-raising campaigns conducted by others.

11.16 FASB ASC 958-310 and 958-605 establish the accounting and financial reporting guidance for promises to give (contributions receivable). A general summary of those standards is presented in this chapter but is not intended as a substitute for reading the standards themselves. Additional guidance is provided in chapter 5 of the Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Entities*.

11.17 The recognition guidance in paragraphs 7–15 of FASB ASC 958-605-25 depends on whether the promise to give is unconditional or conditional.

11.18 Conditional promises to give, which depend on the occurrence of a specified future and uncertain event to bind the promisor, should be recognized as contributions if the likelihood of not meeting the conditions is remote. Consistent with paragraph 62 of the basis for conclusions of superseded FASB Statement No. 116, *Accounting for Contributions Received and Contributions Made*, FinREC believes that conditions as described in FASB ASC 958-605 are similar to those described in federal income tax laws and regulations. Those regulations provide, in part, that "if a transfer for charitable purposes is dependent upon the performance of some act or the happening of a preceding event in order that it might become effective, no deduction is allowable unless the possibility that the charitable transfer will not become effective is so remote as to be negligible." For example, a stipulation that an annual report must be provided by the donee to receive subsequent annual payments on a multiyear promise is not a condition if the possibility of not meeting that administrative requirement is remote.

11.19 A challenge (or matching) grant is a common form of conditional promise to give. For example, a transfer of cash with a promise to contribute that cash if a like amount of new gifts is raised from others within 30 days and a provision that the cash be returned if the gifts are not raised imposes a condition on which a promised gift depends. A transfer of assets with a conditional promise to contribute them should be accounted for as a refundable
advance (that is, a liability) until the conditions have been substantially met or explicitly waived by the donor.\footnote{According to FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 958-605-25-12, a conditional promise to give is considered unconditional if the possibility that the condition will not be met is remote. FASB ASC 958-605-25-14 states that in cases of ambiguous donor stipulations, a promise containing stipulations that are not clearly unconditional should be presumed to be a conditional promise. Additional guidance on distinguishing conditional promises from unconditional promises is provided in paragraphs 14–15 of FASB ASC 958-605-25 and paragraphs 15–17 of FASB ASC 958-605-55.}

\textbf{11.20} An unconditional promise to give should be recognized when it is received. However, to be recognized, there must be sufficient evidence in the form of verifiable documentation that a promise was made and received. According to FASB 958-605-45-5, contributions of unconditional promises to give, with payments due in future periods, should be reported as restricted support, unless explicit donor stipulations or circumstances surrounding the receipt of a promise make clear that the donor intended it to be used to support activities of the current period. It is reasonable to assume that by specifying future payment dates, donors indicate that their gift is to support activities in each period in which a payment is scheduled. For example, receipts of unconditional promises to give cash in future years generally increase temporarily-restricted net assets.

\textbf{11.21} The expiration of those restrictions or the expiration of a portion of the restriction is recognized as the donor makes the future payment(s). If the promise is to be paid in one future payment, the related temporarily-restricted net assets will be transferred to unrestricted net assets in the period in which that payment is due. If the donor sets forth a schedule of future payments, a reclassification from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets is made in each period that a payment is due. If other explicit donor restrictions are attached to the promise, such as that the gift be used for a specific purpose, the expiration of the restriction is recognized in the time period in which the purpose restriction has been fulfilled because, as noted in FASB ASC 958-205-45-11, temporarily-restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired. In the period(s) in which the restrictions expire, temporarily-restricted net assets or the portion of the temporarily-restricted net assets that relate to the particular payment installment are reclassified to unrestricted net assets and reported in the statement of operations as net assets released from restriction.

\textbf{11.22} Paragraphs 4–7 of FASB ASC 958-605-30 provide guidance for initially measuring unconditional promises to give. If present value techniques are used to measure the fair value of unconditional promises to give, an NFP should determine the amount and timing of the future cash flows of unconditional promises to give cash or, for promises to give noncash assets, the quantity and nature of assets expected to be received. In determining the estimated future cash flows of unconditional promises to give cash, NFPs should consider all the elements in FASB ASC 820-10-55-5, including the following: (a) when the receivable is expected to be collected; (b) the creditworthiness of the other parties; (c) the entity's past collection experience and its policies concerning the enforcement of promises to give; (d) expectations about possible variations in the amount or timing of the cash flows (that is, the uncertainty inherent in the cash flows); and (e) other factors concerning the receivable's collectability. Unconditional promises to give that are expected to be collected in less than
one year may be measured at their net realizable value because that amount results in a reasonable estimate of fair value.

11.23 Paragraphs 4–13 of FASB 958-310-35 discuss the subsequent measurement of contributions receivable. According to FASB ASC 958-310-35-7, if the value of a contribution receivable decreases because of changes in the quantity or nature of assets expected to be received, the decrease should be recognized in the period(s) in which the expectation changes. That decrease should be reported as an expense or a loss (bad debt), in accordance with FASB ASC 958-310-45-3. According to FASB ASC 958-310-35-6, if an unconditional promise to give cash is initially measured using a present value technique, subsequent accruals of the interest element should be accounted for as contribution revenue by donees, pursuant to FASB ASC 835-30-35.

11.24 If a health care entity routinely conducts fund drives, an estimate of the future cash flows of a portfolio of short-term unconditional promises to give resulting from a mass fund-raising appeal may be made based on experience gained from similar appeals in prior years.

Contributions of Long-Lived Assets, the Use of Long-Lived Assets, or Resources to Acquire Them

11.25 Contributions of long-lived assets, including the use of long-lived assets such as land, buildings, and equipment, are reported as support or gains in the period received. The donation is measured at its fair value. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-605-45-6, in the absence of donor-imposed restrictions on the use of the asset, gifts of long-lived assets should be reported as unrestricted support. Contributions of long-lived assets with explicit donor restrictions are reported as temporarily- or permanently-restricted support.

11.26 Donations of cash or other assets that must be used to acquire long-lived assets are reported as temporarily-restricted support in the period received. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-210-45-6, cash or other assets received with a donor-imposed restriction that limits their use to long-term purposes should not be classified with cash or other assets that are unrestricted and available for current use. Consistent with FASB ASC 958-205-55-7, those items are reported as assets restricted to investment in land, buildings, and equipment and are sequenced closer to land, buildings, and equipment. See paragraph 4.08 of this guide for additional discussion of restricted assets. Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-210-50-3, when the title "Assets Whose Use Is Limited" is used on the face of the statement of financial position, the kind of asset (that is, cash, receivables, investments, and so forth) is required to be described in the notes to the financial statements because its nature is not clear from the description on the face of the statement of financial position.

11.27 FASB ASC 954-205-45-9 states that the expiration of donor-imposed restrictions on long-lived assets should be recognized when the asset is placed in service, rather than as depreciated, as permitted by FASB ASC 958-205-45-12. Thus, if contributions of long-lived assets with explicit donor restrictions are reported as temporarily-restricted support, an NFP health care provider reports expirations of those donor restrictions when the stipulation is fulfilled, and the

2 According to FASB ASC 958-310-45-3, because all expenses are reported as decreases in the unrestricted net asset class, those decreases should be reported as losses if they are decreases in temporarily-restricted or permanently-restricted net assets.
Health Care Entities

assets are placed in service. Similarly, donations of cash or other assets that must be used to acquire long-lived assets are reported as temporarily-restricted support in the period received, and expirations of those donor restrictions are reported when the acquired long-lived assets are placed in service, and donor-imposed restrictions are satisfied.

Contributed Services

© Update 11-1 Accounting and Reporting: Services Received From Personnel of an Affiliate

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2013-06, Not-for-Profit Entities (Topic 958): Services Received from Personnel of an Affiliate (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force), issued in April 2013, is effective prospectively for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2014, and interim and annual periods thereafter. A recipient NFP may apply the amendments using a modified retrospective approach under which all prior periods presented upon the date of adoption should be adjusted, but no adjustment should be made to the beginning balance of net assets of the earliest period presented. Early adoption is permitted.

The guidance applies to the standalone financial statements of the recipient entity. Under the new requirements, the recipient NFP would be required to recognize all services received from personnel of an affiliate (a) that directly benefit the recipient NFP, including shared services, (b) for which the affiliate does not charge the recipient NFP, and (c) for which the NFP receiving the employee’s services controls the employee’s activities. Services within the scope of the ASU generally would be measured at cost; special considerations apply to health care entities reporting a performance indicator.

Many consolidated health systems charge a management fee for shared services provided to affiliated NFP facilities. Instances where the management fee does not cover all contributed services would trigger consideration of the receiving organization to follow the requirements of this ASU.

Refer to section A.02 in appendix A, "Guidance Updates," of this guide for more information on this ASU if applicable to your reporting period.

11.28 The nature and extent of donated services received by health care entities varies and can range from the limited participation of many people in fund-raising activities to active participation in the entity’s service programs.

11.29 FASB ASC 958-605-25-16 requires that contributions of services be recognized if the services received meet any of the following criteria:

   a. They create or enhance a nonfinancial asset. The FASB ASC glossary defines a nonfinancial asset as "[a]n asset that is not a financial asset. Nonfinancial assets include land, buildings, use of facilities or utilities, materials and supplies, intangible assets, or services."

   b. They require specialized skills, are provided by individuals possessing those skills, and would typically need to be purchased if they are not provided by donation. Services requiring specialized skills are provided by accountants, architects, carpenters, doctors, electricians, lawyers, nurses, plumbers, teachers, and other professionals and craftspeople.

AAG-HCO 11.28
11.30 FASB ASC 958-605-25-16 states that contributed services and promises to give services that do not meet these criteria should not be recognized. Additional guidance with regard to the accounting for, and reporting of, contributed services is provided in paragraphs 52–68 of FASB ASC 958-605-55.

Reporting the Cost of Special Events and Other Fund-Raising Activities

11.31 Some health care entities conduct fund-raising or joint activities, including special social and educational events, such as symposia, dinners, dances, and theater parties, in which the attendee receives a direct benefit (for example, a meal or theater ticket).

11.32 FASB ASC 958-225-45-17 states that an NFP health care entity may report net amounts for its special events if they result from peripheral or incidental transactions. However, so-called special events often are ongoing and major activities; if so, an NFP health care entity should report the gross amounts of revenues and expenses of those activities. Costs netted against receipts from peripheral or incidental special events should be limited to direct costs.

11.33 Paragraphs 11–15 of FASB ASC 958-225-55 illustrate three possible methods to display a special event that is an ongoing and major activity. Health care entities may report the gross revenues of special events and other fund-raising activities, with the cost of direct benefits to donors (for example, meals and facilities rental) displayed either (a) as a line item deducted from the special event revenues or (b) in the same section of the statement of operations as other programs or supporting services, allocated, if necessary, among those various functions. Alternatively, the health care entity could consider revenue from special events and other fund-raising activities as part exchange (for the fair value the participant received) and part contribution (for the excess of the payment over that fair value) and report the two parts separately.

Naming Opportunities

11.34 Health care entities may publicly recognize resource providers (individuals, foundations, corporate entities, and others) through what are commonly referred to as naming opportunities. Naming opportunities, which may be accompanied by additional rights and privileges, may be either an acknowledgement of a gift or what is effectively advertising (or other benefits) provided by the health care entity in exchange for the resources provided, or a combination of both. For example, naming opportunities might include the following:

- A health care entity gives resource providers the opportunity to name or sponsor a building or a portion thereof, based on receiving certain monetary amounts. Such naming opportunities may result in the sponsorship being publicized through name and logo placement at the building, in addition to other benefits that may be provided.

- A health care entity gives resource providers the opportunity to sponsor a particular event, with that sponsorship being publicized through logo placement at the event and in any publications or advertisements connected with the event.
A health care entity conducts a multiyear capital campaign (or similar fund-raiser), with different levels of commitment resulting in an escalating variety of sponsorship or advertising benefits to the resource provider. The benefits include future naming options (either temporary or permanent), as well as other items of significant value being delivered to the resource provider.

11.35 Health care entities should consider whether naming opportunities are contributions, exchange transactions, or some combination of both. FinREC believes that if public recognition and accompanying rights and privileges result in only nominal value to the resource provider, the health care entity has received a contribution. However, a health care entity should consider the specific facts and circumstances of the naming opportunity and accompanying rights and privileges, such as the type of resource provider (individual or corporation), the length of time that the naming benefit is provided, control over name and logo use, and other contract stipulations. For example, the right to name an endowed research fund "The Jane Doe Cancer Research Fund," is by itself considered of nominal value to Jane Doe. In contrast, the right to name the cancer wing of the hospital may have value to a local corporation if that corporation includes terms similar to the following in its agreement with the hospital: the number of years the cancer wing will carry its name, the location of the sign in relation to the nearby highway, the font used for the sign, and the right to rename the cancer wing if the corporation's name changes during the agreement's term.

11.36 Table 11-1 contains a list of indicators that may be helpful in determining whether naming opportunities are contributions, exchange transactions, or a combination of both. Depending on the facts and circumstances, some indicators may be more significant than others; however, no single indicator is determinative of the classification of a particular transaction.

11.37 In determining the value of a naming opportunity and accompanying rights and privileges, if any, FinREC believes that the exchange portion of the transaction, if any, should be valued first at fair value, and any residual would be recognized as a contribution. FinREC believes that the health care entity should consider stipulations placed on the use of the resources provided, if any, in determining the nature of the contribution portion received (for example, unrestricted or restricted). If multiple deliverables spanning a period of years are part of the exchange transaction, it is possible that the contribution element would be reflected in current year's revenues but some or all portions of the exchange transaction components could be deferred.
Table 11-1

Naming Opportunities Indicators Useful in Distinguishing Contributions From Exchange Transactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Contribution</th>
<th>Exchange Transaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Value of public recognition</td>
<td>Resource provider receives nominal value related to the public recognition and there are no direct benefits provided to the resource provider.</td>
<td>Resource provider receives significant value related to the public recognition or there are direct benefits provided to the resource provider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of time that the naming benefit is provided</td>
<td>Naming benefit is provided for a relatively short time, or the health care entity has the right to change the name at its discretion.</td>
<td>Naming benefit is provided for relatively long time, and the name cannot be changed solely at the health care entity's discretion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control over name and logo use</td>
<td>Party receiving the naming opportunity cannot change the name.</td>
<td>Party receiving the naming opportunity can change the name, such as if a corporate donor changes its name and requires a corresponding name change at the health care entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other rights and privileges</td>
<td>The named party receives no other rights or privileges in connection with the naming opportunity transaction.</td>
<td>The named party receives other rights and privileges in connection with the naming opportunity transaction, such as an exclusive right to sell, exclusive recruitment opportunities, and so forth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Investments Gain or Loss Related to Donor-Restricted Contributions

11.38 Chapter 4, "Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments," of this guide discusses the classification of dividend, interest and other investment income, and gains and losses. Chapter 9, "Net Assets (Equity)," of this guide discusses the classification of the net assets of donor-restricted endowment funds.

Transfers of Assets to an NFP or Charitable Trust That Raises or Holds Contributions for Others

11.39 The "Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust That Raises or Holds Contributions for Others" sections of FASB ASC 958-605 establish standards for transactions in which an entity (donor) makes a contribution by transferring assets to an NFP or charitable trust (recipient...
entity) that accepts the assets from the donor and agrees to use the assets on behalf of another entity or transfer those assets, the return on investment of those assets, or both to another entity (the beneficiary) that is specified by the donor.\(^3\)

11.40 Federated fund-raising organizations, community foundations, and institutionally-related entities are examples of NFPs that commonly serve as recipient entities, such as agents, trustees, or intermediaries, but any NFP or charitable trust can function in that capacity. NFP health care entities often are the ultimate recipients (for example, specified beneficiaries of the contribution or grant).

11.41 Paragraphs 28–30 of FASB ASC 958-605-25 provide guidance for recognition by the specified beneficiary of the transfer of assets from the donor. A specified beneficiary should recognize its rights to the financial or nonfinancial assets held by a recipient entity as an asset, unless the recipient entity is explicitly granted variance power, as discussed in paragraph 11.42. Those rights are any one of the following:

a. An interest in the net assets of the recipient entity, as discussed in paragraph 11.43
b. A beneficial interest, as discussed in paragraph 11.44
c. A receivable, as discussed in paragraph 11.45

11.42 The FASB ASC glossary defines variance power as

[t]he unilateral power to redirect the use of the transferred assets to another beneficiary. A donor explicitly grants variance power if the recipient entity's unilateral power to redirect the use of the assets is explicitly referred to in the instrument transferring the assets. Unilateral power means that the recipient entity can override the donor's instructions without approval from the donor, the specified beneficiary, or any other interested party.

As discussed in FASB ASC 958-605-25-31, if the donor explicitly grants a recipient entity variance power, and the specified beneficiary is not an affiliate of the recipient entity or the donor, the specified beneficiary (NFP health care entity) should not recognize its potential for future distributions from the assets held by the recipient entity. Those future distributions, if they occur, should be recognized as contributions by the specified beneficiary (health care organization) when received or unconditionally promised.

11.43 If a recipient entity and specified beneficiary are financially interrelated entities (see paragraph 12.79 of this guide), and the recipient entity is not a trustee, FASB ASC 958-605-25-27 states that the recipient entity should recognize a contribution received when it receives assets (financial or nonfinancial) from the donor that are specified for the beneficiary. FASB ASC 958-20-25

---

\(^3\) The "Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others" sections of FASB ASC 958-605 also establish standards for transactions that take place in a similar manner but are not contributions because the transfers are revocable, repayable, or reciprocal. For example, if a resource provider transfers assets to a recipient organization and names itself or its affiliate as beneficiary, that transaction is reciprocal, even if the resource provider grants variance power. Those reciprocal transactions are discussed in chapters 4, "Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments," and 12, "The Reporting Entity and Related Entities," of this guide.
provides the following example. A foundation that exists to raise, hold, and invest assets for the specified beneficiary or a group of affiliates of which the specified beneficiary is a member generally is financially interrelated with the NFP(s) it supports. The foundation should recognize contribution revenue when it receives assets from the donor. Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-20-25-2, the beneficiary should recognize its interest in the net assets of the recipient entity and adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of the recipient entity using a method similar to the equity method of accounting for investments in common stock.\(^4\) Examples 1–3 in paragraphs 3–17 of FASB ASC 958-20-55 provide examples of this guidance. Appendix A, "TIS Section 6400, Health Care Entities," of this chapter provides guidance for the classification of a beneficiary's interest in the net assets of a financially-interrelated fund-raising foundation.

11.44 If the beneficiary has an unconditional right to receive all or a portion of the specified cash flows from a charitable trust or other identifiable pool of assets, the beneficiary should recognize that beneficial interest. Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-30-14 and 958-605-35-3, the beneficiary recognizes that beneficial interest as an asset and a contribution received, measuring and subsequently remeasuring it at fair value.

11.45 FASB ASC 958-605-25-30 states that if the beneficiary's rights are neither an interest in the net assets of the recipient entity nor a beneficial interest, the beneficiary should recognize its rights to the assets held by a recipient entity as a receivable and contribution revenue, in accordance with paragraphs 8–10 of FASB ASC 958-605-25 and FASB ASC 958-605-45-5 for unconditional promises to give. Paragraphs 11.15–.24 discuss the recognition of promises to give.

11.46 Additional information about transfers of assets to an NFP or charitable trust that raises or holds contributions for others is found in chapters 4, "Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments," (for investments held by others) and 5 (for accounting and reporting by the recipient entity) of the Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities.

**Contributions Made**

11.47 FASB ASC 720-25 states that contributions made should be recognized as expenses in the period made and decreases of assets or increases of liabilities, depending on the form of the benefits given. For example, gifts of items from inventory held for sale are recognized as decreases of inventory and contribution expenses, and unconditional promises to give cash are recognized as payables and contribution expenses. For guidance on conditional promises to give and determining whether a promise is conditional or unconditional, see paragraphs 11–15 of FASB ASC 958-605-25 and FASB ASC 958-605-25-33. See paragraphs 45–48 of FASB ASC 958-605-55 for an example that illustrates a donor's accounting for an unconditional promise to give. Contributions made are measured at fair value. If the fair value of a transferred asset differs from its carrying amount, a gain or loss should be recognized on the disposition of the asset, as discussed in paragraphs 1–2 of FASB 845-10-30.

\(^4\) FASB ASC 958-20-55-11 states that an interest in the net assets of an affiliate would be eliminated if that affiliate was included in consolidated financial statements of the interest holder.
Other Considerations

11.48 A split-interest agreement is a form of contribution in which an NFP receives benefits that are shared with other beneficiaries designated by the donor. Common kinds of such agreements include charitable lead and remainder trusts, charitable gift annuities, and pooled (life) income funds. The special accounting for split-interest agreements is discussed in FASB ASC 958-30 and chapter 6, "Split-Interest Agreements and Beneficial Interests in Trusts," of the Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities.

11.49 The majority of the prescribed presentation and disclosures for contributions receivable and transfers of assets to an NFP that raises or holds contributions for others are located in FASB ASC 958-310-50, 958-605-45, and 958-605-50. The following paragraphs discuss the financial statement presentation and some of those disclosures but are not intended as a substitute for the "Other Presentation Matters" and "Disclosures" sections of FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities.

11.50 Contributions receivable should be reported net of an allowance for uncollectible amounts. That allowance may be based on the receivable's age, the creditworthiness of the parties, the entity's past collection experience and its policies concerning the enforcement of promises to give, and other factors concerning the receivable's collectability. After the date of initial measurement, bad debt expense should be reported for the amount of promises to give that are expected to be uncollectible.

11.51 In accordance with FASB ASC 958-310-45-1, contributions receivable should be reported net of the discount that arises if measuring a promise to give at present value. The discount should be separately disclosed by reporting it as a deduction from contributions receivable either on the face of the statement of financial position or in the notes to financial statements.

11.52 FASB ASC 958-310-50-1 requires that a health care entity that is the recipient of unconditional pledges (promises to give in future periods) disclose the following:

   a. The amounts of promises receivable in less than one year, in one to five years, and in more than five years

   b. The amount of the allowance for uncollectible promises receivable

   c. The discount that arises if measuring a promise to give at present value, if that discount is not separately disclosed by reporting it as a deduction from contributions receivable on the face of the statement of financial position, pursuant to FASB ASC 958-310-45-1

11.53 FASB ASC 958-310-50-4 requires that a health care entity that is the recipient of conditional pledges (promises to give in future periods) disclose both of the following:

   a. The total of the amounts promised

   b. A description and amount for each group of promises having similar characteristics, such as amounts of promises conditioned on establishing new programs, completing a new building, or raising matching gifts by a specified date
11.54 Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-205-50-3, if an NFP health care entity discloses in its financial statements a ratio of fund-raising expenses to amounts raised, it also should disclose how it computes that ratio.

11.55 When reporting unrestricted contributions, NFP health care entities should apply the standards in paragraphs 4–7 of FASB ASC 954-225-45 to determine whether contributions are reported within or outside the performance indicator.

**Auditing**

11.56 Because investor-owned entities do not usually receive contributions or enter into agency transactions, the specific audit objectives; selected controls; and auditing procedures related to contributions, contributions receivable, and agency transactions are unique to NFPs and presented in the following paragraphs.

11.57 An NFP health care entity that receives a significant amount of contributions may have an increased risk of material misstatement if it does not have proper internal controls in place. Paragraph .02 of AU-C section 265, *Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit* (AICPA, Professional Standards), states that the auditor is required to obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit when identifying and assessing the risks of material misstatement. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of internal control. The auditor may identify deficiencies in internal control not only during this risk assessment process but also at any other stage of the audit. According to paragraph .08 of AU-C section 265, the auditor should determine whether, on the basis of the audit work performed, the auditor has identified one or more deficiencies in internal control. As provided in paragraph .12 of AU-C section 265, the auditor should communicate in writing to those charged with governance on a timely basis significant deficiencies and material weaknesses identified during the audit, including those that were remediated during the audit.

11.58 In order to have an effective system of internal control, an NFP health care entity that receives significant amounts of contributions should have an internal control system that provides effective controls to ensure that all contributions received are recorded, and suitable collection efforts are pursued for unconditional promises to give. The internal control system also should provide effective controls to ensure that revenues arising from conditional promises to give are recognized when the conditions have been substantially met, and restrictions on contributions are recognized in the appropriate net asset class.

11.59 Contributions received are measured at fair value. AU-C section 540, *Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures* (AICPA, Professional Standards), addresses audit considerations relating to the measurement and disclosure of assets,

---

5 Paragraphs .13 and .A61–.A67 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, Professional Standards), provide guidance on obtaining an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit.
liabilities, and specific components of equity presented or disclosed at fair value in financial statements.

11.60 Paragraph .20 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), states that the auditor should use external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable, except when one or more of the following is applicable (a) the overall account balance is immaterial, (b) external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable would be ineffective, or (c) the auditor's assessed level of risk of material misstatement at the relevant assertion level is low, and the other planned substantive procedures address the assessed risk. In many situations, the use of external confirmation procedures for accounts receivable and the performance of other substantive procedures are necessary to reduce the assessed risk of material misstatement to an acceptably low level. For purposes of applying AU-C section 330, paragraph .A55 states that *accounts receivable* means (a) the entity's claims against customers that have arisen from the sale of goods or services in the normal course of business and (b) a financial institution's loans. Although contributions receivable are not accounts receivable, as defined in AU-C section 330, the auditor may nevertheless decide to request confirmation of contributions receivable.

11.61 Receivables are usually principally confirmed to provide evidence about the existence assertion. FASB ASC 958-605-25-8 specifies that for a promise to give to be recognized in financial statements, there must be sufficient evidence in the form of verifiable documentation that a promise was made and received. If the documentation is not present, an asset should not be recognized. The verifiable documentation for recognition of promises to give may not be sufficient evidence concerning the existence assertion. Confirming recorded promises to give (contributions receivable) may provide additional evidence about the existence of promises to give, the existence or absence of restrictions or conditions, and the periods over which the promises to give become due. If the auditor confirms promises to give, AU-C section 505, *External Confirmations* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), provides guidance concerning the confirmation process.

11.62 In obtaining sufficient appropriate audit evidence with respect to contributions received and contributions made, the auditor may consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures that are presented in exhibit 11-1.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained (AICPA, Professional Standards), states the auditor should design and perform audit substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement (AICPA, Professional Standards). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, Audit Evidence (AICPA, Professional Standards).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Audit Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contributions Received</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occurrence</td>
<td>Amounts recognized as contribution revenues represent valid unconditional contributions.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that only unconditional contributions are recognized in the financial statements.</td>
<td>Examine documentation supporting the recognition of contribution revenues, noting information such as the absence of conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completeness</td>
<td>All unconditional contributions are recognized.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that all unconditional contributions are recognized in the financial statements. Controls ensure that revenue is recognized when the conditions on conditional promises to give have been substantially met.</td>
<td>Select from data accumulated and maintained by the fund-raising function, and determine whether a contribution should have been recognized and, if so, vouch it to a recognized contribution, investigating reconciling items.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Audit Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Contribution revenues are appropriately valued.</td>
<td>Controls ensure the appropriate valuation of contribution revenue at the time of initial recognition.</td>
<td>Review and test the methods and assumptions used to measure contribution revenue at the time of initial recognition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off</td>
<td>Contributions are reported in the period in which they were given.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that contributions occurring near fiscal period-end are recorded in the proper period.</td>
<td>Examine contributions reported before and after fiscal period-end to determine if they are reported in the appropriate period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contributed Services, Utilities, Facilities, and Use of Long-Lived Assets**

| Occurrence, completeness, valuation and allocation | Assets, expenses, and revenues from contributed services, utilities, facilities, and use of long-lived assets meet the appropriate recognition criteria; all such contributions that meet the recognition criteria are recognized and appropriately measured. | Controls ensure that only contributed services, utilities, facilities, and use of long-lived assets that meet the appropriate recognition criteria are recognized; controls ensure that all such contributions that meet the recognition criteria are recognized and appropriately measured. | Review the documentation underlying the recognition of contributed services, utilities, facilities, and use of long-lived assets for completeness and propriety of recognized amounts. |

**Contributions Made**

| Occurrence | Amounts recognized as contributions made are properly authorized and reported in the period in which they become unconditional. | Controls ensure that only unconditional contributions made and promises to give are recognized in the financial statements. | Examine documentation supporting the recognition of contributions made, including notification of the donee and whether the contribution is conditional or unconditional. |
| Completeness | All unconditional contributions made are recognized. | Controls ensure that all unconditional contributions made are recognized in the financial statements. | Review minutes of governing board and governing board committee meetings for information about contributions. |
## Contributions Received and Made

### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Audit Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Contributions made are measured at fair value at initial recognition.</td>
<td>Controls ensure the appropriate valuation of contributions made, including promises to give, at the time of initial recognition.</td>
<td>Review and test the method used for valuing contributions made, including promises to give.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Account Balances

#### Contributions Receivable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occurrence</th>
<th>Amounts recognized as contributions receivable represent valid unconditional promises to give.</th>
<th>Controls ensure that only unconditional promises to give are recognized in the financial statements.</th>
<th>Examine documentation supporting the recognition of promises to give, noting information such as the absence of conditions and the periods over which the promises to give become due.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Completeness</td>
<td>All unconditional promises to give are recognized.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that all unconditional promises to give are recognized in the financial statements. Controls ensure that conditional promises to give are recognized when the conditions have been substantially met.</td>
<td>Compare the detail of contributions receivable with data accumulated and maintained by the fund-raising function, and investigate reconciling items.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Contributions receivable are appropriately valued.</td>
<td>Controls ensure the appropriate valuation of promises to give at the time of initial recognition.</td>
<td>Review and test the methods and assumptions used to measure promises to give at the time of initial recognition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>The valuation of promises to give is periodically reviewed by management.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Review promises to give for collectability and, if appropriate, changes in fair value of the underlying asset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Write-offs of uncollectible promises to give are identified and approved in accordance with the entity's established policy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Promises to Give

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Audit Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Occurrence</td>
<td>Amounts recognized as contributions payable represent valid unconditional promises to give.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that only unconditional promises to give are recognized in the financial statements.</td>
<td>Examine documentation supporting recognition of contributions payable, including information such as the absence of conditions and the periods over which the promises to give become due.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completeness</td>
<td>All unconditional promises to give are recognized.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that all unconditional promises to give are recognized in the financial statements.</td>
<td>Review minutes of governing board and governing board committee meetings for information about promises to give.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cut-off</td>
<td>All unconditional promises to give are recognized in the proper period.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that contributions made near fiscal period-end are recorded in the appropriate period.</td>
<td>Review cash disbursements subsequent to year-end to ascertain that contributions made were recorded in the proper period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valuation and allocation</td>
<td>Contributions made and related liabilities expected to be paid beyond one year are measured using the method elected by the NFP.</td>
<td>Controls ensure the appropriate valuation of promises to give at the end of the fiscal period.</td>
<td>Review and test the method used for valuing promises to give that are payable more than one year from the date of the financial statements.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Agency Transactions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occurrence and completeness</th>
<th>Assets and liabilities from agency transactions meet the criteria for classification and recognition as agency transactions.</th>
<th>Controls ensure that (a) only resources received and paid in agency transactions are recognized as agency transactions, and (b) all such transactions are recognized.</th>
<th>Review the documentation underlying the receipt of assets from resource providers for propriety of classification and recognition as resources that are to be transferred to others.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All agency transactions are recognized.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Review the documentation underlying the distribution of assets to others for propriety of classification and recognition.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Contributions Received and Made

#### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Audit Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Review the historical patterns of the distribution of gifts in kind and other assets to determine the extent of the entity's discretion over those distributions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Presentation and Disclosures

**Contribution Revenues and Contributions Receivable**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification and understand-ability</th>
<th>Restricted contributions are reported in the proper net asset class.</th>
<th>Contributions are reviewed for restrictions and other limitations.</th>
<th>Review the documentation underlying contributions and promises to give, including donor correspondence and governing board minutes, for propriety of classification, including classification within or outside the performance indicator.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosures related to contributions are clear and understandable.</td>
<td>Controls ensure that contributions are appropriately presented and disclosed.</td>
<td>Determine the appropriateness of disclosures for conditional and unconditional promises to give.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Agency Transactions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rights and obligations</th>
<th>Intermediary or agent transactions or transactions for which the health care entity acts as a recipient are not included in reported amounts of contributions.</th>
<th>Controls ensure that those transactions are identified and not included in contribution totals.</th>
<th>Determine whether agency transactions are excluded from the statement of operations and the statement of changes in net assets. If they are not, determine that the transactions are reported as described in the &quot;Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others&quot; sections of FASB ASC 958-605.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

AAG-HCO 11.62
Appendix A—TIS Section 6400, Health Care Entities

.35 Note to Sections 6400.36–.42—Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary’s Financial Statements)

Some not-for-profit entities have separate fund-raising foundations (commonly referred to as "institutionally related foundations") that solicit contributions on their behalf. FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities, provides guidance on (among other things) the accounting that should be followed by such institutionally related foundations and their related beneficiary entity(ies) with respect to contributions received by the foundation.

Some institutionally related foundations and their beneficiary entities meet the characteristics of financially interrelated entities provided in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. If entities are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958 provides that the balance sheet of the beneficiary entity(ies) should reflect that entity's interest in the net assets of the foundation, and that interest should be periodically adjusted to reflect the beneficiary's share of the changes in the net assets of the foundation. This accounting is similar to the equity method of accounting, which is described in FASB ASC 323.

FASB ASC 323-10-35-5 requires that the periodic adjustment of the investment be included in the determination of the investor's net income. The purpose of sections 6140.14–.18 (applicable to not-for-profit entities [NPEs] other than health care [HC] entities) and sections 6400.36–.42 (applicable to not-for-profit health care entities) is to clarify that in circumstances in which the recipient and the beneficiary are financially interrelated:

- Beneficiary entities should segregate the adjustment into changes in restricted and unrestricted net assets. (NPE TPA [sections 6140.14–.16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36–.37 and .39])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the existence of the recipient entity should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in the beneficiary's financial statements. In other words, the recipient cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (NPE TPA [section 6140.14 and .16]; HC TPA [sections 6400.36 and .39])
- In circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the existence of the recipient entity creates an implied time restriction on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of the recipient entity and the
changes in that interest, the beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily-restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions). (NPE TPA [section 6140.15]; HC TPA [section 6400.37])

- In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary and some net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary are subject to purpose restrictions [for example, net assets of the recipient restricted to the beneficiary's purchase of property, plant, and equipment (PPE)], expenditures by the beneficiary that meet those purpose restrictions result in the beneficiary (and recipient) reporting reclassifications from temporarily-restricted to unrestricted net assets (assuming that the beneficiary has no other net assets subject to similar purpose restrictions), unless those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired, including time restrictions that are implied on contributed long-lived assets as a result of the beneficiary's accounting policy pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-45-6. (If those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired and the beneficiary has other net assets with similar purpose restrictions, the restrictions on those other net assets would expire in accordance with FASB ASC 958. These TPAs do not, however, establish a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or purpose restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary.) (NPE TPA [section 6140.17]; HC TPA [section 6400.40])

- In circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary and some net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary are subject to purpose restrictions, though not subject to time restrictions other than the implied time restrictions that exist because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions should not result in the beneficiary reporting a reclassification from temporarily-restricted to unrestricted net assets, subject to the exceptions in the following sentence. Expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions should result in the beneficiary reporting a reclassification from temporarily-restricted to unrestricted net assets if (a) the recipient has no discretion in deciding whether the purpose restriction is met or (b) the

---

In some circumstances, the purpose restrictions may be so broad that the recipient entity has discretion in deciding whether expenditures by the beneficiary that are consistent with those purpose restrictions actually meet those purpose restrictions. For example, the recipient's net assets may have arisen from a contribution that was restricted for the beneficiary's purchase of research equipment, with no particular research equipment specified. Purchasing an XYZ microscope, which is consistent with that purpose restriction, may or may not meet that purpose restriction, depending on the decision of the recipient. In contrast, the net assets may have arisen from a contribution that was restricted for an XYZ microscope. Purchasing an XYZ microscope, which also is consistent with that purpose restriction, would result in the recipient having no discretion in determining whether that purpose restriction is met.

AAG-HCO 11.63
recipient distributes or obligates itself to distribute to the beneficiary amounts attributable to net assets restricted for the particular purpose, or otherwise indicates that the recipient intends for those net assets to be used to support the particular purpose as an activity of the current period. In all other circumstances, (a) purpose restrictions and (b) implied time restrictions on the net assets attributable to the interest in the recipient entity exist and have not yet expired. (However, if the beneficiary has other net assets with similar purpose restrictions, those restrictions would expire in accordance with FASB ASC 958. These TPAs do not establish a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary.) (NPE TPA [section 6140.18]; HC TPA [section 6400.41])

- **For HC NPEs Only.** In circumstances in which the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of a recipient entity attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be included or excluded from the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605, in the same manner that they would have been had the beneficiary had the transactions itself. Similarly, in applying this guidance, the determination of whether amounts are included or excluded from the performance measure should comprehend that if the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, an implied time restriction exists on the beneficiary's net assets attributable to the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, the beneficiary should classify the resulting net assets and changes in those net assets as temporarily restricted (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions) and therefore exclude those changes from the performance indicator. (HC TPA [section 6400.42])

- **For HC NPEs Only.** In circumstances in which the recipient entity and the beneficiary are both controlled by the same entity, entities should consider the specific facts and circumstances to determine whether the beneficiary can influence the financial decisions of the recipient entity to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary. (HC TPA [section 6400.38])
Technical Practice Aids for Not-for-Profit Entities Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary's Financial Statements)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HC NPEs</th>
<th>NPEs that are not HC NPEs</th>
<th>Are any changes in the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can the beneficiary determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary? [Not-for-profit health care entities (HC NPEs) under common control consider HC Technical Practice Aid (TPA) section 6400.38]</td>
<td>How does the existence of the recipient affect the beneficiary's reporting of its interest?</td>
<td>Are any net assets held by the recipient for the benefit of the beneficiary subject to donor-imposed purpose restrictions and has the beneficiary made expenditures that meet those purpose restrictions (in circumstances in which the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary) or that are consistent with those purpose restrictions (in circumstances in which the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary)?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
## Implementation of FASB ASC 958—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HC NPEs</th>
<th>NPEs that are not HC NPEs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Reclass the applicable net assets from temporarily restricted (TR) to unrestricted (UR) unless those net assets are subject to time restrictions that have not expired. (NPE TPA [section 6140.17]; HC TPA [section 6400.40])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
<td>Reclass the applicable net assets from TR to UR only if the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met. Whether the purpose restriction is met depends in part on (1) whether the recipient has discretion in determining whether the purpose restriction is met and (2) the recipient's decision in exercising that discretion, if any. (NPE TPA [section 6140.18]; HC TPA [section 6400.41])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]
Inquiry—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954, and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

During its most recent fiscal year, ABC Foundation's activities resulted in an increase in net assets (before distributions) of $3,200, comprised of $2,000 in unrestricted contributions, $1,000 in temporarily restricted contributions (purpose restrictions), $500 in unrestricted dividend and interest income, and $300 in expenses. In addition, ABC Foundation distributed $2,500 in cash representing unrestricted net assets to ABC Hospital. How should this activity be reported in ABC Hospital's financial statements?

Reply—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Hospital (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Hospital to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

In recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Hospital should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by ABC Hospital directly from the donor, because ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. In other words, the existence of ABC Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in ABC Hospital's financial statements because ABC Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by ABC Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

In the circumstances described previously, ABC Hospital would initially increase its asset, "Interest in Net Assets of ABC Foundation" for the change in ABC Foundation's net assets ($3,200). ABC Hospital's Statement of Operations would include "Change in Unrestricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of $2,200 (which would be included in the performance indicator in accordance with

---

2 This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954, Health Care Entities. Section 6140.14, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities.
FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605) and "Change in Temporarily Restricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of $1,000 which would be reported in the Statement of Changes in Net Assets.

The $2,500 distribution from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital would not be reported as an increase in net assets on ABC Hospital's Statement of Operations or its Statement of Changes in Net Assets. By analogy to equity method accounting, the $2,500 would be reported in a manner similar to a distribution from a subsidiary to its parent (for example, a dividend). ABC Hospital should report the distribution by increasing cash and decreasing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.

If the distribution represented restricted net assets, ABC Hospital would not reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution. Instead, ABC Hospital would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when those restrictions were met.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

.37 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)

Inquiry—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954, and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation's bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital cannot, however, influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

During its most recent fiscal year, ABC Foundation's activities resulted in an increase in net assets (before distributions) of $3,200, comprised of $2,000 in unrestricted contributions, $1,000 in temporarily restricted contributions (purpose restrictions), $500 in unrestricted dividend and interest income, and $300 in expenses. In addition, ABC Foundation elected to distribute $2,500 in cash representing unrestricted net assets to ABC Hospital. How should this activity be reported in ABC Hospital's financial statements?

Reply—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Hospital (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires

3 This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.15, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.
ABC Hospital to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

ABC Hospital cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation. Therefore, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation (in addition to any other restrictions that may exist). Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Hospital should classify the resulting net assets as changes in temporarily restricted net assets (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on their contributions).

In the circumstances previously described, ABC Hospital would initially increase its asset, "Interest in Net Assets of ABC Foundation" for the change in ABC Foundation's net assets ($3,200). ABC Hospital's Statement of Changes in Net Assets would include "Change in Temporarily Restricted Interest in ABC Foundation" of $3,200 as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets.

The $2,500 distribution from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital would not be reported as an increase in net assets on ABC Hospital's Statement of Operations or its Statement of Changes in Net Assets. By analogy to equity method accounting, the $2,500 would be treated similar to a distribution from a subsidiary to its parent (for example, a dividend). ABC Hospital should report the distribution by increasing cash and decreasing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.

ABC Hospital would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution, because the time restriction would expire at the time of the distribution. The reclassification would be reported as "net assets released from restrictions" and included in the performance indicator in the statement of operations. (If those net assets were subject to purpose or time restrictions that remained even after the net assets had been distributed to ABC Hospital, ABC Hospital would not reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted at the time of the distribution. Instead, ABC Hospital would reclassify the net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted when those restrictions were met and the reclassification would be included in or excluded from the performance indicator in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

.38 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation—Does Common Control Lead to the Conclusion That the Beneficiary Can Determine the Timing and Amount of Distributions from the Recipient?

Inquiry—ABC Holding Company (a not-for-profit entity) has two not-for-profit subsidiaries (ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation) that it controls and
consolidates in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-605, and FASB ASC 954-810. ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation are brother-sister entities that are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Hospital issues separate financial statements in connection with a loan agreement. ABC Foundation’s bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital.

Because ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation are under common control, does that lead to the conclusion that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital?

Reply—In some circumstances ABC Hospital, though a subsidiary of ABC Holding Company, may be able to influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. For example, if ABC Hospital formed ABC Holding Company as a nominally-capitalized shell with no real operating powers, a rebuttable presumption exists that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. On the other hand if, for example, ABC Hospital formed ABC Holding Company to be an operating entity with substance, other factors would need to be considered in determining whether ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Therefore, it is necessary to consider the facts and circumstances surrounding the relationships between ABC Holding Company and ABC Hospital, and ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation, to determine whether ABC Hospital exerts enough influence over ABC Foundation to determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Indicators to consider may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- What is the extent of overlap among the boards of ABC Hospital, ABC Holding Company, and ABC Foundation (for example, do a majority of the individuals who govern ABC Hospital also govern ABC Foundation; do a majority of the individuals who govern ABC Hospital also govern ABC Holding Company; are the boards of ABC Hospital, ABC Foundation and ABC Holding Company substantially independent of one another)? The greater the overlap among the boards of ABC Hospital and either ABC Holding Company or ABC Foundation, the more likely that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

- What is the extent of overlap among management teams of ABC Hospital, ABC Holding Company, and ABC Foundation (for example, do the individuals who manage ABC Hospital also manage ABC Foundation; do the individuals who manage ABC Hospital also manage ABC Holding Company; does ABC Holding Company have a separate
management team that exercises significant authority over both ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation? The greater the overlap between ABC Hospital's management and management of either ABC Holding Company or ABC Foundation, the more likely that ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

- What are the origins of the parent/holding company structure? For example, were ABC Holding Company and ABC Foundation created by ABC Hospital through a corporate restructuring, which may indicate that ABC Hospital, as the original entity, can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Alternatively, were ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation independent entities that merged and created ABC Holding Company to govern the combined entity, which may indicate that ABC Hospital cannot influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

- What is the number of entities under common control? The greater the number of entities under ABC Holding Company's control, the less likely it is that any one subsidiary, such as ABC Hospital, can influence the financial decisions of another brother-sister subsidiary, such as ABC Foundation, (either directly or indirectly) to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

Other relevant facts and circumstances should also be considered.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

.39 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)

Inquiry—DEF Health Entity is the parent company of three brother-sister not-for-profit entities: Health A, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954, Health B, and Foundation. Foundation is organized for the purpose of raising contributions for the benefit of both Health A and Health B. The four entities are legally separate not-for-profit entities that are financially interrelated pursuant to the guidance in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. Assume that Health A can influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent

---

4 This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.16, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.
that Health A can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to Health A.

A donor contributes $5,000 cash to Foundation and stipulates that the contribution is for the benefit of Health A. Foundation would record the contribution as temporarily restricted revenue because Foundation must use the contribution for the benefit of Health A. In its separately issued financial statements, Health A would recognize its interest in the net assets attributable to that contribution by debiting "Interest in Net Assets of Foundation" for $5,000. Would the offsetting credit be reported as temporarily restricted revenue (because the net assets attributable to the contribution are restricted on Foundation's Balance Sheet) or unrestricted revenue (because there are no donor-imposed time restrictions or purpose restrictions on how Health A must use the contribution)?

Reply — Health A should report the offsetting credit as unrestricted revenue. Because Health A can influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that Health A can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to Health A, no implied time restriction exists on Health A's net assets attributable to its interest in the net assets of Foundation. Accordingly, in recognizing its interest in the net assets of Foundation and the changes in that interest, Health A should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by Health A directly from the donor. In other words, the existence of Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in Health A's separately issued financial statements because Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

Because no donor-imposed restrictions exist on how Health A must use the contribution, Health A should report the change in its interest in the net assets attributable to the contribution as an increase in unrestricted net assets that is included in its performance indicator (in accordance with FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605) in its separately issued Statement of Operations. When Foundation actually distributes the funds, Health A should increase cash and decrease its interest in net assets of Foundation; the distributions would have no effect on Health A's Statement of Operations or its Statement of Changes in Net Assets.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]
Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)

Inquiry—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954, and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation’s bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

ABC Foundation’s net assets consist of $3,000,000 resulting from cash contributions restricted for the purchase of PPE by ABC Hospital. ABC Hospital has recorded its interest in those net assets by debiting "Interest in net assets of ABC Foundation" and crediting "Change in interest in ABC Foundation," which is reported as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets. ABC Hospital’s accounting policy is to not imply a time restriction that expires over the useful life of the donated long-lived assets pursuant to FASB ASC 958-605-45-6 and it has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE. ABC Hospital subsequently purchased and placed into service $3,000,000 of PPE that meets those donor restrictions prior to receiving a distribution from ABC Foundation. Should ABC Hospital reclassify $3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the $3,000,000 of PPE?

Reply—Because ABC Foundation (the recipient entity) and ABC Hospital (the beneficiary) are financially interrelated, FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 requires ABC Hospital to recognize its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and periodically adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of ABC Foundation. This is similar to the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323.

In recognizing its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and the changes in that interest, ABC Hospital should classify the resulting net assets as if contributions were received by ABC Hospital directly from the donor, because ABC Hospital can influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC

---

5 This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.17, "Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)," addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.

6 The assumption that ABC Hospital has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE is intended to avoid establishing a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary. That issue is not addressed in this TPA.
Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. Accordingly, the net assets representing contributions restricted for the purchase of PPE should be reported as temporarily restricted net assets (purpose restricted) in ABC Hospital's financial statements. Upon purchasing and placing into service the PPE, ABC Hospital (and ABC Foundation) should reclassify $3,000,000 from temporarily restricted to unrestricted net assets,7 reported separately from the performance indicator in the statement of operations in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605. In other words, the existence of ABC Foundation should be transparent in determining the net asset classifications in ABC Hospital’s financial statements because ABC Foundation cannot impose time or purpose restrictions beyond those imposed by the donor. (Any instructions given by ABC Foundation are designations, rather than restrictions.)

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

.41 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)

Inquiry—ABC Hospital, a not-for-profit health care entity subject to FASB ASC 954,8 and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities as described in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2. ABC Foundation’s bylaws state that it is organized for the purpose of stimulating voluntary financial support from donors for the sole benefit of ABC Hospital. Assume that ABC Hospital cannot, however, influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital.

7 In this fact pattern, ABC Research Institute’s interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is subject to only purpose restrictions because the net assets arose from cash contributions with no time restrictions. If instead the net assets arose from promises to give rather than from cash contributions, the net assets might be subject to time restrictions in addition to the purpose restrictions. In determining whether net assets that arose from promises to give are subject to time restrictions, NPEs should consider the guidance in section 6140.04, Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets are Met Before the Receivables are Due, which discusses whether restrictions on net assets arising from promises to give that are restricted by donors for investments in long-lived assets are met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivables are due.

8 This section addresses not-for-profit health care entities subject to FASB ASC 954. Section 6140.18, “Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.),” addresses a similar issue for not-for-profit entities subject to FASB ASC 958.
ABC Foundation's net assets consist of $3,000,000 resulting from cash contributions restricted for the purchase of PPE ABC Hospital. ABC Hospital has recorded its interest in those net assets by debiting "Interest in net assets of ABC Foundation" and crediting "Change in interest in ABC Foundation," which is reported as an increase in temporarily restricted net assets. ABC Hospital has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE.\(^9\)

ABC Hospital subsequently built and placed into service the New Modern Hospital Wing (at a cost of $3,000,000) prior to receiving a distribution from ABC Foundation or any indication from ABC Foundation that it intends to support building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing. Should ABC Hospital reclassify $3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing?

Reply—From ABC Hospital's perspective, its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation has two restrictions—a purpose restriction (the purchase of the PPE) and an implied time restriction. (ABC Hospital cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital, including distributions pertaining to expenditures by ABC Hospital that meet the donor-imposed purpose restrictions. Therefore, an implied time restriction exists on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation.) FASB ASC 958-205-45-9 provides, in part, as follows:

If two or more temporary restrictions are imposed on a contribution, the effect of the expiration of those restrictions is recognized in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired.

FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 further provides, in part:

Temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.

In considering whether the purpose restriction on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is met, ABC Hospital should determine whether ABC Foundation has discretion in deciding whether an expenditure by ABC Hospital that is consistent with the purpose restriction satisfies that purpose restriction. For example, if the restricted net assets arose from a contribution that was restricted for "building projects of ABC Hospital," with no particular building project specified, purchasing and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing is consistent with the purpose restriction but may or may not meet it, because ABC Foundation has some discretion in deciding which building project releases the purpose restriction. In other words, ABC Foundation may, at its discretion, either release restricted net assets in support of building the New Modern Hospital Wing or not, because the purpose restriction imposed by the donor was broad enough to give ABC Foundation discretion in deciding which building projects meet the purpose restriction. If ABC Foundation has such discretion, a purpose restriction and an implied time restriction on ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation exist. Therefore, ABC Hospital should not reclassify $3,000,000 from

\(^9\) The assumption that ABC Hospital has no other net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE is intended to avoid establishing a hierarchy pertaining to which restrictions are released first—restrictions on net assets held by the recipient or restrictions on net assets held by the beneficiary. That issue is not addressed in this TPA.
temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing unless ABC Foundation distributes or obligates itself to distribute to ABC Hospital amounts attributable to net assets restricted for the purchase of PPE by ABC Hospital, or ABC Foundation otherwise indicates that it intends for those net assets to be used to support the building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing as an activity of the current period (assuming that ABC Hospital had no other net assets that were restricted for the purchase of PPE).\(^{10,11}\)

In contrast to the example in the previous paragraph, if the restricted net assets arose from a contribution that was restricted for "building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing," ABC Foundation has no discretion in deciding whether that purpose restriction is met by building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing. Therefore, if ABC Hospital builds and places into service the New Modern Hospital Wing, the purpose restriction is met (assuming that ABC Hospital had no other net assets that were restricted for building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing). In addition, the implied time restriction is met because ABC Foundation is required to distribute the funds to ABC Hospital in order to meet the donor's stipulation. Therefore, ABC Hospital (and ABC Foundation) should reclassify $3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing.

\(^{10}\) In this fact pattern, the expenditure is made prior to meeting the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction that exists because ABC Hospital cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital. FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 provides that in circumstances in which both purpose and time restrictions exist, expenditures meeting the purpose restriction must be made simultaneous with or after the time restriction has expired in order to satisfy both the purpose and time restriction and result in a reclassification of net assets from temporarily restricted to unrestricted. In other words, time restrictions, if any, must be met before expenditures can result in purpose restrictions being met. In this fact pattern, however, the time restriction is an implied time restriction that exists because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, rather than an implied time restriction that exists because a promise to give is due in a future period or because of an explicit donor stipulation.

Accordingly, in this fact pattern, temporarily restricted net assets with implied time restrictions are available to support expenditures made before the expiration of the time restrictions and the net assets should be reclassified from temporarily restricted to unrestricted in the period in which the last remaining restriction has expired. In other words, in this fact pattern, if the expenditure that meets the purpose restriction is made before meeting the implied time restriction that exists because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary, all the restrictions should be considered met once the implied time restriction is met.

\(^{11}\) In this fact pattern, ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation is subject to an implied time restriction that exists because ABC Hospital cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital and a purpose restriction. Because the net assets arose from cash contributions with no other donor-imposed time restrictions, no time restrictions other than those imposed by ABC Foundation exist. If instead the net assets arose from promises to give rather than from cash contributions, the net assets might be subject to donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the implied time restrictions that exist because the beneficiary cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient to the beneficiary.

In determining whether net assets that arose from promises to give are subject to donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the time restrictions imposed by ABC Foundation, NPEs should consider the guidance in section 6140.04, *Lapsing of Restrictions on Receivables if Purpose Restrictions Pertaining to Long-Lived Assets are Met Before the Receivables are Due*, which discusses whether restrictions on net assets arising from promises to give that are restricted by donors for investments in long-lived assets are met when the assets are placed in service or when the receivables are due. In circumstances in which the net assets are subject to (a) donor-imposed time restrictions in addition to the (b) implied time restrictions that exist because ABC Hospital cannot determine the timing and amount of distributions from ABC Foundation to ABC Hospital and (c) purpose restrictions, the last remaining time restriction should be considered in applying the guidance in FASB ASC 958-205-45-11 that provides that temporarily restricted net assets with time restrictions are not available to support expenses until the time restrictions have expired.
In summary, ABC Hospital should not reclassify $3,000,000 from temporarily-restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets as a result of building and placing into service the New Modern Hospital Wing until both the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met. If both the purpose restriction and the implied time restriction are met, ABC Hospital should decrease its interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation and increase cash (or a receivable, if the Foundation has merely obligated itself to make the distribution) by the amount of the distribution, and simultaneously reclassify the same amount from temporarily restricted net assets to unrestricted net assets.

The reclassification should be reported separately from the performance indicator in the statement of operations in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-310, FASB ASC 954-405, and FASB ASC 954-605.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

.42 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary’s Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity)—Accounting for Unrealized Gains and Losses on Investments Held by the Foundation

Inquiry—FASB ASC 958 provides that if entities are financially interrelated, the balance sheet of the beneficiary entity should reflect that entity's beneficial interest in the net assets of the recipient entity, and that that interest should be adjusted periodically to reflect the changes in the net assets of the recipient entity. This accounting is similar to the equity method of accounting. FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605 provide guidance pertaining to the classification of investment returns in the financial statements of health care entities.

ABC Hospital and ABC Foundation are financially interrelated entities. How should changes in ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation attributable to unrealized gains and losses on Foundation's investments be classified in ABC Hospital's financial statements?

Reply—In circumstances in which ABC Hospital can influence the financial decisions of ABC Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions from Foundation to ABC Hospital, changes in ABC Hospital's interest in the net assets of ABC Foundation attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments should be classified in the same manner that they would have been had ABC Hospital held the investments and had the transactions itself. In accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205-45, FASB ASC 954-320-45, FASB ASC 954-320-55, and FASB ASC 954-605, ABC Hospital should include in the performance indicator the portion of the change attributable to unrealized gains and losses on trading securities that are not restricted by donors or by law, and should exclude from the performance indicator the portion of the change attributable to all other unrealized gains and losses.

In circumstances in which ABC Hospital cannot influence the financial decisions of Foundation to such an extent that ABC Hospital can determine the timing and amount of distributions ABC Hospital receives from Foundation,
an implied time restriction exists on ABC Hospital's net assets attributable to its interest in the net assets of Foundation (in addition to any other restrictions that many exist). Accordingly, ABC Hospital should classify all changes in that interest, including the portion of the change attributable to unrealized gains and losses on investments, as changes in temporarily restricted net assets (unless donors placed permanent restrictions on investment gains and losses pertaining to their contributions) and therefore should exclude those changes from the performance indicator.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]

.43 Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary

Inquiry—How should a fund-raising foundation (recipient), a not-for-profit entity subject to FASB ASC 958, report (in its separately issued financial statements) distributions to a financially interrelated beneficiary that is a health care entity? In other words, should such distributions be reported following (a) the guidance on reporting transfers among affiliated health care entities in FASB ASC 954-10, FASB ASC 954-205, FASB ASC 954-605, and FASB ASC 954-810 or (b) the guidance in FASB ASC 958.

Reply—FASB ASC 958 applies to all not-for-profit entities, except those that are providers of health care services (FASB ASC 958-10-15-3). Therefore, the guidance in FASB ASC 954 generally does not apply to financial statements of recipient entities that are financially interrelated fund-raising foundations. The foundation should follow the accounting and reporting requirements of FASB ASC 958 rather than FASB ASC 954 in the foundation's separately issued financial statements. The foundation should report distributions to beneficiary entities as expenses or distributions to related entities. The guidance in the previous sentence applies regardless of whether the recipient entity and the beneficiary are under common control or whether one controls the other in a parent-subsidiary relationship.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of FASB ASC.]
The Reporting Entity and Related Entities

Overview

12.01 Health systems are complex operations made up of various business lines and subsidiaries. Not-for-profit (NFP) systems are likely to operate through a combination of for-profit and NFPs. Various for-profit entities, such as health maintenance organizations (HMOs) or insurance entities, may be organized as stock corporations, partnerships, or limited liability entities. Fundraising typically is accomplished through a separate foundation. There may be financial transfers of cash or assets among related entities either to fund capital needs or start-up costs or to provide operating subsidies. Certain entities within the system may be obligated for repayment of the system's municipal bonds, but others are not. The system may also be involved in joint ventures or joint operating agreements. This chapter addresses accounting and financial reporting considerations associated with these issues, including consolidation and combinations of entities (that is, mergers and acquisitions).

12.02 This chapter discusses the accounting and reporting for equity investments accounted for under the equity method if the investee is an integral part of the reporting entity's operations, such as a physician hospital organization or joint venture. Chapter 4, "Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments," of this guide discusses accounting and reporting if the investment's purpose is investment income or return (for example, collective trusts, funds of funds, hedge funds, or other alternative investments).

Reporting by NFP Health Care Entities

12.03 The guidance that follows in this section of the guide discusses an NFP health care entity's relationships with for-profit and NFPs that result in either consolidation of parent-subsidiary relationships, whether through stock ownership or other means of control, or equity method accounting. Other circumstances may exist in the health care industry in which combined financial statements involving commonly controlled entities are more meaningful than their separate financial statements. More specific guidance related to combined financial statements can be found in paragraphs 12.71–.72.

12.04 Per FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-810-45-1, whether the financial statements of a reporting health care entity and those of one or more other for-profit entities or NFPs should be consolidated; whether those other entities should be reported using the equity method; and the extent of disclosure that should be required, if any, if consolidated financial statements are not presented should be based on the nature of the relationship between the entities.

12.05 Health care organizations may be related to one or more other entities in numerous ways, including ownership, control, or economic interests. Exhibit 12-1, "Relationships of a Not-for-Profit Reporting Entity," describes some common relationships with other entities and identifies where those relationships are discussed in this chapter and FASB ASC. Exhibit 12-1 and this chapter summarize certain guidance in FASB ASC but are not intended as a substitute for reading the guidance itself.
## Exhibit 12-1

### Relationships of a Not-for-Profit Reporting Entity<sup>a</sup>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification&lt;sup&gt;®&lt;/sup&gt; Reference</th>
<th>Discussion in This Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity is the sole corporate member of a not-for-profit (NFP) entity.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 958-810-25-2 and 954-810-45-3A.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has a controlling financial interest through a direct or indirect ownership of a majority voting interest in the other NFP.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 958-810-25-2.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity controls another NFP through a majority voting interest in its board and has an economic interest in that other entity.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 958-810-25-3.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity controls an NFP through a form other than majority ownership, sole corporate membership, or majority voting interest in the board of the other entity and has an economic interest in that other entity.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 958-810-25-4.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.13–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has control over another NFP or an economic interest in the other but not both.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 958-810-25-5.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity receives distributions from a related fund-raising foundation, but it does not control that foundation.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in the &quot;Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others&quot; subsections of FASB ASC 958-605.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.17–12.25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Relationships of a Not-for-Profit Reporting Entity—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification® Reference</th>
<th>Discussion in This Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relationships With For-Profit Entities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity owns a majority of a for-profit entity's common voting stock.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in the &quot;General&quot; subsections of FASB ASC 810-10 to determine whether that interest constitutes a controlling financial interest.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.29–.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity owns 50 percent or less of the common voting stock of an investee and can exercise significant influence over the investee's operating and financial policies.</td>
<td>Except where the reporting entity elects to report such interests at fair value, in accordance with the &quot;Fair Value Option&quot; sections of FASB ASC 825-10, use the equity method of accounting, in accordance with FASB ASC 323-10.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.33–.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity owns 50 percent or less of the common voting stock of an investee and the reporting entity neither controls nor can exercise significant influence over the investee's operating and financial policies.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 958-320-35-1 or FASB ASC 954-325-35.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity is the general partner of a for-profit limited partnership or similar entity, such as a limited liability company that has governing provisions that are the functional equivalent of a limited partnership.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 810-20 to determine whether the general partner within the group controls and, therefore, should consolidate the limited partnership or similar entity.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.39–.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has an interest in a limited liability company that has governing provisions that are the functional equivalent of a regular corporation.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 810-10 to determine whether the reporting entity has a majority voting interest that provides it with a controlling financial interest.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Relationships of a Not-for-Profit Reporting Entity—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification® Reference</th>
<th>Discussion in This Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has a noncontrolling interest that constitutes more than a minor interest in a for-profit partnership, limited liability entity, or similar entity engaged in real estate activities.</td>
<td>Except where the reporting entity elects to report such interests at fair value, in accordance with the &quot;Fair Value Option&quot; sections of FASB ASC 825-10, use the equity method, in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 970-323.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.44–.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has a noncontrolling interest that constitutes more than a minor interest in a for-profit partnership, limited liability entity, or similar entity other than one engaged in real estate activities.</td>
<td>Except when the reporting entity elects to report such interests at fair value, in accordance with the &quot;Fair Value Option&quot; sections of FASB ASC 825-10, entities typically use by analogy the equity method, in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 970-323.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has a contractual management relationship with another entity and that contractual management relationship has a term that is either the entire remaining legal life of the other entity or a period of 10 years or more.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in the &quot;Consolidation of Entities Controlled by Contract&quot; subsections of FASB ASC 810-10 to determine whether the arrangement constitutes a controlling financial interest.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.30–.32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Relationships With Special Entities**

| The reporting entity has a relationship with a variable interest entity (VIE), as described in the "Variable Interest Entities" subsections of FASB ASC 810-10. | Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-10-15-17, NFPs are not subject to the "Variable Interest Entities" subsections of FASB ASC 810-10, unless the NFP is used by a business entity in a manner similar to a VIE in an effort to circumvent the provisions of those standards. | Paragraph 12.27             |
### Relationships of a Not-for-Profit Reporting Entity—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification® Reference</th>
<th>Discussion in This Chapter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity is engaged in a leasing transaction with a special-purpose entity lessor.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in paragraphs 8–10 of FASB ASC 958-810-25 and paragraphs 7–16 of FASB ASC 958-810-55 to determine whether to consolidate the lessor.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.50–.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has entered into a joint operating agreement with another entity. They agree to jointly conduct an activity while sharing the operating results and a residual interest upon dissolution.</td>
<td>If housed in a separate legal entity, use the method of accounting for that entity type; otherwise, use the guidance in FASB ASC 808, Collaborative Arrangements.</td>
<td>Paragraphs 12.55–.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity is a sponsor in a research and development arrangement.</td>
<td>Use the guidance in FASB ASC 810-30.</td>
<td>Uncommon; not discussed in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The reporting entity has another type of relationship with a special-purpose entity.</td>
<td>The Financial Reporting Executive Committee observes that entities typically analogize to the guidance in paragraphs 8–10 of FASB ASC 958-810-25 and paragraphs 7–16 of FASB ASC 958-810-55.</td>
<td>Paragraph 12.58</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The guidance in this table applies to relationships with entities that provide goods or services that accomplish the purpose or mission for which the NFP exists or that serve the NFP's administrative purposes.

### Relationships With Another NFP

12.06 FASB ASC 958-810-05-3 explains that ownership of NFPs may be evidenced in various ways because NFPs may exist in various legal forms, such as corporations issuing stock, corporations issuing ownership certificates, membership corporations issuing membership certificates, joint ventures, and partnerships, among other forms. FASB ASC 958-810-25-1 states that a relationship with another NFP can take any one of the following forms, which determines the appropriate reporting:

- A controlling financial interest through direct or indirect ownership of a majority voting interest or sole corporate membership in the other NFP (see FASB ASC 958-810-25-2)
b. Control of a related but separate NFP through a majority voting interest in the board of that NFP by means other than ownership or sole corporate membership and an economic interest in that other NFP (see FASB ASC 958-810-25-3)

c. An economic interest in the other NFP combined with control through means other than those listed in items a–b (see FASB ASC 958-810-25-4)

d. Either an economic interest in the other NFP or control of the other NFP, but not both (see FASB ASC 958-810-25-5)

12.07 As discussed in FASB ASC 954-810-05-3, the rights and powers of the controlling entity may vary depending on the legal structure of the controlled entity and the nature of control. As a result, whether the financial statements of a controlled NFP should be consolidated with those of the reporting entity depends on the nature of control and whether an economic interest exists, as follows:

- Certain kinds of control, such as controlling financial interests, require consolidation (see paragraphs 12.10–11).
- Other kinds of control (for example, a majority voting interest in the board of the other NFP) result in consolidation only if coupled with an economic interest (see paragraph 12.13).
- Still other kinds of control, if coupled with an economic interest, result in consolidation being permitted but not required (see paragraphs 12.12–15).
- The existence of either control or an economic interest, but not both, precludes consolidation but may trigger disclosure requirements (see paragraph 12.16).

12.08 For purposes of applying the guidance for relationships with other NFPs, the FASB ASC glossary defines control as "the direct or indirect ability to determine the direction of management and policies through ownership, contract, or otherwise." The FASB ASC glossary defines an economic interest as an NFP’s interest in another entity that exists if any of the following criteria are met:

a. The other entity holds or utilizes significant resources that must be used for the unrestricted or restricted purposes of the NFP, either directly or indirectly by producing income or providing services.

b. The NFP is responsible for the liabilities of the other entity.

12.09 FASB ASC 958-810-55-6 provides the following examples of economic interests:

a. Other entities solicit funds in the name of and with the expressed or implied approval of the NFP, and substantially all of the funds solicited are intended by the contributor or are otherwise required to be transferred to the NFP or used at its discretion or direction.

b. An NFP transfers significant resources to another entity whose resources are held for the benefit of the NFP.

c. An NFP assigns certain significant functions to another entity.

d. An NFP provides or is committed to provide funds for another entity, or the NFP guarantees significant debt of another entity.
e. An NFP has a right to or a responsibility for the operating results of another entity. Or upon dissolution, the reporting entity is entitled to the net assets or is responsible for any deficit of another entity.

**Controlling Financial Interests**

12.10 FASB ASC 958-810-25-2 states that an NFP with a controlling financial interest in another NFP through direct or indirect ownership of a majority voting interest or sole corporate membership in that other NFP should consolidate that other NFP, unless control does not rest with the majority owner or sole corporate member (for instance, if the other NFP is in legal reorganization or in bankruptcy or if other legal or contractual limitations are so severe that control does not rest with the sole corporate member), in which case consolidation is prohibited, as discussed in FASB ASC 810-10-15-8. See FASB ASC 958-810-25-2A for an example in which control may not rest with the holder of the majority voting interest. (This example is provided in paragraph 12.11.) FASB ASC 954-810-45-3A states that a parent corporation typically owns stock in a for-profit entity, whereas a sole corporate member holds membership rights in an NFP. Sole corporate membership in an NFP, like ownership of a majority voting interest in a for-profit entity, should be considered a controlling financial interest, unless control does not rest with the sole corporate member (for instance, if the other [membership] entity is in bankruptcy or if other legal or contractual limitations are so severe that control does not rest with the sole corporate member).

12.11 FASB ASC 958-810-25-2A provides the following example of a situation in which control might not rest with the holder of the majority voting interest. In some situations, certain actions require approval by a supermajority vote of the board. Such voting requirements might overcome the presumption of control by the owner or holder of a majority voting interest. FASB ASC 958-810-55-4A provides the following implementation guidance for that paragraph. An NFP should exercise judgment in evaluating such situations. If supermajority voting requirements exist—for example, a specified supermajority of the board is needed to approve fundamental actions such as amending the articles of incorporation or dissolving the entity—an NFP should consider whether those voting requirements have little or no effect on the ability to control the other entity's operations or assets or, alternatively, whether those voting requirements are so restrictive that they call into question whether control rests with the holder of the majority voting interest. Paragraphs 2–14 of FASB ASC 810-10-25 may be helpful in considering whether the inability of the majority voting interest to unilaterally approve certain actions due to supermajority voting requirements is substantial enough to overcome the presumption of control.

**Control Combined With an Economic Interest**

12.12 FASB ASC 958-810-25-3 states that in the case of control of a related but separate NFP through (a) a majority voting interest in the board of the other NFP by means other than ownership or sole corporate membership

---

1 A majority voting interest in the board of another entity by means other than ownership or sole corporate membership is illustrated by the following example from FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 958-810-55-5. Entity B has a five-member board, and a simple voting majority is required to approve board actions. Entity A will have a majority voting interest in the board of Entity B (continued)
and (b) an economic interest in the other such organizations, consolidation is required, unless control does not rest with the holder of the majority voting interest, in which case consolidation is prohibited. An NFP has a majority voting interest in the board of another NFP if it has the direct or indirect ability to appoint individuals that together constitute a majority of the votes of the fully constituted board (that is, including any vacant board positions).

12.13 FASB ASC 958-810-25-4 states that control of a related but separate NFP in which the reporting entity has an economic interest may take forms other than majority ownership interest, sole corporate membership, or majority voting interest in the board of the other entity; for example, control may be through contract or affiliation agreement. In circumstances such as these, consolidation is permitted but not required.\(^2\) Consolidation is encouraged for these entities if it would be meaningful.

12.14 Evidence of control, as discussed in the preceding paragraph, may include authority to amend articles of incorporation and bylaws or authority to approve operating, capital, and construction budgets; capital acquisitions; strategic plans, goals, and objectives; authority to select, terminate, and set the compensation of management responsible for implementing the policies and procedures; and mergers or dissolutions.

12.15 According to FASB ASC 958-810-50-2, if an NFP (the reporting entity) controls a related but separate NFP through a form other than majority ownership, sole corporate membership, or majority voting interest in the board of the other entity and has an economic interest in that other NFP, the reporting entity should disclose all of the following information if it does not present consolidated financial statements:

a. Identification of the other NFP and the nature of its relationship with the reporting entity that results in control

b. Summarized financial data of the other NFP, which should include the following information:

i. Total assets, liabilities, net assets, revenue, and expenses

ii. Resources that are held for the benefit of the reporting entity or that are under its control

c. The disclosures required by paragraphs 1–6 of FASB ASC 850-10-50

Control or Economic Interest (But Not Both)

12.16 FASB ASC 958-810-25-5 states that the existence of control or an economic interest, but not both, precludes consolidation. Pursuant to FASB ASC 958-810-50-3, the reporting entity should disclose the information about related parties required by paragraphs 1–6 of FASB ASC 850-10-50 for these relationships.

(footnote continued)

Entity B if Entity A has the ability to appoint three or more of Entity B’s board members. If three of Entity A’s board members, employees, or officers serve on the board of Entity B, but Entity A does not have the ability to require that those members serve on Entity B’s board, Entity A does not have a majority voting interest in the board of Entity B.

\(^2\) Additional information about the consolidation of entities controlled by contract can be found in paragraphs 12.29–32.
Related Fund-Raising Organizations

12.17 A common situation in which a health care entity may have an economic interest in another entity but may not control it is the fund-raising entity described in paragraph 12.08a. In such situations, the related NFP acts as a recipient entity (an agent, a trustee, or an intermediary) for contributions made to the health care entity.

12.18 The "Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others" sections of FASB ASC 958-605 apply if contributions intended to benefit a specific NFP (the beneficiary) are made through another NFP acting as an agent, a trustee, or an intermediary. In such transactions, a donor makes a contribution by transferring assets to an NFP or charitable trust (the recipient entity) that accepts the assets from the donor and agrees to use those assets on behalf of an unaffiliated entity (beneficiary) or transfer those assets, the return on investment of those assets, or both to an unaffiliated entity (the beneficiary) that is specified by the donor. FASB ASC 958-605-55-78 states that a donor may specify the beneficiary by (a) name; (b) stating that all entities that meet a set of donor-defined criteria are beneficiaries; or (c) actions surrounding the transfer that make clear the identity of the beneficiary, such as by responding to a request from a recipient entity to raise assets for the beneficiary. Paragraphs 80–115 of FASB ASC 958-605-55 provide examples of donor stipulations and discuss whether those stipulations specify a beneficiary.

12.19 According to FASB ASC 958-20-25-1, if a recipient entity and specified health care entity (beneficiary) are financially-interrelated entities, as defined in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2 and described in paragraph 12.79, and the recipient entity is not a trustee, the recipient entity should recognize a received contribution when it receives financial or nonfinancial assets from the donor that are specified for the beneficiary. For example, a foundation that exists to raise, hold, and invest assets for the specified health care entity (beneficiary) or a group of affiliates of which the specified health care entity is a member generally is financially interrelated with the NFP(s) it supports and recognizes contribution revenue when it receives assets from the donor. According to FASB ASC 958-20-25-2 and 958-20-35-1, the specified health care entity (beneficiary) should recognize its interest in the net assets of the foundation (the recipient entity) and adjust that interest for its share of the change in net assets of the recipient entity. Recognizing an interest in the net assets of the recipient entity and adjusting that interest for a share of the change in net assets of the recipient entity is similar to the equity method, which is described in FASB ASC 323-10.5

---

3 The "Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others" sections of FASB ASC 958-605 also establish standards for transactions that take place in a similar manner but are not contributions because the transfers are revocable, repayable, or reciprocal. For example, FASB ASC 958-605-55-110 states that if a resource provider transfers assets to a recipient entity and specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary, a presumption that the transfer is reciprocal and, therefore, not a contribution is necessary, even if the resource provider explicitly grants the recipient entity variance power. Those standards and transactions are discussed in paragraphs 4.61–.63 and 12.78–.81 of this guide. FASB ASC 958-605 and this guide do not use the word donor in discussing those transactions because they are not contributions.

4 Foundations that are not providers of health care services are not covered by this guide and should follow the Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities.

5 FASB ASC 958-20-45-3 states if the beneficiary and recipient entity are included in consolidated financial statements, the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient entity should be eliminated, in accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-45-1.
According to FASB ASC 958-20-55-11, when measuring its interest in the foundation (recipient entity), the health care entity (specified beneficiary) would include only the net assets of the recipient entity that are restricted to that health care entity's use. According to FASB ASC 958-20-55-12, if the recipient entity supports more than one beneficiary, and an agreement with the recipient entity specifies how unrestricted gifts to the recipient entity should be divided between the supported entities, the specified health care entity would also include its share of the recipient entity's unrestricted assets, computed in accordance with that agreement, when it measures its interest in the recipient entity. Similarly, if a parent entity controls both the recipient entity and specified health care entity, and the parent directed that unrestricted gifts would be distributed to affiliates in accordance with a specified formula, each affiliate would include its share of unrestricted net assets, computed in accordance with that formula, when it measures its interest in the recipient entity.

According to FASB ASC 954-605-25-12, distributions from a financially-interrelated recipient entity to a nongovernmental health care entity that it supports should generally be reported by the health care entity as a reduction of its interest in the recipient entity. However, if the distribution is made from net assets that are not includable in that interest because the health care entity does not have rights to them (that is, the recipient entity can determine to whom the assets will be distributed), the health care entity should report a contribution from the related recipient entity.

For example, assume a foundation's mission is to raise contributions for 2 financially interrelated health care entities: Hospital A and Hospital B. The foundation receives $10,000 in contributions from donors who do not specify which of the 2 hospitals should benefit from their gifts. No agreement exists between the foundation and Hospitals A and B that specifies how gifts to the foundation should be divided between the hospitals if the donor does not specify a beneficiary. Hospital A would report contribution revenue for any portion of the $10,000 that it receives from the foundation. Likewise, Hospital B would report contribution revenue for any portion of the $10,000 that it receives, but neither Hospital A nor Hospital B would record an interest in those assets before the foundation either distributes them or unconditionally promises them.

As discussed in FASB ASC 958-605-25-24, if the recipient entity and specified health care entity are not financially-interrelated entities, as defined in FASB ASC 958-20-15-2 (see paragraph 12.79), a recipient entity that accepts assets from a donor and agrees to use those assets on behalf of the specified health care entity (beneficiary) or transfer those assets, the return on investment of those assets, or both to the specified health care entity (beneficiary) should recognize its liability to the specified health care entity (beneficiary) concurrent with its recognition of cash or other financial assets received from the donor, unless the recipient entity is explicitly granted variance power (see the discussion of variance power in paragraph 11.42 of this guide). Except in cases when the donor grants variance power, or the entities are financially interrelated, as described in paragraphs 25–26 of FASB ASC 958-605-25 and FASB ASC 958-605-25-27, respectively, a recipient entity that receives nonfinancial assets is permitted, but not required, to recognize its liability and those assets, provided that the recipient entity consistently reports from period to period and discloses its accounting policy. The FASB ASC glossary defines nonfinancial asset as "[a]n asset that is not a financial asset. Nonfinancial assets
include land, buildings, use of facilities or utilities, materials and supplies, intangible assets, or services. According to FASB ASC 958-605-25-28, a specified health care entity (beneficiary) should recognize its rights to the financial or nonfinancial assets held by a recipient entity as an asset, unless the recipient entity is explicitly granted variance power (see further discussion in paragraph 11.42 of this guide).

12.24 In contrast, if the donor does not specify a beneficiary (see further discussion in paragraph 12.18, and the foundation and a hospital are under common control, but they are not financially interrelated, the recipient entity should recognize contribution revenue when it receives the gift. At a later date, when the foundation transfers assets to the hospital, the gift should be accounted for as contributions received by the hospital, consistent with the "Contributions Received" sections of FASB ASC 958-605, provided that the foundation is acting other than as an owner.

12.25 Additional guidance regarding accounting for contributions received by agents, trustees, and intermediaries can be found in Technical Questions and Answers sections 6400.35–.43 of section 6400, Health Care Entities (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids) (appendix A, "TIS Section 6400, Health Care Entities," of chapter 11, "Contributions Received and Made," of this guide) and chapter 5, "Contributions Received and Agency Transactions," of the Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities.

Relationships With a For-Profit Entity

12.26 An NFP health care system may own stock, partnership interests, or other ownership interests in for-profit entities, such as HMOs or insurance entities, that may or may not provide patient care. Whether the financial statements of a for-profit entity should be consolidated with the reporting entity depends on the nature of control. Certain types of control require consolidation; other relationships require the equity method of accounting to be used. Chapter 4 of this guide discusses the reporting of an interest in a for-profit entity if it is neither consolidated nor reported using the equity method.

12.27 When applying the guidance in FASB ASC 810-10, NFP health care entities do not apply tests to determine whether the other entity is a variable interest entity (VIE). According to FASB ASC 810-10-15-17, NFPs are not subject to the "Variable Interest Entities" sections of FASB ASC 810-10, except that they may be related parties for purposes of applying paragraphs 42–44 of FASB ASC 810-10-25 (see paragraph 12.59 for discussion of certain exceptions relating to VIE treatment for private companies).

12.28 Guidance in this section is organized as follows:

- Consolidation required by a controlling financial interest
- Equity method of accounting for noncontrolling interests in corporations
- Interests in general partnerships
- Interests in limited partnerships and similar entities

Controlling Financial Interests

12.29 FASB ASC 958-810-15-4(a) states that an NFP with a controlling financial interest in a for-profit entity through direct or indirect ownership of a majority voting interest in that entity should apply the guidance in the
"General" subsections of FASB ASC 810-10. Per FASB ASC 810-10-15-8, the usual condition for a controlling financial interest is ownership of a majority voting interest, and, therefore, as a general rule ownership by one reporting entity, directly or indirectly, of more than 50 percent of the outstanding voting shares of another entity is a condition pointing toward consolidation. The power to control may also exist with a lesser percentage of ownership, for example, by contract, lease, agreement with other stockholders, or by court decree. However, when applying the guidance in FASB ASC 810-10, NFPs are not subject to the guidance for variable interest entities.

12.30 FASB ASC 810-10-15-10(a)(1) provides an exception if control does not rest with the majority owner. For instance, a majority-owned subsidiary should not be consolidated if any of the following are present: (a) the subsidiary is in legal reorganization; (b) the subsidiary is in bankruptcy; (c) the subsidiary operates under foreign exchange restrictions, controls, or other governmentally-imposed uncertainties that are so severe that they cast significant doubt on the parent's ability to control the subsidiary; and (d) the rights of noncontrolling shareholder(s) are so restrictive that it is questioned whether control rests with the majority owner. The guidance in paragraphs 2–14 of FASB ASC 810-10-25 should be applied in assessing the impact of consolidation on noncontrolling shareholder approval or veto rights.

12.31 Legal or business reasons often preclude a physician practice management entity from acquiring the outstanding equity instruments of the physician practice. Per FASB ASC 810-10-15-21, a physician practice management entity can establish a controlling financial interest in a physician practice through contractual management arrangements. Specifically, a controlling financial interest exists if, for a requisite period of time, the physician practice management entity has control over the physician practice and a financial interest in the physician practice that meets all six of the requirements listed in FASB ASC 810-10-15-22. That paragraph contains guidance that describes how those six requirements are to be applied. FASB ASC 810-10-55-206 contains a decision tree illustrating the basic analysis called for by both the six requirements and presumptive, but not other, interpretive guidance.

12.32 Additional guidance for determining whether a controlling financial interest exists is located as follows:

a. Per FASB ASC 810-30-15, if the reporting entity has a research and development arrangement in which all of the funds for the research and development activities are provided by the sponsor, the reporting entity should follow the guidance in FASB ASC 810-30 to determine whether and how the sponsor should consolidate that arrangement. Per FASB ASC 810-10-15-17, NFPs do not apply tests to determine whether the research and development entity is determined to be a VIE.

b. The "Consolidation of Entities Controlled by Contract" subsections of FASB ASC 810-10 provide additional guidance about consolidation by physician practice management entities and other situations in which one entity manages another under similar circumstances and arrangements.

Noncontrolling Interests in Voting Stock

12.33 FASB ASC 958-810-15-4(c) states that an NFP that owns 50 percent or less of the voting stock in a for-profit entity should apply the guidance in...
FASB ASC 323-10 unless that investment is reported at fair value in conformity with the guidance in FASB ASC 958-810-15-4(e).

12.34 FASB ASC 323-10 requires that the equity method of accounting be used if investments in common stock or in-substance common stock (or both common stock and in-substance common stock), including investments in common stock of joint ventures, give the investor the ability to exercise significant influence over operating and financial policies of an investee, even though the investor holds 50 percent or less of the common stock or in-substance common stock (or both common stock and in-substance common stock).

12.35 Significant influence is defined by paragraphs 6–11 of FASB ASC 323-10-15. Determining the ability of an investor to exercise significant influence is not always clear and applying judgment is necessary to assess the status of each investment. An investment of less than 20 percent of the voting stock of an investee should lead to a presumption that an investor does not have the ability to exercise significant influence unless such ability can be demonstrated. Conversely, an investment (direct or indirect) of 20 percent or more of the voting stock of an investee should lead to a presumption that, in the absence of predominant evidence to the contrary, an investor has the ability to exercise significant influence over an investee. However, this presumption can be overcome in certain instances. FASB ASC 323-10-15-6 provides indications of significant influence that could exist even if the investor owns less than 20 percent of the voting stock. Paragraphs 10–11 of FASB ASC 323-10-15 provide examples of indications that an investor may be unable to exercise significant influence. Additionally, according to FASB ASC 323-10-25-2, the limitations under which a majority-owned subsidiary should not be consolidated, as discussed in paragraph 12.29, should also be applied as limitations to the use of the equity method.

12.36 Paragraphs 37–39 of FASB ASC 323-10-35 provide guidance on how an investor should account for its proportionate share of an investee's equity adjustments for other comprehensive income (below the performance indicator) in all of the following circumstances: (a) a loss of significant influence, (b) a loss of control that results in the retention of a cost method investment, and (c) discontinuation of the equity method for an investment in a limited partnership because the conditions in FASB ASC 970-323-25-6 are met for applying the cost method. Those paragraphs do not provide guidance for entities that have not historically recorded their proportionate share of an investee's equity adjustments for other comprehensive income. In accordance with FASB ASC 954-225-45-7(e), an NFP health care entity should report items that are required to be reported in, or reclassified from, other comprehensive income separately from (below) the performance indicator.

12.37 An NFP that would otherwise be required to use the equity method may be permitted to report at fair value by making an election pursuant to FASB ASC 825-10-25-1 (the fair value option).

12.38 If the NFP's ownership of voting stock in a for-profit business entity is not sufficient to result in a controlling financial interest or significant influence, the NFP may be required to report its interest in the for-profit business entity at fair value in conformity with FASB ASC 958-320-35-1. That guidance applies to equity securities with a readily determinable fair value, other than consolidated subsidiaries and investments reported under the equity method. If the voting stock does not have a readily determinable fair value and the ownership is not sufficient to result in a controlling financial interest or
significant influence, the investment is within the scope of FASB ASC 958-325. Alternatively, the NFP can report the individual investment at fair value if it makes an election pursuant to FASB ASC 825-10-25-1 (the fair value option).

**Interests in General Partnerships**

12.39 An NFP that is a partner in a general partnership might apply the guidance in FASB ASC 970-810 even though it is not required to do so. FASB ASC 970-810 provides consolidation guidance for partners of general partnerships engaged in real estate activities. FASB ASC 970-810-25-1 states that a general partnership that is directly or indirectly controlled by an investor is, in substance, a subsidiary of the investor. FASB ASC 970-810-25-2 states that a noncontrolling investor in a general partnership should account for its investment by the equity method and be guided by the provisions of FASB ASC 323, Investments—Equity Methods and Joint Ventures. Alternatively, the reporting entity may elect to report that noncontrolling interest at fair value, in accordance with the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10.

12.40 For example, NFP G and NFP H hold their annual meetings at the same time and in the same city. In order to save costs, they create a general partnership to conduct their meetings, negotiating better rates with the hotel and realizing other synergies. Though they share equally in the decision-making, NFP G has a 70 percent ownership account and NFP B has a 30 percent ownership account. Neither NFP G nor NFP B has control because they share equally in decision-making and therefore neither entity should consolidate the general partnership. If they analogize to the guidance in FASB ASC 970-810-25-2, the NFPs would apply the equity method to their general partnership interests. Alternatively, the NFPs might elect to report their interests at fair value in accordance with the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10. (See paragraph 3.137 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide Not-for-Profit Entities for a similar example involving an unincorporated joint venture.)

**Interests in Limited Partnerships and Similar Entities**

12.41 FASB ASC 810-20 discusses the potential consolidation of partnerships and similar entities. It provides a framework for the determination of which, if any, general partner within the group controls and, therefore, should consolidate a limited partnership or limited liability company that has governing provisions that are the functional equivalent of a limited partnership. See paragraph 12.30 for a limited liability company that is the functional equivalent of a regular corporation.

12.42 FASB ASC 810-20-25-3 states that the general partners in a limited partnership are presumed to control a limited partnership, regardless of the extent of the general partners' ownership interest in the limited partnership. Paragraphs 4–20 of FASB ASC 810-20-25 provide guidance for purposes of assessing whether the limited partners' rights might preclude a general partner from controlling a limited partnership. Paragraphs 10–11 of FASB ASC 810-20-25 state that if the presumption of control by the general partners is overcome, each of the general partners would account for its investment in the limited partnership using the equity method of accounting.

12.43 FASB ASC 970-323 provides guidance for the real estate industry and limited partners in limited partnerships, noncontrolling interests in corporate joint ventures, and undivided interests in real property. Although health care entities are not required to apply that guidance, except as indicated in the
following paragraph, in current practice, NFP health care entities often apply it for their noncontrolling interests in all limited partnerships, limited liability companies, corporate joint ventures, and similar entities. Alternatively, the reporting entity may elect to report that investment at fair value, in accordance with the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10.

12.44 FASB ASC 954-810-15-3(i) states that noncontrolling interests in for-profit real estate partnerships, limited liability entities, and similar entities over which the reporting entity has more than a minor interest should be reported under the equity method, in accordance with the guidance in the "General" sections of FASB ASC 970-323, unless the reporting entity elects to report that investment at fair value, in accordance with the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10. Those sections state that the equity method of accounting is generally appropriate for accounting by limited partners for their investments in limited partnerships. Alternatively, an NFP health care entity can irrevocably elect fair value as the initial and subsequent measure for noncontrolling interests in partnerships under the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10. Paragraph 12.48 provides additional information about distinguishing a minor interest from a more than a minor interest.

12.45 FASB ASC 954-810-15-3(i) also states that an NFP health care entity should apply the guidance in FASB ASC 970-323-25-2 to determine whether its interest in a for-profit real estate partnership, limited liability entity, or similar entity is a controlling or noncontrolling interest. FASB ASC 970-323-25-2 refers to FASB ASC 970-810-25-2, which states that a majority interest holder may not control the entity if one or more of the other partners have substantive participating rights that permit those other partners to effectively participate in significant decisions that would be expected to be made in the ordinary course of business. The determination of whether the rights of the other partners are substantive participating rights should be evaluated in accordance with the guidance for substantive participating rights in FASB ASC 810-20. If the other partners have substantive participating rights, the presumption of control by the majority interest holder is overcome.

12.46 An NFP health care entity should apply the guidance in FASB ASC 323-30-35-3 to determine whether a limited liability company should be viewed as similar to a partnership, as opposed to a corporation, for purposes of determining whether a noncontrolling interest in a limited liability entity or similar entity should be accounted for in accordance with FASB ASC 970-323 or 323-10. FASB ASC 323-30-35-3 states that an investment in a limited liability company should be viewed as similar to an investment in a limited partnership if the limited liability company maintains a specific ownership account for each investor—similar to a partnership capital account structure.

12.47 A limited partner's interest may be so minor that the limited partner may have virtually no influence over partnership operating and financial policies. FASB ASC 970-323-25-6 states that such a limited partner is, in substance, in the same position (with respect to the investment) as an investor that owns a minor common stock interest in a corporation; accordingly, accounting for the investment using the cost method may be appropriate.

12.48 Although not registrants, many NFP health care entities analogize to the guidance in FASB ASC 323-30-S99-1 to determine what is more than a minor interest. FASB ASC 323-30-S99-1 states that the SEC staff understands that practice generally has viewed investments of more than 3 percent to 5 percent to be more than minor.
Special Entities

12.49 This section discusses relationships with three types of special entities, as follows:

- Special-purpose leasing entities
- Joint operating agreements
- Other special-purpose entities

Consolidation of a Special-Purpose Leasing Entity

12.50 FASB ASC 954-810-15-3(g) states that if an NFP business-oriented health care entity is engaged in leasing transactions with a special-purpose-entity (SPE) lessor, it should consider whether it should consolidate the lessor, in accordance with the guidance in paragraphs 8–10 of FASB ASC 958-810-25.

12.51 FASB ASC 958-810-25-8 states that an NFP lessee should consolidate a special-purpose entity lessor (SPE) if all of the following conditions are met:

a. Substantially all of the activities of the SPE involve assets that are to be leased to a single lessee.

b. The expected substantive residual risks and substantially all the residual rewards of the leased asset(s) and the obligation imposed by the underlying debt of the SPE reside directly or indirectly with the lessee through means such as any of the following:
   i. The lease agreement
   ii. A residual value guarantee through, for example, the assumption of first-dollar-of-loss provisions
   iii. A guarantee of the SPE's debt
   iv. An option granting the lessee a right to either
      (1) purchase the leased asset at a fixed price or at a defined price other than fair value determined at the date of exercise or
      (2) receive any of the lessor's sales proceeds in excess of a stipulated amount

c. The owner(s) of record of the SPE has not made an initial, substantive, residual equity capital investment that is at risk during the entire lease term. This criterion should be considered met if the majority owner(s) of the lessor is not an independent third party, regardless of the level of capital investment.

12.52 According to FASB ASC 958-810-25-9, to satisfy the at-risk requirement in FASB ASC 958-810-25-8(c) (see paragraph 12.51), an initial, substantive, residual equity capital investment should meet all of the following conditions:

a. It represents an equity interest in legal form.

b. It is subordinate to all debt interests.

c. It represents the residual equity interest during the entire lease term.

12.53 FASB ASC 958-810-25-10 states that if all the conditions in FASB ASC 958-810-25-8 (see paragraph 12.51) exist, the assets, liabilities, results of
operations, and cash flows of the SPE should be consolidated in the lessee's financial statements. This conclusion should be applied to SPEs that are established for both the construction and subsequent lease of an asset for which the lease would meet all the conditions in FASB ASC 958-810-25-8 (see paragraph 12.51). In those cases, the consolidation by the lessee should begin at the lease inception, rather than the beginning of the lease term. Implementation guidance may be found in FASB ASC 958-810-55-4A and 958-840-55-1.

12.54 FinREC believes that 3 percent is the minimum acceptable investment to qualify as an initial, substantive, residual equity capital investment. A greater investment may be necessary depending on the facts and circumstances, including the credit risk associated with the lessee and market risk factors associated with the leased property. For example, the cost of borrowed funds for the transaction might be indicative of the risk associated with the transaction and whether an equity investment greater than 3 percent is needed. Additional information about the application of the preceding criteria and guidance for consolidation of the SPE is located in FASB ASC 958-840.

Agreements to Jointly Operate a Facility or Other Activity

12.55 Health care systems may enter into an agreement in which two or more entities agree to jointly operate and control a certain endeavor, such as a hospital or treatment center, while sharing in the operating results and residual interest upon dissolution, based upon an agreed-upon ratio. Those agreements are similar to joint ventures and, typically, are characterized by factors such as the following:

- **Common purpose.** For example, to share risks and rewards; develop a new market, health service, or program; or pool resources.
- **Joint funding.** All parties contribute resources toward the accomplishment.
- **Defined relationship.** Typically governed by an agreement.
- **Joint control.** No one entity controls the joint operating activity.

12.56 If the endeavor is housed in a separate legal entity, such as a corporation or partnership, it would be accounted for similar to a corporate joint venture using the equity method of accounting described in FASB ASC 323-10. Alternatively, the reporting entity may elect to report such interests at fair value, in accordance with the "Fair Value Option" sections of FASB ASC 825-10.

12.57 If the endeavor is not conducted within a separate legal entity, it would be accounted for based on the guidance in FASB ASC 808, Collaborative Arrangements. FASB ASC 808-10-45-1 states that participants in a collaborative arrangement should report costs incurred and revenue generated from transactions with third parties (that is, parties that do not participate in the arrangement) in each entity's respective income statement, pursuant to the guidance in FASB ASC 605-45 for principal agents. An entity should not apply the equity method of accounting to the activities of a collaborative arrangement.

Other Special-Purpose Entities

12.58 An NFP business-oriented health care entity may be engaged in transactions with an SPE that are other than leasing transactions or transactions of a collaborative arrangement. In practice, entities analogize to the guidance in paragraphs 8–10 of FASB ASC 958-810-25 and paragraphs 7–16 of FASB ASC 958-810-55 to determine whether to consolidate the SPE.
Update 12-1 Accounting: Development Stage Entities


For other entities, the amendments are effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2014, and interim reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2015.

The amendments related to the elimination of inception-to-date information and the other remaining disclosure requirements of FASB ASC 915, Development Stage Entities, should be applied retrospectively except for the clarification to FASB ASC 275, Risks and Uncertainties, which shall be applied prospectively. For public business entities, the amendment eliminating the exception to the sufficiency-of-equity-at-risk criterion for development stage entities in paragraph 4 of FASB ASC 810-10-15-16 should be applied retrospectively for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2015, and interim periods therein. For all other entities, the amendments to FASB ASC 810, Consolidation, should be applied retrospectively for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017.

Early application of each of the amendments is permitted for any annual reporting period or interim period for which the entity’s financial statements have not yet been issued (public business entities) or made available for issuance (other entities). Upon adoption, entities will no longer present or disclose any information required by FASB ASC 915.

ASU No. 2014-10 amends FASB ASC 810-10-15-16 as follows:

Because reconsideration of whether a legal entity is subject to the Variable Interest Entities Subsections is required only in certain circumstances, the initial application to a legal entity that is in the development stage is very important. Guidelines for identifying a development stage entity appear in FASB ASC 915-10-05-2. A development stage entity is a VIE if it meets any of the conditions in FASB ASC 810-10-15-14. A development stage entity does not meet the condition in FASB ASC 810-10-15-14(a): if it can be demonstrated that the equity invested in the legal entity is sufficient to permit it to finance the activities it is currently engaged in (for example, if the legal entity has already obtained financing without additional subordinated financial support) and provisions in the legal entity’s governing documents and contractual arrangements allow additional equity investments. However, sufficiency of the equity investment should be reconsidered as required by FASB ASC 810-10-35-4, for example, if the legal entity undertakes additional activities or acquires additional assets.

This ASU is codified in FASB ASC 810-15. Readers are encouraged to consult the full text of the ASU on FASB’s website at www.fasb.org.
12.59 FASB ASC 954-810-15-2 provides a summary of the locations of standards that an investor-owned health care entity uses for reporting relationships with other entities, as follows:

a. Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-10-15-3(a), an investor-owned health care entity should first apply the guidance in the "Variable Interest Entities" sections of FASB ASC 810-10 if it is within the scope of those sections.

b. Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-10-15-3(b), if the investor-owned health care entity has an investment in another entity that is not determined to be a VIE, it should use the guidance in the "General" sections of FASB ASC 810-10 to determine whether that interest constitutes a controlling financial interest. That guidance also is used to determine if an NFP health care entity has a controlling financial interest in a for-profit entity, and it is discussed in paragraphs 12.29–.32.

c. Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-10-15-3(c), if the investor-owned health care entity has a contractual management relationship with another entity (for example, a physician practice), and that other entity is not determined to be a VIE, it shall use the guidance in the "Consolidation of Entities Controlled by Contract" sections of FASB ASC 810-10 to determine whether the arrangement constitutes a controlling financial interest. That guidance also is used to determine if an NFP health care entity has a controlling financial interest in a for-profit entity, and it is discussed in paragraphs 12.30–.32.

d. Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-20-15, if the investor-owned health care entity is the general partner of a limited partnership or similar entity, such as a limited liability entity that has governing provisions that are the functional equivalent of a limited partnership, it should apply the guidance in FASB ASC 810-20. That guidance also is used by an NFP health care entity that has an interest in a for-profit partnership, and it is discussed in paragraph 12.42.

e. Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-30-15, if the investor-owned health care entity is a sponsor in a research and development arrangement, it shall apply the guidance in FASB ASC 810-30.

Private Company Alternative Issued by the Private Company Council

© Update 12-2 Accounting: Common Control Leasing Arrangements

FASB ASU No. 2014-07, Consolidation (Topic 810): Applying Variable Interest Entities Guidance to Common Control Leasing Arrangements (a consensus of the Private Company Council), is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2014, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2015. Early application is permitted, including application to any period for which the entity’s annual or interim financial statements have not yet been made available for issuance. It should be applied retrospectively to all periods presented.
The accounting alternative, if elected, permits a private company lessee (the reporting entity) not to apply VIE guidance to a lessor entity under common control when certain conditions are met.

Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-10-15-17A (see FASB ASC 810-10-65-4 regarding transition), a legal entity need not be evaluated by a private company under the guidance in the "Variable Interest Entities" subsections if criteria (a) through (c) are met and, in applicable circumstances, criterion (d) is met:

1. The private company lessee (the reporting entity) and the lessor legal entity are under common control.
2. The private company lessee has a lease arrangement with the lessor legal entity.
3. Substantially all activities between the private company lessee and the lessor legal entity are related to leasing activities (including supporting leasing activities) between those two entities.
4. If the private company lessee explicitly guarantees or provides collateral for any obligation of the lessor legal entity related to the asset leased by the private company, then the principal amount of the obligation at inception of such guarantee or collateral arrangement does not exceed the value of the asset leased by the private company from the lessor legal entity.

This ASU is codified in FASB ASC 810-10. Readers are encouraged to consult the full text of the ASU on FASB's website at www.fasb.org.

12.60 In addition, the SEC staff's position is that health care entities that are registrants should follow applicable SEC guidance and the guidance in paragraphs 6–7 of FASB ASC 970-323-25 for their noncontrolling interests in non-real estate limited partnerships. Although investor-owned health care entities that are not registrants are not required to apply that guidance, in current practice, they often apply it for their noncontrolling interests in general partnerships, limited partnerships, limited liability companies, corporate joint ventures, and similar entities.

12.61 The "Variable Interest Entities" sections of FASB ASC 810-10 address consolidation by business entities of VIEs. An investor-owned health care entity should follow the guidance in the "Variable Interest Entities" sections if, by design, any of the conditions in FASB ASC 810-10-15-14 exist. The phrase by design refers to entities that meet the conditions in that paragraph because of the way they are structured. For example, a legal entity under the control of its equity investors that originally was not a VIE does not become one because of operating losses. The design of the legal entity is important in the application of these provisions. Although according to FASB ASC 810-10-15-17, NFPs are not subject to the "Variable Interest Entities" sections of FASB ASC 810-10, if an NFP is used by a business reporting entity in a manner similar to a VIE in an effort to circumvent the provisions of the "Variable Interest Entities" sections, that NFP is subject to the guidance in the "Variable Interest Entities" sections.
Presentation of Consolidated and Combined Financial Statements

12.62 Some accounting standards, including some for reporting relationships with other entities, specify the display of certain financial statement elements or items without considering the reporting model used by NFP health care entities. Therefore, FASB ASC 958-10-45-1 states that preparers of financial statements of NFP entities should follow the guidance in an analogous manner that is appropriate for their method of reporting financial performance and financial position and should consider the reporting objectives of the guidance when exercising judgment about how best to display elements, such as in which net asset class.

12.63 FASB ASC 810-10-10-1 states that the purpose of consolidated financial statements is to present, primarily for the benefit of the shareholders and creditors of the parent entity, the results of operations and financial position of a parent entity and its subsidiaries essentially as if the group was a single entity with one or more branches or divisions. A presumption exists that consolidated financial statements are more meaningful than separate financial statements and that they are usually necessary for a fair presentation when one of the entities in the group has a direct or indirect controlling financial interest in the other entities.

12.64 FASB ASC 810-10-25-15 states that application of guidance of an industry-specific topic to a subsidiary within the scope of that industry-specific topic should be retained in consolidation of that subsidiary.

12.65 For example, if an NFP health care entity has a controlling financial interest in an investor-owned entity, and that entity in turn has a controlling financial interest in a VIE, the consolidation of the VIE is retained in the consolidated financial statements. Similarly, if an NFP health care entity has a controlling financial interest in an investor-owned entity, the debt and equity securities owned by the investor-owned entity are measured and reported using the standards in FASB ASC 320, Investments—Debt and Equity Securities, rather than being remeasured using the standards in FASB ASC 958-320.

12.66 FASB ASC 958-810-45-1 states that noncontrolling interests in the equity (net assets) of consolidated subsidiaries should be reported as a separate component of the appropriate class of net assets in the consolidated statement of financial position of an NFP health care entity. That amount shall be clearly identified and described (for example, as noncontrolling ownership interest in subsidiaries) to distinguish it from the components of net assets of the parent, which includes the parent’s controlling financial interest in its subsidiaries. The effects of donor-imposed restrictions, if any, on a partially-owned subsidiary’s net assets should be reported in accordance with FASB ASC 958-205 and 958-320. Paragraphs 4–6 of FASB ASC 958-810-50 require certain disclosures about noncontrolling interests. Paragraph 9.18 of this guide provides additional information about noncontrolling interests.

12.67 According to FASB ASC 954-810-45-3B, when consolidated financial statements are required or permitted by FASB ASC 958-810-25, a noncontrolling interest in the other NFP should be provided if such interest is represented by an economic interest whereby the noncontrolling interest would share in the operating results or residual interest upon dissolution.

12.68 According to FASB ASC 958-810-50-1, if consolidated financial statements are presented by an NFP (parent), the parent should disclose any
restrictions made by entities outside the reporting entity on distributions from the controlled NFP (subsidiary) to the parent and any resulting unavailability of the net assets of the subsidiary for use by the parent.

12.69 FASB ASC 810-10-45-11 states that in some cases, parent-entity financial statements may be needed, in addition to consolidated financial statements, to adequately indicate the position of bondholders and other creditors or preferred shareholders of the parent. Consolidating financial statements, in which one column is used for the parent and other columns for particular subsidiaries or groups of subsidiaries, often are an effective means of presenting the pertinent information. However, consolidated financial statements are the general-purpose financial statements of a parent having one or more subsidiaries; thus, parent-entity financial statements are not a valid substitute for consolidated financial statements.

12.70 However, neither generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) nor this guide discuss the use of the parent entity's financial statements as other than the general-purpose financial statements for the primary reporting entity. GAAP does not preclude the issuance of financial statements for the subsidiary only. However, care should be taken to include all disclosures required by FASB ASC 850, Related Party Disclosures, and other relevant pronouncements.

12.71 FASB ASC 810-10-55-1B states that in some circumstances, combined financial statements, as distinguished from consolidated financial statements, of commonly controlled entities are likely to be more meaningful than their separate statements. Combined statements would be useful if one individual owns a controlling financial interest in several entities that are related in their operations. Combined financial statements might also be useful to present the financial position and results of operations of entities under common management. Pursuant to FASB ASC 810-10-45-10, both consolidation and combination require elimination of intraentity transactions and profits and losses.

12.72 In some situations, debt agreements may require the combined financial statements of affiliated entities, the assets or revenues of which serve as collateral for the related debt (sometimes called an obligated group). However, if debt or other agreements prescribe a financial presentation that varies from GAAP (for example, exclusion of entities otherwise required to be consolidated), AU-C section 800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks (AICPA, Professional Standards), establishes requirements and provides guidance regarding auditor’s reports.

Accounting for Transfers Between Related Entities

12.73 Transfers from a foundation that acts as an agent, a trustee, or an intermediary (that is, a recipient entity) for contributions to a related non-governmental health care entity are discussed in paragraphs 12.17–25. This
section discusses equity transfers, equity transactions, and other transfers between related entities.

**Equity Transfers**

12.74 The FASB ASC glossary defines an *equity transfer* as follows:

An equity transfer is nonreciprocal. An equity transfer is a transaction directly between a transferor and a transferee. Equity transfers are similar to ownership transactions between a for-profit parent and its owned subsidiary (for example, additional paid-in capital or dividends). However, equity transfers can occur only between related not-for-profit entities (NFPs) if one controls the other or both are under common control. An equity transfer embodies no expectation of repayment, nor does the transferor receive anything of immediate economic value (such as a financial interest or ownership).

Per FASB ASC 954-225-45-2, equity transfers are reported separately as changes in net assets, are excluded from the performance indicator, and do not result in any step-up in the basis of the transferred underlying assets.

12.75 The "Transactions Between Entities Under Common Control" sections of FASB ASC 805-50 provide guidance when accounting for a transfer of assets or exchange of shares between entities under common control. The entity that receives the net assets or equity interests should recognize the transferred assets and liabilities at the date of transfer, initially measuring them at their carrying amounts in the accounts of the transferring entity. If the carrying amounts of the transferred assets and liabilities differ from the historical cost of the parent of the entities under common control (for example, because push-down accounting had not been applied), then the financial statements of the receiving entity should reflect the transferred assets and liabilities at the historical cost of the parent of the entities under common control. FASB ASC 805-50-45 provides guidance on the presentation of financial statements for the period of transfer and comparative financial statements for prior years, and disclosures are required by FASB ASC 805-50-50.

12.76 FASB ASC 805-50-30-6 notes that in some instances, the entity that receives the net assets or equity interests (the receiving entity) and the entity that transferred the net assets or equity interests (the transferring entity) may account for similar assets and liabilities using different accounting methods. In such circumstances, the carrying amounts of the transferred assets and liabilities may be adjusted to the basis of accounting used by the receiving entity if the change would be preferable. Any such change in accounting method should be applied retrospectively, and financial statements presented for prior periods should be adjusted, unless it is impracticable to do so. FASB ASC 250-10-45 provides guidance if retrospective application is impracticable.

12.77 In most situations, transfers are recorded at the time they are formally obligated to occur (formal board resolutions, legal notes, passage of title to real estate, and so on), as would be the case when each of the entities have independent governance, and the timing of the transfer is controlled by the governing board of the transferor. Yet, in situations of clear, common control of the related entities, it would be appropriate to record transfers at the time when both the transfer amount is known, and the receiving entity is given control over the timing of the transfer.
According to FASB ASC 958-20-25-4, a transfer from a nongovernmental health care entity to an NFP or charitable trust (referred to as a recipient entity) is an equity transaction if all of the following conditions are present:

- A nongovernmental health care entity transfers assets to an NFP or charitable trust (called a recipient entity) that accepts those assets and agrees to use them on behalf of the nongovernmental health care entity or transfer them, their investment return, or both back to the nongovernmental health care entity or its affiliate (that is, the nongovernmental health care entity specifies itself or its affiliate as the beneficiary of the transfer).
- The nongovernmental health care entity and recipient entity are financially-interrelated entities.
- Neither the nongovernmental health care entity nor its affiliate expects payment of the transferred assets, although payment of investment return on the transferred assets may be expected.

FASB ASC 958-20-15-2 provides that a recipient entity and specified beneficiary are financially-interrelated entities if the relationship between them has both of the following characteristics: one entity has the ability to influence the operating and financial decisions of the other, and one entity has an ongoing economic interest in the net assets of the other. The ability to exercise that influence can be demonstrated in several ways, including the following:

a. The entities are affiliates, as defined in the FASB ASC glossary.

b. One entity has considerable representation on the governing board of the other entity.

c. The charter or bylaws of one entity limits its activities to those that are beneficial to the other entity.

d. An agreement between the entities allows one entity to actively participate in the policy-making processes of the other, such as setting organizational priorities, budgets, and management compensation.

The FASB ASC glossary defines an ongoing economic interest in the net assets of another as "[a] residual right to another not-for-profit entity's (NFP's) net assets that results from an ongoing relationship. The value of those rights increases or decreases as a result of the investment, fundraising, operating, and other activities of the other entity."

Per FASB ASC 954-225-55-1, an equity transaction differs from an equity transfer in that an equity transaction, as described in FASB ASC 958-20-25-4, involves a financially-interrelated party either as a third party in a transfer from an entity to one of its affiliates or a counterparty in a transfer from an entity to itself. An equity transfer, as described in the guide, is a transaction directly between a transferor and transferee. In addition, an equity transaction is reciprocal; the health care entity or its affiliate named as the beneficiary receives an ongoing economic interest in the assets held by the recipient entity. As noted in the FASB ASC glossary definition of equity transfer, an equity transfer is nonreciprocal; no expectation of repayment exists, and the transferor does not receive a financial interest or ownership (see paragraphs 12.74–.77).
The Reporting Entity and Related Entities

12.81 The reporting of an equity transaction depends upon whether the resource provider or its affiliate is the specified beneficiary. As discussed in FASB ASC 958-20-25-5, if the resource provider specifies itself as beneficiary, it should report an equity transaction as an asset—an interest in the net assets of the recipient entity or an increase in a previously-recognized interest.7 According to FASB ASC 958-20-25-6, if a resource provider specifies an affiliate as beneficiary of an equity transaction, the resource provider should report an equity transaction as a separate line in its statement of activities, and the affiliate named as beneficiary should report an interest in the net assets of the recipient entity.8 In accordance with FASB ASC 958-20-45-1, the recipient entity should report an equity transaction as a separate line in its statement of activities. The resource provider should disclose the information described in FASB ASC 958-605-50-6 (see paragraph 4.63 of this guide) for each period for which a statement of financial position is presented.

Other Transfers

12.82 Other transfers may occur among related entities. If the entities are consolidated or combined, such transfers are eliminated in consolidation or combination, or both. If the entities are not consolidated or combined (for example, in separate subsidiaries or obligated group financial statements),9 the method of accounting for such transfers is dictated by the substance of the transaction, as well as the legal form. For example, certain transfers by a foundation to a related NFP health care entity are reported as contributions, as discussed in paragraphs 12.17–25. In other situations, payments may be made for services provided between NFPS under common control, which should be accounted for as revenues and expenses depending on the types of provided services. Transfers that result in changes in ownership interest are accounted for as investments, in accordance with FASB ASC 323 and 810.

12.83 Assets transferred from one commonly controlled entity to another should be recorded by the transferee at the carrying value of the transferring entity. This treatment is consistent with the guidance prescribed in the "Transactions Between Entities Under Common Control" sections of FASB ASC 805-50. For additional information, see paragraphs 12.75–.77.

12.84 According to FASB ASC 954-310-25-3, a health care entity may loan or advance resources to a related entity. If repayment is reasonably assured, a receivable or payable should be recorded by the entities.

12.85 Subsequent to the time that a receivable is recorded, the ability of the receiving entity to repay the receivable should be considered.

12.86 According to FASB ASC 954-310-40-1, if the receivable from a related entity is not to be repaid, or the related entity is perceived as unable to repay, the write-off of the receivable is recognized as an equity transfer, as discussed in FASB ASC 954-225-45-2, with the transferor reducing net assets and

---

7 According to FASB ASC 958-20-45-3, if the beneficiary (resource provider) and recipient entity are included in consolidated financial statements, the beneficiary’s interest in the net assets of the recipient entity should be eliminated, in accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-45-1.

8 According to FASB ASC 958-20-45-3, if the beneficiary (affiliate) and recipient entity are included in consolidated financial statements, the beneficiary's interest in the net assets of the recipient entity should be eliminated, in accordance with FASB ASC 810-10-45-1.

9 See paragraphs 7.73–.74 of this guide for additional discussion regarding obligated group financial statements.
the transferee increasing net assets at the date such determination is made. See paragraphs 12.74–.77. for additional discussion.

**Disclosure**

12.87 Significant relationships and transactions not in the ordinary course of business with directors; management; medical staff; or other related parties, including unconsolidated related entities, should be disclosed in accordance with FASB ASC 850. AU-C section 550, Related Parties (AICPA, Professional Standards), establishes requirements and provides guidance for the auditor when determining the existence of transactions with related parties and identifying them.

12.88 Hospital boards may contract with management companies to operate their facilities. Frequently, the management company will employ the administrator, as well as other key personnel. Further, services may be acquired from entities related to the management company. The auditor should evaluate the impact of these arrangements on the hospital's internal controls and disclose related-party transactions, as required by FASB ASC 850.

*Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance With PCAOB Standards*

© Update 12-3 Reporting: Related Party Disclosures

PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 18, Related Parties, Amendments to Certain PCAOB Auditing Standards Regarding Significant Unusual Transactions and Other Amendments to PCAOB Auditing Standards, issued June 10, 2014, is effective for audits beginning on or after December 15, 2014, including reviews of interim financial information within these years.

This standard is intended to improve auditor's identification of, assessment of, and responses to risks of material misstatement associated with related parties. The standard addresses auditing of relationships and transactions with related parties, significant unusual transactions and financial relationships and transactions with executive officers. In addition the standard requires the auditor to communicate with the audit committee significant matters arising from its audit of the related party transactions.

**Mergers and Acquisitions**

12.89 The reporting entity is changed by mergers and acquisitions (referred to jointly as combinations) entered into by the health care entity. Standards for financial accounting and reporting for combinations differ depending upon whether the combining entities are investor-owned entities, NFPs, or one of each. Paragraphs 12.90–.113 summarize some of the guidance in FASB ASC 958-805 and FASB ASC 805, Business Combinations, but are not intended as a substitute for reading those standards.

12.90 FASB ASC 805 provides guidance on accounting and reporting for transactions or other events in which an acquirer obtains control of one or more businesses in a combination to be accounted for under the acquisition method. FASB ASC 958-805 provides guidance on a transaction or other event in which an NFP that is the reporting entity combines with one or more other NFPs, businesses, or nonprofit activities.
12.91 If the reporting entity is an investor-owned health care entity, all combinations are accounted for using the acquisition method, including transactions or events referred to as true mergers or mergers of equals.

12.92 FASB ASC 958-805-25-1 requires that an NFP determine whether that transaction or other event is a merger of NFPs or an acquisition by an NFP by applying the definitions. FASB ASC 958-805-55-1 states that ceding control to a new NFP is the sole definitive criterion for identifying a merger, and one entity obtaining control over the other is the sole definitive criterion for an acquisition. Paragraphs 1–31 of FASB ASC 958-805-55 provide guidance on distinguishing between a merger and an acquisition.

12.93 FASB ASC 958-805-55-6 discusses some of the more common characteristics that distinguish a merger from an acquisition by an NFP:

For example, one entity appointing significantly more of the governing board of the newly formed entity, retaining significantly more of its key senior officers, or retaining its bylaws, operating policies, and practices substantially unchanged is more likely to be a feature of an acquisition than of a merger. Similarly, the relative financial strength and relative size of the participants in the combination may help to determine whether one participant is able to dominate the process leading to the combination. For example, if one entity is financially strong and the other is experiencing financial difficulty, the stronger entity may be able to dominate the transaction, which would indicate that the transaction is an acquisition rather than a merger. Similarly, a participant that is substantially larger than each of the others in terms of revenues, assets, and net assets may be able to dominate the transaction. However, relative size, like relative financial strength and the other indicators discussed, is only one characteristic that may help to distinguish between a merger and an acquisition in particular situations—none of the indicators, by itself, is determinative. As discussed in FASB ASC 958-805-55-1, ceding of control is the sole definitive criterion for a merger.

12.94 The guidance for combinations of entities in this section is organized as follows:

- Mergers of NFPs
- Acquisitions by an NFP
- Acquisitions by an investor-owned entity, including a for-profit subsidiary of an NFP health care entity
- Disclosures about combinations

**Merger of NFPs**

12.95 The FASB ASC glossary defines merger of not-for-profit entities as "[a] transaction or other event in which the governing bodies of two or more NFPs cede control of those entities to create a new NFP." FASB ASC 958-805-25-3 requires that the NFP resulting from a merger (the new entity) account for the merger by applying the carryover method described in the "Merger of Not-for-Profit Entities" subsections of FASB ASC 958-805.

12.96 Applying the carryover method requires combining the assets and liabilities recognized in the separate financial statements of the merging entities as of the merger date (or that would be recognized if the entities issued...
financial statements as of that date), with certain adjustments. The new NFP does not recognize additional assets or liabilities, such as internally-developed intangible assets, that GAAP did not require or permit the merging entities to recognize. However, if a merging entity's separate financial statements are not prepared in accordance with GAAP, those statements should be adjusted to GAAP before the new entity recognizes the assets and liabilities. The new NFP should carry forward at the merger date the merging entities' classifications and designations of their assets and liabilities, unless one of the exceptions in FASB ASC 958-805-25-9 applies. Those exceptions are for certain modifications in contracts as a result of the merger and for conforming accounting policies to reflect a consistent method of accounting.

**Acquisition by an NFP**

12.97 The FASB ASC glossary defines *acquisition by a not-for-profit entity* as "[a] transaction or other event in which an NFP acquirer obtains control of one or more nonprofit activities or businesses and initially recognizes their assets and liabilities in the acquirer's financial statements." An NFP should account for each acquisition of a business or nonprofit activity by applying the acquisition method described in the "Acquisition by a Not-for-Profit Entity" subsections of FASB ASC 958-805. That acquisition method is the same as the acquisition method described in FASB ASC 805; however, FASB ASC 958-805 includes guidance on aspects of the items that are unique or especially significant to an NFP.

12.98 Pursuant to FASB ASC 805-10-05-4, as modified by FASB ASC 958-805-25, the following are steps for applying the acquisition method:

- a. Identifying the acquirer
- b. Determining the acquisition date
- c. Recognizing the identifiable assets acquired, the liabilities assumed, and any noncontrolling interest in the acquiree
- d. Recognizing goodwill acquired or a contribution received, including consideration transferred

12.99 FASB ASC 805-10-25-4 requires that one of the combining entities be identified as the acquirer. The guidance on control and consolidation of NFPs should be used to identify the acquirer. For an NFP acquirer other than a health care entity, the guidance to be used is the guidance in FASB ASC 958-810, including the guidance referenced in FASB ASC 958-810-15-4. Consolidation of NFPs is discussed beginning at paragraph 12.03. If that guidance does not clearly indicate which of the combining entities is the acquirer, the factors in paragraphs 42–46 of FASB ASC 958-805-55 should be considered in making that determination.

12.100 Paragraphs 6–7 of FASB ASC 805-10-25 require that the acquirer identify the *acquisition date*, which is the date on which it obtains control of the acquiree. The date on which the acquirer obtains control of the acquiree generally is the date on which the acquirer legally transfers the consideration (if any), acquires the assets, and assumes the liabilities of the acquiree (the closing date). In addition, FASB ASC 958-805-25-17 states that the date on which an NFP acquirer obtains control of an NFP with sole corporate membership generally also is the date on which the acquirer becomes the sole corporate member of that entity.
12.101 FASB ASB ASC 805-20 requires that as of the acquisition date, the acquirer recognize separately from goodwill the identifiable assets acquired, the liabilities assumed, and any noncontrolling interest in the acquiree.\textsuperscript{10}

12.102 In conformity with FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(b), an NFP acquirer determines the net of the acquisition date amounts of the identifiable assets acquired and the liabilities assumed, measured in accordance with FASB ASC 805-20 and 958-805. Most assets and liabilities are measured at fair value. However, FASB ASC 805-20-25-16 notes that there are limited exceptions to the recognition and measurement principles applicable to business combinations, including acquisitions by an NFP. The limited exceptions are specified in paragraphs 16–28 of FASB ASC 805-20-25, paragraphs 12–23 of FASB ASC 805-20-30, and paragraphs 11–26 of FASB ASC 958-805-25. Examples of items that are either not recognized or are measured at an amount other than their acquisition date fair values include income taxes, employee benefits, assets held for sale, collections, conditional promises to give, donor relationships, and certain assets and liabilities arising from contingencies.

12.103 Next, in conformity with FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(a), an NFP acquirer determines the aggregate of the following:

\textbf{a.} The consideration transferred, measured at its acquisition date fair value (See paragraphs 10–13 of FASB ASC 958-805-30.)
\textbf{b.} The fair value of any noncontrolling interest in the acquiree
\textbf{c.} In an acquisition by an NFP achieved in stages, the acquisition date fair value of the acquirer's previously-held equity interest in the acquiree

12.104 If the amount determined in accordance with FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(a) is greater than the amount determined in accordance with FASB 958-805-30-6(b), an NFP acquirer should determine whether the operations of the acquiree as part of the combined entity are expected to be predominantly supported by contributions and returns on investments. If not in conformity with FASB ASC 958-805-25-28, an NFP acquirer should recognize goodwill as of the acquisition date, measured as of the acquisition date as the excess of FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(a) over FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(b).

12.105 If instead, the operations of the acquiree as part of the combined entity are expected to be predominantly supported by contributions and returns on investments, FASB ASC 958-805-25-29 states that an NFP acquirer should recognize a separate charge in its statement of activities as of the acquisition date, measured as the excess of FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(a) over FASB 958-805-30-6(b), rather than goodwill. **Predominantly supported** by means that contributions and returns on investments are expected to be significantly more than the total of all other sources of revenues.

12.106 If the amount determined in accordance with FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(b) is greater than the amount determined in accordance with FASB 958-805-30-6(a), FASB ASC 958-805-25-31 requires an NFP acquirer to recognize the inherent contribution received. The inherent contribution is measured as the excess of the amount in FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(b) over the amount in FASB ASC 958-805-30-6(a). The inherent contribution is reported as a separate

\textsuperscript{10} Reporting noncontrolling interests in financial statements is discussed in chapter 11, "Net Assets and Reclassification of Net Assets" of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *Not-for-Profit Entities*. 

AAG-HCO 12.106
credit in the statement of activities as of the acquisition date and, in accordance with FASB ASC 958-805-45-6, is classified on the basis of the type of restrictions imposed on the related net assets. FASB ASC 958-805-45-6 states that those restrictions include restrictions imposed on the net assets of the acquiree by a donor before the acquisition and those imposed by the donor of the business or nonprofit activity acquired, if any. Donor-restricted contributions are reported as restricted support, even if the restrictions are met in the same reporting period in which the acquisition occurs. That is, the acquirer should not apply the reporting exception in FASB ASC 958-605-45-4, as discussed in paragraph 11.13 of this guide, to restricted net assets acquired in an acquisition.

**Performance Indicator**

12.107 FASB ASC 954-805 provides standards for reporting amounts related to an acquisition by an NFP health care entity within or outside of the performance indicator. The following amounts are reported within the performance indicator:

- The changes in the fair value of a contingent consideration recognized in accordance with FASB ASC 958-805-35-3, unless the arrangement is a hedging instrument for which FASB ASC 954-815 requires the entity to recognize the changes outside the performance indicator.
- The separate charge that is recognized in accordance with FASB ASC 958-805-25-29 (that is, the immediate write-off of the goodwill amount).
- The gain or loss resulting from remeasuring a previously-held equity interest in the acquiree in an acquisition achieved in stages, as discussed in paragraphs 9–10 of FASB ASC 805-10-25 and FASB ASC 954-805-45-3.

12.108 Per FASB ASC 954-805-45-2, whether the inherent contribution received, recognized in accordance with FASB ASC 958-805-25-31, is presented within or outside the performance indicator depends on whether the contribution is unrestricted or restricted. An unrestricted contribution should be presented within the performance indicator. A contribution that is either temporarily restricted or permanently restricted should be presented outside the performance indicator.

12.109 FASB ASC 954-805-50 requires disclosures about the performance indicator in periods in which mergers or acquisitions occur.

**Acquisition by an Investor-Owned Entity, Including a For-Profit Subsidiary of an NFP Health Care Entity**

12.110 FASB ASC 805-10-25-1 requires that an investor-owned health care entity determine whether a transaction or other event is a business combination by applying the definition of a *business combination*, which requires that the acquired assets and assumed liabilities constitute a *business*, as defined. If the acquired assets are not a business, the reporting entity should account for the transaction or other event as an asset acquisition. An entity should account for each business combination by applying the acquisition method.

12.111 FASB ASC 805-10-05-4 states that the acquisition method requires all of the following steps:
a. Identifying the acquirer, which is discussed in FASB ASC 805-10
b. Determining the acquisition date, which is discussed in FASB ASC 805-10
c. Recognizing and measuring the identifiable acquired assets, the assumed liabilities, and any noncontrolling interest in the acquiree, as discussed in FASB ASC 805-20
d. Recognizing and measuring goodwill or a gain from a bargain purchase, as discussed in FASB ASC 805-30

12.112 FASB ASC 958-805-25-14 identifies the differences in the application of the acquisition method by an NFP acquirer from the application of the acquisition method by a business entity. Those differences include all of the following:

a. An investor-owned health care entity identifies the acquirer in accordance with FASB ASC 805-10-25-5 instead of the guidance in paragraphs 15–16 of FASB ASC 958-805-25.
b. An investor-owned health care entity recognizes and measures goodwill in accordance with FASB ASC 805-30-25-1 and paragraphs 1–3 of FASB ASC 805-30-30-3 instead of the guidance in paragraphs 27–30 of FASB ASC 958-805-25. Only an NFP acquirer may recognize the immediate charge to the statement of activities.

Disclosures

12.113 FASB ASC 958-805-50 requires an NFP health care entity to disclose information that enables users of its financial statements to evaluate the nature and financial effect of a merger of NFPs or an acquisition by an NFP. If acquisitions are individually immaterial but are material collectively, the NFP should disclose the required information in the aggregate. Disclosures are also required if an acquisition date is after the reporting date but before the financial statements are issued or available for issue (unless the initial accounting for an acquisition by an NFP is incomplete at the time financial statements are issued or available for issue, in which case the acquirer describes which disclosures could not be made and the reason why they could not be made). If amounts that relate to acquisitions that occurred in the current or previous reporting periods are adjusted, the NFP should disclose information that enables users of its financial statements to evaluate the financial effects of those adjustments in the current reporting period.

Auditing

12.114 The independent auditor may consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures for related parties, balances, and transactions that are presented in exhibit 12-2.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, Professional Standards), states the auditor should design and perform substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate audit procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, Professional Standards).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting Entity and Related Entities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Transactions/Account Balances/Presentation and Disclosure</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existence and occurrence, completeness, and presentation and disclosure</td>
<td>The reporting entity is appropriate.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that investees, affiliates, and other related entities are accounted for appropriately.</td>
<td>Review the articles of incorporation, bylaws, and minutes of directors' meetings; shareholder lists; and filings with regulatory authorities to determine the existence of related parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Obtain representations from management about whether all investees, affiliates, and related entities have been accounted for properly or disclosed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AAG-HCO 12.114
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Review transactions with investees, affiliates, and other related entities to determine that they are properly reported and clearly expressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relationships and transactions with related entities are identified and disclosed, if appropriate, because of economic dependence of the entity.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that conflict-of-interest policies, procedures, and disclosure requirements are met.</td>
<td>Test significant related-party transactions as follows:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Determine substance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Examine documents (invoices, contracts, and agreements).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Determine the basis of pricing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Determine the collectibility of receivables and advances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Review related-party transactions for completeness by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• considering previously identified transactions or relationships.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• reviewing the minutes of directors' and other meetings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• discussing related-party transactions with entity personnel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Auditing Considerations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• reviewing unusual transactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• reviewing the responses to related-party (conflict-of-interest) questionnaires.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Presentation and Disclosure

| Classification and understandability | Related-party transactions and entities are properly reported. | Review the presentation and disclosure of related-party information for completeness and understandability. |
Appendix A—Flowcharts

Ownership of a For-Profit Entity

START

Is the other entity an SPE lessor that meets all the conditions in paragraph 958-810-25-80?

No

Is there a controlling financial interest? (See the General Subsections of Subtopic 810-10)

Yes → Consolidate

No → No other test.

Is the NFP a general partner that controls a limited partnership? (See Subtopic 810-20)

Yes → Consolidate unless reported at fair value in accordance with paragraph 958-810-15-4(c)

No → Is there 50% or less ownership of common or in-substance common stock, but significant influence? (See Subtopic 323-10)

Yes → Report using the equity method of accounting. (An NFP may choose to report the investment at fair value in conformity with paragraph 958-810-15-4(e)).

No → Is there a more-than-minor noncontrolling interest in a real estate partnership, limited liability company, or similar entity? (See Subtopic 970-323)

Yes → Report in conformity with Subtopic 958-325

No → Is ownership in the form of equity securities with readily determinable fair value? (See paragraphs 958-320-55-1 through 55-3)

Yes → Report in conformity with Subtopic 958-325

No → Report in conformity with Subtopic 958-325
Health Care Entities

Relationship With Another Not-for-Profit Entity

START

Is the other entity an SPE lessor that meets all the conditions in paragraph 958-810-25-8?

Yes

Consolidate

No

Is there a controlling financial interest? (See the General Subsections of Subtopic 810-10)

Yes

Consolidate unless reported at fair value in accordance with paragraph 958-810-15-4(e)

No

Is the NFP a general partner that controls a limited partnership? (See Subtopic 810-20)

Yes

Report using the equity method of accounting. (An NFP may choose to report the investment at fair value in conformity with paragraph 958-810-15-4(e)).

No

Is there 50% or less ownership of common or in-substance common stock, but significant influence? (See Subtopic 323-10)

Yes

Report in conformity with Subtopic 970-323

No

Is there a more-than-minor noncontrolling interest in a real estate partnership, limited liability company, or similar entity? (See Subtopic 970-323)

Yes

Report in conformity with Subtopic 958-325

No

Is ownership in the form of equity securities with readily determinable fair value? (See paragraphs 958-326-55-1 through 55-3)

Yes

Report in conformity with Subtopic 958-325

No

Report in conformity with Subtopic 958-325
Chapter 13

Financial Accounting and Reporting for Managed Care Services

Overview

13.01 Managed care entities, health maintenance organizations (HMOs), affordable care organizations (ACOs), physicians, hospitals, and other health care providers and managers have organized into integrated delivery systems and networks that combine inpatient, outpatient, pharmacy, and physician services into single contracting entities. These systems and networks may be formed by merger, joint venture, affiliation, or contractual risk sharing. Services may be provided under predetermined, fixed-fee capitation arrangements, such as per member per month, or other risk-based arrangements, rather than charging fees for provided services (fee for service). As health care providers and managed care entities adopt new structures and commence new operations in response to the demands of the market, many activities that were traditionally performed by insurance entities, such as assuming medical insurance risk, are being performed by health care entities. Conversely, many activities that were performed by health care entities, such as arranging for the provision of medical services, are being performed by managed care entities.

13.02 This chapter provides guidance for transactions in which an entity assumes or transfers the medical insurance risk or administers the costs of health care services for a predetermined amount. Examples of entities that enter into such transactions include HMOs, ACOs, hospitals, nursing homes, specialty care managers, managed care entities, physician entities, independent practice associations (IPAs), preferred provider organizations (PPOs), public entity risk pools, and third-party administrators. This chapter covers various kinds of managed care arrangements, including group health managed care, capitation arrangements, and administrative services only (ASO) arrangements. Paragraphs 2.67–.77 of this guide provide additional guidance on statutory reporting and other regulatory considerations. Paragraph 4.64 of this guide discusses regulations pertaining to investment activities.

Recognition and Classification of Revenue

© Update 13-1 Accounting and Reporting: Revenue From Contracts With Customers

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606), issued in May 2014, is effective for annual reporting periods of public entities, as defined, beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period. Early application is not permitted.

For nonpublic entities, ASU No. 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within annual
periods beginning after December 15, 2018. Nonpublic entities may elect to adopt the standard earlier, however, only as of the following:

- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period (public entity effective date)
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within that reporting period

ASU No. 2014-09 provides a framework for revenue recognition and supersedes or amends several of the revenue recognition requirements in FASB ASC 605, *Revenue Recognition*, as well as guidance within the 900 series of industry-specific topics. The standard applies to any entity that either enters into contracts with customers to transfer goods or services or enters into contracts for the transfer of nonfinancial assets unless those contracts are within the scope of other standards (for example, insurance or lease contracts).

Readers are encouraged to consult the full text of this ASU on FASB's website at www.fasb.org.


13.03 Revenue from managed care arrangements is classified based on the assumed risk and type of service provided, as follows:

- Revenue received in exchange for assuming full medical risk is recognized as premium revenue.
- Revenue received in exchange for performing administrative services is recognized as administrative fees. See paragraphs 13.25–.29.

It is appropriate to carefully review each arrangement entered to determine whether revenue should be recognized for gross cash inflows or whether the cash inflows and outflows should be recorded net or not recorded at all in the financial statements. To record the gross cash inflows as revenue, the entity is generally considered the primary obligor under the arrangement. The guidance in FASB *Accounting Standards Codification* (ASC) 605-45 should be considered when determining whether an entity is the primary obligor. An arrangement may have various components with some components putting the entity in the primary obligor position and other components putting the entity in an agency type relationship. Under arrangements in which administrative services are typically an integral part of providing or arranging medical care, revenue from those administrative services is included in premium revenue.

13.04 Premium revenue is recognized in income in the period that members are entitled to receive services, as specified by the provisions of the arrangement. Premiums billed or received in advance are reported as deferred revenue (unearned premiums).

13.05 Administrative fees are recognized in income in the period that the related services are performed. Administrative fees billed or received in advance are reported as deferred revenue.
13.06 Under arrangements that include performing administrative services, such as third-party administrator, cost-plus, and minimum premium contracts, entities \((a)\) act as administrators or network managers between employers or other obligated entities and providers of health care services and \((b)\) handle cash inflows and outflows in connection with amounts due from obligated entities to providers of health care services. The inflows and outflows associated with the health care payments from obligated entities to providers of health care services are not revenue and expenses of the entity providing the administrative services.

**Capitation Arrangements**

13.07 Costs of capitation arrangements are reported as health care expenses. The Financial Reporting Executive Committee (FinREC) recommends that amounts received under capitation arrangements be reported as premium revenue. The recognition of premium revenue from capitation arrangements is discussed in paragraphs 10.37–.40 of this guide.

**Accounting for Health Care Costs**

13.08 According to FASB ASC 954-405-25-2, health care costs should be accrued as services are rendered, including estimates of the costs of services rendered but not yet reported. Furthermore, if a provider of prepaid health care services is obligated to render services to specific members beyond the premium period due to provisions in the contract or regulatory requirements, the costs of such services to be incurred also should be currently accrued. Costs that will be incurred after a contract is terminated, such as guaranteed salaries, rent, and depreciation, net of any anticipated revenue, should be accrued when it is determined that a contract with a sponsoring employer or other group will be terminated.

13.09 FASB ASC 954-405-25-2 also requires that amounts payable to hospitals, physicians, or other health care providers under risk-retention, bonus, or similar programs be accrued during the contract period based on relevant factors, such as experience to date.

13.10 According to FASB ASC 954-405-50-2, providers of prepaid health care services should disclose the basis for accruing health care costs and the nature of significant business and contractual arrangements (for example, capitation arrangements) with hospitals, physicians, or other associated entities in the notes to the financial statements.

13.11 The following health care costs are accrued:

- Estimated costs of services rendered but not reported. Typically, health care entities utilize actuaries to assist in determining estimated costs of services rendered but not reported. Auditors often also use actuaries to assist in auditing the recorded liability. See paragraphs 8.118–.121 of this guide for additional discussion on the use of actuaries and actuarial methods. Paragraph 2.33 of this guide discusses the risks associated with costs of services rendered but not reported.

- Estimated costs of future health care services to be rendered that the entity is presently obligated to provide, with or without receiving future premiums, according to the terms of the arrangement, regulatory requirements, or other requirements.
The effects of reinsurance and stop-loss insurance recoveries are considered in calculating and recording those estimated costs. See paragraphs 13.18–.19 for additional information.

**Accounting for Loss Contracts**

13.13 FASB ASC 954-450-25-4 states that a prepaid health care provider enters into contracts to provide members with specified health care services for specified periods in return for fixed periodic premiums. The premium revenue is expected to cover health care costs and other costs over the terms of the contracts. Only in unusual circumstances would a provider be able to increase premiums on contracts in force to cover expected losses. A provider may be able to control or reduce future health care delivery costs to avoid anticipated losses, but the ability to avoid losses under existing contracts may be difficult to measure or demonstrate. Associated entities, such as hospitals, medical groups, and IPAs, may enter into similar contracts with prepaid health care providers in which they agree to deliver identified health care services to the providers' members for specified periods in return for fixed fees.

13.14 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-450-30-4, losses under prepaid health care services contracts should be recognized when it is probable that expected future health care costs and maintenance costs under a group of existing contracts will exceed anticipated future premiums and stop-loss insurance recoveries on those contracts. Contracts should be grouped in a manner consistent with the provider's method of establishing premium rates (for example, by community rating practices, geographical area, or statutory requirements) to determine whether a loss has been incurred. FASB ASC 954-450-30-3 states that the estimated future health care costs and maintenance costs to be considered in determining whether a loss has been incurred should include fixed and variable, direct, and allocable indirect costs.

13.15 For example, for purposes of determining whether a loss (premium deficiency) will occur over the remaining terms of existing contracts for which premiums will be received, managed care arrangements, including noncancelable, executed contracts that are not yet in force, would be grouped on a basis consistent with the entity's manner of acquiring, servicing, and measuring the profitability of those arrangements. Groupings would be done on a consistent basis from year to year. A loss would be recognized if the sum of expected future fixed and variable, direct, and allocable indirect costs, including health care costs, claim adjustment expenses, maintenance costs, and other costs that are related to a group of contracts, exceeds the sum of related anticipated future premiums, other direct contract revenue, unearned premiums, reinsurance recoveries on those contracts, and investment income considered. See paragraph 13.17 for additional discussion.

13.16 The calculation of loss contracts would be made at the end of each reporting period. Changes in loss contract accruals represent changes in estimate that are reported in the current period's operations.

**Consideration of Anticipated Investment Income**

13.17 For purposes of determining whether a premium deficiency will occur and measuring that deficiency, FinREC recommends that entities consider investment income that is expected to be earned on premiums received in advance of health care costs incurred during the contract period for the group of
contracts. Entities would disclose their accounting policy concerning whether they consider investment income in determining whether a premium deficiency exists on managed care arrangements.

**Accounting for Stop-Loss Insurance**

13.18 By using stop-loss insurance, prepaid health care providers or associated entities contract to recover health care costs in excess of stated amounts during the contract periods.

13.19 FASB ASC 954-720-45-1 requires that stop-loss insurance premiums be included in reported health care costs. Stop-loss insurance recoveries should be reported as reductions of related health care costs. FASB ASC 954-310-25-2 states that amounts recoverable from stop-loss insurers, reduced by appropriate valuation allowances, should be included in receivables. In addition, FASB ASC 954-720-50-4 requires that the nature, amounts, and effects of significant stop-loss insurance contracts be disclosed.

**General and Administrative Expenses**

13.20 General and administrative expenses are reported as gross amounts, rather than net of other items, such as fees for administering payments under Medicare and Medicaid arrangements.

**Acquisition Costs**

13.21 As described in FASB ASC 954-720-05-2, many prepaid providers of managed care services incur costs that vary with, and are primarily related to, the marketing of subscriber contracts and member enrollment. These costs, sometimes referred to as acquisition costs, consist mainly of commissions paid to agents or brokers and incentive compensation based on new enrollments. Commissions and incentive compensation may be paid when the contracts are written, at later dates, or over the terms of the contracts as premiums are received. Some providers incur additional costs related directly to the acquisition of specific contracts, such as the costs of specialized brochures, marketing, and advertising. Providers also incur costs that are related to the acquisition of new members but do not relate to specific contracts and are not considered acquisition costs. These costs include salaries of the marketing director and staff, general marketing brochures, and general advertising and promotion expenses.

13.22 FASB ASC 954-720-25-6 explains that although theoretical support exists for deferring certain contract or member acquisition costs, acquisition costs of providers of prepaid health care services, other than costs of advertising, should be expensed as incurred. Advertising costs should be accounted for in accordance with the guidance in FASB ASC 720-35.
Financial Statement Display Considerations

Balance Sheet

13.23 Pursuant to FASB ASC 954-210-45-1, entities whose primary business is engaging in managed care arrangements should classify assets and liabilities as current and noncurrent, as discussed in FASB ASC 210-10-45.

13.24 Receivables and payables related to ASO contracts usually are reported at gross values. An ASO arrangement involves three parties (the employer, the hospital or other provider of health care to employees, and the ASO organization); therefore, these arrangements do not meet the conditions of FASB ASC 210-20-45-1 for right of offset. Those conditions are not met in situations involving more than two parties.

Income and Cash Flow Statement

13.25 When entities act as administrators or network managers between employers or other obligated entities and providers of health care services, cash inflows and outflows associated with amounts due from obligated entities to providers of health care services are not accounted for as revenues and expenses in the income statement. Cash flow related to both ASO revenue and cash inflows and outflows through the company would be reflected in the operating cash flows in the cash flow statement.

13.26 FASB ASC 605-45 provides guidance about whether an entity should report revenue gross or net of certain amounts paid to others. The reporting depends on whether the entity functions as principal or agent. FASB ASC 605-45-45 states that it is a matter of judgment whether an entity should report revenue based on either of the following: (a) the gross amount billed to a customer because it has earned revenue as a principal from the sale of the goods or services or (b) the retained net amount (that is, the amount billed to the customer less the amount paid to a supplier) because it has earned a commission or fee as an agent. The factors or indicators set forth in FASB ASC 605-45-45 should be considered in that evaluation. Those factors are listed in paragraphs 13.28–.29 but are not intended as a substitute for reading the cited paragraphs.

13.27 Although FASB ASC 605-45-15-4(b)(3) lists insurance and reinsurance premiums as transactions to which the guidance does not apply, that exclusion pertains to transactions for which guidance is provided in other subtopics of FASB ASC, rather than the managed care arrangements addressed in this guide. Gross versus net revenue reporting is a matter of judgment that depends on each entity’s relevant facts and circumstances after evaluating those facts and circumstances using the indicators.

© Update 13-2 Accounting and Reporting: Revenue From Contracts With Customers
FASB ASU No. 2014-09, issued in May 2014, is effective for annual reporting periods of public entities beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period. Early application is not permitted.
For nonpublic entities, ASU No. 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018. Nonpublic entities may elect to adopt the standard earlier, however, only as of the following:

- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period (public entity effective date)
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within that reporting period

ASU No. 2014-09 provides a framework for revenue recognition and supersedes or amends several of the revenue recognition requirements in FASB ASC 605, as well as guidance within the 900 series of industry-specific topics. The standard applies to any entity that either enters into contracts with customers to transfer goods or services or enters into contracts for the transfer of nonfinancial assets unless those contracts are within the scope of other standards (for example, insurance or lease contracts).

Readers are encouraged to consult the full text of this ASU on FASB's website at www.fasb.org.

For more information on ASU No. 2014-09, see appendix G of this guide.

**Indicators of Gross Revenue Reporting**

13.28 FASB ASC 605-45-45 describes the following eight indicators that may support reporting gross revenue:

- The entity is the primary obligor in the arrangement, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-4.
- The entity has general inventory risk before a customer order is placed or upon customer return, as discussed in paragraphs 5–7 of FASB ASC 605-45-45.
- The entity has latitude in establishing price, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-8.
- The entity changes the product or performs part of the service, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-9.
- The entity has discretion in supplier selection, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-10.
- The entity is involved in the determination of product or service specifications, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-11.
- The entity has physical loss inventory risk after a customer order or during shipping, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-12.
- The entity has credit risk, as discussed in paragraphs 13–14 of FASB ASC 605-45-45.
**Indicators of Net Revenue Reporting**

13.29 FASB ASC 605-45-45 describes the following three indicators that may support reporting net revenue:

- The entity's supplier is the primary obligor in the arrangement, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-16.
- The amount that the entity earns is fixed, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-17.
- The supplier has credit risk, as discussed in FASB ASC 605-45-45-18.

**Disclosures**

13.30 Consistent with the requirements of FASB ASC 275, *Risks and Uncertainties*, managed care entities may consider disclosing the following in the notes to the financial statements:

a. Nature of operations, such as the following:
   i. Types of rendered managed care services (for example, health maintenance, third-party administrator, and risk sharing)
   ii. Types of entity structures from which the services are rendered (for example, HMO, PPO, point of service, and indemnity)
   iii. Types of customers

b. Risk assumption and risk management profile.

c. The amount of ceded premiums and recognized reinsurance recoveries, if not reported in the income statement as separate line items or parenthetically.

d. Entities that incur health care costs pertaining only to premium revenue disclose total health care costs either in the income statement as separate line items or parenthetically or in the notes to the financial statements.

e. Entities that incur health care costs pertaining to both other revenue and premiums disclose health care costs related to premiums, if practicable.

f. Nature of, and amounts paid under, capitation arrangements included in health care costs.
Overview

14.01 Continuing care retirement communities (CCRCs) provide residents with a diversity of residential, social, and health care services, in accordance with a resident service agreement (resident agreement or contract) or other agreement specifying the obligations of the CCRC to the resident. This chapter provides guidance on applying generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) to transactions found in CCRCs for refundable and nonrefundable advance fees, obligations to provide future services and the use of facilities to current residents, and the costs of acquiring initial care contracts.

14.02 The United States has over 1,800 CCRCs. Many CCRCs are operated by not-for-profit organizations, and many are affiliated with religious organizations. Recently, there has been an increase in the number of investor-owned entities operating CCRCs.

14.03 FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-605-05-7 explains that CCRC facilities may be independent, or they may be affiliated with other health care facilities. They usually provide less intensive care than hospitals.

14.04 CCRCs may provide a variety of health care services, including nursing care, home health care, physician services, and other services either directly or by agreement with other health care providers. These health care services are provided in addition to the residential services and amenities, including social, recreational, dining, and laundry services. In addition to providing services to CCRC residents, certain services, predominantly nursing services, may be provided to nonresidents. CCRCs have increased the diversity of residential, social, and health care services rendered in response to consumer demands.

14.05 Many states regulate CCRCs; however, state oversight of CCRCs and the CCRC’s disclosures to residents may take various forms.

Types of Contracts

14.06 CCRCs use a variety of contracts, which are constantly undergoing change based on financial and consumer-driven considerations. These continuing-care contracts contain a number of different approaches to providing delivery of services and the fees associated with those services. The fees charged to residents generally consist of three basic components: advance fees, periodic fees, and use fees (or a combination of these fees).

14.07 The contract provisions generally stipulate the amount of the advance fee; whether periodic fees and use fees, or both, are required; whether those fees can be adjusted; and the underlying circumstances and computations for such adjustments. In addition, contracts generally detail the future services that will be provided to residents; explain how residents will be charged for ser-
vices; and describe the CCRC’s refund policies, if applicable, and formula for calculating the amount of the refunds, if any. Furthermore, the contract would describe the obligation of the CCRC and resident if a contract is terminated, and a residential unit is or is not reoccupied.

Advance Fees

14.08 **Advance fees** (one-time fee typically at the time of occupancy) are those paid by the resident as a condition of admission to the CCRC for future services and use of the facilities, as specified in the resident agreement. The advance fee generally entitles the resident to the use of the residential facilities; access to amenities and social services; and the provision of, or access to, certain health care services. In addition to advance fees for admission to the CCRC, residents may also pay advance fees relating to upgraded furnishings and amenities, renovation or additions to the residential facility, or other upgrades. The advance fees may be nonrefundable or refundable to the resident or resident’s estate, depending on the terms of the contract with the resident. The extent to which amenities, social services, and health care services are included is based on the respective resident agreement. In certain instances, the advance fee may be payment for an all-inclusive continuing-care contract that includes residential facilities, meals, and amenities. It may also provide nursing care for little or no increase in periodic fees, except to cover normal operating costs and inflation.

Periodic Fees

14.09 **Periodic fees**, sometimes referred to as service or maintenance fees, are those paid periodically (generally monthly) for services typically provided by CCRCs that are not covered by the advance fees. These periodic fees are generally fixed with periodic modification based on increases in operating costs or other factors defined in the resident agreement or other agreement between the CCRC and resident.

Use Fees

14.10 **Use fees** are those that may be charged to the resident based on personal preferences or usage by the resident. These fees are paid periodically (generally monthly) for services not covered by the advance or periodic fees. Items typically provided for a separate use fee could include provision of a special parking arrangement, beauty and salon services, health care services above those included in the advance or periodic fees, excess meal or other amenity services beyond those provided through the payment of advance or periodic fees, and other items or services specified in the resident agreement or other agreement with the resident.

Types of Living Accommodations

14.11 CCRCs offer different types of living accommodations to residents, such as single or shared apartment units or individual homes. They also provide a variety of amenities, including social, recreational, dining, housekeeping, and laundry services.

14.12 CCRCs generally provide nursing, personal care, and assisted living services at the same location. As the health of a resident declines, he or she may be permanently transferred to the personal care or assisted living facility;
nursing center; or specialized long-term care facility or unit, such as a memory-care facility.

**Fees and Payment Methods**

14.13 A CCRC may require several different payment methods for services and the use of facilities. The following are two of the most prevalent methods:

a. **Advance fee with periodic fees.** Under this method, a resident pays an advance fee and periodic fees for services and the use of facilities. Such periodic fees are generally subject to adjustment for increases in operating costs or inflation or other economic reasons.

b. **Periodic fees only.** Under this method, a resident pays a fee at periodic intervals for services and the use of the facilities provided by the CCRC. Such fees may be either fixed or adjustable.

14.14 According to FASB ASC 954-605-05-11, an advance fee may be met by transferring a resident’s personal assets, which may include rights to future income or paying a lump sum of cash to the CCRC. Some contracts allow the advance fee to be paid by installment payments. Advance fees received for future services may be refunded at the occurrence of some future event, such as death, withdrawal from the CCRC, termination of the contract, or reoccupancy of a residential unit. The amount and timing of the refund generally is based on contractual provisions or statutory requirements.

14.15 As explained in FASB ASC 954-605-05-9, many continuing-care contracts are similar to annuity contracts. Under those contracts, the CCRC assumes the risks associated with both of the following: (a) estimating the amount of the advance fee and other fees to be paid by a resident and (b) determining whether such fees will be sufficient to cover the cost of providing a resident’s required services and the use of facilities. For some contracts, residents may share the future costs without limit. The CCRC has an obligation to provide future services for the length of the contract or life of the resident. In certain circumstances, this obligation continues regardless of whether advance or periodic fees are sufficient to meet the costs of providing services to a resident.

**Accounting for Refundable Advance Fees**

14.16 As explained in FASB ASC 954-605-05-12, payment of an advance fee generally is required before a resident acquires a right to reside in an apartment or a residential unit for life. A portion of advance fees may be refundable by rescission within a legally or contractually set time period or if a certain future event occurs, such as the death or withdrawal of a resident or termination of the contract. Some refunds are paid only if a residential unit is reoccupied.

14.17 FASB ASC 954-605-05-13 states that CCRC refund policies vary either by region or according to statutory requirements, but generally, the amount of the refund is based on provisions specified in a contract. For example, some contracts require a refund of the advance fee less a reasonable processing fee. Refunded amounts may be based on a fixed amount or percentage, an amount that declines to a fixed amount over time (see paragraph 14.19), an amount that declines to zero (see paragraph 14.19), or an amount based on the
resale amount. Refunds may be contingent on vacating the unit, resale of the unit, or passage of a fixed period of time if the unit is not resold.

14.18 For some contracts, the refundable amount is determinable because the contract is fully refundable, the refund amount is fixed, or the refund amount is a percentage. Contracts that provide for fully-refundable advance fees are accounted for and reported as liabilities. If contracts provide for amounts to be refunded based on a fixed amount or percentage, the portion of the advance fee attributable to the fixed amount or percentage is accounted for and reported as a liability, with the balance accounted for as deferred revenue within the "Liability" section of the balance sheet and amortized as discussed in paragraph 14.20. In situations in which the refundable amount declines over time to a fixed amount or zero, the guidance in paragraph 14.19 is applied.

14.19 For other contracts, the refundable amount must be estimated. FASB ASC 954-430-25-1 states that the estimated amount of advance fees that is expected to be refunded to current residents under the terms of the contracts should be accounted for and reported as a liability. The remaining amount of refundable advance fees should be accounted for as deferred revenue within the "Liability" section of the balance sheet. According to FASB ASC 954-430-30-1, the estimated amount of advance fees that are expected to be refunded to current residents under the terms of contracts should be based on the individual facility's own experience or, if records are not available, the experience of comparable facilities. FASB ASC 954-430-35-3 states that adjustments to the estimated liability should be accounted for as deferred revenue and amortized together with nonrefundable advance fees, as discussed in FASB ASC 954-430-35-1 (see paragraph 14.20).

14.20 In accordance with FASB ASC 954-430-35-1, deferred revenue from advance fees from a resident should be amortized to income over future periods based on the estimated life of the resident or the contract term, if shorter. The period of amortization should be adjusted annually based on the actuarially determined, estimated remaining life expectancy of each individual or the joint and last survivor life expectancy of each pair of residents occupying the same unit. The straight-line method is used to amortize deferred revenue, except in certain circumstances when costs are expected to increase at a significantly higher rate than future revenues in the later years of residence. In those situations, deferred revenue may be amortized to income using a method that reflects the disproportionate ratio between the costs of the expected services and expected revenues. The amortized amount should not exceed the amount available to the CCRC under state regulations, contract provisions, or management policy. According to FASB ASC 954-430-40-1, unamortized deferred revenue from nonrefundable advance fees should be recorded as revenue upon a resident's death or termination of the contract.

Accounting for Fees Refundable to Residents Only From Reoccupancy Proceeds of a Contract Holder’s Unit

14.21 As explained in FASB ASC 954-605-05-14, some contracts between a CCRC and resident stipulate that all or a portion of the advance fee may be refundable if the contract holder’s unit is reoccupied by another person. The source of money for the payment is from the proceeds of the advance fees collected by the CCRC from the next resident of the reoccupied unit. The terms governing how the proceeds from the next resident are to be paid to the previous
Continuing Care Retirement Communities

resident vary from contract to contract. In effect, the CCRC acts as if it were
an agent for present and future residents.

14.22 According to "Pending Content" in FASB ASC 954-430-25-1A, in
situations in which a contract between a CCRC and a resident stipulates that
all or a portion of the refundable advance fees will be paid to current residents
or their designees, only to the extent of the proceeds of reoccupancy of a con-
tract holder's unit, that portion should be accounted for as deferred revenue,
provided that legal and management policy and practice support the withhold-
ing of refunds under this condition. Similar amounts received from subsequent
residents in excess of the amount to be paid to previous residents or their de-
signees also should be deferred. According to "Pending Content" in FASB ASC
954-430-35-4, when a contract between a CCRC and a resident stipulates that
all or a portion of the advance fee may be refundable if the contract holder's
unit is reoccupied by another person and that the refund amount is limited
to the extent of the proceeds of reoccupancy of a contract holder's unit, and if
legal and management policy and practice support the withholding of refunds
under this condition, the resulting deferred revenue should be amortized to
income over future periods based on the remaining useful life of the facility.
The basis and method of amortization should be consistent with the method
for calculating depreciation.

14.23 Refundable advance fees that are contingent upon reoccupancy by a
subsequent resident but are not limited to the proceeds of reoccupancy should
be accounted for and reported as a liability.

Accounting for Nonrefundable Advance Fees

14.24 FASB ASC 954-430-25-1 states that under provisions of continuing-
care contracts entered into by a CCRC and residents, nonrefundable advance
fees represent payment for future services and are accounted for as deferred
revenue. According to FASB ASC 954-430-35-2, if a CCRC has sufficient histor-
ical experience and relevant statistical data about life expectancies, it should
consider that information when determining the remaining life of residents.
A CCRC with insufficient historical experience or reliable actuarial data may
use relevant data of similar communities within that area, relevant national
industry statistics, or other appropriate data. Nonrefundable advance fees are
amortized in the manner discussed in FASB ASC 954-430-35-1 (see paragraph
14.21).

14.25 The application of the conclusions in paragraphs 14.22–.24 is pre-
sented in exhibit 14-1.

Classification of Refundable Advance Fees

14.26 Diversity in practice exists regarding classification of the refundable
portion of the advance fee between CCRCs that are SEC registrants and those
that are not.

14.27 CCRCs that are SEC registrants are required to consider para-
graphs 9–10 of FASB ASC 470-10-45 in determining the classification of the
refundable portion of advance fees. Frequently, resident agreements will pro-
vide that refundable advance fees are subject to repayment if the residents
 elect to terminate the agreement and put the refund obligation to the CCRC.
CCRC residents do not frequently exercise the option to terminate the resident

AAG-HCO 14.27
agreement early; however, the resident does have the contractual right to do so. Upon the resident's election to terminate, the CCRC is then obligated to repay the refundable portion of the advance fee deposit to the resident within a short period of time, generally less than one year. In many cases, this put or on-demand provision will require that the refundable advance fees be shown as a current liability.

14.28 In practice, CCRCs that are not SEC registrants classify refundable advance fees based upon the expected timing of refunds to be made. The classification as current or noncurrent depends upon the CCRC's own history of refunds and the terms of its resident agreements.

14.29 Other contract provisions or regulations also may affect the CCRC's ability to control the timing of refund payments. For example, provisions that make refunds to a former resident dependent upon resale to, and reoccupancy by, a new resident might allow the CCRC to classify some or all of the refundable advance fees as a noncurrent liability. In addition, if contract provisions or regulations state that a portion of a nonrefundable advance fee (for example, the deferred revenue component) is repayable to the resident only if the CCRC contract is terminated in its early years, and after that period, the advance fee is nonrefundable, the specific terms of each agreement or regulation may indicate that some or all of the advance fees would be reported as a liability (see paragraph 14.19) and that some portion of that liability might be classified as current.

14.30 The Financial Reporting Executive Committee (FinREC) recommends CCRCs provide disclosure of the classification of these refundable advance fees; the key terms of the underlying agreements; and, if classified as noncurrent, the amount of the advance fees that are subject to repayment based on the residents' ability to terminate the agreement and put the refund obligation to the CCRC.

**Accounting for the Obligation to Provide Future Services and the Use of Facilities to Current Residents**

14.31 FASB ASC 954-440 discusses the commitments of CCRCs to provide services. This paragraph and paragraphs 14.32–.34 summarize that guidance. A CCRC expects to provide services and the use of facilities to individuals over their remaining lives under continuing-care contract agreements. The nature and extent of such services depend on such variables as the individual's age, health, sex, and economic status upon entering the CCRC. Thus, the CCRC assumes a risk in estimating the cost of future services and use of facilities. Although many CCRCs are contractually allowed to increase periodic fees, some contracts may restrict increases in periodic fees and require continuing services without additional compensation. If the advance and periodic fees that are charged are insufficient to meet the costs of providing future services and the use of facilities, the CCRC should record a liability based on actuarial assumptions, such as mortality and morbidity rates, on estimates of future costs and revenues and on the specific CCRC's historical experience and statistical data. The liability is equal to the amount that is expected to be incurred to provide services and the use of facilities to individuals over their remaining lives under continuing-care contracts, including resident-care, dietary, health care, facility, interest, depreciation, and amortization costs, in excess of the related anticipated revenues.
In accordance with paragraphs 1 and 3 of FASB ASC 954-440-35, the obligation of a CCRC to provide future services and the use of facilities to current residents should be calculated annually in order to determine whether a liability should be reported in the financial statements. The liability related to continuing-care contracts should be the present value of future net cash flows, minus the balance of unamortized deferred revenue, plus depreciation of facilities to be charged related to the contracts, plus unamortized costs of acquiring the related initial continuing-care contracts, if applicable. The calculation should be made by grouping contracts by type, such as all contracts with a limit on annual increases in fees, contracts with unlimited fee increases, and so on.

In measuring the liability, FASB ASC 954-440-35-3 states that the cash inflows should include revenue contractually committed to support the residents and inflows resulting from monthly fees, including anticipated increases in accordance with contract terms. This measurement should include third-party payments, contractually- or statutorily-committed investment income from services related to CCRC activities, contributions pledged by donors to support CCRC activities, and the volume of deferred nonrefundable advance fees. Cash outflows should comprise operating expenses, including interest expense and excluding selling expense, and general and administrative expenses. Anticipated cost increases affecting these operating expenses should be considered in determining cash outflows. The expected inflation rate, as well as other factors, is considered in determining the discount rate. In calculating the liability, the specific CCRC's historical experience or statistical data relating to the residents' life spans should be used. The life spans that are used should be the same as those used to amortize deferred revenue (see paragraph 14.21). For a new CCRC, either relevant data of similar communities in the area or relevant national industry statistics may be used if they are deemed to be representative.

FASB Concepts Statement No. 7, Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements, provides a useful discussion of general principles governing the use of present value and of the objective of present value in accounting measurements. FASB Concepts Statements are not sources of established accounting principles and, thus, do not amend, modify, or justify a change from GAAP currently in effect.

The application of the conclusions in paragraph 14.33 is presented in exhibit 14-2.

**Accounting for the Costs of Acquiring Initial Continuing-Care Contracts**

Advertising costs incurred in connection with acquiring initial continuing-care contracts should be accounted for in conformity with the guidance in FASB ASC 720-35. Start-up costs are expensed as incurred, in accordance with FASB ASC 720-15. However, according to FASB ASC 954-340-25-1 and 954-720-25-7, costs of acquiring initial continuing-care contracts that are within the scope of FASB ASC 970, Real Estate—General, should be expensed or capitalized in accordance with that guidance. FASB ASC 954-340-35-1 states that capitalized costs should be amortized to expenses on a straight-line basis over the average expected remaining lives of the residents under the contract or the contract term, if shorter. According to FASB ASC 954-720-25-7, the costs
of acquiring continuing-care contracts after a CCRC is substantially occupied or one year following completion should be expensed when incurred.

Financial Statements

14.37 FASB ASC 954-210-45-1 indicates that rather than presenting a classified balance sheet, a CCRC may instead sequence assets according to their nearness of conversion to cash and may sequence liabilities according to the nearness of the maturity and resulting use of cash.

14.38 The following information about advance fees is required to be disclosed, per FASB ASC 954-430-50:
- The method of accounting for advance fees, the method of calculating the obligation to provide future services and the use of facilities, and the refund policy for refundable fees
- The gross amount of contractual refund obligations under existing contracts and the CCRC's refund policy
- The method(s) of amortization for refundable advance fees and deferred revenue for advance fees

14.39 Because the liability amount in the balance sheet is based upon the CCRC's expected refunds, the amount disclosed in the preceding paragraph will exceed the amount of the liability for entities that have sliding scale contracts.

14.40 FASB ASC 954-440-50 requires that a CCRC disclose the following in the notes to the financial statements for each year presented:

- A description of the CCRC and the nature of the related continuing-care contracts entered into by the CCRC
- The carrying amount of the liability to provide future services and the use of facilities related to continuing-care contracts that is presented at present value in the financial statements, if not separately disclosed in the balance sheet
- The interest rate used to discount that liability to provide future services
- The statutory escrow or similar requirements
- The refund policy of the CCRC and the general amount of refund obligation under the existing contracts

14.41 In addition to the required disclosures, FinREC recommends that CCRCs disclose all of the following:
- Amounts classified as current and noncurrent for deferred revenues and liabilities under provisions of resident contracts
- Any applicable state regulatory requirements regarding refunds under existing contracts
- The carrying amount of the obligation to provide future services and the use of facilities to current residents, which is presented at present value in the financial statements, if not separately disclosed in the balance sheet
- The interest rate used to discount that liability
- The disclosures recommended in paragraph 14.30 for the classification of refundable advance fees
14.42 FASB ASC 954-430-45-1 requires that advance fees refunded be presented in the statement of cash flows as a financing transaction. Proceeds from refundable fees that are expected to be refunded also impact financing activities in the statement of cash flows.

14.43 Paragraphs 3.42–.43 discuss locating example financial statements.

Auditing

14.44 When auditing a CCRC, the independent auditor may need to consider the examples of specific auditing objectives, selected control activities, and auditing procedures that are presented in exhibit 14-3.

14.45 A CCRC ordinarily documents the terms of its arrangements with its residents using standardized sales or residency contracts. As discussed in paragraphs 14.13–.25, the terms of those contracts may significantly affect the accounting treatment for the transactions. Reading the standardized contract(s) and analyzing the terms allows auditors to determine whether the revenue associated with the transactions is recognized in accordance with GAAP.

14.46 In determining which standardized agreements to read and analyze, audit procedures may include the following:

- Requesting copies of all standardized contract(s) currently in use
- Evaluating the standardized contracts for terms that may affect revenue recognition
- Reviewing a sample of transactions for compliance with the standardized agreement

14.47 In determining which transactions to review, the auditor should select a sufficient number and type of contracts to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level. In determining which transactions to select, the auditor may consider the following:

- \textit{The materiality of the transaction}. An auditor may be able to reduce audit risk to an acceptable level by analyzing all material contracts entered into during the audit period, together with a selection of other contracts that, individually, were not considered material.
- \textit{The date the contract was entered into}. To reduce the risk of revenues being recorded in the wrong period, the auditor may consider focusing audit attention on transactions near the end of the reporting period.
- \textit{Whether the transaction utilizes a new form of standardized contract}. To reduce the risk of misstatement of revenues due to transactions on new forms of standardized contracts, the auditor may focus attention on whether revenues and obligations were recognized in the correct amount and period.
- \textit{Contracts relating to transactions with a relatively higher inherent risk}. For example, auditors may consider focusing audit attention on transactions that include notes receivable or that restrict or limit future revenues. If the resident has negotiated a note receivable, a risk exists that payments will not be collected in accordance with terms. Contract terms that require continuing
services or provide for other services without additional compensation or with limitations of fee increases may require recognition of a liability, as discussed in paragraphs 14.31–35.

14.48 When reviewing a transaction, the auditor may consider the following:

- Whether the contract was fully executed by both parties during the fiscal period
- The fees provided for under the contract
- The payment provisions
- The obligations of both parties under the contract
- Any other terms that affect the revenue recognition

14.49 In order to address the completeness assertion, the auditor also should determine whether any revenue recognized is subject to forfeiture, refund, or other concessions. To make this determination, the auditor may consider such factors as the terms specified in the contract(s) and management's intent to provide refunds or the historical pattern of providing refunds or other concessions that are not required under the provisions of the contract.
Exhibit 14-1

The following example is reproduced from paragraphs 1–3 of FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-430-55.

Continuing Care Retirement Community

Accounting for Refundable and Nonrefundable Advance Fees

This Example illustrates the guidance in Sections 954-430-25, 954-430-35, and 954-430-40. This Example has the following assumptions for a continuing care retirement community and a resident of that community:

a. The unit is occupied for 20 years.
b. The facility has an estimated 30-year life.
c. The resident is admitted on the first day of the year indicated and dies on the last day of year indicated.
d. The estimated remaining life expectancy is taken from an appropriate actuarial table.
e. The cost of providing future services is expected to be incurred equally over the remaining life.

Advance fees are accounted for as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year Admitted</th>
<th>Dies</th>
<th>Resident</th>
<th>Entry Age</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Non-refundable 25%</th>
<th>Refundable 75%</th>
<th>Refunded to the Previous Occupant (a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>$100,000</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>$75,000</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>120,000</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>90,000</td>
<td>$75,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>150,000</td>
<td>37,500</td>
<td>112,500</td>
<td>90,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>130,000</td>
<td>32,500</td>
<td>97,500</td>
<td>97,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Per contract, the amount is limited to 75% of proceeds of reoccupancy up to amount originally paid by previous occupant.

Amortization of Advance Fees Refundable to Residents

$75,000 ÷ 30 years = $2,500 per year for Years 1 through 4
15,000 ÷ 26 years = $577 additional or $3,077 per year for Years 5 through 8
22,500 ÷ 22 years = $1,023 additional or $4,100 per year for Years 9 through next change in occupancy

Because the refund paid to resident C was limited to the proceeds of reoccupancy received from resident D of $97,500, the amortization amount continues to be $4,100 per year for Years 14 through next change in occupancy

The following tables illustrate the amortization of nonrefundable advance fees.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident A</th>
<th>Unamortized Deferred Revenue</th>
<th>Estimated Remaining Life (in Years)</th>
<th>Income</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year 1</td>
<td>$25,000</td>
<td>12.1 =</td>
<td>$2,066</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 2</td>
<td>22,934</td>
<td>11.5 =</td>
<td>1,994</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 3</td>
<td>20,940</td>
<td>11.1 =</td>
<td>1,886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 4</td>
<td>19,054</td>
<td>10.6 =</td>
<td>1,798</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unamortized deferred revenue recognized upon the death of the resident

| Total       | $25,000                     |

AAG-HCO 14.49
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident B</th>
<th>Unamortized Deferred Revenue</th>
<th>Estimated Remaining Life (in Years)</th>
<th>Income</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year 5</td>
<td>$30,000</td>
<td>6.1 =</td>
<td>$4,918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 6</td>
<td>25,082</td>
<td>5.8 =</td>
<td>4,324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 7</td>
<td>20,758</td>
<td>5.5 =</td>
<td>3,774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 8</td>
<td>16,984</td>
<td>5.3 =</td>
<td>3,205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unamortized deferred revenue recognized upon the death of the resident</td>
<td></td>
<td>13,779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>$30,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident C</th>
<th>Unamortized Deferred Revenue</th>
<th>Estimated Remaining Life (in Years)</th>
<th>Income</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year 9</td>
<td>$37,500</td>
<td>7.0 =</td>
<td>$5,357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 10</td>
<td>32,143</td>
<td>6.7 =</td>
<td>4,797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 11</td>
<td>27,346</td>
<td>6.4 =</td>
<td>4,273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 12</td>
<td>23,073</td>
<td>6.1 =</td>
<td>3,783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 13</td>
<td>19,290</td>
<td>5.8 =</td>
<td>3,324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unamortized deferred revenue recognized upon the death of the resident</td>
<td></td>
<td>15,966</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td></td>
<td>$37,500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident D</th>
<th>Unamortized Deferred Revenue</th>
<th>Estimated Remaining Life (in Years)</th>
<th>Income</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year 14</td>
<td>$32,500</td>
<td>6.7 =</td>
<td>$4,851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 15</td>
<td>27,649</td>
<td>6.4 =</td>
<td>4,321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 16</td>
<td>23,328</td>
<td>6.1 =</td>
<td>3,824</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 17</td>
<td>19,504</td>
<td>5.8 =</td>
<td>3,363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 18</td>
<td>16,141</td>
<td>5.5 =</td>
<td>2,935</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 19</td>
<td>13,206</td>
<td>5.3 =</td>
<td>2,492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year 20</td>
<td>10,714</td>
<td>5.1 =</td>
<td>2,100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Amortization continues until the death of the resident.
Exhibit 14-2

The following example is reproduced from paragraphs 1–4 of FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-440-55.

Continuing Care Retirement Community

Accounting for the Obligation to Provide [Future] Services and the Use of Facilities to Current Residents

This Example illustrates the guidance in Sections 954-440-25 and 954-440-35. This example has the following assumptions:

a. All residents pay a $50,000 fee, which is refundable less 2 percent per month for the first 36 months. After that period, none of the fee is refundable. The continuing care retirement community opened on 1/1/X4. (See exhibit 14-1 for an illustration of how to compute refundable and deferred revenue.)

b. An additional periodic fee of $1,000 is payable monthly with a 5 percent increase annually.

c. The unamortized (deferred) costs of acquiring related initial contracts on 12/31/X6 are assumed to be $17,000.

d. The unamortized deferred revenue on 12/31/X6 is assumed to be $27,027.

The following tables illustrate the present value of net cash flow on 12/31/X6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident</th>
<th>Estimated Remaining Life (in Months) on 12/31/X6</th>
<th>Estimated Cash Inflows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>$12,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>12,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>12,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>12,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated cash inflows</td>
<td></td>
<td>$48,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resident</th>
<th>Estimated Remaining Life (in Months) on 12/31/X6</th>
<th>Estimated Cash Outflows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>$10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>14,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>8,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated cash outflows</td>
<td></td>
<td>$47,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cash inflows</td>
<td>$48,000</td>
<td>$48,300</td>
<td>$29,768</td>
<td>$2,315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cash outflows</td>
<td>(47,000)</td>
<td>(52,000)</td>
<td>(34,000)</td>
<td>(4,000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$1,000</td>
<td>($3,700)</td>
<td>($4,232)</td>
<td>($1,685)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present value of net cash flows discounted at 10 percent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$(7,137)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following tables illustrate the depreciation of facilities to be charged to current residents.

- **Original cost of facility**: $17,000,000
- **Cost of facility allocable to revenue-producing service areas**: $(2,000,000)
- **Cost of facility to be allocated to residents (including common areas)**: $15,000,000
- **Useful life**: 40 years
- **Annual depreciation using straight-line method**: $375,000
- **Number of residents expected to occupy the facility**: 200
- **Annual depreciation per resident**: $1,875
- **Monthly depreciation per resident**: $156

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td>$1,875</td>
<td>$1,875</td>
<td>$1,875</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,875</td>
<td>1,560</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,875</td>
<td>1,875</td>
<td>468</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td>1,875</td>
<td>1,875</td>
<td>1,875</td>
<td>$312</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Yearly estimated depreciation of facilities to be charged to current residents**: $7,500
- **Total estimated depreciation of the use of facilities to be charged to current residents**: $19,215

The following table illustrates the liability for providing future services and the use of facilities to current residents.

- **Present value of future net cash outflows**: $7,137
- **Minus: Unamortized deferred revenue on 12/31/X6**: (27,027)
- **Plus: Depreciation to be charged to current residents**: 19,215
- **Unamortized costs of acquiring initial contracts—see paragraph 954-440-55-1(c)**: 17,000 (a)

**Liability for providing future services and the use of facilities to current residents on 12/31/X6**: $16,325

(a) These numbers are for illustrative purposes only and no inference has been made as to the recoverability of the $17,000.
The following table illustrates the use of assertions in developing audit objectives and designing substantive tests. The examples are not intended to be all-inclusive nor is it expected that all the procedures are necessarily applied in an audit. Irrespective of the assessed risks of material misstatement, paragraph .18 of AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, Professional Standards), states the auditor should design and perform audit substantive procedures for all relevant assertions related to each material class of transactions, account balance, and disclosure. The use of assertions in assessing risks and designing appropriate procedures to obtain audit evidence is described in paragraphs .26–.32 of AU-C section 315, *Understanding the Entity and Its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement* (AICPA, Professional Standards). Various audit procedures and the purposes for which they may be performed are described in paragraphs .A10–.A26 of AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, Professional Standards).

### Auditing Considerations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Classes of Transactions, Account Balances, and Disclosures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Existence, completeness, and presentation</td>
<td>Liabilities relating to refundable fee arrangements are accounted for and properly reported.</td>
<td>Written documentation is prepared for refundable fee arrangements.</td>
<td>Review the refundable fee arrangements regarding stipulations for repayments, and determine that such arrangements are properly classified and disclosed in the financial statements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Liabilities are accounted for and properly reported.</td>
<td>All liabilities are classified, described, and properly disclosed in the financial statements.</td>
<td>Compare the account balances with the prior periods’ balance and amortization schedules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Management monitors compliance with restrictive covenants.</td>
<td>Confirm any significant new obligations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
## Deferred Revenue

### Classes of Transactions, Account Balances, and Disclosures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Completeness, rights and obligations, and presentation and disclosure</td>
<td>Deferred revenue and the obligation to provide future services to, and the use of facilities by, current residents of continuing care retirement communities are recognized and properly reported.</td>
<td>Procedures ensure that amounts received as advance fees are recognized in the proper period and that the obligation to provide future services and the use of facilities is reported.</td>
<td>Test the procedures related to the recognition of advance fees, and determine that the obligation to provide future services and the use of facilities is properly reported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deferred revenues are appropriately classified on the balance sheet.</td>
<td>Appropriate consideration is given to those factors influencing classification of deferred revenues relating to refunds based on reoccupancy proceeds.</td>
<td>Review and document any applicable state requirements relating to the timing and other factors relating to making refunds to residents.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Long-Term Obligations

### Classes of Transactions, Account Balances, and Disclosures

| Existence, completeness, and presentation | Liabilities relating to refundable fee arrangements are accounted for and properly reported. | Written documentation is prepared for refundable fee arrangements. | Review the refundable fee arrangements regarding stipulations for repayments, and determine that such arrangements are properly classified and disclosed in the financial statements. |

## Obligations to Provide Future Services

### Classes of Transactions, Account Balances, and Disclosures

| Existence, completeness, and presentation | Liabilities relating to any obligations to provide future services appropriately consider contractual rate constraints. | Written documentation is maintained and used in future cash flow considerations based on existing resident agreements. | Review the resident agreements for appropriate consideration in the determination of future cash flows. |
### Revenues From Periodic Service Fees

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial Statement Assertions</th>
<th>Specific Auditing Objectives</th>
<th>Selected Control Objectives</th>
<th>Auditing Procedures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Existence and completeness</td>
<td>Propriety of revenue from periodic service fees</td>
<td>Written documentation and monitoring of service fees established and charged to residents.</td>
<td>Review resident agreements and charges, including changes in charges to residents, for consistency.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Classes of Transactions, Account Balances, and Disclosures*
Chapter 15

Unique Considerations of State and Local\(^1\) Government Health Care Entities

There are similarities, but important differences, between how GASB defines supporting information and how the AICPA auditing standards refer that same information. The following is intended to clarify the two standard-setters' descriptions of the information and how the information will be referred to in the guide.

According to GASB Concepts Statement No. 3, *Communication Methods in General Purpose External Financial Reports That Contain Basic Financial Statements*, supporting information places basic financial statements and notes to basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic or historical context. The information is either (a) required by GASB as required supplementary information (RSI) to be presented with the basic financial statements and the notes thereto; (b) supplementary information (SI) which is required by law or regulation to be presented; or (c) SI presented at the election of the preparer. SI as contemplated in GASB Concepts Statement No. 3 (that is, [a] and [b] preceding) are referred to in this guide when describing GASB requirements as "GASB defined" SI. GASB Concepts Statement No. 3 limits its discussion of supporting information to "GASB defined" SI and RSI.

In contrast, the AICPA auditing standards refer to such supporting information as either RSI, other information (OI), or SI. AU-C section 730, *Required Supplementary Information* (AICPA, Professional Standards), defines RSI consistently with GASB literature. Therefore, references to such information in this guide are to RSI. AU-C section 720, *Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements* (AICPA, Professional Standards), considers OI in documents containing audited financial statements as OI except for situations when the auditor is engaged to report on whether the information is fairly stated in relation to the financial statements as a whole. When the auditor is engaged to give such an "in relation to" opinion, AU-C section 725, *Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole* (AICPA, Professional Standards), refers to the information as SI. Therefore, to ensure consistency with the underlying auditing standards, this guide uses SI to describe information for which the auditor has been engaged to provide an "in relation to" opinion and OI for situations where such reporting is not being provided by the auditor.

Introduction

15.01 This chapter discusses the accounting, financial reporting, and auditing requirements of this guide as they apply to governmental health care entities. The topics covered in this chapter are organized in a manner similar to the organization of topics by chapter in this guide. This chapter is intended to be the primary source of guidance for governmental health care entities;

---

\(^1\) Paragraph 1.08 of this guide defines a governmental health care entity. This guide is not applicable to federal government health care entities.
content in the other chapters of this guide is referenced, if applicable. This chapter addresses transactions that are unique to, or prevalent in, the health care industry. However, the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* contains information about governmental accounting and financial reporting standards and other matters that are unique to, or prevalent in, governmental entities that are not comprehensively addressed in this guide.

15.02 GASB is the primary accounting and financial reporting standard setter for governmental entities. This chapter references provisions of certain GASB statements, as well as the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments*. However, not all guidance included in the GASB statements and that guide is incorporated, repeated, or summarized in this chapter. Accordingly, GASB statements, that guide, and all other relevant authoritative guidance should be read in conjunction with this chapter.

**Applicability of This Chapter**

15.03 The definition of a governmental health care entity (see paragraph 1.08c of this guide) should be applied to determine whether a health care entity is subject to the governmental generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) hierarchy or private-sector GAAP (for example, FASB Accounting Standards Codification [ASC]). Entities are governmental or nongovernmental for accounting and financial reporting purposes based solely on the application of that definition.

15.04 The provisions of this chapter apply to governmental health care entities that report as special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities (that is, whose financial statements are prepared using enterprise fund accounting and reporting).2 Accounting, financial reporting, and auditing matters associated with other types of governmental health care entities (that is, those that use governmental fund accounting and financial reporting) are not within the scope of this chapter or guide.3 A governmental health care entity that uses enterprise fund accounting and reporting may be part of a larger entity, such as a general-purpose government, medical school, or university. In those situations, the recommendations in this chapter apply to the health care entity's separately-issued financial statements.

**GAAP Hierarchy for Governmental Health Care Entities**

15.05 GASB Statement No. 55, *The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles for State and Local Governments*, as amended, defines the

---

2 Paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 34, *Basic Financial Statements—and Management's Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments*, as amended, describes business-type activities as those financed in whole or part by fees charged to external parties for goods or services. Paragraphs 91–105 and 138 of GASB Statement No. 34 describe the financial statements of enterprise funds.

3 Often, governments will use governmental funds, rather than enterprise funds, to report activities relating to long-term institutional care, which includes health care, of the elderly; children; and mentally impaired when user fees (for example, fees for services) are not a principal revenue source for the activity. Although activities that are reported in governmental funds are not within the scope of this guide, chapter 12, "Special-Purpose and State Governments," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* indicates that auditors of such entities should consider referring to this guide for specific auditing considerations unique to health care entities, such as audit procedures relating to amounts due from discharged patients and third-party payors, to the extent they are relevant.
sources of accounting principles used in the preparation of financial statements of state and local governmental entities that are presented in conformity with GAAP, and the framework for selecting those principles. GASB Statement No. 55 identifies the sources of GAAP, in descending order of authority, as follows:

a. Officially established accounting principles—GASB statements and interpretations

b. GASB Technical Bulletins and, if specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities by the AICPA and cleared by GASB,4 AICPA Industry Audit and Accounting Guides and AICPA Statements of Position (SOPs)

c. AICPA Practice Bulletins, if specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities and cleared by GASB, as well as consensus positions of a group of accountants organized by GASB5 that attempt to reach consensus positions on accounting issues applicable to state and local governmental entities

d. Implementation guides published by GASB staff, as well as practices that are widely recognized and prevalent in state and local government

15.06 Under GASB Statement No. 55, as amended, if the accounting treatment for a transaction or other event is not specified by a pronouncement in category (a), a governmental health care entity should consider whether the accounting treatment is specified by an accounting principle from a source in another category. In such cases, if categories (b)–(d) contain accounting principles that specify accounting treatments for a transaction or other event, the governmental entity should follow the accounting treatment specified by the accounting principle from the source in the highest category—for example, follow category (b) treatment over category (c) treatment. If the accounting treatment for a transaction or other event is not specified by a pronouncement or established in practice, as described in categories (a)–(d), a governmental entity should consider accounting principles for similar transactions or other events within categories (a)–(d) and may consider other accounting literature.

15.07 Other accounting literature includes the following:

- GASB Concepts Statements
- Pronouncements referred to in categories (a)–(d) of the GAAP hierarchy for nongovernmental entities if not specifically made applicable to state and local governmental entities by GASB
- FASB Statements, Interpretations, Technical Bulletins, and Concepts Statements
- Federal Accounting Standards Advisory Board Statements, Interpretations, Technical Bulletins, and Concepts Statements
- AICPA issues papers

4 AICPA pronouncements specifically made applicable to state and local governments are presumed to have been cleared by GASB, unless the pronouncement indicates otherwise.

5 GASB has not organized such a group.

6 A conclusion that a particular practice is widely recognized and prevalent is a matter of professional judgment by individual financial statement preparers and auditors. References in this guide to common practices do not take the place of professional judgment about whether a practice is widely recognized and prevalent or elevate that practice from category (d) guidance.
Health Care Entities

- International Public Sector Accounting Standards of the International Public Sector Accounting Standards Board
- International Financial Reporting Standards of the International Accounting Standards Board; pronouncements of other professional associations or regulatory agencies
- Technical Questions and Answers included in AICPA Technical Practice Aids
- Accounting textbooks, handbooks, and articles

The appropriateness of other accounting literature depends on its relevance to particular circumstances, the specificity of the guidance, and the general recognition of the issuer or author as an authority. For example, GASB Concepts Statements would normally be more influential than other sources in this category. **Inclusion in this guide of other accounting literature does not elevate that guidance to category (b) guidance.** A governmental health care entity should not follow the accounting treatment specified in accounting principles for similar transactions or other events in cases in which those accounting principles either prohibit the application of the accounting treatment to the particular transaction or other event or indicate that the accounting treatment should not be applied by analogy.

15.08 This chapter makes various references to implementation guidance published in the GASB staff document *Comprehensive Implementation Guide* (hereafter referred to as GASB Q&A). That implementation guidance is category (d) guidance as defined in GASB Statement No. 55. **References to the guidance in the GASB Q&A in this chapter do not elevate that guidance to category (b) guidance.** Further, GASB’s clearance of this guide does not elevate the guidance it contains from the implementation guides to category (b) guidance. Similarly, references in this chapter to discussions or examples in the nonauthoritative appendixes of GASB pronouncements do not elevate that guidance from other accounting literature.

**Applicability of FASB and AICPA Pronouncements**

15.09 GASB Statement No. 62, *Codification of Accounting and Financial Reporting Guidance Contained in Pre-November 30, 1989 FASB and AICPA Pronouncements*, directly incorporated into GASB’s authoritative literature certain pronouncements issued by FASB and its predecessors on or before November 30, 1989. GASB Statement No. 62 eliminated the need for financial statement preparers and auditors to determine which FASB and AICPA pronouncement provisions apply to state and local governments. When the guidance from the pre-November 30, 1989, pronouncements was included as part of GASB Statement No. 62, it was modified as necessary to appropriately recognize the governmental environment and needs of governmental financial statement users.

15.10 GASB Statement No. 62 also eliminated the election provided in paragraph 7, as amended, of GASB Statement No. 20, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Proprietary Funds and Other Governmental Entities That Use Proprietary Fund Accounting*. That election permitted governmental entities engaged in business-type activities to elect to apply all FASB statements.
and interpretations issued after November 30, 1989, that are applicable to private-sector business enterprises and do not conflict with or contradict GASB pronouncements. However, those governmental entities can continue to apply as other accounting literature post-November 30, 1989, FASB pronouncements that do not conflict with or contradict GASB pronouncements, as discussed in paragraph 15.07.

15.11 As governmental health care entities and their auditors consider the applicability of private-sector standards discussed in the other chapters of this guide, it is important to remember that governmental health care entities were prohibited by GASB Statement No. 29, The Use of Not-for-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities, from applying FASB Statement No. 116, Accounting for Contributions Received and Contributions Made; No. 117, Financial Statements of Not-for-Profit Organizations; No. 124, Accounting for Certain Investments Held by Not-for-Profit Organizations; No. 136, Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Organization or Charitable Trust That Raises or Holds Contributions for Others; and No. 164, Not-for-Profit Entities: Mergers and Acquisitions—Including an amendment of FASB Statement No. 142. (Those FASB statements are included in FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities.) For governmental health care entities that have implemented GASB Statement No. 62, those FASB statements cannot be applied as other accounting literature if they are in conflict with GASB pronouncements, including the guidance in GASB Statement No. 31, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Certain Investments and for External Investment Pools; No. 33, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Nonexchange Transactions; No. 34; No. 39, Determining Whether Certain Organizations Are Component Units—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 14; and No. 61, The Financial Reporting Entity: Omnibus—an amendment of GASB Statements No. 14 and No. 34. FASB Statement No. 164 cannot be applied even as other accounting literature because it is not part of current practice, as further discussed in paragraphs 15.153–.154.

Basic Financial Statements

15.12 Governmental health care entities covered by this chapter use a financial reporting model established by GASB Statement No. 34, Basic Financial Statements—and Management’s Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments, as amended, for special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities. GASB Statement No. 34 requires the following statements and information to be provided in separately-issued, general-purpose external financial statements of special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities:7,8

---

7 Paragraph 138 of GASB Statement No. 34.
8 Although this discussion of the guidance in GASB Statement No. 34 is written from the perspective of legally separate governmental health care entities, the accounting, financial reporting, and auditing considerations are usually equally applicable when the health care activity is conducted as a function or program of a general-purpose government and reported within an enterprise fund of that government. In developing an opinion on financial statements for one or more individual funds, the auditor considers generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) to the extent those principles apply to the fund financial statements. Although GASB standards do not address the accounting and financial reporting for separately-issued, GAAP-based financial statements for one or more individual funds, and accordingly, GASB did not clear the provisions set forth in this footnote, paragraph 14.87 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments states that in auditing financial statements of such activities, auditors should consider long-established practice dictating that those
a. Statement of net position
b. Statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position
c. Statement of cash flows
d. Notes to financial statements
e. Management’s discussion and analysis (MD&A) as RSI
f. If applicable, other RSI established by GAAP

The statements should be prepared using the accrual basis of accounting and economic resources measurement focus.\(^9\)

**Statement of Net Position\(^{10}\)**

15.13 Governmental health care entities may report their financial position using either a balance sheet format (assets plus deferred outflows of resources equals liabilities plus deferred inflows of resources plus net position) or a net position format (assets plus deferred outflows of resources less liabilities less deferred inflows of resources equals net position).

15.14 Amounts that are required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources should be reported in a statement of financial position in a separate section following assets. Similarly, amounts that are required to be reported as deferred inflows of resources should be reported in a separate section following liabilities. The netting of deferred inflows of resources and deferred outflows of resources generally is not permitted. However, the total for deferred outflows of resources may be added to the total for assets, and the total for deferred inflows of resources may be added to the total for liabilities to provide subtotals.

15.15 Balances of deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources reported in a statement of net position or a governmental fund balance sheet may be aggregations of different types of deferred amounts. If significant components of the total deferred amounts are obscured by aggregation, governments should provide details of the different types of deferred amounts in the notes to the financial statements. If a component of net position is significantly affected by deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources, an explanation of the effect of the deferred amounts on the net position component should be provided in the notes to the financial statements. Because liquidity concepts do not apply to deferred inflows of resources and outflows of resources, those financial statement elements are not classified as current or noncurrent.

15.16 Assets and liabilities must be presented in a classified format that distinguishes between current and long-term assets and liabilities, as discussed in paragraphs 29–44 of GASB Statement No. 62.\(^{11}\) Paragraph 99 of presentations should apply all relevant GAAP. Thus, in developing an opinion on the separately-issued, GAAP-based financial statements for one or more individual funds, the auditor considers whether the financial statements include all relevant GAAP financial statements, note disclosures, management’s discussion and analysis topics, and other required supplementary information (RSI).

---

\(^9\) See paragraph 92 of GASB Statement No. 34.

\(^{10}\) See paragraphs 97–99 GASB Statement No. 34.

\(^{11}\) The requirements of GASB Statement No. 62, *Codification of Accounting and Financial Reporting Guidance Contained in Pre-November 30, 1989 FASB and AICPA Pronouncements*, related to the classification of items as current or noncurrent are similar to those applied by nongovernmental entities. To the extent that other chapters of this guide discuss the balance sheet classification of certain specific assets or liabilities (for example, investments and long-term debt) as current or noncurrent, that information may be helpful to governmental health care entities, provided that it does not conflict with or contradict GASB pronouncements.
GASB Statement No. 34 states that restricted assets should be reported when restrictions, as defined in paragraph 34 of GASB Statement No. 34, on asset use change the nature or normal understanding of the availability of the asset. Restrictions may require assets that normally would be reported as current, such as cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments, and certain receivables, to be classified as noncurrent for financial reporting purposes. Paragraph 31(a) of GASB Statement No. 62 states that current assets should exclude cash and claims to cash that are restricted regarding withdrawal or use for other than current operations, designated for disbursement in the acquisition or construction of noncurrent assets, or segregated for the liquidation of long-term debt. When such constraints exist (for example, when cash or short-term investments are held as collateral on debt obligations, set aside within debt sinking funds and debt service reserve funds, donor restricted for the construction or purchase of property and equipment, or donor restricted for permanent or term endowment), the assets should be reported as noncurrent. Item 7.71.1 of the GASB Q&A discusses the reporting of restricted assets in a classified statement of net position. GASB Statement No. 34 does not otherwise require restricted assets to be displayed separately from unrestricted assets on the face of the statement of net position.

15.17 The term net position is used to refer to the residual of all other elements presented in the statement of financial position—that is, assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, deferred inflows of resources, and net position. Net position is required to be reported in three broad components: net investment in capital assets; restricted; and unrestricted. When a portion of restricted net position is required to be retained in perpetuity or minority interest in a component unit exists, restricted net position should be displayed in two additional components: expendable and nonexpendable. The individual components of net position are discussed in more detail in paragraphs 15.118–15.119.

15.18 Some governmental health care entities may be organized and operated on a fund basis (for example, they use several separate enterprise funds for the purpose of carrying on specific activities or attaining certain objectives in accordance with regulatory restrictions or limitations). Interfund receivable and payable balances are eliminated in the “Total Primary Government” column. Paragraph 14 of GASB Statement No. 38, Certain Financial Statement Note Disclosures, requires disclosure of certain information pertaining to interfund balances.

Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Net Position

15.19 A governmental health care entity's statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position presents the same types of activities and transactions that are reported in a nongovernmental health care entity's statement of operations and statement of changes in net assets. The required format for this statement is illustrated in paragraph 101 of GASB Statement No. 34, as follows:

Operating revenues (detailed)
Total operating revenues

12 The term restricted is defined by paragraphs 34, as amended, and 99 of GASB Statement No. 34. As discussed in paragraph 15.113, a restriction is a constraint placed on the use of assets or net assets that is either externally imposed, such as by creditors through debt covenants, or imposed by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.

13 See paragraph 35 of GASB Statement No. 34.
Although this prescribed sequence, including the provision of required subtotals, should be adhered to, paragraph 434 of the nonauthoritative basis for conclusions of GASB Statement No. 34 indicates that it does not preclude governments from presenting additional subtotals before the comprehensive performance measure, such as the increase (decrease) in net position.

15.20 The format of the governmental statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position does not disaggregate transactions by components of net position (for example, it does not segregate transactions that increase restricted net position from those that increase unrestricted net position). The statement does not require disaggregated reporting of transactions based on the types of restrictions that may exist, such as unrestricted, restricted expendable, or restricted nonexpendable. For example, restricted contributions are not reported separately from unrestricted contributions, except for those that are restricted for capital acquisition or endowments, as discussed subsequently. Because of this all-inclusive focus, reclassifications of net position representing the expiration of restrictions are not reported. Therefore, reclassifications and subtotals, such as net assets released from restrictions, changes in temporarily-restricted net assets, and changes in permanently-restricted net assets, that are customarily seen in NFP health care entities' statements of activities are not displayed in a governmental health care entity's statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position.

15.21 Governmental health care entities should distinguish between operating revenues and expenses and nonoperating revenues and expenses and provide an intermediate subtotal for operating income or loss. This is a difference from the NFP model in which entities are permitted, but not required, to classify transactions as operating or nonoperating. GASB requires entities to establish a policy for defining operating revenues and expenses that is appropriate to the nature of the activities being reported; however, the determination of which revenues and expenses should be classified as operating should consider how the underlying transactions would be classified in the statement of cash flows.14 Using this approach, transactions that are considered investing, capital and related financing, and noncapital financing activities in the statement of cash flows (for example, investment revenues and interest expense, as well as most nonexchange transactions, including taxes and noncapital grants and contributions) would be classified as nonoperating, rather than operating. Once

---

14 See paragraph 102 of GASB Statement No. 34.
established, this policy should be consistently applied and should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.

15.22 Contributions of capital assets or financial resources required to be used to acquire capital assets, contributions of term and permanent endowments, special and extraordinary items, and transfers are reported separately after nonoperating revenues and expenses. The determination of whether a transaction is an extraordinary item is made based on the guidance in paragraphs 45–50 of GASB Statement No. 62. Special items should be reported separately after capital contributions and contributions to permanent and term endowments but before extraordinary items, if any. Paragraph 56 of GASB Statement No. 34 defines a special item as a significant transaction or other event that is within the control of management and that meets one, but not both, of the criteria for classification as an extraordinary item (that is, it is either unusual in nature or infrequent in occurrence). Similar transactions that are beyond the control of management are not special items but should be disclosed in accordance with paragraph 56 of GASB Statement No. 34.

15.23 As discussed in paragraph 15.17, some governmental health care entities may be organized and operated on a fund basis. Those entities should display interfund transfers, if any, after special and extraordinary items. Interfund transfers include capital contributions received from other funds within the primary government, as discussed in item 7.74.4 of the GASB Q&A. Paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 38 requires disclosure of certain information pertaining to interfund transfers.

15.24 If a governmental health care entity has a change in accounting principle during a reporting period, as described in paragraphs 63–89 of GASB Statement No. 62, the effect of the change should be reported as a restatement of net position at the beginning of the period, not a separately identified cumulative effect in the current-period statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position. If a governmental health care entity must correct a prior-period’s error, item 7.22.16 of the GASB Q&A states that the entity should report the correction by displaying either (a) the amount of the change as an adjustment to beginning net position on the face of the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position, or (b) beginning net position restated on the face of the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position, with the details of the restatement provided in the notes to the financial statements.

15.25 FASB ASC 220, Comprehensive Income, conflicts with the all-inclusive format required by GASB Statement No. 34, as discussed in item 7.72.1 of the GASB Q&A, and should not be applied by governmental health care entities. Gains and losses that private-sector standards classify as elements of other comprehensive income should be reported no differently than other gains and losses. As previously described, they are classified by governmental health care entities as operating, nonoperating, special, or extraordinary.

Statement of Cash Flows

15.26 GASB Statement No. 9, Reporting Cash Flows of Proprietary and Nonexpendable Trust Funds and Governmental Entities That Use Proprietary
Fund Accounting, as amended, establishes standards for cash flow reporting for governmental entities. The requirements of GASB Statement No. 9 differ from those of FASB ASC 230, Statement of Cash Flows. Those differences are as follows:

- GASB Statement No. 9, as amended, requires the use of the direct method of presenting operating cash flows,\(^{16}\) with a reconciliation provided of operating cash flows to operating income (loss).
- GASB Statement No. 9 requires two categories of financing activities—noncapital financing and capital and related financing—for a total of four categories in the statement of cash flows. The capital and related financing category is used for acquiring and disposing of capital assets, borrowing money for acquiring capital assets, and repaying the borrowed amounts. All other financing is classified as noncapital.\(^{17}\)
- Some transactions are classified differently by GASB and FASB. For example, under GASB Statement No. 9, unrestricted contributions are classified as noncapital financing, interest expense is classified as either capital and related financing or noncapital financing, and investment income is classified as investing. Under FASB ASC 220, unrestricted contributions, interest expense, and investment income are all operating cash flows. Similarly, capital asset purchases are classified under GASB Statement No. 9 as capital and related financing activities. Under FASB ASC 220, they are investing activities.
- Paragraph 8 of GASB Statement No. 9 provides that a statement of cash flows should explain the change in all cash and cash equivalents, regardless of any restrictions on their use. This would include any cash and cash equivalents classified as noncurrent, as discussed in paragraph 15.16. The total amount of cash and cash equivalents in the statement of cash flows should be easily traceable to similarly-titled line items in the statement of net position. If it is not, a reconciliation should be provided on the face of the statement or in the notes.

Chapter 2 of the GASB Q&A discusses implementation issues regarding GASB Statement No. 9.

Segment Reporting

15.27 If applicable, governmental health care entities should comply with the segment reporting requirements of GASB Statement No. 34.\(^{18}\) GASB’s definition of segment differs from that in FASB ASC 280, Segment Reporting. GASB’s definition focuses solely on information about activities financed by revenue-backed debt. GASB Statement No. 34 defines a segment as an identifiable activity or grouping of activities reported as or within an enterprise.

\(^{16}\) See paragraph 105 of GASB Statement No. 34.

\(^{17}\) Paragraph 29 of GASB Statement No. 9, Reporting Cash Flows of Proprietary and Nonexpendable Trust Funds and Governmental Entities That Use Proprietary Fund Accounting, provides criteria for distinguishing between capital and noncapital financing activities.

\(^{18}\) See paragraphs 122–123 of GASB Statement No. 34 and paragraph 17 of GASB Statement No. 37, Basic Financial Statements—and Management’s Discussion and Analysis—for State and Local Governments: Omnibus—an amendment of GASB Statements No. 21 and No. 34.
fund or another stand-alone entity that (a) has one or more outstanding bonds or other debt instruments, such as certificates of participation, with a revenue stream pledged in support of that debt and (b) is required by an external party, such as through a bond indenture, to separately account for that activity's assets, liabilities, revenues, and expenses. Segment disclosures are not required if the activity is not financed with revenue-backed debt; the requirement to separately report is not imposed by an external party; or separate reporting is required for only a portion of the activity's transactions, such as for only the revenues and expenses.

15.28 Paragraph 122 of GASB Statement No. 34, as amended, details the disclosures required for segments. Additional information on segment reporting can be found in chapter 8, "Expenses or Expenditures and Liabilities," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments and items 7.86.1–7.86.6 of the GASB Q&A.

RSI, Including MD&A

© Update 15-1 Accounting and Reporting: Pensions of State and Local Governmental Employers

GASB Statement No. 68, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 27, issued in June 2012, is effective for periods beginning after June 15, 2014. Earlier application is encouraged. GASB Statement No. 68 includes transition provisions regarding accounting changes and the presentation of information in schedules of RSI.

GASB Statement No. 68 replaces the requirements of GASB Statement No. 27, Accounting for Pensions by State and Local Governmental Employers, and No. 50, Pension Disclosures—an amendment of GASB Statements No. 25 and No. 27, as they relate to pensions that are provided through pension plans administered as trusts or equivalent arrangements (hereafter jointly referred to as trusts) that meet certain criteria. The requirements of GASB Statement Nos. 27 and 50 remain applicable for pensions that are not covered by the scope of this statement. GASB Statement No. 68 establishes standards for measuring and recognizing liabilities, deferred outflows of resources, deferred inflows of resources, and expenses and expenditures related to pensions. For defined benefit pensions, this statement identifies the methods and assumptions that should be used to project benefit payments, discount projected benefit payments to their actuarial present value, and attribute that present value to periods of employee service.

For more information about the effects of GASB Statement No. 68 upon its implementation, a summary of this statement is included in section A.03 in appendix A, "Guidance Updates." The full text of the statement is available on GASB's website at www.gasb.org. In addition, the GAQC website includes "GASB Matters," a resource page dedicated to the implementation of GASB Statement Nos. 67 and 68. Recently issued pension-related auditing interpretations and other valuable resources are available at www.aicpa.org/INTERESTAREAS/GOVERNMENTALAUDITQUALITY/RESOURCES/GASBMATTERS/Pages/default.aspx.
GASB Statement No. 71, *Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 68*, issued in November 2013, is effective simultaneously with the provisions of GASB Statement No. 68.

At the beginning of the period in which the provisions of GASB Statement No. 68 are adopted, there may be circumstances in which it is not practical for a government to determine the amounts of all applicable deferred inflows of resources and deferred outflows of resources related to pensions. In such circumstances, the government should recognize a beginning deferred outflow of resources only for its pension contributions, if any, made subsequent to the measurement date of the beginning net pension liability but before the start of the government’s fiscal year. Additionally, in those circumstances, no beginning balances for other deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions should be recognized.

For more information about the effects of GASB Statement No. 71 upon its implementation, a summary of this statement is included in section A.04 in appendix A. The full text of the statement is available on GASB’s website at www.gasb.org.

---

15.29 Some GASB standards require the presentation of certain specified information to accompany the basic financial statements. This RSI differs from other types of information that accompanies the basic financial statements because RSI is considered an essential part of financial reporting, and GASB has established authoritative guidelines for measuring and presenting that information. At present, RSI applicable to governmental health care entities consists of MD&A and certain information related to employer-sponsored benefit plans. RSI other than MD&A should be presented immediately following the notes to the financial statements. Paragraphs 8–11 of GASB Statement No. 34 provide the standards for MD&A, which should precede the basic financial statements.

15.30 GASB standards require MD&A to introduce the basic financial statements by presenting certain financial information, as well as management’s analytical insights on that information. That analysis provides users with the information they need to help them assess whether the government’s financial position has improved or deteriorated as a result of a given year’s operations. Paragraphs 8–11 of GASB Statement No. 34, as amended, establish eight required elements of MD&A for general-purpose governments. Because certain of those elements would not apply to special-purpose governments engaged only in business-type activities, governmental health care entities should limit their MD&A to only those required elements that are applicable to their activities. The information to be presented in MD&A should be confined to the topics discussed in paragraphs 8–11 of GASB Statement No. 34.

15.31 When a governmental health care entity presents comparative financial statements, MD&A is also required to be comparative, which would include comparative, condensed financial information and related analyses for

---

19 See paragraph 6 and footnote 5 of GASB Statement No. 34.
both years, as discussed in item 7.5.4 of the GASB Q&A. MD&A should provide data so that each of the two years presented in the comparative financial statements can be compared with its prior year. Therefore, there should be three years of comparative data and accompanying analyses: the current year, the prior year, and the year preceding the prior year. If only comparative financial data is presented for the prior year, as distinguished from a complete set of comparative statements, notes, and RSI, MD&A requirements apply only to the current year, with comparisons to the prior year, as discussed in item 7.5.6 of the GASB Q&A.

15.32 Paragraph 22 of GASB Statement No. 27, as amended, and paragraphs 26–27 of GASB Statement No. 45, Accounting and Financial Reporting by Employers for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions, require employers that participate in single-employer and agent multiple-employer defined benefit pension and other postemployment benefit (OPEB) plans to report certain multiyear actuarial data as RSI.

15.33 Inclusion of information relating to discretely-presented component units in MD&A or other RSI is a matter of professional judgment. If component unit information is provided, the RSI should focus on the primary government and distinguish between information pertaining to the primary government and information pertaining to the component unit(s).

Cash, Cash Equivalents, and Investments

Cash and Cash Equivalents

15.34 In accordance with paragraph 9 of GASB Statement No. 9, cash and cash equivalents include all cash and highly liquid investments that are both (a) readily convertible to known amounts of cash and (b) so near to their maturity that they present an insignificant risk of changes in value because of changes in interest rates. Cash equivalents generally are limited to investments with original maturities of three months or less from the date of purchase, although paragraph 11 of GASB Statement No. 9 provides that not all investments that meet GASB’s definition of cash equivalents are required to be accounted for as such. Paragraph 8 of GASB Statement No. 9 states that the total amounts of cash and cash equivalents at the beginning and end of the period in the statement of cash flows should be easily traceable to similarly-titled items or subtotals shown in the statement of net position as of those dates.

15.35 Cash and cash equivalents are considered to be restricted when limitations on the use of those assets change the nature or normal understanding of the availability of the asset. For example, cash normally is classified as current assets, and a normal understanding of those assets presumes that no limitations exist on the government’s ability to use those resources to satisfy current liabilities. However, cash held by a trustee that can only be used to pay bond principal and interest and that cannot be used to pay other current liabilities would be considered restricted assets. See paragraph 15.113 for a discussion of classification of net position when the use of assets is restricted. Such restrictions or constraints may require cash and cash equivalents to be classified as noncurrent for financial reporting purposes, as discussed in paragraph 15.16.

20 See footnote 12.
Governmental health care entities are required by GASB standards to provide disclosures related to cash and deposit accounts. For example, paragraph 8 of GASB Statement No. 40, Deposit and Investment Risk Disclosures—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 3, requires certain disclosures related to deposit accounts that are exposed to custodial credit risk. Deposits are exposed to custodial credit risk if they are not covered by depository insurance, and the deposits are (a) uncollateralized, (b) collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution, or (c) collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution's trust department or agent but not in the depositor-government's name. Paragraph 11 of GASB Statement No. 9 requires disclosure of the governmental health care entity's policy for determining which investments are treated as cash equivalents. Paragraph 113 of GASB Statement No. 62 requires disclosure of any pledge of cash and cash equivalents as security for loans. Additional GASB disclosures related to deposit accounts are discussed in paragraph 15.52.

Additional guidance related to cash and cash equivalents can be found in chapter 5, “Financial Instruments,” of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments and chapters 1–2 of the GASB Q&A.

Investments

When accounting for investments, governmental health care entities follow the accounting and financial reporting requirements of the following GASB statements:

- GASB Statement No. 3, Deposits with Financial Institutions, Investments (including Repurchase Agreements), and Reverse Repurchase Agreements
- GASB Statement No. 28, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Securities Lending Transactions
- GASB Statement No. 31, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Certain Investments and for External Investment Pools
- GASB Statement No. 40, Deposit and Investment Risk Disclosures—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 3
- GASB Statement No. 52, Land and Other Real Estate Held as Investments by Endowments
- GASB Statement No. 53, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Derivative Instruments
- GASB Statement No. 59, Financial Instruments Omnibus
- GASB Statement No. 61, The Financial Reporting Entity: Omnibus—an amendment of GASB Statements No. 14 and No. 34
- GASB Statement No. 63, Financial Reporting of Deferred Outflows of Resources, Deferred Inflows of Resources, and Net Position
• GASB Statement No. 64, *Derivative Instruments: Application of Hedge Accounting Termination Provisions*—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 53
• GASB Statement No. 65, *Items Previously Reported as Assets and Liabilities*
• GASB Statement No. 66, *Technical Corrections—2012*—an amendment of GASB Statements No. 10 and No. 62
• GASB Statement No. 68, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions*—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 27 (Update 15-1)
• GASB Statement No. 69, *Government Combinations and Disposals of Government Operations*
• GASB Interpretation No. 3, *Financial Reporting for Reverse Repurchase Agreements*—an interpretation of GASB Statement No. 3

Additional guidance can be found in chapter 5 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* and chapter 6 of the GASB Q&A.

**15.39** For private-sector entities, the starting point in analyzing the accounting for an equity investment is determining whether the investee should be consolidated.\(^{21}\) In the governmental sector, investments in for-profit companies made with the intent of generating investment return do not require evaluation for consolidation (that is, for presentation as a blended or discretely-presented component unit).\(^ {22}\) Instead, once the determination is made that the purpose is investment, the starting point is to determine if the investment should be accounted for using the equity method of accounting described in paragraphs 202–210 of GASB Statement No. 62.

**15.40** Investments in equity securities should be evaluated to determine if the equity method of accounting described in paragraphs 202–210 of GASB Statement No. 62 is necessary.\(^ {23}\) (Note that GASB and FASB have differing definitions of a security, as discussed in paragraph 15.41.) If so, then the investment is within the scope of those paragraphs, rather than GASB Statement No. 31.

**15.41** The scope of GASB Statement No. 31 is somewhat similar to private-sector standards in that it includes equity securities with readily-determinable fair values, debt securities, and open-ended mutual funds. The differences are as follows:

• GASB defines a security differently, focusing in part on an instrument’s transferability. GASB Statement No. 31 defines a security as "a transferable financial instrument that evidences ownership or creditorship, whether in physical or book entry form."\(^ {24}\) As a result, certain types of investments that would be considered equity

---

\(^{21}\) See chapter 12, "The Reporting Entity and Related Entities," of this guide.


securities under FASB literature (for example, certain limited partnership interests) are not considered equity securities under GASB Statement No. 31.

- Private-sector standards include certain interest-earning contracts, such as guaranteed investment contracts and certificates of deposit, in their scope but only to the extent that those investments meet FASB's definition of a security. GASB Statement No. 31 includes all such contracts, regardless of whether they are considered a security.

- The scope of GASB Statement No. 31 includes external investment pools, which are not included in private-sector investment standards unless they are securities.

Appendix 6-1 of the GASB Q&A provides GASB's definitions of a number of different types of investments.

15.42 Investments within the scope of GASB Statement No. 31 are reported in the statement of net position at fair value, with the exception of nonparticipating, interest-earning investment contracts and money market investments with a remaining maturity of one year or less at time of purchase, which are permitted to be reported at amortized cost. *Fair value* is the amount at which an investment could be exchanged in a current transaction between willing parties, other than in a forced or liquidation sale, as discussed in paragraph 3 of GASB Statement No. 31 and item 6.11.2 of the GASB Q&A. Paragraphs 7 and 10–11 of GASB Statement No. 31 describe how fair value is measured for various types of investments.24

15.43 Evaluating whether an alternative investment, as described in paragraph 4.36 of this guide, falls within the scope of GASB Statement No. 31 typically focuses on whether a particular investment vehicle meets the definition of an *equity security*, as discussed in paragraph 15.41; an *external investment pool*; or some other type of investment. Paragraph 22 of GASB Statement No. 31 defines an *external investment pool* as an arrangement that commingles (pools) the monies of more than one legally separate entity and invests in an investment portfolio on the participants' behalf; one or more of the participants is not part of the sponsor's reporting entity.25 Some instruments that convey an ownership interest are not *equity securities*, as defined by GASB, because they do not meet the definition of a *security*. Item 1.11.1 of the GASB Q&A states that investments without a transferable financial instrument that evidences ownership or creditorship are not securities. Item 1.48.2 of the GASB Q&A states that shares in closed-end mutual funds and unit investments trusts are securities but that open-end mutual funds are not. Item 1.11.1 of the GASB Q&A states that the term *securities* does not include investments made directly with another party (for example, a limited partnership interest). In evaluating the nature of an alternative investment, careful consideration should be given to the specific characteristics of the investment.

---

24 FASB Statement No. 157, *Fair Value Measurement*, is not applicable to investments within the scope of GASB Statement No. 31, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Certain Investments and for External Investment Pools*, because GASB Statement No. 31 provides guidance for measuring the fair value of those investments. However, FASB Statement No. 157 may be applicable as other accounting literature to certain other fair value measurements of governmental health care entities (see paragraph 15.07).

25 See also item 6.34.1 of the GASB Q&A.
**15.44** Some alternative investments, such as hedge funds, are arrangements that commingle the money of multiple investors and invest them in an investment portfolio. Based on the definitions in GASB Statement No. 31, such investments, particularly those in a limited liability corporation or those as a limited partner in a limited partnership or limited liability partnership, may appear to meet the definition of both an *external investment pool* (an arrangement that commingles the money of more than one legally separate entity and invests in an investment portfolio on the participants' behalf) and an *equity security* (any security that represents an ownership interest in an entity). Analyzing the characteristics of the investment to determine whether it meets the definition of a *security* may be helpful in determining whether and how GASB Statement No. 31 applies to the investment. Because the definition of a *security* focuses in part on transferability, an alternative investment that cannot be transferred would not be considered a security. In addition, investments that are transacted directly with another party, such as most commingled investment vehicles in limited partnership form, are not considered securities. A commingled investment vehicle that does not meet the definition of a *security* is evaluated to determine if it is an interest in an external investment pool, which is reported at fair value, or a financial instrument that is reported at amortized cost, as discussed in paragraph 15.46.

**15.45** GASB Statement No. 52 requires that certain land and other real estate held as investments by endowments be reported at fair value, with changes in fair value reported as investment income. GASB Statement No. 52 applies to permanent and term endowments and permanent funds; it does not apply to quasiendowments.

**15.46** Except as provided in paragraph 15.38, GASB has not issued any standards regarding the valuation or recognition of investments by health care entities. Investments for which GASB has not issued standards and that are not financial instruments, such as real estate held by a quasiendowment or certain oil and gas interests, are required by this guide to be reported at amortized cost and subsequently evaluated for impairment, as discussed in paragraphs 15.47–.48. All other investments are reported using cost-based measures, provided that there has not been an impairment in that value, as discussed in items 6.4.2 and 6.12.8 of the GASB Q&A. Evaluating cost-basis investments for impairment is discussed in paragraphs 15.47–.48. Item 6.4.1 of the GASB Q&A describes a number of different types of investments that generally would not fall within the scope of GASB Statement No. 31.

**Impairment of Investments**

**15.47** Other-than-temporary impairment is not an issue for investments reported at fair value, in accordance with GASB Statement No. 31, because GASB does not provide for the segregation of realized gains and losses from unrealized gains and losses. For investments covered by GASB Statement No. 31 that are reported using cost-based measures, such as money market investments and certain investment contracts, paragraphs 8–9 of GASB Statement No. 31 require the cost-based measure to be reevaluated if the fair value of

---

26 This requirement is established by this guide and is category (b) of the governmental GAAP hierarchy (see paragraph 15.05). This requirement is consistent with paragraph 5.24, which applies to governmental funds, of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments and items 6.4.2 and 6.12.8 of the GASB Q&A.
the investment is significantly affected by the impairment of the credit stand-
ing of the issuer or other factors.\textsuperscript{27} Determining the amount and timing of a write-down of those investments is a matter of professional judgment.

\textbf{15.48} For all other investments reported using cost-based measures, if the fair value of investments declines, an unrealized loss may have to be recorded if the decline is not due to a temporary condition.\textsuperscript{28} In making impairment evaluations for these investments, health care entities might consider as other accounting literature (see paragraph 15.07) the guidance in FASB ASC 320-10-35 for other-than-temporary impairments of investments and FASB ASC 360-10-35 for impairments of long-lived assets.

\textbf{Investment Return}

\textbf{15.49} Investment income arises from interest and dividend income, sales of investments at a gain or loss, and changes in the fair value of investments during the holding period. Under the GASB Statement No. 34 reporting model, all investment income of governmental health care entities, regardless of any restrictions placed upon its use, is reported as nonoperating revenue.\textsuperscript{29} This differs significantly from the private-sector standards described in paragraphs 4.30–.34 of this guide. GASB Statement No. 31 permits the change in fair value of investments, such as the difference between the fair value of investments at the beginning of the year and end of the year, taking into consideration investment purchases, sales, and redemptions, to be presented separately or combined with other investment income as a single amount. If the change in the fair value of investments is displayed as a separate element within investment income, it should be captioned "Net Increase (Decrease) in the Fair Value of Investments." GASB Statement No. 31 prohibits displaying realized gains and losses separately from other fair value changes on the face of the statement. However, note disclosure of realized gains and losses is permitted, provided that certain information about the nature of those amounts and their relationship to the amounts reported in the financial statements also is disclosed, as illustrated in appendix C of GASB Statement No. 31.

\textbf{15.50} Cash flows from purchases, sales, maturities, and income of investments should be classified as cash flows from investing activities in the statement of cash flows.

\textbf{Securities Lending and Reverse Repurchase Agreements}

\textbf{15.51} Governmental health care entities account for securities lending transactions in accordance with GASB Statement No. 28 and reverse repurchase agreements in accordance with GASB Statement No. 3 and GASB Interpretation No. 3. That accounting differs from the private-sector standards of FASB ASC 860, \textit{Transfers and Servicing}.

\textsuperscript{27} See paragraphs 8–9 of GASB Statement No. 31.

\textsuperscript{28} See paragraph 5.24 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting and Guide \textit{State and Local Governments}.

\textsuperscript{29} As discussed in items 7.73.5 and 7.74.3 of the GASB Q&A, interest earned on endowments generally should be classified as nonoperating revenue. This includes investment income restricted to increase permanent or term endowments. It is not appropriate to report such amounts as additions to permanent or term endowments.
Financial Reporting and Disclosure

15.52 Investments held by governmental health care entities should be reported as either current or noncurrent, as appropriate, under the provisions of paragraphs 29–44 of GASB Statement No. 62. Entities are required to disclose information about their investments in accordance with the GASB statements and interpretation included in paragraph 15.38. Among the required disclosures are the following:

- The types of deposits or investments authorized by legal or contractual provisions. See paragraph 65 of GASB Statement No. 3, as amended.

- Deposit and investment policies related to the risks that GASB Statement No. 40 requires to be disclosed. If a government has no investment policy that addresses a specific type of risk to which it is exposed, the disclosure should indicate that fact. See paragraph 6 of GASB Statement No. 40.

- Significant violations during the period of legal or contractual provisions for deposits and investments and the actions taken to address such violations. See paragraph 66 of GASB Statement No. 3 and paragraph 9 of GASB Statement No. 38.

- The policy for determining which investments, if any, are reported at amortized cost. See paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 31.

- The methods and significant assumptions used to estimate the fair value of investments if that fair value is based on other than quoted market prices. See paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 31.

- The credit quality ratings of investments in debt securities as described by nationally-recognized statistical-rating organizations (rating agencies) as of the date of the financial statements. This disclosure does not apply to investments issued or explicitly guaranteed by the U.S. government, but it does apply to investments in external investment pools, money market funds, bond mutual funds, and other pooled investments of fixed-income securities. If a credit quality disclosure is required, and the investment is unrated, the disclosure should indicate that fact. See paragraph 7 of GASB Statement No. 40, as amended.

- For investment securities and deposits, including securities underlying repurchase agreements, at the end of the period that are exposed to custodial credit risk, the investment’s type, the reported amount, and how the investments are held. This disclosure does not apply to investments in external investment pools and open-end mutual funds or securities underlying reverse repurchase agreements. See paragraph 9 of GASB Statement No. 40.

- Investments in any one issuer, by amount and issuer, that represent 5 percent or more of total investments. This disclosure does not apply to investments issued or explicitly guaranteed by the U.S. government or investments in mutual funds, external investment pools, or other pooled investments. See paragraph 11 of GASB Statement No. 40, as amended.
Information about interest rate risk using one of the five disclosure methods listed in GASB Statement No. 40. If a method requires an assumption regarding timing of cash flows, interest rate changes, or other factors that affect interest rate information, that assumption should be disclosed. This disclosure applies to investments in debt (bond) mutual funds, external debt (bond) investment pools, or other pooled debt investments that do not meet the definition of a 2a7-like pool. See paragraphs 14–15 of GASB Statement No. 40, as amended.

The terms of debt investments or an investment derivative instrument with fair values that are highly sensitive to changes in interest rates, such as coupon multipliers, benchmark indexes, reset dates, and embedded options, to the extent investment terms are not considered in the interest rate risk disclosure requirements of paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 40. See paragraphs 14 and 16 of GASB Statement No. 40, as amended.

Certain information about investments in external investment pools. See paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 31.

The U.S. dollar balances of deposits or investments exposed to foreign currency risk, organized by currency denomination and, if applicable, investment type. See paragraph 17 of GASB Statement No. 40.

For entities with donor-restricted endowments, disclosures about the use of investment income generated by those endowments. See paragraph 121 of GASB Statement No. 34.

For reverse repurchase agreements, whether the maturities of investments made with the proceeds of reverse repurchase agreements generally are matched to the maturities of the agreements, as well as the extent of such matching. See paragraph 6 of GASB Interpretation No. 3.

For investments arising from securities lending activities, the authority for securities lending activities and any violations, a description of the securities lending activities, whether the maturities of investments made with invested collateral generally are matched to the maturities of the securities loans, the extent of such matching, the amount of assumed credit risk, and losses arising from securities lending. See paragraphs 12–15 of GASB Statement No. 28, as amended.

**Derivatives**

15.53 A derivative instrument is a financial instrument or other contract with all three of the characteristics in the following list:

- **Settlement factors.** It has one or more reference rates and one or more notional amounts or payment provisions, or both. Those terms determine the amount of the settlement(s) and, in some cases, whether a settlement is required.

- **Leverage.** It requires no initial net investment or an initial net investment that is smaller than would be required for other types of contracts that would be expected to have a similar response to changes in market factors.
• Net settlement. Its terms require or permit net settlement, it can readily be settled net by a means outside the contract, or it provides for delivery of an asset that puts the recipient in a position not substantially different from net settlement.

15.54 GASB Statement No. 53 requires that all derivatives within its scope, including certain derivative instruments embedded in a financial instrument or other contract, be reported in the statement of net position at fair value. An exception exists to fair value measurement for fully benefit-responsive, synthetic guaranteed investment contracts; they are measured at contract value. The scope of GASB Statement No. 53 excludes derivative instruments that are normal purchases and normal sales contracts; insurance contracts accounted for under GASB Statement No. 10, as amended; certain financial guarantee contracts; certain contracts that are not exchange traded; and loan commitments. The definition of derivative and the scope of the statement are similar to that used by private-sector entities.

15.55 GASB Statement No. 53 divides derivative instruments into two types, which determines how changes in the fair value of a derivative instrument are reported, as follows:

- Hedging derivative instruments are derivative instruments associated with a hedgeable item and significantly reduce an identified financial risk by substantially offsetting changes in cash flows or fair values of that hedgeable item. Changes in fair values of hedging derivative instruments should be recognized through the application of hedge accounting, with deferred inflows of resources and deferred outflows of resources reported in the statement of net position.

- Investment derivative instruments are derivative instruments that are entered into primarily for the purpose of obtaining income or profit or a derivative instrument that does not meet, or no longer meets, the definition of a hedging derivative instrument. Changes in fair values of investment derivative instruments should be reported within investment revenue (nonoperating) in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position. See paragraph 15.49 for further discussion.

15.56 GASB Statement No. 64 provides additional guidance on determining whether a derivative continues to meet the requirements for hedge accounting in the event that the swap counterparty or swap counterparty’s credit support provider commits or experiences an act of default or termination event. GASB Statement No. 64 states that an effective hedge relationship continues when all of the following criteria are met:

a. Collectability of swap payments is considered to be probable. 30

b. The swap counterparty of the interest rate swap or commodity swap, or the swap counterparty’s credit support provider, is replaced with an assignment or in-substance assignment.

---

30 When collectability of payments is not probable, such as when a swap counterparty, or a swap counterparty’s credit support provider, has entered into bankruptcy and the swap is not collateralized or does not remain insured, an effective hedging relationship does not continue.
c. The government enters into the assignment or in-substance assignment in response to the swap counterparty, or the swap counterparty’s credit support provider, either committing or experiencing an act of default or a termination event as both are described in the swap agreement.

15.57 Paragraphs 36–62 of GASB Statement No. 53 provide guidance on methods to be used for evaluating the effectiveness of a potential hedging derivative instrument. Users of this guide should refer to GASB Statement No. 53, chapter 5 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments, and chapter 10 of the GASB Q&A for additional guidance related to these methods.

15.58 An effective hedging derivative instrument entered into in connection with issuance of debt (for example, an interest rate swap entered into in connection with issuance of municipal bonds) would not “follow the debt” for purposes of calculating components of net position, as discussed in item 10.13.9 of the GASB Q&A. Even if the debt proceeds are used for capital-related purposes, the outlays associated with a swap typically are associated with managing interest rate risk, rather than with acquiring, constructing, or improving capital assets. Because a deferred outflow of resources or a deferred inflow of resources related to a hedging derivative instrument will often be the same amount as the reported fair value of the derivative instrument itself, hedging derivatives typically will not have a significant impact on the calculation of components of net position.

15.59 A health care entity that holds derivative instruments should disclose the information required by paragraphs 69–79 of GASB Statement No. 53. Those disclosures include summary information about derivative instrument activity during the reporting period, information about the objectives for entering into hedging derivative instruments, their significant terms, contingent features of the derivative instruments, and information about the entity's exposure to various types of risk that is caused by holding derivative instruments at the end of the reporting period. Disclosures are also required for the companion instrument of any embedded derivatives and about synthetic guaranteed investment contracts.

Property and Equipment and Other Assets

15.60 The accounting requirements for capital assets and intangible assets of governmental health care entities are summarized subsequently. Accounting for supplies inventories and other assets of governmental health care entities is similar to that used by nongovernmental health care entities, as described in chapter 6, "Property and Equipment and Other Assets," of this guide.

Capital Assets—General

15.61 The primary differences related to capital assets involve impairment evaluation and financial statement display and disclosure. Capital assets are defined in paragraph 19 of GASB Statement No. 34 as "land, improvements to land, easements, buildings, building improvements, vehicles, machinery, equipment, works of art and historical treasures, infrastructure, and all other tangible or intangible assets that are used in operations and that have initial useful lives extending beyond a single reporting period." Acquired or donated
capital assets are capitalized and depreciated over their estimated useful lives. Works of art and historical treasures need not be capitalized if they are added to collections that meet the requirements of paragraph 27 of GASB Statement No. 34. Chapter 7, "Capital Assets," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments contains additional information.

15.62 If the potential exists that a capital asset has been impaired, governmental health care entities should consider the guidance in GASB Statement No. 42, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Impairment of Capital Assets and for Insurance Recoveries. These standards differ significantly from the model applied by private-sector entities for the impairment of tangible capital assets. FASB ASC 360-10-35 should not be applied by governmental health care entities. GASB Statement No. 42 establishes accounting and financial reporting standards for the impairment of capital assets, including standards for the assessment of the impairment of capital assets and the measurement of impairment. It requires the evaluation of prominent events or changes in circumstances affecting a capital asset’s use to determine whether impairment has occurred. A capital asset generally should be considered impaired if both the decline in service utility of the capital asset is large in magnitude, and the event or change in circumstances is unexpected (for example, outside the normal life cycle of the capital asset).

15.63 If the governmental health care entity will continue to use the impaired asset, it should measure the amount of impairment by one of three methods that most appropriately reflect the decline in service utility of the asset. The three methods, which are described more fully in paragraph 12 of GASB Statement No. 42, are as follows:

- The restoration cost approach, which derives the amount of the impairment from the estimated costs to restore the service utility of the capital asset
- The service units approach, which isolates the historical cost of the service utility of the capital asset that cannot be used due to the impairment event or change in circumstances
- The deflated depreciated replacement cost approach, which replicates the historical cost of the produced service

The restoration cost approach generally should be used to measure impairments resulting from physical damage. The service units approach generally should be used to measure impairments resulting from the enactment or approval of laws or regulations or other changes in environmental factors or from technological development or obsolescence. The deflated depreciated replacement cost or the service units approach generally should be used to measure impairments identified from a change in manner or duration of use. An impairment loss recognized in accordance with GASB Statement No. 42 should not be reversed in future years, even if the events or circumstances causing the impairment have changed.

15.64 Impairment losses should be reported in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position as an operating expense, special item, or extraordinary item, in accordance with the guidance in paragraphs 41–46, 55–56, and 101–102 of GASB Statement No. 34 and paragraphs 45–50 of GASB Statement No. 62. If not otherwise apparent from the face of the financial statements, a general description, the amount, and the financial statement classification of the impairment loss should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements.
financial statements. Additional guidance related to reporting impairment losses is provided in chapter Z.42 of the GASB Q&A.

**Intangible Assets Other Than Goodwill**

15.65 Many governmental health care entities have goodwill and other intangible assets. GASB Statement No. 51, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Intangible Assets*, provides guidance for accounting for intangibles other than goodwill. Accounting for goodwill is discussed in paragraph 15.68.

15.66 An intangible asset should be recognized only if it is *identifiable*, meaning that the asset either (a) is capable of being separated or divided from the governmental health care entity and sold, transferred, licensed, rented, or exchanged, either individually or together with a related contract, asset, or liability, or (b) arises from contractual or other legal rights, regardless of whether those rights are transferable or separable from the entity or other rights and obligations. Intangible assets that are internally generated are capitalized only if they meet the conditions in paragraph 8 of GASB Statement No. 51. Paragraphs 9–15 of GASB Statement No. 51 provide additional guidance for internally-generated software. GASB Statement No. 51 also provides guidance on determining the useful life of intangibles that are limited by legal or contractual provisions. Intangible assets with a finite useful life are amortized over that life. If no factors exist that indicate a limitation on the useful life of an intangible asset, the asset has an indefinite useful life. Indefinite-lived intangibles should not be amortized, unless their useful life is subsequently determined to be finite due to a change in circumstances.

15.67 GASB Statement No. 51 also considers all intangible assets within its scope to be capital assets and extends existing authoritative guidance related to the accounting and financial reporting for capital assets, such as recognition, measurement, depreciation or amortization, impairment, presentation, and disclosure, to intangible assets within its scope. Among other matters, this requires intangible assets other than goodwill to be included in the roll-forward disclosure of capital assets by major classes. See paragraph 15.77 for further discussion.

**Goodwill**

15.68 Paragraph 31 of GASB Statement No. 69 states that the acquired entity may have recognized deferred outflows of resources (or goodwill, by a nongovernmental entity) from previous acquisition transactions in which the consideration provided exceeded the net position acquired. The acquiring government should not recognize such deferred outflows of resources (or goodwill).

15.69 For acquiring governments, paragraph 32 of GASB Statement No. 69 states that they should measure the acquired assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, or deferred inflows of resources, except for balances noted in paragraphs 31 and 33–36 of GASB Statement No. 69, at acquisition value as of the acquisition date. For purposes of GASB Statement No. 69, acquisition value is a market-based entry price. An entry price is assumed to be based on an orderly transaction entered into on the acquisition date. Acquisition value represents the price that would be paid for acquiring similar assets, having similar service capacity, or discharging the liabilities assumed as of the acquisition date.
Leases

15.70 Paragraphs 211–271 of GASB Statement No. 62, as amended, provide essentially the same guidance as FASB Statement No. 13, Accounting for Leases, as amended and interpreted as of November 30, 1989, and they provide additional guidance on specific matters unique to governmental entities. GASB Statement No. 13, Accounting for Operating Leases with Scheduled Rent Increases, provides additional guidance for operating leases of governmental health care enterprises.

Service Concession Arrangements

15.71 The provisions of GASB Statement No. 13 and paragraphs 211–271 of GASB Statement No. 62 should not be applied to a service concession arrangement (SCA), which is defined in GASB Statement No. 60, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Service Concession Arrangements, as an arrangement between a transferor (government) and an operator in which all of the following criteria are met:

a. The transferor conveys to an operator the right and related obligation to provide public services through the use and operation of a capital asset (a facility) in exchange for significant consideration, such as an up-front payment, installment payments, a new facility, or improvements to an existing facility.

b. The operator collects and is compensated by fees from third parties.

c. The transferor determines or has the ability to modify or approve what services the operator is required to provide, to whom the operator is required to provide the services, and the prices or rates that can be charged for the services.

d. The transferor is entitled to significant residual interest in the service utility of the facility at the end of the arrangement.

Paragraphs 8–12 of GASB Statement No. 60 address transferor accounting and financial reporting for facilities and related payments received from an operator, and paragraphs 13–14 address governmental operator accounting and financial reporting for the right to access facilities and related payments to a transferor.

15.72 The types of entities subject to this guide may be the operator in the scenario described in GASB Statement No. 60. A governmental operator should report an intangible asset for the right to access the facility and collect third-party fees from its operation at cost (for example, the amount of an up-front payment or the cost of construction of or improvements to the facility). The cost of improvements to the facility made by the governmental operator during the term of the SCA should increase the governmental operator's intangible asset if the improvements increase the capacity or efficiency of the facility. The intangible asset should be amortized over the term of the arrangement in a systematic and rational manner.31

15.73 Some agreements require a facility to be returned in a specified condition. If information that is prominent—that is, conspicuous or known to the

---

31 The intangible assets referred to throughout GASB Statement No. 60, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Service Concession Arrangements, are not subject to the provisions of GASB Statement No. 51, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Intangible Assets, and should be reported outside of the capital asset classification.
governmental operator—indicates the facility is not in the specified condition and the cost to restore the facility to that condition is reasonably estimable, then a liability and, generally, an expense to restore the facility should be reported. Governmental operators are not required to perform additional procedures to identify potential condition deficiencies beyond those already performed as part of their normal operations or those that may be required by the agreement.

15.74 Certain disclosure requirements exist for the operator and the transferor in the SCA. These include a general description of the arrangement, including management’s objectives for entering into the arrangement, the nature and amounts of assets, liabilities and other items related to an SCA that are recognized in the financial statements; and the nature and extent of rights retained by the transferor or granted to the operator in the arrangement.

Asset Retirement and Pollution Remediation Obligations

15.75 When evaluating asset retirement and pollution remediation obligations, such as asbestos removal, governmental health care entities consider the guidance in GASB Statement No. 49, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pollution Remediation Obligations. Those standards differ significantly from the private-sector standards of FASB ASC 410, Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations. GASB Statement No. 49 provides guidance on reporting the costs of, and obligations for, pollution remediation (for example, the cleanup of pollution or asbestos contamination). GASB Statement No. 49 does not require governmental entities to search for pollution remediation obligations but, instead, sets forth triggers that would signal that a governmental entity should determine if it has to report a remediation liability.

15.76 The scope of GASB Statement No. 49 includes obligations that address the current or potential detrimental effects of existing pollution by participating in pollution remediation activities, such as obligations to clean up spills of hazardous wastes or substances and obligations to remove contamination, such as asbestos. The scope of GASB Statement No. 49 excludes pollution prevention or control obligations with respect to current operations. It also excludes future pollution remediation activities that are required upon retirement of an asset, such as landfill closure and postclosure care and nuclear power plant decommissioning. However, GASB Statement No. 49 applies to activities at the retirement of an asset if an obligating event occurs, and pollution-related asset retirement obligations have not been previously recognized.

Disclosures

15.77 Governmental standards require specific disclosures pertaining to capital assets, as follows:

- The policy for capitalizing assets and estimating the useful lives of those assets in the entity's summary of significant accounting policies. See paragraph 115(e) of GASB Statement No. 34.
- A general description of the method(s) used to compute depreciation with respect to major classes of depreciable assets. See paragraph 95 of GASB Statement No. 62.
- Information about major classes of capital assets presented in a roll-forward format, including beginning and ending balances, capital acquisitions, sales or other dispositions, current period
depreciation expense, and accumulated depreciation. Intangible assets, if any, should be included in this disclosure as a major class(es) of capital assets. See paragraphs 116–117 and 120 of GASB Statement No. 34 and item Z.51.29 of the GASB Q&A.

- If significant, capital assets that are not being depreciated, including construction in progress, should be reported on the face of the statement of net position separately from capital assets being depreciated. These two categories of capital assets should also be disclosed separately in the roll-forward disclosure. See paragraph 20 of GASB Statement No. 34.

- Construction commitments. See paragraph 158 of National Council on Governmental Accounting (NCGA) Statement No. 1, Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles, as amended, and paragraph 4 of NCGA Interpretation No. 6, Notes to the Financial Statements Disclosure.


- If not otherwise apparent from the face of the financial statements, a general description, the amount, and the financial statement classification of capital asset impairment losses. See paragraph 17 of GASB Statement No. 42.

- The carrying amount of impaired capital assets that are idle at year-end, if any, regardless of whether the impairment is considered permanent or temporary. See paragraph 20 of GASB Statement No. 42.

Municipal Bond Financing and Other Long-Term Debt

15.78 Like NFP health care entities, governmental health care entities typically finance their acquisitions, additions, and renovations with tax-exempt debt. Thus, many of the general considerations discussed in chapter 7, "Municipal Bond Financing," of this guide will also apply to governmental health care entities. The primary differences arise with respect to measurement and disclosure; when they exist, such differences are highlighted in the discussion that follows.

15.79 In accordance with paragraph 42 of NCGA Statement No. 1, as amended, when a financing authority issues tax-exempt bonds or similar debt instruments and uses the proceeds for the benefit of a governmental health care entity, the obligation is reported as a liability in the health care entity's statement of net position if the health care entity is responsible for repayment. In some cases, this obligation may take the form of a liability arising from a capital lease. If a health care entity has no obligation to make payments of principal and interest on the debt or capital or operating lease payments on related buildings or equipment (for example, if general obligation debt is issued on behalf of the governmental enterprise), the health care entity should not reflect the liability on its statement of net position. In those circumstances, proceeds from the bond issue are reported as contributions from the sponsoring government.\(^{33}\)

---

\(^{32}\) See item 7.11.1 of the GASB Q&A.

\(^{33}\) This requirement is established by this guide and is category (b) of the governmental GAAP hierarchy. See paragraph 15.05 for additional discussion.
Among the many provisions normally included in the bond indentures of tax-exempt issues are the requirements to annually set aside funds from operations to ensure that bond principal and interest payments and other requirements are met. Cash, cash equivalents, and investments that can only be used to pay debt principal and interest would be reported as restricted assets, as discussed in paragraph 15.35. The classification of net position relating to assets set aside based on the requirements of debt-financing instruments is discussed in items 7.24.1, 7.24.2, 7.24.7, and 7.24.25 of the GASB Q&A and paragraphs 15.110–.117. The restricted component of net position represents restricted assets reduced by liabilities related to those assets plus or minus any associated deferred inflows or outflows of resources; thus, the residual of assets restricted to debt service less the related debt plus or minus any associated deferred inflows of resources or deferred outflows of resources is included in the restricted component of net position. This differs from the financial reporting requirements applicable to NFP health care entities under which such resources are part of the entity's unrestricted net assets, unless restricted by a donor for debt service, and the related assets generally are reported as assets whose use is limited.

Debt Defeasance and Extinguishment

GASB Statement No. 7, Advance Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt, and No. 23, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Refundings of Debt Reported by Proprietary Activities, as amended, provide accounting and financial reporting guidance for refundings that result in the defeasance of debt. In a refunding, a government issues new debt to finance the repayment of previously-issued (old) debt. The repayment of the old debt may either be immediate (a current refunding) or at some future time (an advance refunding).

An advance refunding may defease the old debt, either legally or in substance, as described in paragraphs 3–4 of GASB Statement No. 7, as amended. A legal defeasance occurs when debt is legally satisfied based on certain provisions in the debt instrument, even though the debt is not actually paid. In-substance defeasance occurs if the government irrevocably places cash or other qualifying assets with an escrow agent in a trust to be used solely to satisfy scheduled interest and principal payments of the debt, and the possibility that the government will be required to make future payments on the debt is remote. When debt is defeased, neither that liability nor the escrowed assets are reported in the financial statements; only the new debt is reported. That accounting is different in the private sector. Private-sector standards require the debt to be reported as a liability until it is legally defeased.

GASB Statement No. 23, as amended by GASB Statement No. 65, requires that the difference between the reacquisition price and net carrying amount of the old debt should be reported as a deferred inflow of resources or a deferred outflow of resources and recognized as a component of interest expense in a systematic and rational manner over the remaining life of the old debt or the life of the new debt, whichever is shorter. GASB Statement No. 23 provides additional standards for debt that refunds previous refunding debt.

Paragraphs 124–127 of GASB Statement No. 62 require that a gain or loss in the period of extinguishment be recognized if debt is extinguished.

See paragraph 4 of GASB Statement No. 7, Advance Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt.
by means other than defeasance in a current or an advanced refunding or a troubled debt restructuring.\textsuperscript{35} The gain or loss should be identified as a separate item in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position. That accounting and reporting is similar to the private-sector standards of FASB ASC 470-50-40.

**Debt Issuance Costs**

15.85 Paragraph 187 of GASB Statement No. 62, as amended by GASB Statement No. 65, establishes standards of accounting and financial reporting for debt issuance costs. Paragraph 12 of GASB Statement No. 7 indicates that debt issuance costs include all costs incurred to issue the bonds, including but not limited to insurance costs (net of rebates from the old debt, if any), financing costs (such as rating agency fees), and other related costs (such as printing, legal, administrative, and trustee expenses). Debt issuance costs, except any portion related to prepaid insurance costs, should be recognized as an expense in the period incurred. Prepaid insurance costs should be reported as an asset and recognized as an expense in a systematic and rational manner over the duration of the related debt.

**Disclosures**

15.86 GASB standards require certain disclosures about debt, including the following:

- Information about long-term debt, such as bonds payable, including beginning and ending balances, increases, decreases, and the portions of each item that are due within one year. See paragraphs 116 and 119–120 of GASB Statement No. 34.

- Debt service requirements to maturity presented separately for each of the five subsequent years and in five-year increments thereafter. Principal and interest requirements are required to be disclosed separately. Similar requirements apply to obligations under capital leases and noncancelable operating leases. See paragraphs 10–11 of GASB Statement No. 38.

- For governmental health care entities with conduit debt obligations, a general description of the conduit debt transactions, the aggregate amount of all conduit debt obligations outstanding at the financial statement date, and a clear indication that the entity has no obligation for the debt beyond the resources provided by related leases or loans. See paragraph 3 of GASB Interpretation No. 2, *Disclosure of Conduit Debt Obligations—an interpretation of NCGA Statement 1.*

- Disclosures about short-term debt activity during the year, even if no short-term debt is outstanding at year-end. For this purpose, short-term debt consists of anticipation notes, use of lines of credit, and similar loans. Disclosures should include a schedule of changes in short-term debt, as well as a discussion of the purposes for which short-term debt was issued. See paragraph 12 of GASB Statement No. 38.

\textsuperscript{35} A debtor applies paragraphs 128–148 of GASB Statement No. 62 if debt is extinguished in a troubled debt restructuring. That accounting and reporting is similar to the private-sector standards of FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 470-60.
• Disclosure of actions taken to remedy significant violations of finance-related legal or contractual provisions. See paragraph 9 of GASB Statement No. 38.

• In all periods following an advance refunding during which debt that was defeased in substance remains outstanding, governments should disclose the outstanding amount of that debt, if any, at the financial statement date. See paragraph 14 of GASB Statement No. 7.

• The following disclosures are required for all defeasances in the year of refunding: (a) a general description of the transaction, (b) the difference between the cash flow required to service the old debt and the cash flow required to service the new debt and complete the refunding, and (c) the economic gain or loss resulting from the transaction. These are similar to disclosures required of private-sector entities. Paragraph 11 of GASB Statement No. 7 provides guidance on the various measures needed for those disclosures.

Contingencies and Other Liabilities

Insurance-Related Contingencies

15.87 Governmental health care entities are generally exposed to the same risks of loss that are described in chapter 8, "Contingencies and Other Liabilities," of this guide. The most common losses arise from medical malpractice, worker's compensation, and medical benefits provided to employees. GASB has issued standards that governmental health care entities should apply in accounting for insurance-related contingencies (primarily GASB Statement No. 10, as amended). Paragraphs 52–80 of GASB Statement No. 10 apply to health care entities and include the following standards:

• General principles for recognition, measurement, and disclosure of claims liabilities (paragraphs 52–58), which are discussed in paragraph 15.88

• Incurred but not reported losses (paragraph 56 and footnote 5), which are recognized if the loss can be reasonably estimated, and it is probable that a claim will be asserted

• Discounting of claims liabilities (paragraphs 59–60), which is neither mandated nor prohibited

• Annuity contracts purchased to satisfy a claim liability (paragraph 61)

• Investments that are separately maintained for risk financing (paragraph 62), which are accounted for in the same manner as all other investments, as discussed in paragraphs 15.38–.59

• Participation in a public-entity risk pool (paragraphs 69–71), which is discussed in paragraph 15.91

• Claims-made policies (paragraph 72), which are discussed in paragraph 15.89

• Retrospectively-rated policies and contracts (paragraph 73–74), which are discussed in paragraph 15.90

• Disclosures (paragraphs 77–80)
General Principles for Recognition, Measurement, and Disclosure of Contingencies

15.88 The recognition and measurement requirements in paragraphs 53–56 and the disclosure requirements in paragraph 58 of GASB Statement No. 10 are primarily those of FASB Statement No. 5, *Accounting for Contingencies*, and FASB Interpretation No. 14, *Reasonable Estimation of the Amount of a Loss—an interpretation of FASB Statement No. 5*, which are included in FASB ASC 450-20. Therefore, much of the insurance-related guidance in chapter 8 of this guide applies to governmental health care entities. However, recognition and measurement of claims liabilities differ because GASB Statement No. 10 looks to whether risk has, in fact, been transferred when determining whether to recognize a loss. An estimated loss from a claim is reported as an expense and a liability if risk has not been transferred to an unrelated third party, and claims expenses and liabilities should be reduced by amounts expected to be recovered through insurance. Private-sector standards require that the amount of a contingency be determined independently from any potential claim for recovery and that possible insurance recoveries be reported separately as assets.

Claims-Made Policies

15.89 Paragraph 72 of GASB Statement No. 10 states that a claims-made policy represents a transfer of risk within the policy limits for incidents reported to the insurer. Consequently, a health care entity should account for the estimated cost of claims and incidents that are not reported to the insurer, unless the entity has purchased tail coverage and included the cost of the premium or required contribution as an expense for the period. This accounting is similar to the private-sector standards described in paragraphs 8.34–36 of this guide, except that amounts recoverable through insurance reduce the liability, rather than being reported as a receivable.

Retrospectively-Rated Policies and Contracts

15.90 Paragraph 73 of GASB Statement No. 10 states that an entity with a retrospectively-rated policy or contract whose ultimate premium or required contribution is based on the entity’s loss experience should account for the minimum premium as an expense over the period of coverage and accrue estimated losses from reported and unreported claims in excess of the minimum premium. However, losses should not be accrued in excess of the stipulated maximum premium or contribution requirement. If the entity cannot estimate those losses, the entity should disclose the contingency, in accordance with paragraph 58 of GASB Statement No. 10. Paragraph 74 of GASB Statement No. 10 provides guidance when the premium or contribution amount is based on the experience of a group of entities.

Participation in Public-Entity Risk Pools

15.91 GASB Statement No. 10 specifically addresses situations in which governmental health care entities participate in risk-financing programs sponsored by other governments (for example, a public-entity risk pool). That guidance is summarized as follows. A governmental health care entity that participates in a public-entity risk pool in which risk is transferred or pooled with...
other entities should present its premium or required contribution as insurance expense, as discussed in paragraphs 69–70 of GASB Statement No. 10. Entities that participate in public-entity risk pools that do not involve transfer or pooling of risk should report payments made to pools as deposits and recognize and measure claims liabilities, in accordance with paragraphs 53–58 of GASB Statement No. 10, as discussed in paragraph 15.87. Governmental health care entities that are component units of a state or local governmental reporting entity and participate in that entity’s risk-financing internal-service fund should report the charges from the internal service fund as claims expenses if those charges meet the requirements of paragraphs 65–68 of GASB Statement No. 10.

**Irrevocable Self-Insurance Trusts**

15.92 The risk-financing techniques of some governmental health care entities include risk retention (sometimes referred to as self-insurance). A governmental health care entity that has not transferred risk to a third party should evaluate its exposure to losses arising from all claims and incidents and recognize liabilities and expenses, in accordance with paragraphs 53–56 of GASB Statement No. 10. Assets that have been contributed to irrevocable self-insurance trusts are reported as restricted assets, such as assets limited regarding use or otherwise segregated, in its statement of net position. This restricted classification is due to the limited use of the funds as defined in the trust fund document and the fact that the funds are not available to finance other activities of the government. A governmental health care entity would also report restricted net position to the extent that the assets exceed the associated self-insured liability and will be used to liquidate the liability. See paragraph 15.114 for a discussion on calculating restricted net position. Private-sector NFP health care entities report the net assets related to the excess of self-insurance assets over related liabilities in unrestricted net assets because the limitations on use are not imposed by a donor.

**Physician Guarantees and Other Agreements**

15.93 Risk of loss due to guarantees, including guarantees of the indebtedness of others in an exchange or exchange-like transaction, should be evaluated by applying the loss contingency standards in paragraphs 96–113 of GASB Statement No. 62. The private-sector standards for guarantees, including indirect guarantees of indebtedness of others and minimum revenue guarantees, in FASB ASC 460-10 conflict with the requirements of NCGA Statement No. 4, *Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles for Claims and Judgments and Compensated Absences*, as amended, and, therefore, should not be applied by governmental health care entities.

**Nonexchange Financial Guarantees**

15.94 GASB Statement No. 70 applies to governmental entities that enter into nonexchange financial guarantees in which they extend or receive financial guarantees on obligations of other entities without receiving or paying equivalent value for the guarantees. It establishes accounting standards for the recognition, measurement, and disclosures of nonexchange financial guarantees.

15.95 The guarantor should recognize a liability if it is more likely than not that payment will be required. The liability should be measured at the best estimate of the discounted present value of the future outflows expected
to be incurred. If an estimate cannot reasonably be determined but there is a range, the liability should be measured at the minimum amount of that range. An entity released as an obligor in a nonexchange financial guarantee should recognize revenue.

15.96 GASB Statement No. 70 requires certain disclosures in accordance with paragraphs 14–17 by type of guarantee. Type of guarantee is determined by using professional judgment.

**Other Contingencies**

15.97 Governmental health care entities are also exposed to loss contingencies that are outside the scope of GASB Statement No. 10. The criteria in paragraphs 96–113 of GASB Statement No. 62 are used as guidelines for recognizing certain liabilities that arise from loss contingencies, including collectability of receivables; agreements to repurchase receivables (or the related property) that have been sold; and breach of contract or similar actions, such as claims for delays or inadequate specifications on contracts or guarantees of the indebtedness of others in an exchange or exchange-like transaction, property tax appeals, and unemployment compensation claims. Those criteria are similar to the private-sector standards in FASB ASC 450-20.

**Compensation and Related Benefits**

15.98 GASB pronouncements require governmental health care entities to present information related to compensation and related benefits beyond or different from that presented by NFP and investor-owned entities. The primary standards related to compensation and employee benefits are highlighted subsequently. Chapter 8 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* contains more expansive discussions of these standards.

**Pensions**

© Update 15-3 Accounting and Reporting: Pensions of State and Local Governmental Employers

GASB Statement No. 68, issued in June 2012, is effective for periods beginning after June 15, 2014. Earlier application is encouraged. GASB Statement No. 68 includes transition provisions regarding accounting changes and the presentation of information in schedules of RSI.

GASB Statement No. 68 replaces the requirements of GASB Statement Nos. 27 and 50 as they relate to pensions that are provided through pension plans administered as trusts or equivalent arrangements (hereafter jointly referred to as trusts) that meet certain criteria. The requirements of GASB Statement Nos. 27 and 50 remain applicable for pensions that are not covered by the scope of this statement. GASB Statement No. 68 establishes standards for measuring and recognizing liabilities, deferred outflows of resources, deferred inflows of resources, and expenses and expenditures related to pensions. For defined benefit pensions, this statement identifies the methods and assumptions that should be used to project benefit payments, discount projected

---

benefit payments to their actuarial present value, and attribute that present value to periods of employee service.

For more information about the effects of GASB Statement No. 68 upon its implementation, a summary of this statement is included in section A.03 in appendix A. The full text of the statement is available on GASB's website at www.gasb.org. In addition, the GAQC website includes "GASB Matters," a resource page dedicated to the implementation of GASB Statement Nos. 67 and 68. Recently issued pension-related auditing interpretations and other valuable resources are available at www.aicpa.org/INTERESTAREAS/GOVERNMENTALAUDITQUALITY/RESOURCES/GASBMATTERS/Pages/default.aspx.

© Update 15-4 Accounting and Reporting: Pensions of State and Local Government Employers

GASB Statement No. 71, issued in November 2013, is effective simultaneously with the provisions of GASB Statement No. 68.

At the beginning of the period in which the provisions of GASB Statement No. 68 are adopted, there may be circumstances in which it is not practical for a government to determine the amounts of all applicable deferred inflows of resources and deferred outflows of resources related to pensions. In such circumstances, the government should recognize a beginning deferred outflow of resources only for its pension contributions, if any, made subsequent to the measurement date of the beginning net pension liability but before the start of the government's fiscal year. Additionally, in those circumstances, no beginning balances for other deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions should be recognized.

For more information about the effects of GASB Statement No. 71 upon its implementation, a summary of this statement is included in section A.04 in appendix A. The full text of the statement is available on GASB's website at www.gasb.org.

15.99 Governmental health care entities follow GASB Statement No. 27, as amended; GASB Statement No. 50; and GASB Technical Bulletin (TB) 2004-2, Recognition of Pension and Other Postemployment Benefit Expenditures/Expense and Liabilities by Cost-Sharing Employers, for accounting and financial reporting of pension expenses and related assets and liabilities. Chapter 5 of the GASB Q&A provides implementation guidance for pensions.

15.100 GASB Statement No. 27, as amended, has accounting and reporting requirements for multiple-employer cost-sharing defined benefit and defined contribution plans that are similar to those for private-sector health care entities. The principal measurement differences between the standards for governmental and nongovernmental entities relate to accounting for single employer and agent multiple-employer defined benefit plans. GASB Statement No. 27, as amended, requires the measurement of employer pension expense based on funding requirements whereas private-sector standards require a standardized measure of employer net periodic pension cost. Under GASB Statement No. 27, as amended, the over- or underfunded status of a plan is disclosed in the notes to the financial statements and not recognized an asset or liability, respectively.
Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions and Termination Benefits—Employer Accounting

15.101 GASB Statement No. 45, as amended, provides guidance on employer accounting and financial reporting for OPEB. OPEB include postemployment health care benefits (such as illness, dental, vision, and hearing), even if those benefits are provided through a pension plan. OPEB also includes, for example, life insurance, disability income, tuition assistance, legal services, and other assistance programs unless the benefits are provided through a defined benefit pension plan. Employers may or may not advance-fund OPEB by setting aside assets on an actuarially determined or other basis to pay future benefits as they become due.

15.102 The approach used in GASB Statement No. 45 generally is consistent with the approach used for pensions in GASB Statement No. 27, as amended, with appropriate modifications to reflect differences between OPEB and pension benefits. GASB Statement No. 45 requires systematic, accrual-basis measurement and recognition of OPEB cost over a period that approximates employees' years of service. GASB Statement No. 45 also requires information related to the funded status of the plan to be presented in the notes and RSI, not reflected on the face of the statement of net position as a liability or an asset. Chapter 8 of the GASB Q&A provides additional guidance on GASB Statement No. 45.

15.103 Employers that provide postretirement prescription drug coverage benefits may receive federal subsidy payments related to Medicare Part D prescription drug coverage. Governmental health care entities should account for those payments as a voluntary nonexchange transaction received based on the requirements of GASB TB No. 2006-1, Accounting and Financial Reporting by Employers and OPEB Plans for Payments from the Federal Government Pursuant to the Retiree Drug Subsidy Provisions of Medicare Part D. That accounting is different in the private sector. Private-sector health care entities net the subsidy payments against the related OPEB costs and liabilities.

Sabbaticals and Other Compensated Absences

15.104 Compensated absences, such as holidays, vacations, sick leave, and sabbaticals, should be accounted for in accordance with GASB Statement No. 16, Accounting for Compensated Absences. The underlying concepts of GASB Statement No. 16 are similar to those of FASB ASC 710-10 for compensated absences, with some differences, such as the following:

- GASB Statement No. 16 does not require accrual prior to the occurrence of the illness, unless it is probable that the employer will compensate the employee for unused sick leave or similar benefits with cash payment at termination or retirement. FASB ASC 710-10-25 addresses sick leave in the context of the vesting of sick leave benefits; it does not require the accrual of a liability for nonvesting rights to receive sick pay.

- GASB Statement No. 16 requires accrual of payments that an employer expects to make that will be directly and incrementally associated with payments made for compensated absences at termination or retirement, such as FICA or Medicare tax. FASB ASC 710-10 has no similar requirement.
- GASB Statement No. 16 mandates the use of certain rates of pay for calculating the liability, and it limits the liability to amounts that employers will pay at termination or retirement. FASB ASC 710-10 has no similar requirement.

**Termination Benefits and Restructuring Costs**

15.105 GASB Statement No. 47, *Accounting for Termination Benefits*, establishes accounting standards for the measurement, recognition, and disclosures of voluntary and involuntary termination benefits. Section Z.47 of the GASB Q&A provides additional helpful guidance. To date, this is the only guidance that GASB has issued on accounting for costs associated with exit or disposal activities. Thus, the accounting for exit and disposal activities by governmental entities differs from the accounting in FASB ASC 420, *Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations*, which is used by private-sector entities.

**Tax Considerations**

15.106 Health care entities owned and operated by a state or local government typically are exempt from federal income tax, pursuant to IRC Section 115, and also are exempt from the federal income tax filing requirements. Such entities are exempt not only from regular federal income tax but also from the tax on unrelated business income. If a health care entity is owned and operated by a separately-constituted authority or other legal entity, the entity's management should consider whether such authority or other legal entity is properly organized to preserve qualification of the tax exemption, pursuant to IRC Section 115.

15.107 In some cases, state or local governmental entities will secure tax-exempt status as an IRC Section 501(c)(3) organization. If such an exemption is secured, the entity may become subject to federal unrelated business income tax and filing requirements on the same basis as other tax-exempt entities, as discussed in chapter 8 of this guide.

**Disclosures**

15.108 Paragraph 3 of GASB Statement No. 10 and NCGA Statement No. 4, as amended, require various disclosures related to claims and judgments. Paragraphs 116 and 119–120 of GASB Statement No. 34 require disclosure of certain information related to liabilities associated with claims and judgments. These include beginning and ending liability balances, increases, decreases, and the portion that is expected to be due within one year.

15.109 GASB standards require certain disclosures related to other liabilities, including the following:

- Detailed disclosures about accounts payable balances when significant components of those balances have been obscured by aggregation. See paragraph 13 of GASB Statement No. 38.
- Information about long-term operating liabilities, such as compensated absences and claims and judgments, including beginning and ending balances, increases, decreases, and the portions

---

38 This is sometimes done to facilitate fundraising because IRC Section 501(c)(3) status assures potential donors that their contributions will be tax deductible.
of each item that are due within one year. See paragraphs 116 and 119–120 of GASB Statement No. 34.

- Disclosures about pension benefits\(^{39}\) provided to employees of governmental health care entities.
- Disclosures about other postemployment benefits. See paragraphs 24–27 and 34 of GASB Statement No. 45.
- Disclosures about termination benefits. See paragraphs 18–21 of GASB Statement No. 47.
- Disclosure of actions taken to remedy significant violations of finance-related legal or contractual provisions. See paragraph 9 of GASB Statement No. 38.

### Net Position

15.110 GASB Statement No. 34, as amended, establishes requirements for reporting net position that differ in several respects from the requirements for NFP health care entities. Under GASB Statement No. 34, net position is reported in three components: restricted (distinguishing between major categories of restrictions); net investment in capital assets; and unrestricted. When a portion of restricted net position is required to be retained in perpetuity or minority interest in a component unit exists, restricted net position should be displayed in two additional components: expendable and nonexpendable.\(^{40}\)

15.111 The unrestricted component is the residual category of net position. It includes all assets, deferred outflows of resources, liabilities, and deferred inflows of resources that are not included in the determination of the net investment in capital assets or the restricted components of net position. The unrestricted component of net position is available to finance day-to-day operations free of constraints imposed by debt covenants, donor restrictions, irrevocable trusts, and so on. Assets that are board- or management-designated for specific purposes are reported in this component.\(^{41}\)

15.112 The net investment in capital assets component is not used by NFP health care entities. As discussed in paragraph 9 of GASB Statement No. 63, this component represents the sum of capital assets shown in the statement of net position (net of accumulated depreciation) less any related debt used to finance those assets (for example, the outstanding balances of any bonds, mortgages, notes, or other borrowings that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets). Deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources that are attributable to the acquisition, construction, or improvement of those assets or related debt also should be included in this component of net position. If capital debt exceeds the carrying value of capital assets, a negative amount should be reported, as discussed in

---

\(^{39}\) GASB Statement No. 68, *Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 27*, replaces the requirements of GASB Statement No. 27, *Accounting for Pensions by State and Local Governmental Employers*, as well as the requirements of GASB Statement No. 50, *Pension Disclosures*, as they relate to pensions that are provided through pension plans administered as trusts or equivalent arrangements (hereafter jointly referred to as trusts) that meet certain criteria. The requirements of GASB Statement Nos. 27 and 50 remain applicable for pensions that are not covered by the scope of GASB Statement No. 68.

\(^{40}\) See paragraph 35 of GASB Statement No. 34, as amended.

\(^{41}\) However, these designations should not be displayed on the face of the statement of net position. See paragraph 15.119.
item 7.23.9 of the GASB Q&A. Paragraph 15.114 provides additional guidance about calculating the amount of the net investment in capital assets component of net position.

15.113 Governmental-restricted net position differs in several respects from the restricted net assets reported by NFP health care entities. First, GASB’s definition of restricted is broader. In the NFP sector, restrictions relate solely to limitations imposed by donors or grantors. In the governmental sector, restrictions arise from constraints on the use of assets that are imposed (a) by external parties (for example, creditors, grantors, and contributors) or laws or regulations of other governments or (b) by law through constitutional provisions or enabling legislation. Thus, in addition to resources restricted for purposes identified by donors and grantors, governmental-restricted net position includes restricted assets, as discussed in paragraph 15.35, such as unexpended debt proceeds held by trustees, bond sinking and debt service reserve funds, assets set aside to meet statutory reserve requirements, and assets held in irrevocable malpractice self-insurance trusts. The underlying concept is that the government itself cannot unilaterally establish a restriction, except by enabling legislation, and cannot remove a restriction, except by fulfilling it. Thus, board designations on the use of assets are not restrictions. Under GASB Statement No. 34, assets and net position are reported as restricted until the resources have been used for the specified purpose or, in the case of time requirements, as long as the resource provider requires (for example, in perpetuity).

15.114 Another difference is that GASB focuses on identifying specific assets that are restricted, along with any related liabilities; thus, restricted net position represents restricted assets reduced by the liabilities related to those assets and associated deferred inflows or outflows of resources, if any. In NFP reporting, the concept of restriction focuses on a donor's restriction of the use of net assets versus restricting specific assets, as discussed in paragraph 9.08 of this guide. Item 7.24.7 of the GASB Q&A states that generally, a liability relates to restricted assets if the asset results from incurring the liability, or the liability will be liquidated with the restricted assets. For example, unexpended debt proceeds that must be used to acquire or construct capital assets are restricted assets, and the portion of the debt attributable to the unexpended proceeds is a related liability that should be offset, if significant, in calculating restricted net position. If a bond indenture requires a portion of the proceeds to be used to establish a reserve for the payment of principal and interest, the assets of the reserve account are restricted assets, and the portion of debt related to the establishment of the reserve is included in the calculation of restricted net position. However, some exceptions exist. If, for example, a bond sinking fund contains assets held in trust that are restricted for principal and interest payments on capital-related debt, the capital-related debt would not be offset against the restricted sinking fund assets in calculating restricted net position. Instead, it is required to be netted against the capital assets that

42 See paragraphs 34–35 of GASB Statement No. 34.
43 See GASB Statement No. 46, Net Assets Restricted by Enabling Legislation—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 34.
44 See item 7.23.2 of the GASB Q&A.
45 See item 7.24.25 of the GASB Q&A.
were financed with the debt in calculating the net investment in capital assets component of net position.46

15.115 To determine the amount reported in the restricted component of net position, the financial statement preparer first compares individual restricted asset line items with their related liabilities and then aggregates the results. If any deferred inflows of resources relate to those restricted assets, they are also included in this calculation. In comparing individual restricted asset line items with related liabilities, negative amounts should never be reported.47 If liabilities that relate to specific restricted assets exceed those assets, the net position balance for that line item would be zero, and the deficit would reduce the unrestricted net position component.

15.116 Financial reporting of permanently-restricted net position is another area where GASB and FASB standards differ. When a portion of restricted net position is required to be retained in perpetuity, restricted net position should be subdivided into expendable and nonexpendable components. In the governmental sector, restricted nonexpendable net position should represent the reported amount of restricted assets (typically endowments) subject to a donor-imposed time requirement that they be invested and reinvested in perpetuity less any related liabilities. If no related liabilities exist, then the amount of restricted nonexpendable net position equals the value of the restricted investments, even if that value has fallen below the amount of the original gift.48 This differs from the NFP reporting model that focuses on maintaining permanently-restricted net position at the amount determined at the time of the original gift (see paragraphs 9.26–.32 of this guide). In calculating net position balances associated with permanent endowments, care should be exercised to appropriately reflect the expendable and nonexpendable components if endowment assets include both corpus and spendable accumulated net appreciation (for example, nonexpendable restricted assets are commingled with spendable restricted assets).

15.117 GASB’s guidance related to the calculations of the components of net position is prescriptive, and care should be employed when linking liabilities or deferred inflows to specific restricted or capital assets for purposes of calculating the components. Chapter 7 of the GASB Q&A contains guidance regarding the GASB staff’s views on how the standards should be applied in various scenarios.

**Financial Reporting**

15.118 Restricted assets are not required to be labeled as restricted on the statement of net position, as long as the descriptions used on the face of the statement of net position make it clear that such assets cannot be used to satisfy liabilities or purposes other than those that are specifically intended to be satisfied with the restricted assets (see paragraph 15.118). The supporting details of restricted net position (for example, major categories of restrictions) should be displayed on the face of the statement of net position; note disclosure is not an acceptable alternative.49 NFP health care entities are permitted to

---

46 See item 7.24.2 of the GASB Q&A.
47 See item 7.24.13 of the GASB Q&A.
48 See items 7.24.14, 7.24.29, 7.24.30, and 7.24.31 of the GASB Q&A.
49 See item 7.22.8 of the GASB Q&A.
Health Care Entities

provide that information in either the notes to the financial statements or on the face of the balance sheet.

Paragraphs 37 and 98 of GASB Statement No. 34, as amended, prohibit reporting internal designations of net position separately within unrestricted net position on the face of the statement of net position but allow disclosure in the notes to the financial statements. Designations are management's plans for the use of resources, which should not be afforded the same status as restrictions. No prohibition exists against displaying the associated designated assets (for example, investments set aside for future expansion or quasi-endowment) on the face of the statement of net position. NFP health care entities are permitted to display designations within unrestricted net position on the face of the balance sheet or in the notes.

Health Care Service Revenue and Receivables

As discussed in chapter 10, "Health Care Service Revenue and Related Receivables," of this guide, under most third-party payor arrangements, governmental health care entities receive payment amounts that are less than their full established rates. The amount paid may be based on government regulations, such as Medicare, Medicaid, and other government programs, or contractual arrangements, such as PPOs, Blue Cross and Blue Shield plans, HMOs, and commercial insurers. Under this guide, provisions recognizing contractual and other adjustments are recorded on an accrual basis and deducted from gross service revenue to determine net service revenue. Charity care represents health care services that are provided but never expected to result in cash flows; therefore, charity care does not qualify for recognition as revenue. For financial reporting purposes, gross service revenue does not include charity care, and net service revenue is reported net of contractual and other adjustments in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position.50

Footnote 41 to paragraph 100 of GASB Statement No. 34 states "[r]evenues should be reported net of discounts and allowances with the discount or allowance amount parenthetically disclosed on the face of the statement or in a note to the financial statements. Alternatively, revenues may be reported gross, with the related discounts and allowances reported directly beneath the revenue amount." For purposes of that display and disclosure, discounts and allowances include the difference between a health care provider's full established rates and its negotiated or contractual payment amounts previously described. However, allowances, as used in footnote 41, also include increases or decreases in the estimate of uncollectible accounts. As a result, the financial statements of governmental health care entities display changes in the estimate of uncollectible accounts differently from the display of similar amounts in financial statements of private-sector entities. Governmental health care entities report those amounts as a deduction from revenue. Private-sector entities report them as bad debt expense or as a deduction from patient service revenue if the entity recognizes significant amounts of patient service revenue at the time services are rendered even though it does not assess the patient's ability to pay, as discussed in paragraphs 10.34–.36 of this guide.

Governmental health care entities that enter into arrangements in which they finance or sell their patient accounts receivable as a cash flow

\[ ^{50} \text{See footnote 33.} \]
management strategy apply criteria in GASB Statement No. 48, *Sales and Pledges of Receivables and Future Revenues and Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets and Future Revenues*, in determining when transactions should be reported as a collateralized borrowing or sale. Determining whether a transaction should be reported as a sale, rather than a collateralized borrowing, requires an assessment of a government's continuing involvement with the receivables or future transferred revenues. A significant aspect of that assessment is the degree to which the selling or pledging government (the transferor) retains or relinquishes to the transferee control over the receivables or future transferred revenues. FASB ASC 860 should not be applied as other accounting literature by governmental health care entities because it conflicts with GASB Statement No. 48.

15.123 Governmental health care entities are required to disclose certain information about revenue and receivables, as follows:

- The accounting policies used for recognizing revenues, as discussed in paragraph 69 of NCGA Statement No. 1 and paragraphs 90–94 of GASB Statement No. 62.
- The policy for defining operating and nonoperating revenues, as discussed in paragraphs 102 and 115 of GASB Statement No. 34.
- Information about specific revenues pledged to collateralize or secure debt, as discussed in paragraph 21 of GASB Statement No. 48.
- Detailed disclosures about receivable balances when significant components of those receivables have been obscured by aggregation, as discussed in paragraph 13 of GASB Statement No. 38.
- Separate disclosure of significant receivable balances not expected to be collected within one year of the statement of net position date, as discussed in paragraph 13 of GASB Statement No. 38.
- The allowance for estimated uncollectible receivables should be disclosed on the face of the financial statement either parenthetically or as a separate line item or in the notes to the financial statements, as discussed in paragraph 33 of GASB Statement No. 62.
- Management's policy for providing charity care, as well as the level of charity care provided, measured based on the governmental health care entity's costs, units of service, or other statistical measure.\(^{51}\) Private-sector health care entities disclose the information in paragraph 10.28 of this guide.

Chapter 6, "Revenues and Receivables," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* contains additional guidance on accounting, financial reporting, and auditing considerations related to revenue and receivables.

**Contributions and Other Nonexchange Transactions**

15.124 Governmental health care entities may receive contributions, grants, or tax support in transactions with no direct and equivalent exchange

\(^{51}\) See footnote 33.
of value with the resource provider. Governmental health care entities follow GASB Statement No. 33, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Nonexchange Transactions, as amended, which establishes accounting and financial reporting standards for the recognition of nonexchange transactions involving financial or capital resources.

15.125 Nonexchange transactions are classified into one of four classes based on their principal characteristics, as discussed in paragraph 7 of GASB Statement No. 33. Most contributions and grants received by governmental health care entities are classified as voluntary nonexchange transactions. Revenue from voluntary nonexchange transactions should be recognized when all applicable eligibility requirements have been met. Eligibility requirements comprise one or more of the following:

- Required characteristics of recipients
- Time requirements
- Reimbursements
- Contingencies

Detailed guidance on the application of eligibility requirements is provided in paragraphs 20–26 of GASB Statement No. 33.

15.126 Voluntary nonexchange transactions may be received with associated time or purpose restrictions. As discussed in paragraph 14 of GASB Statement No. 33, purpose restrictions imposed on nonexchange revenues, such as grants, contributions, and endowments, do not affect when revenues are recognized. Rather, resulting net position should be reported as restricted until the resources have been used for the specified purpose or for as long as the resource provider requires (for example, for endowments). Paragraph 10 of GASB Statement No. 65 states that resources transmitted before the eligibility requirements are met (excluding time requirements) should be reported as assets by the provider and as liabilities by the recipient. Resources received before time requirements are met, but after all other eligibility requirements have been met, should be reported as a deferred outflow of resources by the provider and a deferred inflow of resources by the recipient.

15.127 If the transaction is a permanent or term endowment, the resource provider's stipulation that the resources should be maintained intact in perpetuity for a specified number of years or until a specific event has occurred (for example, the donor's death) is a time requirement, as described in paragraph 20(b) of GASB Statement No. 33. In such situations, the time requirement is considered met as soon as the recipient begins to honor the provider's stipulation not to sell, disburse, or consume the resources, which occurs upon receipt of the resources. Therefore, revenues from term or permanent endowments should be recognized at the time the resources are received, provided that all other eligibility requirements have been met. The associated net position should be reported as restricted for as long as the donor's time requirements and purpose restrictions, if applicable, remain in effect.

15.128 Promises of cash or other assets that nongovernmental entities, including individuals, voluntarily make to governments may be referred to as pledges, promises to give, promised donations, or some other term. Promised

---

52 To date, GASB has not issued any guidance related to noncapital gifts-in-kind or contributed services.
assets may include permanently nonexpendable additions to endowments and other trusts; term endowments; contributions of works of art and similar assets to capitalized collections; or other kinds of capital or financial assets, with or without purpose restrictions or time requirements. Governmental health care entities that receive promises to give should recognize receivables and revenues net of estimated uncollectible amounts only after all eligibility requirements are met, provided that the promise is verifiable, and the resources are measurable and probable of collection.\textsuperscript{53} As noted in item Z.33.19 of the GASB Q&A, governmental standards neither require nor prohibit the discounting of promises to give that are to be received over an extended period of time. Private-sector standards require discounting of such promises. In accordance with paragraph 11 of GASB Statement No. 33, transactions that are not recognizable because they are not measurable should be disclosed. For term or permanent endowments, the health care entity cannot begin to honor a provider's stipulation that the resources not be sold, disbursed, or consumed until the resources are actually received. Therefore, promises to give term or permanent endowments are not recognized in financial statements.\textsuperscript{54}

15.129 In some cases, it may become apparent after revenue has been recognized in the financial statements that the GASB Statement No. 33 eligibility criteria are no longer met (for example, because an audit of a particular grant program determined that certain expenses did not meet purpose restrictions). Paragraph 26 of GASB Statement No. 33 provides that if it is probable that the recipient will return all or part of the transferred resources, a liability or reduction of a receivable and an expense should be recognized for the amount that the resource provider (grantor) is expected to cancel or reclaim.

15.130 Governmental health care entities may be beneficiaries of charitable gifts structured as split-interest agreements. Common forms of split-interest agreements include charitable gift annuity contracts, pooled life income trusts, charitable remainder unitrusts, charitable remainder annuity trusts, and charitable lead annuity trusts. Item 7.72.11 of the GASB Q&A provides guidance to governmental health care entities in situations in which the health care entity is the trustee, as well as the beneficiary; thus, the trust assets are under their control. The governmental health care entity should recognize an asset for the fair value of the trust assets and a liability for the obligation to the beneficiary. The difference between the assets in the trust and the liability owed to the other beneficiary(ies) would be reported as restricted net position that is expendable or nonexpendable based on the nature of the donor's restrictions. Changes should be reflected in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position.

15.131 Foundations, businesses, and other types of entities may provide resources to health care entities under programs referred to as grants, awards, or sponsorships. The asset transfers are likely exchange or exchange-like transactions if the potential public benefit is secondary to the resource providers' potential direct benefits. The transfers are likely contributions (voluntary nonexchange transactions) if the resource providers receive no value in exchange for the transferred assets or if the value received by the resource provider is incidental to the potential public benefit from using the transferred assets.

\textsuperscript{53} See paragraph 25 and examples 21 and 21(a) in appendix D of GASB Statement No. 33, \textit{Accounting and Financial Reporting for Nonexchange Transactions}.

\textsuperscript{54} See examples 24–25 in appendix D of GASB Statement No. 33.
For example, a research grant made by a foundation to a governmental hospital would likely be a contribution if the research program is to be planned and carried out by the hospital, and the hospital has the right to publish the results. However, if the grant is made by a pharmaceutical manufacturer that provides potential new medications to be tested in the hospital’s research facilities and retains the right to any patents or other results, the grant would likely be an exchange transaction.55 Item Z.33.1 in the GASB Q&A also discusses considerations related to determining whether a grant is an exchange or a nonexchange transaction.

15.132 Statement of Position (SOP) 98-2, Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-for-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids, ACC sec. 10,730), provides guidance for state and local governmental entities, including health care entities, that conduct fund-raising activities with activities related to other functions, such as program activities or supporting services (joint activities). FASB ASC 958-720 superseded SOP 98-1, Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software Developed or Obtained for Internal Use, as it relates to nongovernmental entities; however, SOP 98-2 is still applicable to governmental entities. SOP 98-2 establishes financial accounting standards for accounting for costs of joint activities and requires financial statement disclosures about the nature of the activities for which joint costs have been allocated and the amounts of those joint costs.

15.133 GASB Statement No. 34 provides guidance related to the presentation of nonexchange transactions in financial statements. Contributions of capital assets or financial resources required to be used to acquire capital assets are reported separately after nonoperating revenues and expenses in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position, as illustrated in paragraph 15.18. Contributions of term and permanent endowments should be reported in the same manner. All other contributions (both restricted and unrestricted) are reported as nonoperating revenues and expenses. As discussed in paragraph 15.19, net position released from restriction are not reported in the statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position, as is done in the NFP reporting model.

15.134 In the statement of net position, an amount equal to unexpended restricted contributions at the reporting date should be included in the restricted net position component of net position. GASB Statement No. 34 does not require that restricted resources be used first when an expenditure is made for a purpose for which both unrestricted and temporarily-restricted assets are available. Instead, each entity is required to establish a policy for whether restricted or unrestricted resources will be used first when both sources are available and to disclose that policy in the notes to the financial statements.56

The Reporting Entity and Related Entities

15.135 Governmental health care entities and private-sector health care entities use different definitions of the financial reporting entity. GASB Statement No. 14, The Financial Reporting Entity, as amended, establishes standards for defining and reporting the governmental financial reporting entity

55 See example 22 in appendix D of GASB Statement No. 33.
56 See paragraph 115 of GASB Statement No. 34.
and addresses issues related to the display of entities included within the reporting entity, the application of the equity method of accounting, and accounting and reporting considerations for various types of joint ventures entered into by governmental entities. Unlike the private sector, which employs variable interest and voting interest models for defining the reporting entity, GASB's reporting entity model is based on the concept of financial accountability.\footnote{See paragraphs 10–11 and 21 of GASB Statement No. 14.}

15.136 Under paragraph 12 of GASB Statement No. 14, as amended, the governmental financial reporting entity consists of the primary government and organizations for which the primary government is financially accountable. In addition, the primary government may determine, through exercise of management's professional judgment, that the inclusion of an organization that does not meet the financial accountability criteria is necessary in order to prevent the reporting entity's financial statements from being misleading. In such instances, that organization should be included as a component unit. The nucleus of a financial reporting entity usually is a primary government. However, a governmental organization other than a primary government (such as a component unit, a joint venture, a jointly governed organization, or another stand-alone government) serves as the nucleus for its own reporting entity when it issues separate financial statements.

15.137 Component units are legally separate organizations for which the elected officials of the primary government are financially accountable. In addition, component units can be other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with a primary government are such that exclusion would cause the reporting entity's financial statements to be misleading. A legally separate entity should be included as a component unit if it is fiscally dependent on the primary government and a financial benefit or burden relationship is present. A nonauthoritative flowchart in appendix C of GASB Statement No. 14, as amended, aids in the evaluation of whether an entity is a component unit.

15.138 According to paragraph 21 of GASB Statement No. 14, as amended, a governmental health care entity is financially accountable for a legally separate organization if it appoints a voting majority of the organization's governing body, and

\begin{itemize}
  \item a. is able to impose its will on that organization, or
  \item b. there is a potential to provide specific financial benefits to, or impose specific financial burdens on, the governmental health care entity.
\end{itemize}

15.139 A governmental health care entity also is financially accountable if an organization is fiscally dependent on it and there is a potential for the organization to provide specific financial benefits to, or impose specific financial burdens on, the governmental health care entity regardless of whether the organization has

\begin{itemize}
  \item a. a separately elected governing board,
  \item b. a governing board appointed by a higher level of government, or
  \item c. a jointly appointed board.
\end{itemize}

15.140 If a governmental health care entity owns a majority of the equity interest in a legally separate organization (for example, through acquisition of
its voting stock), the governmental health care entity's intent for owning the equity interest should determine whether the organization should be presented as a component unit or an investment of the governmental health care entity. If the governmental health care entity's intent for owning a majority equity interest is to directly enhance its ability to provide governmental services, the organization should be reported as a component unit.\footnote{For example, in paragraph 55 of GASB Statement No. 14, as amended, a government that purchases 100 percent of the stock of a concrete plant to provide a controlled source of concrete for its capital projects should report the concrete company as a component unit. When such a component unit is discretely presented, the equity interest should be reported as an asset of the fund that has the equity interest (subject to reporting requirements for governmental funds). When such a component unit is blended, in the period of acquisition the purchase typically should be reported as an outflow of the fund that provided the resources for the acquisition and, in that and subsequent reporting periods, the component unit should be reported pursuant to the blending requirements of paragraph 54 of GASB Statement No. 14. If, however, the government owns the equity interest for the purpose of obtaining income or profit rather than to directly enhance its ability to provide governmental services, it should report its equity interest as an investment, regardless of the extent of its ownership.}

15.141 GASB Statement No. 39, Determining Whether Certain Organizations Are Component Units—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 14, amended GASB Statement No. 14 to provide additional guidance for determining whether certain entities (for example, institutionally-related fund-raising foundations) for which the primary government is not financially accountable should be reported as discretely-presented component units based on the nature and significance of their relationship with the primary government. Paragraph 5 of GASB Statement No. 39 requires reporting a legally separate, tax-exempt organization as a discretely-presented component unit an organization that meets all three of the following criteria:

- The economic resources received or held by the separate organization are entirely or almost entirely for the direct benefit of the governmental health care entity, its component units, or its constituents.
- The governmental health care entity or its component units is entitled to, or has the ability to otherwise access, a majority of the economic resources received or held by the separate organization.
- The economic resources held by the separate organization are significant to the governmental health care entity.

Additional considerations related to applying GASB Statement No. 39 are discussed in paragraphs 15.147–152.

15.142 GASB Statement No. 14, as amended, also contains standards for displaying component units in a financial reporting entity's basic financial statements. Some component units are required by paragraph 53 of GASB Statement No. 14, as amended, to be blended with the financial information of the primary government (similar to the presentation of consolidated subsidiaries in the private sector). For governments engaged only in business-type activities that use a single column for financial statement presentation, a component unit may be blended by consolidating its financial statement data within the single column of the primary government and presenting condensed combining information in the notes to the financial statements. Those component units that are not required to be blended are discretely presented. In discrete presentation, the financial information of the component unit is displayed separately from the financial information of the primary government (that is, in a
State and Local Government Health Care Entities

15.143 Certain information should be presented about each major component unit included in the financial reporting entity, except for component units that are fiduciary in nature. The determination that a component unit is "major" should be based on the nature and significance of its relationship to the primary government. This determination generally would be based on any of the following factors:

a. the services provided by the component unit to the citizenry are such that separate reporting as a major component unit is considered to be essential to financial statement users,

b. there are significant transactions with the primary government, or

c. there is a significant financial benefit or burden relationship with the primary government.

Major component unit reporting requirements should be satisfied by any one of the following:

a. presenting each major component unit in a separate column in the reporting entity's statements of net position and activities,

b. including combining statements of major component units in the reporting entity's basic financial statements after the fund financial statements, or

c. presenting condensed financial statements in the notes to the reporting entity's financial statements. Nonmajor component units should be aggregated in a single column. A combining statement for the nonmajor component units is not required but may be presented as supplementary information.

15.144 If a primary government and its component units have different fiscal year-ends, the financial reporting entity reports using the primary government's fiscal year and incorporates financial statements for the component units' fiscal years ending during the reporting entity's fiscal year. If a component unit's fiscal year ends within the first quarter of the reporting entity's subsequent fiscal year, the component unit's financial statements for that subsequent year may be used if doing so does not adversely affect the timely and accurate presentation of the reporting entity's financial statements. The fiscal year of the component units included in the reporting entity should be consistent from year to year. If transactions between component units that have different fiscal years result in inconsistencies in amounts reported as intra-entity receivables or payables, the governmental health care entity should disclose the nature and amount of those transactions in the notes to the financial statements.

---

59 Some governmental health care entities may be organized and operated on a fund basis (for example, they use several separate enterprise funds for the purpose of carrying on specific activities or attaining certain objectives in accordance with regulatory restrictions or limitations). Item 4.28.10 of the GASB Q&A discusses various financial statement display options for governments that have discretely-presented component units.


61 See paragraph 60 of GASB Statement No. 14.
Because of the separate nature of discretely-presented component units, GASB Statement No. 34 generally requires that transactions between a primary government and its discretely-presented component units (intra-entity transactions) be reported as if they were transactions with external parties.\(^{62}\) However, GASB Statement No. 48 requires that intra-entity transfers of capital and financial assets should be reported based on the carrying value of the transferor.\(^{63}\) In separately-issued financial statements of discretely-presented component units, amounts receivable from, or payable to, the primary government should be reported on a separate line from other receivables (payables). Chapter 9, "Interfund, Internal, and Intra-Entity Activity and Balances," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* contains a detailed discussion of accounting and financial reporting considerations related to intra-entity activity and balances. Section Z.48 of the GASB Q&A provides implementation guidance for GASB Statement No. 48.

Additional guidance is provided in chapter 3, "The Financial Reporting Entity," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* (which will implement GASB Statement No. 61 in the 2014 edition) and chapters 4 and 7 of the GASB Q&A, which provide nonauthoritative illustrations, examples, disclosures, and financial statement presentations. Appendix 4-2 of the GASB Q&A provides examples that evaluate potential component units for inclusion in the financial statements, and appendix 4-5 of the GASB Q&A provides a useful flowchart for evaluating potential component units.

### Institutionally-Related Foundations

Legally separate NFP foundations may be established to raise, hold, and invest funds on behalf of a governmental health care entity. Because of its close relationship to the governmental health care entity, a foundation should be evaluated to determine whether it is included in the reporting entity because it is a component unit, as described in paragraph 15.136.

If the fundraising foundation is a component unit because it meets the three criteria in paragraph 5 of GASB Statement No. 39, as discussed in paragraph 15.141, the governmental health care entity is required to report the fundraising foundation as a discretely-presented component unit. Distributions made or promised by the foundation to the health care entity are reported as expenses by the foundation and contribution revenue by the health care entity. The nonauthoritative exhibits E-1 and E-2 of GASB Statement No. 39 illustrate discretely presenting the foundation by displaying the foundation's financial statements in their original formats on separate pages. The nonauthoritative exhibits E-3 and E-4 of GASB Statement No. 39 illustrate one way in which a discretely-presented component unit could be displayed side-by-side on the face of the health care entity's statement of net position and statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position.

If the foundation is included in the reporting entity for one of the other two reasons in paragraph 15.136 (that is, because the governmental health care entity is financially accountable or because, without it, the financial statements of the governmental health care entity are misleading),

\(^{62}\) See paragraph 61 of GASB Statement No. 34.

\(^{63}\) See paragraph 15 of GASB Statement No. 48, *Sales and Pledges of Receivables and Future Revenues and Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets and Future Revenues*. 

**AAG-HCO 15.145**
the fundraising foundation will be either blended or discretely presented. The method to use is determined by applying the criteria in paragraph 53 of GASB Statement No. 14, as amended. If the foundation provides benefits entirely or almost entirely to the governmental health care entity, the foundation is a blended component unit of the health care entity.\textsuperscript{64} The foundation also is a blended component unit if the governing bodies of the health care entity and foundation are substantively the same and either \textit{(a)} there is a financial benefit or burden relationship between the health care entity and the foundation or \textit{(b)} management of the health care entity has operational responsibility for the foundation. The foundation would also be blended if its total debt outstanding, including leases, is expected to be repaid entirely or almost entirely with resources of the health care entity. If none of the criteria for blending is met, the fundraising foundation is discretely presented.

\textbf{15.150} In most cases, the foundation prepares its financial statements in accordance with FASB standards. If a nongovernmental foundation's stand-alone financial statements state that the foundation and governmental health care entity are financially interrelated, as described in FASB ASC 958-20, then as explained in footnote a to paragraph 40(a) of GASB Statement No. 14, the governmental health care entity is able to otherwise access the majority of the economic resources received or held by the financially-interrelated entity (the foundation). If the foundation meets the other two criteria in paragraph 5 of GASB Statement No. 39, it is a component unit. Paragraph 29 of the nonauthoritative basis for conclusions of GASB Statement No. 39 also states that in these circumstances, the health care entity's financial statements would be rendered misleading if the financial statements of the financially-interrelated entity (foundation) were excluded, particularly if the financially-interrelated entity holds the majority of the primary government's endowments, gifts, and contributions whereby the gift or earnings thereon are restricted by donors for the activities of the primary government or its component units. A nongovernmental foundation that is financially interrelated with a health care entity reports contributions according to the guidance discussed in paragraph 11.43 of this guide. The governmental health care entity that is the specified beneficiary does not report an interest in the net assets of the foundation, as is done by private-sector health care entities; instead, a governmental health care entity recognizes contributions received from, or pledged by, the foundation, in accordance with the standards in paragraphs 19–25 of GASB Statement No. 33.

\textbf{15.151} If a foundation's stand-alone FASB financial statements do not indicate whether the foundation and governmental health care entity are financially interrelated, the governmental health care entity's ability to otherwise access a majority of the economic resources received or held by the separate organization might be demonstrated in other ways. For example, historically, the health care entity may have directly or indirectly received a majority of the economic resources provided by the foundation, or previously, the foundation may have received and honored requests to provide resources to the health care entity. If the ability to otherwise access the economic resources is demonstrated, and the foundation meets the other two criteria in paragraph 5 of GASB Statement No. 39, it is a component unit. If the foundation does not meet the three criteria in GASB Statement No. 39, the foundation should be evaluated for inclusion as a component unit using the remaining two tests.

\textsuperscript{64} See case 17 in appendix 4-2 of the GASB Q&A.
described in paragraph 15.136. If the foundation does not meet any of those three tests, then the foundation is not a component unit of the health care entity. The health care entity recognizes contributions received from, or pledged by, the foundation, in accordance with the standards in paragraphs 19–25 of GASB Statement No. 33.65

15.152 Section 4.33 of the GASB Q&A describes various ways in which the financial statements of nongovernmental component units can be displayed in the financial statements of the governmental reporting entity.

Business Combinations

15.153 Governmental health care entities may participate in business combination transactions with other governmental entities or private-sector entities.

15.154 GASB Statement No. 69 addresses accounting and financial reporting for government combinations and disposals of government operations. Government combinations include (1) mergers, (2) acquisitions, and (3) transfers of operations that do not constitute entire legally separate entities and in which no significant consideration is exchanged. Transfers of operations may be present in shared service arrangements, reorganizations, redistricting, annexations, and arrangements in which an operation is transferred to a new government created to provide those services. It does not apply to transfers of assets and liabilities that do not constitute an operation, or combinations in which a government acquires another organization that continues to exist as a separate entity.

General Auditing Considerations for Governmental Health Care Entities

15.155 Chapter 2, "General Auditing Considerations," of this guide provides guidance on the unique application of generally accepted auditing standards to health care entities, including guidance for audits conducted in accordance with financial audit standards contained in Government Auditing Standards, issued by the Comptroller General of the U.S. Government Accountability Office. The AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments discusses in detail the requirements for a generally accepted auditing standards audit of financial statements prepared in accordance with the governmental GAAP hierarchy described in paragraph 15.05. It contains information about auditing considerations that are unique to the governmental financial reporting model that are not contemplated in this guide. Therefore, in performing audits of separately-issued financial statements of governmental health care entities, the auditing guidance contained in both the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments and this guide will be useful.

15.156 Paragraph 4.73 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments states that an auditor's consideration of whether a

---

65 If the foundation prepares its financial statements in accordance with FASB standards, it uses the standards in the "Transfers of Assets to a Not-for-Profit Entity or Charitable Trust that Raises or Holds Contributions for Others" sections of FASB ASC 958-605 to determine whether to recognize contribution revenue or a liability when it receives contributions for the governmental health care entity's use or benefit. Those standards are discussed in paragraphs 11.39–.46 of this guide.
government's basic financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects in conformity with GAAP, should be based on opinion units. Auditors apply the concept of opinion units in planning, performing, evaluating the results of, and reporting on audits of governmental entities, including governmental health care entities. The concept of opinion units is unique to audits of state and local governmental entities. Chapters 4, "General Auditing Considerations;" 13, "Concluding the Audit;" and 14, "Audit Reporting," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* define opinion units and discuss the nature and effect of opinion units in planning, performing, evaluating the results of, and reporting on the audit of such entities' basic financial statements.

15.157 The number of opinion units will depend on whether the governmental health care entity (a) accounts for and reports its activities in a single enterprise fund or multiple enterprise funds and (b) has any discretely-presented component units (see paragraphs 15.135–154). A governmental health care entity that reports its activities in a single enterprise fund and has no discretely-presented component units will have a single opinion unit. A governmental health care entity that operates in a single enterprise fund and has one or more discretely-presented component units will have more than one opinion unit: one for the primary government (the health care entity) and another for the discretely-presented component unit. If more than one discretely-presented component unit exists, the opinion unit is referred to as aggregate discretely-presented component units. A governmental health care entity that reports its activities in multiple enterprise funds will have an opinion unit for each major enterprise fund and an additional opinion unit for all nonmajor funds in the aggregate (aggregate remaining fund information). If that entity also has one or more discretely-presented component units, there will be an additional opinion unit for the aggregate discretely-presented component unit(s).

15.158 Paragraphs 2.15–19 of this guide provide general guidance on the concept of materiality. In accordance with paragraph .10 of AU-C section 320, *Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit* (AICPA, Professional Standards), when establishing the overall audit strategy the auditor should determine materiality for the financial statements as a whole. As discussed in paragraph .A4 of AU-C section 320, for most state or local governments, a governmental entity's applicable financial reporting framework is based on multiple reporting units, and generally, the auditor expresses or disclaims an opinion on a government's financial statements as a whole by providing opinions or disclaimers of opinion on each opinion unit. That is, a state or local governmental entity's applicable financial reporting framework requires the presentation of financial statements for its varied activities in various reporting units. Consequently, a reporting unit, or aggregation of reporting units, of

---

66 Some governmental health care entities may be organized and operated on a fund basis (for example, they use several separate enterprise funds for the purpose of carrying on specific activities or attaining certain objectives in accordance with regulatory restrictions or limitations).

67 An exercise for determining major and nonmajor funds is included as exercise 5 in chapter 7 of appendix 7-3 of the GASB Q&A.

68 As discussed in chapter 4, "General Auditing Considerations," of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments*, if either the aggregate discretely-presented component units opinion unit or the aggregate remaining fund information opinion unit is not quantitatively or qualitatively material to the primary government, those two units may be combined and titled the "Aggregate Discretely-Presented Component Unit and Remaining Fund Information Opinion Unit."
the governmental entity represents an opinion unit to the auditor. Accordingly, in these cases, materiality is established for each opinion unit. Chapter 4 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* provides detailed guidance on audit materiality determinations for governmental entities, including guidance on assessing materiality based on the concept of opinion units. The materiality evaluation for one opinion unit should not be affected by OI in the government's financial statements or, if applicable, quantitative or qualitative factors relating to other opinion units.

15.159 Paragraphs 2.77–.83 of this guide discuss management’s representations for financial statements. Paragraphs 13.10–.11 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* list the types of representations that are particularly important in a governmental engagement. Paragraph .05 of AU-C section 730 states that the auditor should obtain written representations from management (a) that it acknowledges its responsibility for the RSI; (b) about whether the RSI is measured and presented in accordance with prescribed guidelines; (c) about whether the methods of measurement or presentation have changed from those used in the prior period and, if so, the reasons for such changes; and (d) about any significant assumptions or interpretations underlying the measurement or presentation of the RSI.

15.160 Governmental health care entities are subject to various legal and contractual provisions (compliance requirements) that may affect their financial statements. As discussed in paragraph 12.10 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments*, the auditor should consider whether it is necessary to evaluate the entity’s compliance with those requirements as part of the financial statement audit.

**Independent Auditor’s Reports**

15.161 Paragraph .19 of AU-C section 700, *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), requires the auditor to express an unmodified opinion when the auditor concludes the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with the applicable financial reporting framework. Paragraph .20 of AU-C section 700 requires the auditor to modify the opinion in the auditor’s report, in accordance with AU-C section 705, *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), if the auditor concludes that, based on the audit evidence obtained, the financial statements as a whole are materially misstated or the auditor is unable to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement. As discussed in chapter 14 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments*, auditors of governmental health care entities express or disclaim opinions on a government’s financial statements as a whole by providing in the aggregate separate opinions or disclaimers of opinion on the financial statements of each opinion unit. Examples 15-1 and 15-2 are illustrative reports for a governmental health care entity that accounts for and reports its activities in a single enterprise fund. Note that in these illustrative reports, auditors do not express opinions on results of operations, as is done for private-sector health care entities. Instead, auditors of governmental health care entities opine on the change in financial position. Chapter 14 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide *State and Local Governments* contains numerous additional report examples, including examples for entities that use multifund reporting and a number of situations unique to
government reporting (for example, reporting on a single fund or department and reporting when a component unit is omitted).

15.162 The auditor's primary responsibility is to report on the results of his or her audit of the basic financial statements. The auditor has additional responsibilities related to RSI and, if applicable, SI and OI under AU-C section 730, AU-C section 725, and AU-C section 720, respectively. Those responsibilities, which are discussed in detail in chapter 14 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments, are briefly described subsequently.

RSI

15.163 As discussed in paragraph 15.29, GASB requires that certain information accompany the basic financial statements and be presented as RSI. Unless the auditor has been engaged to examine and express an opinion on RSI, the auditor's responsibility with respect to RSI is limited to applying certain limited procedures to RSI and reporting deficiencies in, or the omission of, such information, as described in paragraph .07 of AU-C section 730. If the deficiencies described in paragraph .07 of AU-C section 730 do not exist, the auditor should include an other-matter paragraph in the auditor's report on the financial statements to refer to the RSI in accordance with AU-C section 706, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report (AICPA, Professional Standards). Illustration 1 in the exhibit of AU-C section 730 is the basis for the following example that an auditor might use to report on the RSI when the RSI is included, the auditor has applied the specified procedures, and no material departures from prescribed guidelines have been identified:

**Other Matter**

Required Supplementary Information

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the required supplementary information, such as management's discussion and analysis and the budgetary comparison information, be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

---

69 Unless the auditor is engaged to audit the RSI as described in AU-C section 730, Required Supplementary Information (AICPA, Professional Standards), the RSI is considered unaudited, even though generally accepted auditing standards require the auditor to perform specific procedures and to report on the information as discussed in this section.
If any of the deficiencies described in paragraph .07 of AU-C section 730 exist (for example, the client omits MD&A or a portion of MD&A, or the information is presented in a manner that does not meet the standards established by GAAP), this does not affect the auditor's conclusion regarding the fair presentation of the basic financial statements because RSI is not considered essential to the fair presentation of the basic financial statements. In such situations, the auditor's report should include an other-matter paragraph. Paragraph .A3 of AU-C section 730 provides examples for other circumstances, including those in which the RSI is omitted, or there are material departures from prescribed guidelines.

The auditor may be engaged to audit RSI, "GASB defined" SI, or a combination thereof—that is, express an opinion whether the information is fairly presented, in all material respects, in conformity with GAAP. For example, if the government elects to present the required budgetary comparisons (RSI) as a basic financial statement, then the auditor applies AU-C section 700. If the auditor is engaged to audit the combining and individual fund financial presentations ("GASB defined" SI) accompanying the basic financial statements, then AU-C section 805, Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement (AICPA, Professional Standards), applies. Chapter 4 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments discusses auditor considerations in accepting such an engagement.

SI and OI

If the auditor is engaged to report on whether SI is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the financial statements as a whole and meets the preconditions to do so, the auditor's reporting on SI is described in AU-C section 725 as well as certain required procedures on SI (see paragraphs .05–.08 of AU-C section 725). An opinion on whether SI is fairly stated in all material respects is made in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole, not in relation to individual opinion units. An "in relation to" opinion is possible because the audit of the basic financial statements encompasses the information presented in the SI. SI may be presented in a document containing the audited financial statements or separate from the audited financial statements. Information related to the auditor's responsibilities for SI that is presented separately from the financial statements is discussed in paragraphs .10 and .A16 of AU-C section 725. Illustration 1 in the exhibit of AU-C section 725 provides the following other-matter paragraph when the auditor is issuing an unmodified opinion on the financial statements and an unmodified opinion on the SI:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other Matter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Other Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion[70] on the financial statements as a whole. The [identify accompanying SI] is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information is the responsibility of management and was derived from and relates directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. The [identify accompanying SI] has been subjected to the...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[70] If multiple opinion units exist, this would instead refer to opinions.
auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements, 20X1, and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the [identify accompanying SI] is fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the financial statements as a whole.

Paragraph .A17 of AU-C section 725 provides examples for other circumstances, including those in which the opinion on the basic financial statements is other than an unmodified opinion, or the auditor issues a qualified opinion on the SI.

15.167 The auditor's reporting on OI is described in AU-C section 720. Although OI is not a part of the basic financial statements, auditors are required to perform certain procedures on OI. In the absence of any separate requirement in the particular circumstance of the engagement, the auditor's opinion on the financial statements does not cover OI, and the auditor has no responsibility for determining whether such information is properly stated. Instead, the auditor's responsibility is to read the OI of which the auditor is aware because the credibility of the audited financial statements may be undermined by material inconsistencies between the audited financial statements and OI. If, on reading the OI, the auditor identifies a material inconsistency, the auditor should determine whether the audited financial statements or the OI needs to be revised. The following example is based on exhibit A of AU-C section 720 to illustrate an other-matter paragraph that the auditor may use to disclaim an opinion on OI.

Other Matter
Other Information

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming an opinion on the Health Care Entity's basic financial statements as a whole. The [identify the other information] is (are) presented for purposes of additional analysis and is (are) not a required part of the basic financial statements. Such information has not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied by us in the audit of the basic financial statements, and accordingly, we do not express an opinion on it or provide any assurance on it.
Example 15-1

Unmodified Opinion on Comparative Basic Financial Statements of a Governmental Hospital (Special-Purpose Government) That Has a Single Opinion Unit Accompanied by RSI

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Trustees
Sample Governmental Hospital Authority

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the Sample Governmental Hospital Authority (the Authority), a component unit of Feeling County, State of Union, as of and for the years ended December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Authority's basic financial statements.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor's Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

71 According to footnote 1 to illustration 1 in the exhibit of AU-C section 700, Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards), the subtitle "Report on the Financial Statements" is unnecessary in circumstances when the second subtitle, "Report on Other Legal and Regulatory Requirements," is not applicable.
72 If the entity being reported on is a component unit of a larger financial reporting entity, the auditor's report should disclose that fact, as discussed in paragraph 14.58 of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide State and Local Governments.
73 Because the report is covering audits for two years, the reference is to audits, rather than audit.
74 See footnote 73.
We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

**Opinion**

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Authority as of December 31, 20X1 and 20X0, and the changes in its financial position and its cash flows for the years then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

**Other Matter**

**Required Supplementary Information**

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the required supplementary information, such as management's discussion and analysis and budgetary comparison information] on pages XX–XX be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context.

We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

[Auditor’s signature]

[Auditor’s city and state]

[Date of the auditor’s report]
Example 15-2

Unmodified Opinions on Single-Year Basic Financial Statements of a Governmental Hospital That Has One Opinion Unit for the Primary Government and Another Opinion Unit for Its Discretely-Presented Component Unit Accompanied by RSI

Independent Auditor's Report

To the Board of Trustees
University Hospital
We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the University Hospital, a component unit of University, Any City and Any State as of and for the year ended December 31, 20XY, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Hospital's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements
[Same paragraphs as in example 15-1]

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the University Hospital.

75 See footnote 71.
76 Presentation of a statement of cash flows for the discretely-presented component unit is not required.
77 See footnote 72
78 Because two opinion units exist, the auditor is rendering two opinions (one on the Hospital and one on the discretely-presented component unit), and the report should refer to opinions, rather than opinion.
79 The opinion on a set of single-year statements refers to one audit. Even though the auditor may be expressing multiple opinions, he or she is conducting only one audit of the opinion units.
and of its discretely presented component unit(s) as of December 31, 20XY, and the respective changes in financial position and cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

**Other Matter**

*Required Supplementary Information*

[Same paragraph on RSI as in example 15-1]

[Auditor’s signature]

[Auditor’s city and state]

[Date of the auditor’s report]
Appendix A

Guidance Updates

This appendix includes information on guidance issued through the "as of" date of this guide that is not yet effective, but that will be effective for the next edition of this guide. References to this guidance, where applicable, are included throughout the chapters of this guide in shaded text. The references use a guidance update number that consists of the chapter number followed by the sequentially numbered guidance update number within any given chapter (for example, update 3-1 would be the first guidance update in chapter 3). The guidance in this appendix is cross-referenced using the same guidance update numbers found throughout the chapters of this guide, as applicable. Readers should consider this information for the reporting period to which it applies.

Accounting and Reporting Updates

A.01 ASU No. 2012-07

FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2013-07, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205): Liquidation Basis of Accounting, issued in April 2013, is effective for entities that determine liquidation is imminent during annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2013, and interim reporting periods therein. Entities should apply the requirements prospectively from the day that liquidation becomes imminent. Early adoption is permitted.

Accounting and Reporting: Liquidation Basis of Accounting [Update 2-3]

The paragraph that follows will be added upon the effective date of ASU No. 2013-07:

2.88 If the going concern issue arises from imminent liquidation that does not follow a plan for liquidation that was specified in the entity's governing documents at the entity's inception, then the entity should apply FASB ASC 205-30 on the liquidation basis of accounting. This requires the remeasurement of balances in the statement of net assets in the entity's financial statements.

A.02 ASU No. 2013-06

ASU No. 2013-06, Not-for-Profit Entities (Topic 958): Services Received from Personnel of an Affiliate (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force), issued in April 2013, is effective prospectively for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2014, and interim and annual periods thereafter. A recipient not-for-profit entity may apply the amendments using a modified retrospective approach under which all prior periods presented upon the date of adoption should be adjusted, but no adjustment should be made to the beginning balance of net assets of the earliest period presented. Early adoption is permitted.
Accounting and Reporting: Services Received From Personnel of an Affiliate [Update 11-1]

The paragraphs that follow will be added upon the effective date of ASU No. 2013-06:

11.31 FASB ASC 958-605 addresses the recognition of services received from personnel of an affiliate that directly benefit the recipient NFP and for which the affiliate does not charge the recipient NFP. The corresponding accounting entry either increases assets if an asset is enhanced, or increases other expenses. In accordance with FASB ASC 958-720, the recipient entity should measure and disclose its method for measurement of the received services at the cost to the affiliate providing the service. If recording the service at cost will significantly overstate or understate the value of the service received, the NFP may elect to recognize the service at either (a) the cost recognized by the affiliate for the personnel providing that service or (b) the fair value of that service.

11.32 Not-for-profit health care entities that receive services from personnel of an affiliate, that directly benefit the health care entity, and are within the scope of FASB ASC 954 and required to present a performance indicator, should report the increase in net assets as an equity transfer, regardless of whether those services are performed by personnel of a not-for-profit affiliate or any other affiliate.

A.03 GASB Statement No. 68

Accounting and Reporting: Pensions of State and Local Government Employers [Update 15-1]

The primary objective of GASB Statement No. 68, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 27, is to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments for pensions. It also improves information provided by state and local governmental employers about financial support for pensions that is provided by other entities. This statement results from a comprehensive review of the effectiveness of existing standards of accounting and financial reporting for pensions with regard to providing decision-useful information, supporting assessments of accountability and interperiod equity, and creating additional transparency.

GASB Statement No. 68 replaces the requirements of GASB Statement No. 27, Accounting for Pensions by State and Local Governmental Employers, as well as the requirements of GASB Statement No. 50, Pension Disclosures—an amendment of GASB Statements No. 25 and No. 27, as they relate to pensions that are provided through pension plans administered as trusts or equivalent arrangements (hereafter jointly referred to as trusts) that meet certain criteria. The requirements of GASB Statement Nos. 27 and 50 remain applicable for pensions that are not covered by the scope of this statement.

GASB Statement No. 68 establishes a definition of a pension plan that reflects the primary activities associated with the pension arrangement: determining pensions, accumulating and managing assets dedicated for pensions, and paying benefits to plan members as they come due.

The scope of this statement addresses accounting and financial reporting for pensions that are provided to the employees of state and local governmental
employers through pension plans that are administered through trusts that have the following characteristics:

- Contributions from employers and nonemployer contributing entities to the pension plan and earnings on those contributions are irrevocable.
- Pension plan assets are dedicated to providing pensions to plan members in accordance with the benefit terms.
- Pension plan assets are legally protected from the creditors of employers, nonemployer contributing entities, and the pension plan administrator. If the plan is a defined benefit pension plan, plan assets also are legally protected from creditors of the plan members.

This statement establishes standards for measuring and recognizing liabilities, deferred outflows of resources, deferred inflows of resources, and expenses and expenditures. For defined benefit pensions, this statement identifies the methods and assumptions that should be used to project benefit payments, discount projected benefit payments to their actuarial present value, and attribute that present value to periods of employee service.

Note disclosure and required supplementary information requirements about pensions also are addressed. Distinctions are made regarding the particular requirements for employers based on the number of employers whose employees are provided with pensions through the pension plan and whether pension obligations and pension plan assets are shared. Employers are classified in one of the following categories for purposes of GASB Statement No. 68:

- Single employers are those whose employees are provided with defined benefit pensions through single-employer pension plans: pension plans in which pensions are provided to the employees of only one employer (as defined in this statement).
- Agent employers are those whose employees are provided with defined benefit pensions through agent multiple-employer pension plans: pension plans in which plan assets are pooled for investment purposes but separate accounts are maintained for each individual employer so that each employer's share of the pooled assets is legally available to pay the benefits of only its employees.
- Cost-sharing employers are those whose employees are provided with defined benefit pensions through cost-sharing multiple-employer pension plans: pension plans in which the pension obligations to the employees of more than one employer are pooled and plan assets can be used to pay the benefits of the employees of any employer that provides pensions through the pension plan.

In addition, this statement details the recognition and disclosure requirements for employers with liabilities (payables) to a defined benefit pension plan and for employers whose employees are provided with defined contribution pensions. This statement also addresses circumstances in which a nonemployer entity has a legal requirement to make contributions directly to a pension plan.

**Defined Benefit Pensions**

GASB Statement No. 68 requires the liability of employers and nonemployer contributing entities to employees for defined benefit pensions (net pension liability) to be measured as the portion of the present value of projected benefit...
payments to be provided through the pension plan to current active and inactive employees that is attributed to those employees’ past periods of service (total pension liability), less the amount of the pension plan's fiduciary net position.

Actuarial valuations of the total pension liability are required to be performed at least every 2 years, with more frequent valuations encouraged. If a valuation is not performed as of the measurement date, the total pension liability is required to be based on update procedures to roll forward amounts from an earlier actuarial valuation (performed as of a date no more than 30 months and 1 day prior to the employer's most recent year end). Unless otherwise specified by this statement, all assumptions underlying the determination of the total pension liability and related measures set forth by this statement are required to be made in conformity with Actuarial Standards of Practice issued by the Actuarial Standards Board.

Projections of benefit payments are required to be based on the benefit terms and legal agreements existing at the measurement date and to incorporate the effects of projected salary changes (if the pension formula incorporates future compensation levels) and service credits (if the pension formula incorporates periods of service), as well as projected automatic postemployment benefit changes, including automatic cost-of-living adjustments (COLAs). Projections also are required to include the effects of ad hoc postemployment benefit changes (including ad hoc COLAs) if they are considered to be substantively automatic.

Projected benefit payments are required to be discounted to their actuarial present value using the single rate that reflects (1) a long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments to the extent that the pension plan's fiduciary net position is projected to be sufficient to pay benefits and pension plan assets are expected to be invested using a strategy to achieve that return and (2) a tax-exempt, high-quality municipal bond rate to the extent that the conditions for use of the long-term expected rate of return are not met.

The actuarial present value of projected benefit payments is required to be attributed to periods of employee service using the entry age actuarial cost method with each period's service cost determined as a level percentage of pay. The actuarial present value is required to be attributed for each employee individually, from the period when the employee first accrues pensions through the period when the employee retires.

Single and Agent Employers

In financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and accrual basis of accounting, a single or agent employer that does not have a special funding situation is required to recognize a liability equal to the net pension liability. The net pension liability is required to be measured as of a date no earlier than the end of the employer’s prior fiscal year (the measurement date), consistently applied from period to period.

The pension expense and deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions that are required to be recognized by an employer primarily result from changes in the components of the net pension liability (that is, changes in the total pension liability and in the pension plan's fiduciary net position).

This statement requires that most changes in the net pension liability be included in pension expense in the period of the change. For example, changes in the total pension liability resulting from current-period service cost, interest
on the total pension liability, and changes of benefit terms are required to be included in pension expense immediately. Projected earnings on the pension plan’s investments also are required to be included in the determination of pension expense immediately.

The effects of certain other changes in the net pension liability are required to be included in pension expense over the current and future periods. The effects on the total pension liability of (1) changes of economic and demographic assumptions or of other inputs and (2) differences between expected and actual experience are required to be included in pension expense in a systematic and rational manner over a closed period equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided with benefits through the pension plan (active employees and inactive employees), beginning with the current period. The effect on the net pension liability of differences between the projected earnings on pension plan investments and actual experience with regard to those earnings is required to be included in pension expense in a systematic and rational manner over a closed period of five years, beginning with the current period. Changes in the net pension liability not included in pension expense are required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources related to pensions.

Employer contributions subsequent to the measurement date of the net pension liability are required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources.

Financial Statements Prepared Using the Current Financial Resources Measurement Focus and Modified Accrual Basis of Accounting

In governmental fund financial statements, a net pension liability should be recognized to the extent the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. Pension expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of (1) amounts paid by the employer to the pension plan and (2) the change between the beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

Notes to Financial Statements

The statement requires that notes to financial statements of single and agent employers include descriptive information, such as the types of benefits provided and the number and classes of employees covered by the benefit terms.

Single and agent employers also should disclose the following information:

- For the current year, sources of changes in the net pension liability
- Significant assumptions and other inputs used to calculate the total pension liability, including those about inflation, salary changes, ad hoc postemployment benefit changes (including ad hoc COLAs), and inputs to the discount rate, as well as certain information about mortality assumptions and the dates of experience studies
- The date of the actuarial valuation used to determine the total pension liability, information about changes of assumptions or other inputs and benefit terms, the basis for determining employer contributions to the pension plan, and information about the purchase of allocated insurance contracts, if any
Required Supplementary Information

GASB Statement No. 68 requires single and agent employers to present in required supplementary information the following information, determined as of the measurement date, for each of the 10 most recent fiscal years:

- Sources of changes in the net pension liability
- The components of the net pension liability and related ratios, including the pension plan's fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability, and the net pension liability as a percentage of covered-employee payroll

If the contributions of a single or agent employer are actuarially determined, the employer should present in required supplementary information a schedule covering each of the 10 most recent fiscal years that includes information about the actuarially determined contribution, contributions to the pension plan, and related ratios. If the contributions of a single or agent employer are not actuarially determined but are established in statute or by contract, the employer should present a schedule covering each of the 10 most recent fiscal years that includes information about the statutorily or contractually required contribution rates, contributions to the pension plan, and related ratios.

Significant methods and assumptions used in calculating the actuarially determined contributions, if applicable, should be presented as notes to required supplementary information. In addition, the employer should explain factors that significantly affect trends in the amounts reported in the schedules, such as changes of benefit terms, changes in the size or composition of the population covered by the benefit terms, or the use of different assumptions.

Cost-Sharing Employers

In financial statements prepared using the economic resources measurement focus and accrual basis of accounting, a cost-sharing employer that does not have a special funding situation is required to recognize a liability for its proportionate share of the net pension liability (of all employers for benefits provided through the pension plan): the collective net pension liability. An employer's proportion is required to be determined on a basis that is consistent with the manner in which contributions to the pension plan are determined, and consideration should be given to separate rates, if any, related to separate portions of the collective net pension liability. The use of the employer's projected long-term contribution effort as compared to the total projected long-term contribution effort of all employers as the basis for determining an employer's proportion is encouraged.

A cost-sharing employer is required to recognize pension expense and report deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions for its proportionate shares of collective pension expense and collective deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions.

In addition, the effects of (1) a change in the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability and (2) differences during the measurement period between the employer's contributions and its proportionate share of the total of contributions from employers included in the collective net pension liability are required to be determined. These effects are required to be recognized in the employer's pension expense in a systematic and rational manner over a closed period equal to the average of the expected remaining service lives of all employees that are provided with pensions through the pension plan (active
employees and inactive employees). The portions of the effects not recognized in the employer's pension expense are required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources or deferred inflows of resources related to pensions. Employer contributions to the pension plan subsequent to the measurement date of the collective net pension liability also are required to be reported as deferred outflows of resources related to pensions.

In governmental fund financial statements, the cost-sharing employer's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability is required to be recognized to the extent the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. Pension expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of (1) amounts paid by the employer to the pension plan and (2) the change between the beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources.

GASB Statement No. 68 requires that notes to financial statements of cost-sharing employers include descriptive information about the pension plans through which the pensions are provided. Cost-sharing employers should identify the discount rate and assumptions made in the measurement of their proportionate shares of net pension liabilities, similar to the disclosures about those items that should be made by single and agent employers. Cost-sharing employers, like single and agent employers, also should disclose information about how their contributions to the pension plan are determined.

This statement requires cost-sharing employers to present in required supplementary information 10-year schedules containing (1) the net pension liability and certain related ratios and, if applicable, (2) information about statutorily or contractually required contributions, contributions to the pension plan, and related ratios.

**Defined Contribution Pensions**

An employer whose employees are provided with defined contribution pensions is required to recognize pension expense for the amount of contributions to employees' accounts that are defined by the benefit terms as attributable to employees' services in the period, net of forfeited amounts that are removed from employees' accounts. A change in the pension liability is required to be recognized for the difference between amounts recognized in expense and amounts paid by the employer to a defined contribution pension plan. In governmental fund financial statements, pension expenditures should be recognized equal to the total of (1) amounts paid by the employer to a pension plan and (2) the change between the beginning and ending balances of amounts normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. A pension liability should be recognized to the extent the liability is normally expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. Notes to financial statements of an employer with a defined contribution plan should include descriptive information about the pension plan and benefit terms, contribution rates and how they are determined, and amounts attributed to employee service and forfeitures in the current period.

**Special Funding Situations**

In this statement, *special funding situations* are defined as circumstances in which a nonemployer entity is legally responsible for making contributions directly to a pension plan that is used to provide pensions to the employees of
another entity or entities and circumstances in which either (1) the amount of contributions for which the nonemployer entity legally is responsible is not dependent upon one or more events unrelated to pensions or (2) the nonemployer is the only entity with a legal obligation to make contributions directly to a pension plan.

This statement requires an employer that has a special funding situation for defined benefit pensions to recognize a pension liability and deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions with adjustments for the involvement of nonemployer contributing entities. The employer is required to recognize its proportionate share of the collective pension expense, as well as additional pension expense and revenue for the pension support of the nonemployer contributing entities. This statement requires the employer to disclose in notes to financial statements information about the amount of support provided by nonemployer contributing entities and to present similar information about the involvement of those entities in 10-year schedules of required supplementary information.

The approach required by this statement for measurement and recognition of liabilities, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources, and expense by a governmental nonemployer contributing entity in a special funding situation for defined benefit pensions is similar to the approach required for cost-sharing employers.

The information that should be disclosed in notes to financial statements and presented in required supplementary information of a governmental nonemployer contributing entity in a special funding situation depends on the proportion of the collective net pension liability that it recognizes. If the governmental nonemployer contributing entity recognizes a substantial proportion of the collective net pension liability, it should disclose in notes to financial statements a description of the pensions, including the types of benefits provided and the employees covered, and the discount rate and assumptions made in the measurement of the net pension liability. The governmental nonemployer contributing entity also should present schedules of required supplementary information similar to those required of a cost-sharing employer. Reduced note disclosures and required supplementary information are required for governmental nonemployer contributing entities that recognize a less-than-substantial portion of the collective net pension liability.

This statement also establishes requirements related to special funding situations for defined contribution pensions.

**Effective Date and Transition**

GASB Statement No. 68 is effective for fiscal years beginning after June 15, 2014. Earlier application is encouraged.

**GASB Statement No. 68 Implementation Resources**

The AICPA GAQC website includes "GASB Matters," a resource page dedicated to the implementation of GASB Statement Nos. 67 and 68. Recently issued pension-related auditing interpretations and other valuable resources are available at www.aicpa.org/INTERESTAREAS/GOVERNMENTALAUDITQUALITY/RESOURCES/GASB MATTERS/Pages/default.aspx.
A.04 GASB Statement No. 71

Accounting and Reporting: Pensions of State and Local Government Employers [Update 15-1]

The objective of GASB Statement No. 71, Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date—an amendment of GASB Statement No. 68, is to address an issue regarding application of the transition provisions of GASB Statement No. 68. The issue relates to amounts associated with contributions, if any, made by a state or local government employer or nonemployer contributing entity to a defined benefit pension plan after the measurement date of the government’s beginning net pension liability.

GASB Statement No. 68 requires a state or local government employer (or nonemployer contributing entity in a special funding situation) to recognize a net pension liability measured as of a date (the measurement date) no earlier than the end of its prior fiscal year. If a state or local government employer or nonemployer contributing entity makes a contribution to a defined benefit pension plan between the measurement date of the reported net pension liability and the end of the government’s reporting period, GASB Statement No. 68 requires that the government recognize its contribution as a deferred outflow of resources. In addition, GASB Statement No. 68 requires recognition of deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources for changes in the net pension liability of a state or local government employer or nonemployer contributing entity that arise from other types of events. At transition to GASB Statement No. 68, if it is not practical for an employer or nonemployer contributing entity to determine the amounts of all deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, paragraph 137 of GASB Statement No. 68 required that beginning balances for deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources not be reported.

Consequently, if it is not practical to determine the amounts of all deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, contributions made after the measurement date of the beginning net pension liability could not have been reported as deferred outflows of resources at transition. This could have resulted in a significant understatement of an employer or nonemployer contributing entity's beginning net position and expense in the initial period of implementation.

This statement amends paragraph 137 of GASB Statement No. 68 to require that, at transition, a government recognize a beginning deferred outflow of resources for its pension contributions, if any, made subsequent to the measurement date of the beginning net pension liability. GASB Statement No. 68, as amended, continues to require that beginning balances for other deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions be reported at transition only if it is practical to determine all such amounts.

Effective Date and Transition

The provisions of GASB Statement No. 71 are required to be applied simultaneously with the provisions of GASB Statement No. 68.
GASB Statement No. 71 Implementation Resources

The AICPA GAQC website includes "GASB Matters," a resource page dedicated to the implementation of GASB Statement Nos. 67 and 68. Recently issued pension-related auditing interpretations and other valuable resources are available at www.aicpa.org/INTERESTAREAS/GOVERNMENTALAUDITQUALITY/RESOURCES/GASB MATTERS/Pages/default.aspx.

________________________
Appendix B

Statement of Position 99-1,
Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of Its Corporate Compliance Program

May 21, 1999
NOTE

This AICPA Statement of Position (SOP) has been developed by the AICPA Health Care Pilot Task Force of the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) to provide guidance regarding the application of Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) to agreed-upon procedures attestation engagements performed to assist a health care provider in evaluating the effectiveness of its corporate compliance program consistent with the requirements of a Corporate Integrity Agreement entered into with the Office of Inspector General of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

This SOP is recognized as an attestation interpretation as defined in AT section 50, SSAE Hierarchy (AICPA, Professional Standards). Attestation interpretations are recommendations on the application of SSAEs in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries. Attestation interpretations are issued under the authority of the ASB. The members of the ASB have found this SOP to be consistent with existing SSAEs.

A practitioner should be aware of and consider attestation interpretations applicable to his or her attestation engagement. If the practitioner does not apply the guidance included in this SOP, the practitioner should be prepared to explain how he or she complied with the SSAE provisions of this SOP.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>.01-.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction and Background</td>
<td>.04-.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of a Typical Corporate Integrity Agreement</td>
<td>.06-.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditions for Engagement Performance</td>
<td>.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establishing an Understanding With the Client</td>
<td>.09-.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Responsibilities of Specified Parties</td>
<td>.11-.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practitioner’s Responsibilities</td>
<td>.15-.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Involvement of a Specialist</td>
<td>.18-.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal Auditors and Other Personnel</td>
<td>.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning the Engagement</td>
<td>.22-.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentation</td>
<td>.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management’s Representations</td>
<td>.25-.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting Considerations</td>
<td>.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A—Sample Corporate Integrity Agreement Between the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services and [Provider]</td>
<td>.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix B—Sample Statement of Management’s Assertions</td>
<td>.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix C—Sample Engagement Letter</td>
<td>.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix D—Sample Procedures</td>
<td>.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix E—Sample Report</td>
<td>.36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Summary
This Statement of Position (SOP) provides guidance to practitioners in con-ducting and reporting on an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed pursuant to the AICPA Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements (SSAEs) to assist a health care provider in evaluating the effectiveness of its corporate compliance program consistent with the requirements of a Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) entered into with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. CIAs are specific to the entity involved; consequently, users of this SOP should be familiar with the specific requirements of the entity's CIA.
Introduction and Background

.01 Within the past several years, the health care industry has experienced a significant increase in the number and magnitude of allegations of fraud and abuse involving federal health care programs (for example, Medicare and Medicaid) and private health care insurance. These allegations have triggered regulatory scrutiny, litigation, significant monetary settlements, and negative publicity related to—among other things—coding and billing practices, patient referrals, cost reporting, quality of care, and clinical practices. Typically, as part of the global resolution of these allegations, the entity enters into a CIA with the OIG of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Such agreements require that management annually report on its compliance with the terms of the CIA and that there be an assessment of the entity's compliance with the CIA. This assessment includes a billing analysis, which may be performed by an independent review organization (such as a practitioner or consultant) or the provider (if permitted by the OIG), and an agreed-upon procedures engagement.

.02 This SOP provides guidance to practitioners in conducting and reporting on an agreed-upon procedures engagement performed pursuant to the AICPA Statements on Standards for Attestation Engagements to assist an entity in evaluating the effectiveness of its corporate compliance program consistent with the requirements of a CIA. The terms of a CIA are unique to the entity; consequently, users of this SOP need to be familiar with the actual CIA and its requirements.

.03 This SOP applies to agreed-upon procedures engagements to assist in evaluating an entity's compliance for a specified period. Such engagements should follow the AICPA attestation standards, including AT section 201, Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagements (AICPA, Professional Standards), and the applicable sections of AT section 101, Attest Engagements (AICPA, Professional Standards), and AT section 601, Compliance Attestation (AICPA, Professional Standards). The engagement should be conducted in accordance with standards established by the AICPA, including the criteria set forth in this SOP. However, this SOP is not intended to provide all the required criteria set forth in individual CIAs, nor all the applicable standards established by the AICPA. Additionally, the SOP contains some guidance that may be applied in evaluating an organization's corporate compliance program, even though the program was not imposed by a CIA.

Overview of a Typical Corporate Integrity Agreement

.04 A CIA is an agreement between a health care provider and the OIG in conjunction with a global settlement of a fraud investigation. Such an agreement typically seeks to establish a compliance program within the health care provider (for example, hospital, clinical lab, physician group) that will promote

---

1 The practitioner also might be engaged to assist in other areas beyond an agreed-upon procedures engagement such as providing consulting services in connection with evaluating the company's billing practices, policies, and procedures as required by the CIA or in implementing, assessing, and reporting on voluntarily adopted compliance programs. In addition, the practitioner may assist in preparing an entity's self-disclosure reports to federal health agencies related to billing errors and other compliance matters. Similarly, practitioners may be involved in an entity's preparation of government-required (but not CIA-imposed) compliance reporting (for example, contract requirements for Medicare part C) beyond an agreed-upon procedures engagement.
compliance with the requirements of Medicare, Medicaid, and all other federal health care programs.

.05 CIAs are case-specific. Their terms are tailored to address the organizational and operating deficiencies related to providing and billing for health care services that have been identified by the OIG, the entity, or others. Detailed compliance requirements are imposed as a condition for continued participation in federal health care programs. A sample CIA, provided by the OIG and intended to identify potential requirements, is included in appendix A [paragraph .32], "Sample Corporate Integrity Agreement Between the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services and [Provider]." Typical agreements cover five years and require the entity to address the following areas:

- Appointment of a compliance officer and establishment of a compliance committee
- Establishment of a code of conduct
- Establishment of policies and procedures regarding the compliance program
- Development of an information and education program as to the CIA requirements, compliance program and code of conduct
- Annual assessment of billing policies, procedures, and practices
- Establishment of a confidential disclosure program
- Prohibition of employment of excluded or convicted persons
- Notification to OIG of investigation or legal proceedings
- Reporting of credible evidence of misconduct
- Notifications to OIG of new provider locations
- Provision of implementation and annual reports
- Proper notification and submission of required reports
- Granting of OIG access to documents and individuals to conduct assessments
- Documentation of record retention requirements
- Awareness of disclosure criteria
- Agreement to comply with certain default provisions, penalties, and remedies
- Review of rights as to dispute resolution
- Review of effective and binding agreement clauses

Conditions for Engagement Performance

.06 A practitioner may perform an agreed-upon procedures engagement related to management's compliance with a CIA if all of the conditions specified in AT sections 201 and 601 are met.

.07 As discussed more fully in the AT sections identified in paragraph .06, management’s assertions as to its compliance must be capable of evaluation against reasonable criteria that either have been established by a recognized body or are stated in or attached to the practitioner's report in a sufficiently clear and comprehensive manner. Generally, to avoid confusion, management's assertions, which are based on the specific terms of its CIA, should be attached
to the practitioner's report. If the entity is not required to have a CIA, management may develop its assertions using the model CIA. A sample based on the model CIA, which is not meant to be all-inclusive, is included as appendix B (paragraph .33), "Sample Statement of Management's Assertions." [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**Establishing an Understanding With the Client**

.08 The practitioner should document the understanding in the working papers, preferably through a written communication with the client, such as an engagement letter. Appendix C [paragraph .34], "Sample Engagement Letter," contains a sample engagement letter that may be used for this kind of engagement.

**Responsibilities of Specified Parties**

.09 AT section 201 identifies the users of an agreed-upon procedures report as specified parties. The specified parties to the agreed upon procedures report described in this SOP typically would be the management of the health care provider and the OIG. Management is responsible for ensuring that the entity complies with the requirements of the CIA. That responsibility encompasses (a) identifying applicable compliance requirements, (b) establishing and maintaining internal control policies and procedures to provide reasonable assurance that the entity complies with those requirements, (c) evaluating and monitoring the entity's compliance, and (d) preparing reports that satisfy legal, regulatory, or contractual requirements. Management's evaluation may include documentation such as accounting or statistical data, policy manuals, accounting manuals, narrative memoranda, procedural write-ups, flowcharts, completed questionnaires, internal auditors' reports, and other special studies or analyses. The form and extent of documentation will vary depending on the nature of the compliance requirements and the size and complexity of the entity. Management may engage the practitioner to gather information to assist it in evaluating the entity's compliance. Regardless of the procedures performed by the practitioner, management must accept responsibility for its assertions and must not base such assertions solely on the practitioner's procedures. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.10 The specified parties are responsible for the sufficiency (nature, timing, and extent) of the agreed-upon procedures because they best understand their own needs. The specified parties assume the risk that such procedures might be insufficient for their purposes. In addition, the specified parties assume the risk that they might misunderstand or otherwise inappropriately use findings properly reported by the practitioner. Use of an agreed-upon procedures report is restricted to the specified parties. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

**Practitioner’s Responsibilities**

.11 The objective of the practitioner's agreed-upon procedures is to present specific findings to assist the specified parties in evaluating an entity's compliance with the requirements specified in the CIA. (See appendix D [paragraph
.12 The practitioner’s procedures generally may be as limited or extensive as the specified parties desire, as long as the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.13 To satisfy the requirements that the practitioner and the specified parties agree upon the procedures performed or to be performed and that the specified parties take responsibility for the sufficiency of the agreed-upon procedures for their purposes, ordinarily the practitioner should communicate directly with and obtain affirmative acknowledgment from each of the specified parties. For the purposes of these engagements, an effective way to obtain this agreement ordinarily is to distribute a draft of the report, detailing the procedures, that is expected to be issued to the OIG with a request for any comments it may have. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.14 To avoid possible misunderstandings, the practitioner should circulate the draft with a legend stating that these are the procedures expected to be performed, and unless informed otherwise, the practitioner assumes that there are no additional procedures that he or she is expected to perform. A legend such as the following might be used.

This draft is furnished solely for the purpose of indicating the form of report that we would expect to be able to furnish pursuant to the request by Management of [Provider] for our performance of limited procedures relating to [Provider’s] compliance with the Corporate Integrity Agreement with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Based on our discussions with [Provider], it is our understanding that the procedures outlined in this draft report are those we are expected to follow. Unless informed otherwise within ninety (90) days of this transmittal, we shall assume that there are no additional procedures that we are expected to follow. The text of the definitive report will depend, of course, on the results of the procedures.

Involvement of a Specialist

.15 The practitioner’s education and experience enable him or her to be knowledgeable about business matters in general, but he or she is not expected to have the expertise of a person trained for or qualified to engage in the practice of another profession or occupation. In certain circumstances, it may be appropriate to involve a specialist to assist the practitioner in the performance of one or more procedures. The following are examples:

- An attorney might provide assistance concerning the application of laws, regulations, or rules to a client’s situation.

2 A specialist is a person (or firm) possessing special skill or knowledge in a particular field other than the attest function. As used herein, a specialist does not include a person employed by the practitioner’s firm who participates in the attestation engagement.
A medical specialist might provide assistance in understanding the characteristics of diagnosis codes documented in patient medical records.

.16 The practitioner and the specified parties should agree to the involvement of a specialist in assisting a practitioner in the performance of an agreed-upon procedures engagement. This agreement may be reached when obtaining agreement on the procedures performed or to be performed and acknowledgment of responsibility for the sufficiency of the procedures, as discussed previously. The practitioner's report should describe the nature of the assistance provided by the specialist. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.17 A practitioner may agree to apply procedures to the report or work product of a specialist that does not constitute assistance by the specialist to the practitioner in an agreed-upon procedures engagement. For example, the practitioner may make reference to information contained in a report of a specialist in describing an agreed-upon procedure. However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to agree to merely read the specialist's report solely to describe or repeat the findings, or to take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by a specialist or the specialist's work product.

**Internal Auditors and Other Personnel**

.18 The agreed-upon procedures to be enumerated or referred to in the practitioner's report are to be performed entirely by the practitioner except as discussed in paragraphs .16–.18 of this SOP. However, internal auditors or other personnel may prepare schedules, accumulate data, perform an internal assessment of management's compliance, or provide other information for the practitioner's use in performing the agreed-upon procedures.

.19 A practitioner may agree to perform procedures on information documented in the working papers of internal auditors. For example, the practitioner may agree to

- repeat all or some of the procedures.
- determine whether the internal auditors' working papers contain documentation of procedures performed and whether the findings documented in the working papers are presented in a report by the internal auditors.

.20 However, it is inappropriate for the practitioner to

- agree to merely read the internal auditor's report solely to describe or repeat its findings.
- take responsibility for all or a portion of any procedures performed by internal auditors by reporting those findings as the practitioner's own.
- report in any manner that implies shared responsibility for the procedures with the internal auditors.

---

Planning the Engagement

.21 Planning an agreed-upon procedures engagement involves working with the specified parties to develop an overall strategy for the expected conduct and scope of the engagement. To develop such a strategy, practitioners should have adequate technical training and proficiency in the attestation standards and have adequate knowledge in health care regulatory matters to enable them to sufficiently understand the events, transactions, and practices that, in their judgment, have a significant effect on the presentation of the assertions. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

Documentation

.22 The practitioner should prepare and maintain attest documentation, the form and content of which should be designed to meet the circumstances of the particular attest engagement. Attest documentation is the principal record of attest procedures applied, information obtained, and conclusions or findings reached by the practitioner in the engagement. The quantity, type, and content of attest documentation are matters of the practitioner's professional judgment and are discussed in paragraphs .100–.103 of AT section 101. Paragraphs .104–.107 of AT section 101 present further requirements and guidance regarding attest documentation. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.23 Concern over access to the practitioner's documentation might cause some clients to inquire about documentation requirements. In situations where the practitioner is requested to not maintain copies of certain client documentation, or to not prepare and maintain documentation similar to client documents, the practitioner may refer to Interpretation No. 1, "The Effect of an Inability to Obtain Audit Evidence Relating to Income Tax Accruals," of AU-C section 500, Audit Evidence (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 9500 par. .01–.22), for guidance. See Interpretation No. 4, "Providing Access to or Copies of Attest Documentation to a Regulator," of AT section 101 (AICPA, Professional Standards, AT sec. 9101 par. .43–.46), for guidance related to providing access to or copies of attest documentation to a regulator in connection with work performed on an attestation engagement. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

Management’s Representations

.24 The practitioner should obtain written representation from management on various matters including the following:

a. Acknowledging management’s responsibility for complying with the CIA

b. Acknowledging management’s responsibility for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over compliance

c. Stating that management has performed an evaluation of the entity's compliance with CIA-specified requirements
d. Stating management's assertions about the entity's compliance with all aspects of the CIA, including the specific issues that gave rise to the CIA.

e. Stating that management has disclosed to the practitioner all known noncompliance with the CIA

f. Stating that management has made available all documentation relating to compliance with the CIA

g. Stating management's interpretation of any compliance requirements that have varying interpretations

h. Stating that management has disclosed any communication from regulatory agencies, internal auditors, legal counsel, and other parties concerning matters regarding the design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures in place, including communication received between the end of the reporting period and the date of the practitioner's report (the date of signature)

i. Stating that management has disclosed any known noncompliance occurring subsequent to the end of the reporting period

j. Describing any related material fraud or abuse, other fraud, abuse or illegal acts that, whether or not material, involve management or other employees who have a significant role in the entity's design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures in place upon which compliance is based

k. Stating that management has disclosed to the practitioners, orally or in writing, information about past noncompliance issues covered in the settlement agreement that gave rise to the CIA and the related corrective measures taken to support compliance in those areas

Management's refusal to furnish all appropriate written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the engagement sufficient to require withdrawal from the engagement.

Reporting Considerations

.25 A practitioner should present the results of applying agreed-upon procedures to the specific subject matter in the form of findings. The practitioner

---

4 Footnote 21 in paragraph .100 of AT section 101, Attest Engagements (AICPA, Professional Standards), indicates that attest documentation may also be referred to as working papers. [Footnote added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

5 Depending on the circumstances, representations in the following areas might be appropriate.

- Violations or possible violations of laws or regulations, such as those related to the Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes
- Compliance of third-party billings with applicable coding guidelines (for example, ICD-9-CM, CPT) and laws and regulations (including medical necessity, proper approvals, and proper rendering of care)
- Proper filing of all required Medicare, Medicaid, and similar reports under the applicable reimbursement rules and regulations (including nature of costs—allowable, patient-related, properly allocated, in accordance with applicable rules and regulations, properly adjusted to reflect prior audit adjustments) and adequacy of disclosures (including disputed costs) [Footnote renumbered, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

6 See paragraph .62 of AT section 101. [Footnote added, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]
should not provide negative assurance about whether the assertion is fairly stated in accordance with established or stated criteria. For example, the practitioner should not include a statement that "nothing came to my attention that caused me to believe that the assertion is not fairly stated in accordance with (established or stated) criteria."

.26 The practitioner should report all findings from the application of the agreed-upon procedures. The concept of materiality does not apply to findings to be reported in an agreed-upon procedures engagement unless the definition of materiality is agreed to by the specified parties. Any agreed-upon materiality limits should be described in the practitioner's report. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.27 The practitioner has no obligation to perform procedures beyond the agreed-upon procedures. However, if noncompliance related to management's assertion comes to the practitioner's attention by other means, such information ordinarily should be included in his or her report.

.28 The practitioner may become aware of noncompliance related to management's assertion that occurs subsequent to the reporting period but before the date of the practitioner's report. The practitioner should consider including information regarding such noncompliance in his or her report. However, the practitioner has no responsibility to perform procedures to detect such noncompliance other than obtaining management's representation about noncompliance in the subsequent period.

.29 The practitioner should follow the reporting guidance in AT section 201. A sample report is included in appendix E (paragraph .36), "Sample Report."

.30 Evaluating compliance with certain requirements may require interpretation of the laws, regulations, rules, contracts, or other agreements that establish those requirements. In such situations, the practitioner should consider whether he or she is provided with the reasonable criteria required to evaluate an assertion under the third general attestation standard. If these interpretations are significant, the practitioner may include a paragraph stating the description and the source of interpretations made by the entity's management. An example of such a paragraph, which should precede the procedures and findings paragraph(s), follows:

We have been informed that, under [name of entity's] interpretation of [identify the compliance requirement], [explain the nature and source of the relevant interpretation].

.31 The date of completion of the agreed-upon procedures should be used as the date of the practitioner's report.
Appendix A

Sample Corporate Integrity Agreement Between the Office of Inspector General of the Department of Health and Human Services and [Provider]

I. Preamble

[Provider] ("[Provider]") hereby enters into this Corporate Integrity Agreement ("CIA") with the Office of Inspector General ("OIG") of the United States Department of Health and Human Services ("HHS") to ensure compliance by its employees with the requirements of Medicare, Medicaid and all other Federal health care programs (as defined in 42 U.S.C. 1320a-7b(f)) (hereinafter collectively referred to as the "Federal health care programs"). [Provider's] compliance with the terms and conditions in this CIA shall constitute an element of [Provider's] present responsibility with regard to participation in the Federal health care programs. Contemporaneously with this CIA, [Provider] is entering into a Settlement Agreement with the United States, and this CIA is incorporated by reference into the Settlement Agreement.

II. Term of the CIA

The period of the compliance obligations assumed by [Provider] under this CIA shall be 5 years from the effective date of this CIA (unless otherwise specified). The effective date of this CIA will be the date on which the final signatory of this CIA executes this CIA (the "effective date").

III. Corporate Integrity Obligations

[Provider] shall establish a compliance program that includes the following elements:

A. Compliance Officer

Within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall appoint an individual to serve as Compliance Officer, who shall be responsible for developing and implementing policies, procedures, and practices designed to ensure compliance with the requirements set forth in this CIA and with the requirements of the Federal health care programs. The Compliance Officer shall be a member of senior management of [Provider], shall make regular (at least quarterly) reports regarding compliance matters directly to the CEO and/or to the Board of Directors of [Provider] and shall be authorized to report to the Board of Directors at any time. The Compliance Officer shall be responsible for monitoring the day-to-day activities engaged in by [Provider] to further its compliance objectives as well as any reporting obligations created under this CIA. In the event a new Compliance Officer is appointed during the term of this CIA, [Provider] shall notify the OIG, in writing, within fifteen (15) days of such a change.

[Provider] shall also appoint a Compliance Committee within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA. The Compliance Committee shall, at a minimum, include the Compliance Officer and any other

appropriate officers as necessary to meet the requirements of this CIA within the provider's corporate structure (e.g., senior executives of each major department, such as billing, clinical, human resources, audit, and operations). The Compliance Officer shall chair the Compliance Committee and the Committee shall support the Compliance Officer in fulfilling his/her responsibilities.

B. Written Standards

1. **Code of Conduct.** Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall establish a Code of Conduct. The Code of Conduct shall be distributed to all employees within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA. [Provider] shall make the promotion of, and adherence to, the Code of Conduct an element in evaluating the performance of managers, supervisors, and all other employees. The Code of Conduct shall, at a minimum, set forth:

   a. [Provider’s] commitment to full compliance with all statutes, regulations, and guidelines applicable to Federal health care programs, including its commitment to prepare and submit accurate billings consistent with Federal health care program regulations and procedures or instructions otherwise communicated by the Health Care Financing Administration (“HCFA”) (or other appropriate regulatory agencies) and/or its agents;

   b. [Provider’s] requirement that all of its employees shall be expected to comply with all statutes, regulations, and guidelines applicable to Federal health care programs and with [Provider’s] own policies and procedures (including the requirements of this CIA);

   c. the requirement that all of [Provider’s] employees shall be expected to report suspected violations of any statute, regulation, or guideline applicable to Federal health care programs or with [Provider’s] own policies and procedures;

   d. the possible consequences to both [Provider] and to any employee of failure to comply with all statutes, regulations, and guidelines applicable to Federal health care programs and with [Provider’s] own policies and procedures or of failure to report such non-compliance; and

   e. the right of all employees to use the confidential disclosure program, as well as [Provider’s] commitment to confidentiality and non-retaliation with respect to disclosures.

Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of the CIA, each employee shall certify, in writing, that he or she has received, read, understands, and will abide by [Provider’s] Code of Conduct. New employees shall receive the Code of Conduct and shall complete the required certification within two (2) weeks after the commencement of their employment or within ninety (90) days of the effective date of the CIA, whichever is later.

[Provider] will annually review the Code of Conduct and will make any necessary revisions. These revisions shall be distributed within thirty (30) days of initiating such a change. Employees shall certify on an annual basis that they have received, read, understand and will abide by the Code of Conduct.
2. **Policies and Procedures.** Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall develop and initiate implementation of written Policies and Procedures regarding the operation of [Provider's] compliance program and its compliance with all federal and state health care statutes, regulations, and guidelines, including the requirements of the Federal health care programs. At a minimum, the Policies and Procedures shall specifically address [insert language relevant to allegations in the case]. In addition, the Policies and Procedures shall include disciplinary guidelines and methods for employees to make disclosures or otherwise report on compliance issues to [Provider] management through the Confidential Disclosure Program required by section III.E. [Provider] shall assess and update as necessary the Policies and Procedures at least annually and more frequently, as appropriate. A summary of the Policies and Procedures will be provided to OIG in the Implementation Report. The Policies and Procedures will be available to OIG upon request.

Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of the CIA, the relevant portions of the Policies and Procedures shall be distributed to all appropriate employees. Compliance staff or supervisors should be available to explain any and all policies and procedures.

**C. Training and Education**

1. **General Training.** Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall provide at least two (2) hours of training to each employee. This general training shall explain [Provider's]:
   a. Corporate Integrity Agreement requirements;
   b. Compliance Program (including the Policies and Procedures as they pertain to general compliance issues); and
   c. Code of Conduct.

These training materials shall be made available to the OIG, upon request.

New employees shall receive the general training described above within thirty (30) days of the beginning of their employment or within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA, whichever is later. Each year, every employee shall receive such general training on an annual basis.

2. **Specific Training.** Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, each employee who is involved directly or indirectly in the delivery of patient care and/or in the preparation or submission of claims for reimbursement for such care (including, but not limited to, coding and billing) for any Federal health care programs shall receive at least [insert number of training hours] hours of training in addition to the general training required above. This training shall include a discussion of:
   a. the submission of accurate bills for services rendered to Medicare and/or Medicaid patients;
   b. policies, procedures and other requirements applicable to the documentation of medical records;
   c. the personal obligation of each individual involved in the billing process to ensure that such billings are accurate;
d. applicable reimbursement rules and statutes;

e. the legal sanctions for improper billings; and

f. examples of proper and improper billing practices.

These training materials shall be made available to OIG, upon request. Persons providing the training must be knowledgeable about the subject area.

Affected new employees shall receive this training within thirty (30) days of the beginning of their employment or within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, whichever is later. If a new employee has any responsibility for the delivery of patient care, the preparation or submission of claims and/or the assignment of procedure codes prior to completing this specific training, a [Provider] employee who has completed the substantive training shall review all of the untrained person's work regarding the assignment of billing codes.

Each year, every employee shall receive such specific training on an annual basis.

3. Certification. Each employee shall certify, in writing, that he or she has attended the required training. The certification shall specify the type of training received and the date received. The Compliance Officer shall retain the certifications, along with specific course materials. These shall be made available to OIG upon request.

D. Review Procedures

[Provider] shall retain an entity, such as an accounting, auditing or consulting firm (hereinafter "Independent Review Organization"), to perform review procedures to assist [Provider] in assessing the adequacy of its billing and compliance practices pursuant to this CIA. This shall be an annual requirement and shall cover a twelve (12) month period. The Independent Review Organization must have expertise in the billing, coding, reporting and other requirements of the Federal health care programs from which [Provider] seeks reimbursement. The Independent Review Organization must be retained to conduct the assessment of the first year within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA. For purposes of complying with this review procedures requirement, the OIG at its discretion, may permit the [Provider] to utilize internal auditors to perform the review(s). In such case, the [Provider] will engage the Independent Review Organization to verify the propriety of the internal auditors' methods and accuracy of their results. The [Provider] will request the Independent Review Organization to produce a report on its findings which report shall be included in the Annual Report to the OIG.

The Independent Review Organization (or the [Provider], if permitted by the OIG, as set forth above) will conduct two separate engagements. One will be an analysis of [Provider's] billing to the Federal health care programs to assist the [Provider] and OIG in determining compliance with all applicable statutes, regulations, and directives/guidance ("billing engagement"). The second engagement will assist the [Provider] and OIG in determining whether [Provider] is in compliance with this CIA ("compliance engagement").
1. **Billing Engagement.** The billing engagement shall consist of a review of a statistically valid sample of claims for the relevant period. The sample size shall be determined through the use of a probe sample.\(^1\) At a minimum, the full sample must be within a ninety (90) percent confidence level and a precision of twenty-five (25) percent. The probe sample must contain at least thirty (30) sample units and cannot be used as part of the full sample. Both the probe sample and the sample must be selected through random numbers. [Provider] shall use OIG's Office of Audit Services Statistical Sampling Software, also known as "RAT-STATS", which is available through the Internet at https://oig.hhs.gov/compliance/rat-stats/index.asp.

Each annual billing engagement analysis shall include the following components in its methodology:

- **a. Billing Engagement Objective:** Provide a statement stating clearly the objective intended to be achieved by the billing engagement and the procedure or combination of procedures that will be applied to achieve the objective.

- **b. Billing Engagement Population:** Identify the population, which is the group about which information is needed. Explain the methodology used to develop the population and provide the basis for this determination.

- **c. Sources of Data:** Provide a full description of the source of the information upon which the billing engagement conclusions will be based, including the legal or other standards applied, documents relied upon, payment data, and/or any contractual obligations.

- **d. Sampling Unit:** Define the sampling unit, which is any of the designated elements that comprise the population of interest.

- **e. Sampling Frame:** Identify the sampling frame, which is the totality of the sampling units from which the sample will be selected.

As part of the billing engagement:

- **a. Inquire of management as to the procedures and controls affecting the billing process subject to the annual assessment as specified in the CIA. Document that aspect of the billing process (e.g., flow of documents, processing activities), and those controls that will be tested in the sample. The documentation may consist of flow charts, excerpts from policies and procedures manuals, control questionnaires, etc.**

- **b. Report the sample results, including the overall error rate and the nature of the errors found (e.g., no documentation, inadequate documentation, assignment of incorrect code).**

- **c. Document findings related to [Provider's] procedures to correct inaccurate billings and codings to the Federal health care programs and findings regarding the steps**

---

\(^1\) Probe sample is defined as a small, random preliminary sample.
Health Care Entities

[Provider] is taking to bring its operations into compliance or to correct problems identified by the audit.

2. Agreed-upon Procedures or Compliance Engagement. An Independent Review Organization (or the [Provider], if permitted by the OIG) shall also conduct an agreed-upon procedures or compliance engagement, which shall assist the users in determining whether [Provider's] program, policies, procedures, and operations comply with the terms of this CIA. This engagement shall include a section by section analysis of the requirements of this CIA.

A complete copy of the Independent Review Organization's billing and agreed-upon procedures or compliance engagement shall be included in each of [Provider's] Annual Reports to OIG.

3. Disclosure of Overpayments and Material Deficiencies. If, as a result of these engagements, [Provider] or the Independent Review Organization identifies any billing, coding or other policies, procedures and/or practices that result in an overpayment, [Provider] shall notify the payor (e.g., Medicare fiscal intermediary or carrier) within 30 days of discovering the deficiency or overpayment and take remedial steps within 60 days of discovery (or such additional time as may be agreed to by the payor) to correct the problem, including preventing the deficiency from recurring. The notice to the payor shall include:

   a. a statement that the refund is being made pursuant to this CIA;
   b. a description of the complete circumstances surrounding the overpayment;
   c. the methodology by which the overpayment was determined;
   d. the amount of the overpayment;
   e. any claim-specific information used to determine the overpayment (e.g., beneficiary health insurance number, claim number, service date, and payment date);
   f. the cost reporting period; and
   g. the provider identification number under which the repayment is being made.

If [Provider] determines an overpayment represents a material deficiency, contemporaneous with [Provider's] notification to the payor as provided above, [Provider] shall also notify OIG of:

   a. a complete description of the material deficiency;
   b. amount of overpayment due to the material deficiency;
   c. [Provider's] action(s) to correct and prevent such material deficiency from recurring;
   d. the payor's name, address, and contact person where the overpayment was sent;
   e. the date of the check and identification number (or electronic transaction number) on which the overpayment was repaid.
For purposes of this CIA, an "overpayment" shall mean the amount of money the provider has received in excess of the amount due and payable under the Federal health care programs’ statutes, regulations or program directives, including carrier and intermediary instructions.

For purposes of this CIA, a "material deficiency" shall mean anything that involves: (i) a substantial overpayment or improper payment relating to the Medicare and/or Medicaid programs; (ii) conduct or policies that clearly violate the Medicare and/or Medicaid statute, regulations or directives issued by HCFA and/or its agents; or (iii) serious quality of care implications for federal health care beneficiaries or recipients. A material deficiency may be the result of an isolated event or a series of occurrences.

4. Verification/Validation. In the event that the OIG determines that it is necessary to conduct an independent review to determine whether or the extent to which [Provider] is complying with its obligations under this CIA, [Provider] agrees to pay for the reasonable cost of any such review or engagement by the OIG or any of its designated agents.

E. Confidential Disclosure Program

Within ninety (90) days after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall establish a Confidential Disclosure Program, which must include measures (e.g., a toll-free compliance telephone line) to enable employees, contractors, agents or other individuals to disclose, to the Compliance Officer or some other person who is not in the reporting individual’s chain of command, any identified issues or questions associated with [Provider’s] policies, practices or procedures with respect to the Federal health care program, believed by the individual to be inappropriate. [Provider] shall publicize the existence of the hotline (e.g., e-mail to employees or post hotline number in prominent common areas).

The Confidential Disclosure Program shall emphasize a non-retribution, non-retaliation policy, and shall include a reporting mechanism for anonymous, confidential communication. Upon receipt of a complaint, the Compliance Officer (or designee) shall gather the information in such a way as to elicit all relevant information from the individual reporting the alleged misconduct. The Compliance Officer (or designee) shall make a preliminary good faith inquiry into the allegations set forth in every disclosure to ensure that he or she has obtained all of the information necessary to determine whether a further review should be conducted. For any disclosure that is sufficiently specific so that it reasonably: (1) permits a determination of the appropriateness of the alleged improper practice, and (2) provides an opportunity for taking corrective action, [Provider] shall conduct an internal review of the allegations set forth in such a disclosure and ensure that proper follow-up is conducted.

The Compliance Officer shall maintain a confidential disclosure log, which shall include a record and summary of each allegation received, the status of the respective investigations, and any corrective action taken in response to the investigation.
F. Ineligible Persons

[Provider] shall not hire or engage as contractors any "Ineligible Person." For purposes of this CIA, an "Ineligible Person" shall be any individual or entity who: (i) is currently excluded, suspended, debarred or otherwise ineligible to participate in the Federal health care programs; or (ii) has been convicted of a criminal offense related to the provision of health care items or services and has not been reinstated in the Federal health care programs after a period of exclusion, suspension, debarment, or ineligibility.

Within ninety (90) days of the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] will review its list of current employees and contractors against the General Services Administration's List of Parties Excluded from Federal Programs (available through the Internet at www.arnet.gov/epls) and the HHS/OIG Cumulative Sanction Report (available through the Internet at www.dhhs.gov/progorg/oig) to ensure that it is not currently employing or contracting with any Ineligible Person. Thereafter, [Provider] will review the list once semi-annually to ensure that no current employees or contractors are or have become Ineligible Persons.

To prevent hiring or contracting with any Ineligible Person, [Provider] shall screen all prospective employees and prospective contractors prior to engaging their services by (i) requiring applicants to disclose whether they are Ineligible Persons, and (ii) reviewing the General Services Administration's List of Parties Excluded from Federal Programs (available through the Internet at www.arnet.gov/epls) and the HHS/OIG Cumulative Sanction Report (available through the Internet at www.dhhs.gov/progorg/oig).

If [Provider] has notice that an employee or agent is charged with a criminal offense related to any Federal health care program, or is suspended or proposed for exclusion during his or her employment or contract with [Provider], within 10 days of receiving such notice [Provider] will remove such employee from responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs until the resolution of such criminal action, suspension, or proposed exclusion. If [Provider] has notice that an employee or agent has become an Ineligible Person, [Provider] will remove such person from responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs and shall remove such person from any position for which the person's salary or the items or services rendered, ordered, or prescribed by the person are paid in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, by Federal health care programs or otherwise with Federal funds at least until such time as the person is reinstated into participation in the Federal health care programs.

G. Notification of Proceedings

Within thirty (30) days of discovery, [Provider] shall notify OIG, in writing, of any ongoing investigation or legal proceeding conducted or brought by a governmental entity or its agents involving an allegation that [Provider] has committed a crime or has engaged in fraudulent activities or any other knowing misconduct. This notification shall include a description of the allegation, the identity of the investigating
or prosecuting agency, and the status of such investigation or legal proceeding. [Provider] shall also provide written notice to OIG within thirty (30) days of the resolution of the matter, and shall provide OIG with a description of the findings and/or results of the proceedings, if any.

H. Reporting

1. Credible evidence of misconduct. If [Provider] discovers credible evidence of misconduct from any source and, after reasonable inquiry, has reason to believe that the misconduct may violate criminal, civil, or administrative law concerning [Provider's] practices relating to the Federal health care programs, then [Provider] shall promptly report the probable violation of law to OIG. Defendants shall make this disclosure as soon as practicable, but, not later than thirty (30) days after becoming aware of the existence of the probable violation. The [Provider's] report to OIG shall include:
   a. the findings concerning the probable violation, including the nature and extent of the probable violation;
   b. [Provider's] actions to correct such probable violation; and
   c. any further steps it plans to take to address such probable violation and prevent it from recurring.

To the extent the misconduct involves an overpayment, the report shall include the information listed in section III.D.3 regarding material deficiencies.

2. Inappropriate Billing. If [Provider] discovers inappropriate or incorrect billing through means other than the Independent Review Organization’s engagement, the provider shall follow procedures in section III.D.3 regarding overpayments and material deficiencies.

IV. New Locations

In the event that [Provider] purchases or establishes new business units after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall notify OIG of this fact within thirty (30) days of the date of purchase or establishment. This notification shall include the location of the new operation(s), phone number, fax number, Federal health care program provider number(s) (if any), and the corresponding payor(s) (contractor specific) that has issued each provider number. All employees at such locations shall be subject to the requirements in this CIA that apply to new employees (e.g., completing certifications and undergoing training).

V. Implementation and Annual Reports

A. Implementation Report

Within one hundred and twenty (120) days after the effective date of this CIA, [Provider] shall submit a written report to OIG summarizing the status of its implementation of the requirements of this CIA. This Implementation Report shall include:

1. the name, address, phone number and position description of the Compliance Officer required by section III.A;
2. the names and positions of the members of the Compliance Committee required by section III.A;
3. a copy of [Provider's] Code of Conduct required by section III.B.1;
4. the summary of the Policies and Procedures required by section III.B.2;
5. a description of the training programs required by section III.C including a description of the targeted audiences and a schedule of when the training sessions were held;
6. a certification by the Compliance Officer that:
   a. the Policies and Procedures required by section III.B have been developed, are being implemented, and have been distributed to all pertinent employees;
   b. all employees have completed the Code of Conduct certification required by section III.B.1; and
   c. all employees have completed the training and executed the certification required by section III.C;
7. a description of the confidential disclosure program required by section III.E;
8. the identity of the Independent Review Organization(s) and the proposed start and completion date of the first audit; and
9. a summary of personnel actions taken pursuant to section III.F.

B. Annual Reports

[Provider] shall submit to OIG an Annual Report with respect to the status and findings of [Provider's] compliance activities. The Annual Reports shall include:

1. any change in the identity or position description of the Compliance Officer and/or members of the Compliance Committee described in section III.A;
2. a certification by the Compliance Officer that:
   a. all employees have completed the annual Code of Conduct certification required by section III.B.1; and
   b. all employees have completed the training and executed the certification required by section III.C;
3. notification of any changes or amendments to the Policies and Procedures required by section III.B and the reasons for such changes (e.g., change in contractor policy);
4. a complete copy of the report prepared pursuant to the Independent Review Organization's billing and compliance engagement, including a copy of the methodology used;
5. [Provider's] response/corrective action plan to any issues raised by the Independent Review Organization;
6. a summary of material deficiencies reported throughout the course of the previous twelve (12) months pursuant to III.D.3 and III.H;
7. a report of the aggregate overpayments that have been returned to the Federal health care programs that were discovered as a direct or indirect result of implementing...
this CIA. Overpayment amounts should be broken down into the following categories: Medicare, Medicaid (report each applicable state separately) and other Federal health care programs;

8. a copy of the confidential disclosure log required by section III.E;

9. a description of any personnel action (other than hiring) taken by [Provider] as a result of the obligations in section III.F;

10. a summary describing any ongoing investigation or legal proceeding conducted or brought by a government entity involving an allegation that [Provider] has committed a crime or has engaged in fraudulent activities, which have been reported pursuant to section III.G. The statement shall include a description of the allegation, the identity of the investigating or prosecuting agency, and the status of such investigation, legal proceeding or requests for information;

11. a corrective action plan to address the probable violations of law identified in section III.H; and

12. a listing of all of the [Provider's] locations (including locations and mailing addresses), the corresponding name under which each location is doing business, the corresponding phone numbers and fax numbers, each location's Federal health care program provider identification number(s) and the payor (specific contractor) that issued each provider identification number.

The first Annual Report shall be received by the OIG no later than one year and thirty (30) days after the effective date of this CIA. Subsequent Annual Reports shall be submitted no later than the anniversary date of the due date of the first Annual Report.

C. Certifications

The Implementation Report and Annual Reports shall include a certification by the Compliance Officer under penalty of perjury, that: (1) [Provider] is in compliance with all of the requirements of this CIA, to the best of his or her knowledge; and (2) the Compliance Officer has reviewed the Report and has made reasonable inquiry regarding its content and believes that, upon such inquiry, the information is accurate and truthful.

VI. Notifications and Submission of Reports

Unless otherwise stated in writing subsequent to the effective date of this CIA, all notifications and reports required under this CIA shall be submitted to the entities listed below:

OIG:

Civil Recoveries Branch—Compliance Unit
Office of Counsel to the Inspector General
Office of Inspector General
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Cohen Building, Room 5527
VII. OIG Inspection, Audit and Review Rights

In addition to any other rights OIG may have by statute, regulation, or contract, OIG or its duly authorized representative(s), may examine [Provider's] books, records, and other documents and supporting materials for the purpose of verifying and evaluating: (a) [Provider's] compliance with the terms of this CIA; and (b) [Provider's] compliance with the requirements of the Federal health care programs in which it participates. The documentation described above shall be made available by [Provider] to OIG or its duly authorized representative(s) at all reasonable times for inspection, audit or reproduction. Furthermore, for purposes of this provision, OIG or its duly authorized representative(s) may interview any of [Provider's] employees who consent to be interviewed at the employee's place of business during normal business hours or at such other place and time as may be mutually agreed upon between the employee and OIG. [Provider] agrees to assist OIG in contacting and arranging interviews with such employees upon OIG's request. [Provider's] employees may elect to be interviewed with or without a representative of [Provider] present.

VIII. Document and Record Retention

[Provider] shall maintain for inspection all documents and records relating to reimbursement from the Federal health care programs or to compliance with this CIA one year longer than the term of this CIA (or longer if otherwise required by law).

IX. Disclosures

Subject to HHS's Freedom of Information Act ("FOIA") procedures, set forth in 45 C.F.R. Part 5, the OIG shall make a reasonable effort to notify [Provider] prior to any release by OIG of information submitted by [Provider] pursuant to its obligations under this CIA and identified upon submission by [Provider] as trade secrets, commercial or financial information and privileged and confidential under the FOIA rules. [Provider] shall refrain from identifying any information as trade secrets, commercial or financial information and privileged and confidential that does not meet the criteria for exemption from disclosure under FOIA.

X. Breach and Default Provisions

[Provider] is expected to fully and timely comply with all of the obligations herein throughout the term of this CIA or other time frames herein agreed to.

A. Stipulated Penalties for Failure to Comply with Certain Obligations

As a contractual remedy, [Provider] and OIG hereby agree that failure to comply with certain obligations set forth in this CIA may lead to the imposition of the following monetary penalties (hereinafter referred to as "Stipulated Penalties") in accordance with the following provisions.

1. A Stipulated Penalty of $2,500 (which shall begin to accrue on the day after the date the obligation became due) for each day, beginning 120 days after the effective date of
this CIA and concluding at the end of the term of this CIA, [Provider] fails to have in place any of the following:

a. a Compliance Officer;
b. a Compliance Committee;
c. a written Code of Conduct;
d. written Policies and Procedures;
e. a training program; and
f. a Confidential Disclosure Program;

2. A Stipulated Penalty of $2,500 (which shall begin to accrue on the day after the date the obligation became due) for each day [Provider] fails to meet any of the deadlines to submit the Implementation Report or the Annual Reports to the OIG.

3. A Stipulated Penalty of $2,000 (which shall begin to accrue on the date the failure to comply began) for each day [Provider]:

a. hires or contracts with an Ineligible Person after that person has been listed by a federal agency as excluded, debarred, suspended or otherwise ineligible for participation in the Medicare, Medicaid or any other Federal health care program (as defined in 42 U.S.C. 1320a-7b(f)). This Stipulated Penalty shall not be demanded for any time period if [Provider] can demonstrate that it did not discover the person's exclusion or other ineligibility after making a reasonable inquiry (as described in section III.F) as to the status of the person;

b. employs or contracts with an Ineligible Person and that person: (i) has responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs or (ii) is in a position for which the person's salary or the items or services rendered, ordered, or prescribed by the person are paid in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, by the Federal health care programs or otherwise with Federal funds (this Stipulated Penalty shall not be demanded for any time period during which [Provider] can demonstrate that it did not discover the person's exclusion or other ineligibility after making a reasonable inquiry (as described in III.F) as to the status of the person);

c. employs or contracts with a person who: (i) has been charged with a criminal offense related to any Federal health care program, or (ii) is suspended or proposed for exclusion, and that person has responsibility for, or involvement with, [Provider's] business operations related to the Federal health care programs (this Stipulated
Penalty shall not be demanded for any time period before 10 days after [Provider] received notice of the relevant matter or after the resolution of the matter).

4. A Stipulated Penalty of $1,500 (which shall begin to accrue on the date the [Provider] fails to grant access) for each day [Provider] fails to grant access to the information or documentation as required in section V of this CIA.

5. A Stipulated Penalty of $1,000 (which shall begin to accrue ten (10) days after the date that OIG provides notice to [Provider] of the failure to comply) for each day [Provider] fails to comply fully and adequately with any obligation of this CIA. In its notice to [Provider], the OIG shall state the specific grounds for its determination that the [Provider] has failed to comply fully and adequately with the CIA obligation(s) at issue.

B. Payment of Stipulated Penalties

1. **Demand Letter.** Upon a finding that [Provider] has failed to comply with any of the obligations described in section X.A and determining that Stipulated Penalties are appropriate, OIG shall notify [Provider] by personal service or certified mail of (a) [Provider's] failure to comply; and (b) the OIG's exercise of its contractual right to demand payment of the Stipulated Penalties (this notification is hereinafter referred to as the "Demand Letter").

Within fifteen (15) days of the date of the Demand Letter, [Provider] shall either (a) cure the breach to the OIG's satisfaction and pay the applicable stipulated penalties, or (b) request a hearing before an HHS administrative law judge ("ALJ") to dispute the OIG's determination of noncompliance, pursuant to the agreed-upon provisions set forth below in section X.D. In the event [Provider] elects to request an ALJ hearing, the Stipulated Penalties shall continue to accrue until [Provider] cures, to the OIG's satisfaction, the alleged breach in dispute. Failure to respond to the Demand Letter in one of these two manners within the allowed time period shall be considered a material breach of this CIA and shall be grounds for exclusion under section X.C.

2. **Timely Written Requests for Extensions.** [Provider] may submit a timely written request for an extension of time to perform any act or file any notification or report required by this CIA. Notwithstanding any other provision in this section, if OIG grants the timely written request with respect to an act, notification, or report, Stipulated Penalties for failure to perform the act or file the notification or report shall not begin to accrue until one day after [Provider] fails to meet the revised deadline as agreed to by the OIG-approved extension. Notwithstanding any other provision in this section, if OIG denies such a timely written request, Stipulated Penalties for failure to perform the act or file the notification or report shall not begin to accrue until two (2) business days after [Provider] receives OIG's written denial of such request. A "timely written request" is defined as a request in writing received by OIG.
at least five (5) business days prior to the date by which any act is
due to be performed or any notification or report is due to be filed.

3. **Form of Payment.** Payment of the Stipulated Penalties shall be
made by certified or cashier's check, payable to "Secretary of the
Department of Health and Human Services," and submitted to OIG
at the address set forth in section VI.

4. **Independence from Material Breach Determination.** Except as oth-
erwise noted, these provisions for payment of Stipulated Penalties
shall not affect or otherwise set a standard for the OIG's deter-
mination that [Provider] has materially breached this CIA, which
decision shall be made at the OIG's discretion and governed by the
provisions in section X.C, below.

### C. Exclusion for Material Breach of this CIA

1. **Notice of Material Breach and Intent to Exclude.** The parties agree
that a material breach of this CIA by [Provider] constitutes an
independent basis for [Provider's] exclusion from participation
in the Federal health care programs (as defined in 42 U.S.C.
1320a7b(f)). Upon a determination by OIG that [Provider] has ma-
terially breached this CIA and that exclusion should be imposed,
the OIG shall notify [Provider] by certified mail of (a) [Provider's]
material breach; and (b) OIG's intent to exercise its contractual
right to impose exclusion (this notification is hereinafter referred
to as the "Notice of Material Breach and Intent to Exclude").

2. **Opportunity to Cure.** [Provider] shall have thirty-five (35) days from
the date of the Notice of Material Breach and Intent to Exclude
Letter to demonstrate to the OIG's satisfaction that:

   a. [Provider] is in full compliance with this CIA;

   b. the alleged material breach has been cured; or

   c. the alleged material breach cannot be cured within the
      35-day period, but that: (i) [Provider] has begun to take
      action to cure the material breach, (ii) [Provider] is pur-
suing such action with due diligence, and (iii) [Provider]
      has provided to OIG a reasonable timetable for curing the
      material breach.

3. **Exclusion Letter.** If at the conclusion of the thirty-five (35) day pe-
diod, [Provider] fails to satisfy the requirements of section X.C.2,
OIG may exclude [Provider] from participation in the Federal
health care programs. OIG will notify [Provider] in writing of its
determination to exclude [Provider] (this letter shall be referred
to hereinafter as the "Exclusion Letter"). Subject to the Dispute
Resolution provisions in section X.D, below, the exclusion shall
go into effect thirty (30) days after the date of the Exclusion Let-
ter. The exclusion shall have national effect and will also apply to
all other federal procurement and non-procurement programs. If
[Provider] is excluded under the provisions of this CIA, [Provider]
may seek reinstatement pursuant to the provisions at 42 C.F.R.
§§1001.3001–.3004.
Material Breach. A material breach of this CIA means:

a. a failure by [Provider] to report a material deficiency, take corrective action and pay the appropriate refunds, as provided in section III.D;

b. repeated or flagrant violations of the obligations under this CIA, including, but not limited to, the obligations addressed in section X.A of this CIA;

c. a failure to respond to a Demand Letter concerning the payment of Stipulated Penalties in accordance with section X.B above; or

d. a failure to retain and use an Independent Review Organization for review purposes in accordance with section III.D.

D. Dispute Resolution

1. Review Rights. Upon the OIG’s delivery to [Provider] of its Demand Letter or of its Exclusion Letter, and as an agreed-upon contractual remedy for the resolution of disputes arising under the obligation of this CIA, [Provider] shall be afforded certain review rights comparable to the ones that are provided in 42 U.S.C. §§1320a7(f) and 42 C.F.R. §1005 as if they applied to the Stipulated Penalties or exclusion sought pursuant to this CIA. Specifically, the OIG’s determination to demand payment of Stipulated Penalties or to seek exclusion shall be subject to review by an ALJ and, in the event of an appeal, the Departmental Appeals Board (“DAB”), in a manner consistent with the provisions in 42 C.F.R. §§1005.2–.21. Notwithstanding the language in 42 C.F.R. §1005.2(c), the request for a hearing involving stipulated penalties shall be made within fifteen (15) days of the date of the Demand Letter and the request for a hearing involving exclusion shall be made within thirty (30) days of the date of the Exclusion Letter.

2. Stipulated Penalties Review. Notwithstanding any provision of Title 42 of the United States Code or Chapter 42 of the Code of Federal Regulations, the only issues in a proceeding for stipulated penalties under this CIA shall be (a) whether [Provider] was in full and timely compliance with the obligations of this CIA for which the OIG demands payment; and (b) the period of noncompliance. [Provider] shall have the burden of proving its full and timely compliance and the steps taken to cure the noncompliance, if any. If the ALJ finds for the OIG with regard to a finding of a breach of this CIA and orders [Provider] to pay Stipulated Penalties, such Stipulated Penalties shall become due and payable twenty (20) days after the ALJ issues such a decision notwithstanding that [Provider] may request review of the ALJ decision by the DAB.

3. Exclusion Review. Notwithstanding any provision of Title 42 of the United States Code or Chapter 42 of the Code of Federal Regulations, the only issues in a proceeding for exclusion based on a material breach of this CIA shall be (a) whether [Provider] was in material breach of this CIA; (b) whether such breach was continuing on the date of the Exclusion Letter; and (c) the alleged material breach cannot be cured within the 35-day period, but that (i) [Provider] has begun to take action to cure the material breach,
(ii) [Provider] is pursuing such action with due diligence, and (iii) [Provider] has provided to OIG a reasonable timetable for curing the material breach.

For purposes of the exclusion herein, exclusion shall take effect only after an ALJ decision that is favorable to the OIG. [Provider’s] election of its contractual right to appeal to the DAB shall not abrogate the OIG’s authority to exclude [Provider] upon the issuance of the ALJ’s decision. If the ALJ sustains the determination of the OIG and determines that exclusion is authorized, such exclusion shall take effect twenty (20) days after the ALJ issues such a decision, notwithstanding that [Provider] may request review of the ALJ decision by the DAB.

4. Finality of Decision. The review by an ALJ or DAB provided for above shall not be considered to be an appeal right arising under any statutes or regulations. Consequently, the parties to this CIA agree that the DAB’s decision (or the ALJ’s decision if not appealed) shall be considered final for all purposes under this CIA and [Provider] agrees to waive any right it may have to appeal the decision administratively, judicially or otherwise seek review by any court or other adjudicative forum.

XI. Effective and Binding Agreement

Consistent with the provisions in the Settlement Agreement pursuant to which this CIA is entered, and into which this CIA is incorporated, [Provider] and OIG agree as follows:

a. This CIA shall be binding on the successors, assigns and transferees of [Provider];

b. This CIA shall become final and binding on the date the final signature is obtained on the CIA;

c. Any modifications to this CIA shall be made with the prior written consent of the parties to this CIA; and

d. The undersigned [Provider] signatories represent and warrant that they are authorized to execute this CIA. The undersigned OIG signatory represents that he is signing this CIA in his official capacity and that he is authorized to execute this CIA.

On Behalf of [Provider]

_________________________________________  Date

_________________________________________  Date

_________________________________________  Date

[P lease identify all signatories]
ON BEHALF OF THE OFFICE OF INSPECTOR GENERAL OF THE DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

Lewis Morris  
[Date]

Assistant Inspector General for Legal Affairs  
Office of Inspector General  
U.S. Department of Health and Human Services
Appendix B

Sample Statement of Management’s Assertions

<Date>

In connection with the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) entered into with the Office of the Inspector General of the United States Department of Health and Human Services dated [date], we make the following assertions, which are true to the best of our knowledge and belief.

Governance

Within 90 days of the date of the CIA, we—

1. Established a Compliance Committee, which meets at least monthly and requires a quorum to meet.
2. Appointed to our Compliance Committee members who include at a minimum those individuals specified in the CIA.
3. Delegated to the Compliance Committee the authority to implement and monitor the CIA, as evidenced by the organization chart or the Compliance Committee's charter.
4. Appointed a compliance officer, who reports directly to the individual specified in the CIA.

We appointed a compliance officer who—

1. Has sufficient staff and resources to carry out his or her responsibilities.
2. Actively participates in compliance training.
3. Has authority to conduct full and complete internal investigations without restriction.
4. Periodically revises the compliance program to meet changing circumstances and risks.

Billing Practices, Policies, and Procedures

Although no system of internal controls can provide absolute assurance that all bills comply in all respects with Medicare, Medicaid, and other federal health care program guidelines, we are not aware of any material weaknesses in our billing practices, policies, and procedures. Billings to third-party payors comply in all material respects with applicable coding principles and laws and regulations (including those dealing with Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse) and only reflect charges for goods and services that were medically necessary, properly approved by regulatory bodies (e.g., the Food and Drug Administration), if required and properly rendered. [Insert other assertions as necessary to address matters covered in the CIA.] Any Medicare, Medicaid, and other federal health program billing deficiencies that we identified have been properly reported to the applicable payor within 60 days of discovery of the deficiency.

Corporate Integrity Policy

1. Our policy was developed and implemented within [number] days of execution of the CIA.
2. The policy addresses the Company's commitment to preparation and submission of accurate billings consistent with the standards
Health Care Entities

set forth in federal health care program statutes, regulations, procedures and guidelines or as otherwise communicated by Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA), its agents or any other agency engaged in the administration of the applicable federal health care program.

3. The policy addressed the specific issues that gave rise to the settlement, as well as other risk areas identified by the OIG in published Fraud Alerts issued through [date].

4. Further details on the development and implementation of our policy were provided to the OIG in our letter dated [date].

5. Our policy was distributed to all employees, physicians and independent contractors involved in submitting or preparing requests for reimbursement.

6. We have prominently displayed a copy of our policy on the Company's premises.

Information and Education Program

As discussed more fully in our letter to the OIG dated [date], we conducted an Information and Education Program within [number] days of the CIA. The Information and Education Program requires that each officer, employee, agent and contractor charged with administering federal health care programs (including, but not limited to billers, coders, nurses, physicians, medical records, hospital administration and other individuals directly involved in billing federal health care programs) receive at least [number] hours of training.

The training provided to employees involved in billing, coding, and/or charge capture consisted of instructions on submitting accurate bills, the personal obligations of each individual to ensure billings are accurate, the nature of company-imposed disciplinary actions on individuals who violate company policies and/or laws and regulations, applicable federal health care program rules, legal sanctions against the company for submission of false or fraudulent information, and how to report potential abuses or fraud. The training material addresses those issues underlying our settlement with the OIG.

The experience of the trainers is consistent with the topics presented.

Confidential Disclosure Program

Our Confidential Disclosure Program—

1. Was established within [number] days of the CIA.

2. Enables any employee to disclose any practices or billing procedures relating to federal health care programs.

3. Provides a toll-free telephone line maintained by the Company, which Company representatives have indicated is maintained twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week, for the purpose of making any disclosures regarding compliance with the Company's Compliance Program, the obligations in the CIA, and Company's overall compliance with federal and state standards.

4. Includes policies requiring the review of any disclosures to permit a determination of the appropriateness of the billing practice alleged to be involved and any corrective action to be taken to ensure that proper follow-up is conducted.

5. A detailed summary of the communications (including the number of disclosures by employees and the dates of such disclosures)
concerning billing practices reported as, and found to be, inappropriate under the Confidential Disclosure Program, and the results of any internal review and the follow-up on such disclosures are summarized in Attachment [title] to our Annual Report.

Excluded Individuals or Entities

Company policy—

1. Prohibits the employment of or contracting with an individual or entity that is listed by a federal agency as convicted of abuse or excluded, suspended or otherwise ineligible for participation in federal health care programs.

2. Includes a process to make an inquiry into the status of any potential employee or independent contractor.

3. Provides for an annual review of the status of all existing employees and contractors to verify whether any individual had been suspended or excluded or charged with a criminal offense relating to the provision of federal health care services.

We are not aware of any individuals employed in contravention of the prohibitions in the CIA.

Record Retention

Our record retention policy is consistent with the requirements of the CIA.

Signed by:

[Chief Executive Officer]

[Chief Financial Officer]

[Corporate Compliance Officer]
Appendix C

Sample Engagement Letter

The following is an illustration of a sample engagement letter that may be used for this kind of engagement.

[CPA Firm Letterhead]

[Client’s Name and Address]

Dear ____________:

This will confirm our understanding of the arrangements for our performance of certain agreed-upon procedures in connection with management’s compliance with the terms of the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) with the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) dated [date of CIA] for the period ending [date].

We will perform those procedures enumerated in the attachment to this letter. Our responsibility is to carry out these procedures and report our findings. We will conduct our engagement in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. Our planned procedures were agreed to by management and will be communicated to the OIG for its review and are based on the terms specified in the CIA. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified parties to the report. Consequently, it is understood that we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in the attachment for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

Management is responsible for the Company's compliance with all applicable laws, regulations, and contracts and agreements, including the CIA. Management also is responsible for the design, implementation, and monitoring of the policies and procedures upon which compliance is based.

Our engagement to perform agreed-upon procedures is substantially less in scope than an examination, the objective of which is the expression of an opinion on management’s compliance with the CIA. Accordingly, we will not express such an opinion or any other form of assurance thereon.¹

Working papers that are prepared in connection with this engagement are the property of the independent accountant. The working papers are prepared for the purpose of providing the principal support for the independent accountant’s report. At the completion of our work, we expect to issue an agreed-upon procedures report in the attached form.

¹ The independent accountant may wish to include an understanding with the client about any limitation or other arrangements regarding liability of the practitioner or the client in the engagement letter. For example, the following might be included in the letter:

Our maximum liability relating to services rendered under this letter (regardless of form of action, whether in contract, negligence or otherwise) shall be limited to the charges paid to us for the portion of the services or work products giving rise to liability. We will not be liable for consequential or punitive damages (including lost profits or savings) even if aware of their possible existence.

You will indemnify us against any damage or expense that may result from any third-party claim relating to our services or any use by you of any work product, and you will reimburse us for all expenses (including counsel fees) as incurred by us in connection with any such claim, except to the extent such claim (i) is finally determined to have resulted from our gross negligence or willful misconduct or (ii) is covered by any of the preceding indemnities.
If, however, we are not able to complete all of the specified procedures, we will so advise you. At that time, we will discuss with you the form of communication, if any, that you desire for our findings. We will ask you to confirm your request in writing at that time. If you request that we delay issuance of our report until corrective action is taken that will result in compliance with all aspects of the CIA, we will do so only at your written request. Our working papers will be retained in accordance with our firm's working paper retention policy.

The distribution of the independent accountant's report will be restricted to the governing board and management of the Company and the OIG.

Our fees will be billed as work progresses and are based on the amount of time required at various levels of responsibility plus actual out-of-pocket expenses. Invoices are payable upon presentation. We will notify you immediately of any circumstances we encounter that could significantly affect our initial estimate of total fees.

We agree that to the extent required by law, we will allow the Comptroller General of the United States, HHS, and their duly authorized representatives to have access to this engagement letter and our documents and records to the extent necessary to verify the nature and amount of costs of the services provided to the Company, until the expiration of four years after we have concluded providing services to the Company that are performed pursuant to this Engagement Letter. In the event the Comptroller General, HHS, or their duly authorized representatives request such records, we agree to notify the Company of such request as soon as practicable.

In the event we are requested or authorized by the Company or are required by government regulation, subpoena, or other legal process to produce our documents or our personnel as witnesses with respect to our engagements for the Company, the Company will, so long as we are not a party to the proceeding in which the information is sought, reimburse us for our professional time and expenses, as well as the fees and expenses of our counsel, incurred in responding to such requests.

If this letter correctly expresses your understanding of this engagement, please sign the enclosed copy where indicated and return it to us. We appreciate the opportunity to serve you.

Sincerely,

[Partner’s Signature]

[Firm Name or Firm Representative]

Accepted and agreed to:

[Client Representative’s Signature]

[Title]______________

[Date]______________

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]
Appendix D

Sample Procedures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Governance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We read the Company's corporate minutes and organization chart and ascertained that, within [number] days of the date of the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA), the Company—

   a. Established a Compliance Committee, which is to meet at least monthly and requires a quorum to meet.

   b. Appointed to its Compliance Committee members who include, at a minimum, those individuals specified in the CIA.

   c. Delegated to the Compliance Committee the authority to implement and monitor the CIA, as evidenced by the organization chart or the Compliance Committee's charter.

   d. Appointed a compliance officer who reports directly to the individual specified in the CIA.

2. We interviewed the compliance officer and were informed that, in his or her opinion, the Compliance Officer—

   a. Has sufficient staff and resources to carry out his or her responsibilities.

   b. Actively participates in compliance training.

   c. Has the authority to conduct full and complete internal investigations without restriction.

   d. Periodically revises the compliance program to meet changing circumstances and risks.

3. We read the OIG notification letter as specified in the CIA and noted that the appropriate official signed the letter, that it was addressed to the OIG, that it covered items (a) through (d) in Step 1, and that it was dated within [number of] days of the execution of the CIA.

Billing Practices, Policies, and Procedures

The practitioner might be engaged to provide consulting services in connection with the evaluation of the company's billing practices, policies, and procedures. If so, generally no agreed-upon procedures would be performed relating to this area. Alternatively, if the procedures relating to the Company's billing practices, policies, and procedures are performed by others such as the Company's internal audit staff, the practitioner performs Steps 4 through 9.
4. We read the compliance work plan and noted the following:

   a. The work plan’s stated objectives include the determination that billings are accurate and complete, for services rendered that have been deemed by medical specialists as being necessary, and are submitted in accordance with federal program guidelines.

   b. The work plan sampling methodology sets confidence levels consistent with those defined in the CIA.

   c. The work plan identifies risk areas, as defined in the CIA (if applicable), and specifies testing procedures by risk area.

   d. The work plan specifies that samples are taken in risk areas (if applicable) identified by the CIA.

   e. The work plan includes testing procedures, which the practitioner should modify as required by the CIA, for the following risks areas (if applicable) identified in the CIA:

      (1) Clinical documentation, as follows:
         i. No documentation of service
         ii. Insufficient documentation of service
         iii. Improper diagnosis or treatment plan giving rise to the provision of a medically unnecessary service or treatment
         iv. Service or treatment does not conform medically with the documented diagnosis or treatment plan
         v. Services incorrectly coded

      (2) Billing and coding, as follows:
         i. Noncovered or unallowable service
         ii. Duplicate payment
         iii. DRG window error
         iv. Unbundling
         v. Utilization
         vi. Medicare credit balances

[Note to Practitioner: Modify the preceding list as required by the CIA.]

5. We selected [quantity] probe samples performed by the independent review organization for the following risk areas [list risk areas tested]. For the probe samples selected, we noted that the—

   a. Sample patient billing files were randomly selected.

(continued)
Procedure

b. Sample size reflected confidence levels specified in the CIA.

c. Sample plan describes how missing items (if any) would be treated.

d. Patient billing files tested were pulled per the listing of random numbers and all patient billing files were accounted for in the working papers.

e. Work plans for the specific sample described the risk areas (if applicable) being tested and the testing approach/procedures.

f. Working papers noted the completion of each work plan step.

g. Working papers contained a summary of findings for the sample.

6. We reperformed the work plan steps [list of specific steps performed] for the sample patient billing files. The reperformance of work plan steps related to the medical review of the sample patient billing files was performed by the following individuals [note the professional qualifications of individuals without listing names]. Any exceptions between our findings and the Company's are summarized in the Attachment to this report.

7. We read the summary findings of all internal compliance reviews that the Company's Internal Audit department indicated it had performed for the Company and noted that all material billing deficiencies [specify material threshold as defined by the Company] noted therein were discussed in written communications addressed to the appropriate payor (for example, Medicare Part B carrier) and were dated within 60 days from the time the deficiency occurred.¹

8. We inquired of [individual] as to whether the Company took remedial steps within [number of] days (or such additional time as agreed to by the payor) to correct all material billing deficiencies noted in Step 7. We were informed that such remedial steps had been taken.

9. By reading applicable correspondence, we noted that any material billing deficiencies noted in Step 7 were communicated to the OIG, including specific findings relative to the deficiency, the Company's actions taken to correct the deficiency, and any further steps the Company plans to take to prevent any similar deficiencies from recurring.

¹ The CIA provides its own legal definition of a "material deficiency." Determination of whether a billing or other act meets this definition is normally beyond the auditor's professional competence and may have to await final determination by a court of law. Accordingly, to avoid confusion, a working definition different from that provided in the CIA (e.g., a specified dollar threshold) may be necessary.
Corporate Integrity Policy

10. We read the Company's Corporate Integrity Policy and noted the following.

   a. The policy was developed and implemented within \(\text{number of}\) days of execution of the CIA.

   b. The policy addressed the Company's commitment to preparation and submission of accurate billings consistent with the standards set forth in federal health care program statutes, regulations, procedures, and guidelines or as otherwise communicated by HCFA, its agents, or any other agency engaged in the administration of the applicable federal health care program.

   c. The policy addressed the specific issues that gave rise to the settlement, as well as other risk areas identified by the OIG in published Fraud Alerts issued through [agency].

   d. Correspondence addressed to the OIG covered the development and implementation of the policy.

   e. Documentation indicating that the policy was distributed to all employees, physicians, and independent contractors involved in submitting or preparing requests for reimbursement.

   f. The prominent display of a copy of the policy on the Company's premises.

11. We selected a sample of ten employees (involved in submitting and preparing requests for reimbursement) and examined written confirmation in the employee's personnel file indicating receipt of a copy of the Corporate Integrity Policy.

Information and Education Program

12. We read the Company's Information and Education Program and noted the following.

   a. The Information and Education Program agenda was dated within \(\text{number of}\) days of execution of the CIA.

   b. Correspondence covering the development and implementation of the Information and Education Program was addressed to the OIG.

   c. The Information and Education Program requires that each officer, employee, agent, and contractor charged with administering federal health care programs (including, but not limited to billers, coders, nurses, physicians, medical records, hospital administration and other individuals directly involved in billing federal health care programs) receive at least \(\text{number of}\) hours of training.

(continued)
Procedure

13. We selected a sample of ten employees involved in billing, coding and/or charge capture and examined sign-in logs of the training classes and noted that each had signed indicating that they had received at least [number of] hours of training as specified in the Information and Education Program. We also reviewed tests and surveys completed by each of the ten trained employees noting evidence that they were completed.

14. We inquired as to the training of individuals not present during the regularly scheduled training programs and were informed that each such individual is trained either individually or in a separate make-up session. We inquired as to the names of individuals not initially present and selected one such individual and examined that individual's post-training test and survey for completion.

15. We read the course agenda and noted that the training provided to employees involved in billing, coding, and/or charge capture consisted of instructions on submitting accurate bills, the personal obligations of each individual to ensure billings are accurate, the nature of company-imposed disciplinary actions on individuals who violate company policies and/or laws and regulations applicable to federal health care program rules, legal sanctions against the company for submission of false or fraudulent information, and how to report potential abuses or fraud. We also noted that the training material addressed the following issues which gave rise to the settlement [practitioner list].

16. We inquired of the Corporate Compliance Officer as to the qualifications and experience of the trainers and were informed that, in the Corporate Compliance Officer's opinion, they were consistent with the topics presented.

17. We noted that the Company's draft Annual Report to the OIG dated [date] addresses certification of training.

Confidential Disclosure Program

18. We read documentation of the Company's Confidential Disclosure Program and noted that it—

   a. Includes the printed effective date that was within [number of] days of execution of the CIA.

   b. Consists of a confidential disclosure program enabling any employee to disclose any practices or billing procedures relating to federal health care programs.

   c. Provides a toll-free telephone line maintained by the Company, which Company representatives have indicated is maintained twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week, for the purpose of making any disclosures regarding compliance with the Company's Compliance Program, the obligations in the CIA, and Company's overall compliance with federal and state standards.
Procedure

d. Includes policies requiring the review of any disclosures to permit a determination of the appropriateness of the billing practice alleged to be involved and any corrective action to be taken to ensure that proper follow-up is conducted.

Findings

19. We made five test calls to the toll free telephone line (hotline) and noted the following.

   a. Each call was captured in the hotline logs and reported with all other incoming calls.

   b. Anonymity is not discouraged.

20. We noted that the Company included in its draft Annual Report addressed to OIG dated [date] a detailed summary of the communications (including the number of disclosures by employees and the dates of such disclosures) concerning billing practices reported as, and found to be, inappropriate under the Confidential Disclosure Program, and the results of any internal review and the follow-up on such disclosures.

21. We observed the display of the Company's Confidential Disclosure Program, including notice of the availability of its hotline, on the Company's premises.

Excluded Individuals or Entities

22. We read the Company's written policy relating to dealing with excluded or convicted persons or entities and noted that the policy—

   a. Prohibits the hiring of or contracting with an individual or entity that is listed by a federal agency as convicted of abuse or excluded, suspended, or otherwise ineligible for participation in federal health care programs.

   b. Includes a process to make an inquiry into the status of any potential employee or independent contractor.

   c. Provides for a semi-annual review of the status of all existing employees and contractors to verify whether any individual had been suspended or excluded or charged with a criminal offense relating to the provision of federal health care services.

23. We selected a sample of ten employees hired over the course of the test period as defined in the CIA and examined support in the employee's personnel file documenting inquiries made into the status of the employee, including documentation of comparison to the [source specified in the CIA].

24. We performed the following procedures related to the Company's semi-annual review of employee status.

(continued)
**Procedure**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Read documentation of the semi-annual review as evidence that a review was performed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Selected and reviewed the lesser of ten or all exceptions and determined that such employees were removed from responsibility for or involvement with Provider business operations related to the Federal health care programs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Examined a notification letter addressed to the OIG and dated within 30 days of the employee's removal from employment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Inquired of [officer] as to whether he or she was aware of any individuals employed in contravention of the prohibitions in the CIA. If so, we further noted that [indicate specific procedures] to confirm that such situation was cured within 30 days by [indicate how situation was cured].</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Annual Report**

25. We read the Company's draft Annual Report dated [date] and determined that it included the following items, to be modified as appropriate, by the practitioner:

| a. Compliance Program Charter and organization chart | |
| b. Amendments to policies | |
| c. Detailed descriptions of reviews and audits | |
| d. Summary of hotline communications | |
| e. Summary of annual review of employees | |
| f. Cross-referencing to items noted in the CIA | |

**Record Retention**

26. We read the Company's record retention policy and noted that it was consistent with the requirements as outlined in the CIA.
Appendix E

Sample Report

Independent Accountant’s Report

[Date]

[Sample Health Care Provider]
Office of Inspector General of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services

We have performed the procedures enumerated in the Attachment, which were agreed to by Sample Health Care Provider (Company) and the Office of Inspector General (OIG) of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, solely to assist the users in evaluating management’s assertion about [name of entity’s] compliance with the Corporate Integrity Agreement (CIA) with the OIG dated [date of CIA] for the [period] ending [date], which is included as Attachment A to this report. This agreed-upon procedures engagement was performed in accordance with standards established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. The sufficiency of these procedures is solely the responsibility of the specified users of the report. Consequently, we make no representation regarding the sufficiency of the procedures described in Attachment B either for the purpose for which this report has been requested or for any other purpose.

We were not engaged to and did not perform an examination, the objective of which would be the expression of an opinion on management’s compliance with the CIA. Accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. Had we performed additional procedures, other matters might have come to our attention that would have been reported to you.

This report is intended solely for the information and use of the Compliance Committee and management of the Company and the OIG, and is not intended to be and should not be used by anyone other than those specified parties.

[Include as Attachments the CIA and the summary that enumerates procedures and findings.]

[Signature]
Auditing Standards Board 1998

DEBORAH D. LAMBERT, Chair  J. MICHAEL INZINA
JAMES S. GERSON, Vice Chair  CHARLES E. LANDES
JOHN T. BARNUM  KEITH O. NEWTON
ANDREW J. CAPELLI  ALAN ROSENTHAL
ROBERT F. DACEY  R.C. STEINER
RICHARD DIETER  GEORGE H. TUCKER III
SALLY L. HOFFMAN  OLIVER R. WHITTINGTON
STEPHEN D. HOLTON

Health Care Pilot Task Force 1998

WILLIAM R. TITERA, Chair  ERIC HOLZBERG
DIANE CORNWELL  MARY R. MACBAIN
WILLIAM T. CUPPETT  JOSEPH N. STEAKLEY
DENNIS J. DUQUETTE

SOP Task Force

WILLIAM R. TITERA, Chair  MARK EDDY
ROBERT D. BEARD  WILLIAM HORNBY
GARY BREUER  LEWIS MORRIS
DENNIS J. DUQUETTE  JOSEPH N. STEAKLEY

AICPA Staff

BARBARA VIGILANTE  KARYN WALLER
Technical Manager  Technical Manager
PCPS/MAP  Industry and Management

JANE MANCINO  Accounting
Technical Manager
Audit and Attest Standards
Appendix C

Clarified Auditing Standards and PCAOB Standards

The auditing content in this guide focuses primarily on generally accepted auditing standards issued by the Auditing Standards Board (referred to as the clarified standards herein), and is applicable to audits of nonissuers. Audits of issuers are performed in accordance with Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB) standards. This appendix was developed to assist in comparing the clarified standards, many of which are referenced throughout this guide, to the PCAOB standards.

This appendix identifies PCAOB standards, or sections of PCAOB standards, that broadly correspond with the clarified standards. However, the underlying content within the clarified standards and PCAOB standards may not be analogous. Readers should review the full text of the corresponding PCAOB standards, review the related releases (available in the AICPA's publication PCAOB Standards and Related Rules or at www.pcaobus.org) and use professional judgment to identify all guidance applicable to their engagements.

Note: The appendix that follows is prepared for informational and reference purposes only. It has not been reviewed, approved, disapproved, or otherwise acted on by the PCAOB or any senior committee of the AICPA and does not represent official positions or pronouncements of the PCAOB or the AICPA.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarified Standards*</th>
<th>PCAOB Standards**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C Section</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Terms of Engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220</td>
<td>Quality Control for an Engagement Conducted in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230</td>
<td>Audit Documentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarified Standards*</td>
<td>PCAOB Standards**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C Section</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240</td>
<td>Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260</td>
<td>The Auditor's Communication With Those Charged With Governance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265</td>
<td>Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarified Standards*</th>
<th>PCAOB Standards**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C</strong> Section</td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Planning an Audit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402</td>
<td>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450</td>
<td>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarified Standards*</td>
<td>PCAOB Standards**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU-C Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501</td>
<td>Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
<td>Opening Balances—Initial Audit Engagements, Including Reaudit Engagements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>520</td>
<td>Analytical Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530</td>
<td>Audit Sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>540</td>
<td>Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarified Standards*</th>
<th>PCAOB Standards**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C Section</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550</td>
<td>Related Parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>560</td>
<td>Subsequent Events and Subsequently Discovered Facts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>570</td>
<td>The Auditor's Consideration of an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>580</td>
<td>Written Representations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarified Standards*</td>
<td>PCAOB Standards**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C Section</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>585</td>
<td>Consideration of Omitted Procedures After the Report Release Date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 9</td>
<td>Audit Planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 11</td>
<td>Consideration of Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit [10]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>610</td>
<td>The Auditor's Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>620</td>
<td>Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(continued)*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarified Standards*</th>
<th>PCAOB Standards**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>705</td>
<td>Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706</td>
<td>Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other Matter Paragraphs in the Independent Auditor's Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarified Standards*</td>
<td>PCAOB Standards**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C Section</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720</td>
<td>Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial Statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>725</td>
<td>Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial Statements as a Whole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730</td>
<td>Required Supplementary Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarified Standards*</th>
<th>PCAOB Standards**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Section or No.*** | **Title**         | **Applicable Paragraph(s)**
| AU-C Section | Title | Section or No.*** | Title | Paragraphs
| 805 | Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement | AU 508 | Reports on Audited Financial Statements [14] | .33-.34
| | | AU 623 | Special Reports [17] | .11-.18
| 806 | Reporting on Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connection With Audited Financial Statements | AU 623 | Special Reports [17] | .19-.21
| 810 | Engagements to Report on Summary Financial Statements | AU 552 | Reporting on Condensed Financial Statements and Selected Financial Data | All
| 905 | Alert That Restricts the Use of the Auditor's Written Communication | AU 532 | Restricting the Use of an Auditor's Report | All
| 910 | Financial Statements Prepared in Accordance With a Financial Reporting Framework Generally Accepted in Another Country | AU 534 | Reporting on Financial Statements Prepared for Use in Other Countries | All
| 915 | Reports on Application of Requirements of an Applicable Financial Reporting Framework | AU 625 | Reports on the Application of Accounting Principles | All
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clarified Standards&lt;sup&gt;∗&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>PCAOB Standards&lt;sup&gt;∗∗&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AU-C Section</strong></td>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>920</td>
<td>Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>925</td>
<td>Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>930</td>
<td>Interim Financial Information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>935</td>
<td>Compliance Audits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Legend:**

[n] Bracketed number indicates a PCAOB standard that broadly corresponds to more than one clarity standard.

**Footnotes:**

* These standards are codified in AICPA Professional Standards and referenced by "AU-C" section numbers within the codification.

** In April 2003, the PCAOB issued Rule 3200T, Interim Auditing Standards (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Select Rules of the Board), which adopted, on an interim transitional basis, generally accepted auditing standards of the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) that were in existence on April 16, 2003. These adopted standards are referred to as "interim auditing standards." Since the adoption of the interim auditing standards, the PCAOB has issued new standards that, collectively, have superseded certain interim standards and amended the majority of the remaining interim auditing standards to varying degrees. Consequently, the PCAOB’s existing auditing standards consist of new standards issued by the PCAOB and the remaining interim standards that the PCAOB has not superseded.

(continued)
In April 2013, the PCAOB issued a proposal to reorganize the PCAOB's existing auditing standards. The reorganization would put the existing standards into a topical structure with a single integrated numbering system, and could also withdraw certain interim standards. Appendix 3 of the proposal includes a comparison of the proposed framework for reorganization of PCAOB auditing standards to existing PCAOB auditing standards and the standards of the International Auditing and Assurance Standards Board and the ASB. Readers should remain alert for further developments on this project, which can be accessed through the PCAOB website at www.pcaobus.org.

*** This column utilizes the designation "AS" for each PCAOB auditing standard and "AU" for each PCAOB interim standard.

† Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires a public entity's independent auditor, registered with the PCAOB, to attest to management's disclosures regarding the effectiveness of its internal control. PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5, An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with An Audit of Financial Statements (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards), establishes requirements and provides direction that applies when an auditor is engaged to perform an audit of management's assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting that is integrated with an audit of the financial statements. When an auditor is engaged to perform similar attestation procedures for a nonpublic entity, the auditor would follow the requirements and guidance found in AT section 501, An Examination of an Entity’s Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated With an Audit of Its Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards).

Although no direct correlation exists between PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 5 and the clarified standards because Auditing Standard No. 5 is associated with integrated audits and clarified standards are associated with financial statement audits (non-integrated), Auditing Standard No. 5 does contain certain requirements that generally correspond to concepts addressed in certain clarified standards. A reader conducting an integrated audit in accordance with PCAOB standards may be interested in these generally corresponding concepts and topics and, therefore, they are included within this appendix.

†† The term *all*, as utilized within this column, indicates that the majority of the content within the referenced PCAOB standard broadly corresponds with the related clarified standard. However, the same PCAOB standard may also contain certain specific topics, sections or paragraphs that do not correspond with the related clarified standard, despite the use of the term *all*.

††† In February 2014, the ASB issued SAS No. 128, Using the Work of Internal Auditors (AICPA, Professional Standards, AU-C sec. 610), which is effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after December 15, 2014. AU-C section 610 supersedes AU-C section 610A, The Auditor’s Consideration of the Internal Audit Function in an Audit of Financial Statements (AICPA, Professional Standards). Auditors should continue to follow AU-C section 610A for audits for which AU-C section 610 is not yet effective.

‡ In February 2014, the SEC approved Auditing Standard No. 17, Auditing Supplemental Information Accompanying Auditing Financial Statements (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards), and related amendments to PCAOB standards. Auditing Standard No. 17, which supersedes PCAOB interim auditing standard AU section 551, Reporting on Information Accompanying the Basic Financial Statements in Auditor Submitted Documents (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Interim Standards), applies when the auditor of the company's financial statements is engaged to perform audit procedures and report on supplemental information that accompanies financial statements audited pursuant to PCAOB standards. Auditing Standard No. 17 is effective for audit procedures and reports on supplemental information that accompanies financial statements for fiscal years ending on or after June 1, 2014. Auditors should continue to follow PCAOB interim auditing standard AU section 551 for audits for which Auditing Standard No. 17 is not yet effective.
## PCAOB Standards With No Corresponding Clarified Standard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section or No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Discussion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AU 504</td>
<td>Association With Financial Statements</td>
<td>This PCAOB interim standard provides guidance to an accountant associated with the financial statements of a public entity's financial statements that the auditor has been engaged to audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards. Although maintained by the PCAOB, the ASB withdrew this standard during clarification of the standards and addressed its content related to audits of nonissuers through amendments to the Statements on Standards for Accounting and Review Services (to the extent needed) and AU-C sections 200, 230, 260, 705, and 915.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1</td>
<td>References in Auditor's Reports to the Standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board</td>
<td>This PCAOB auditing standard requires registered public accounting firms to include in their reports on engagements performed pursuant to the PCAOB's auditing and related professional practice standards a reference to the standards of the PCAOB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4</td>
<td>Reporting on Whether a Previously Reported Material Weakness Continues to Exist</td>
<td>This PCAOB auditing standard establishes requirements and provides direction that applies when an auditor is engaged to report on whether a previously reported material weakness in internal control over financial reporting continues to exist as of a date specified by management. This standard establishes a stand-alone engagement that is entirely voluntary, performed only at the company's request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTE
This AICPA Statement of Position (SOP) has been developed by the AICPA Health Care Third-Party Revenue Recognition Task Force of the AICPA Auditing Standards Board (ASB) to provide guidance regarding auditing financial statement assertions about third-party revenues and related receivables of health care entities. This SOP is recognized as an interpretive publication as defined in AU-C section 200, *Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Interpretive publications are recommendations on the application of generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) in specific circumstances, including engagements for entities in specialized industries.

An interpretive publication is issued under the authority of the ASB after all ASB members have been provided an opportunity to consider and comment on whether the proposed interpretive publication is consistent with GAAS. The members of the ASB have found this SOP to be consistent with existing GAAS.

Although interpretive publications are not auditing standards, AU-C section 200 requires the auditor to consider applicable interpretive publications in planning and performing the audit because interpretive publications are relevant to the proper application of GAAS in specific circumstances. If the auditor does not apply the auditing guidance in an applicable interpretive publication, the auditor should document how the requirements of GAAS were complied with in the circumstances addressed by such auditing guidance.
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction and Background</td>
<td>.01-.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope and Applicability</td>
<td>.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables—Inherent Uncertainties</td>
<td>.06-.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management’s Responsibilities</td>
<td>.09-.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Auditor’s Responsibilities</td>
<td>.12-.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit Evidence</td>
<td>.16-.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential Departures From GAAP Related to Estimates and Uncertainties</td>
<td>.22-.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unreasonable Accounting Estimates</td>
<td>.24-.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inappropriate Accounting Principles</td>
<td>.31-.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inadequate Disclosure</td>
<td>.34-.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix—Other Considerations Related to Government Investigations</td>
<td>.38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Summary

This Statement of Position (SOP) provides guidance to auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in health care third-party revenue recognition. It discusses auditing matters related to testing third-party revenues and related receivables, and provides guidance regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence and reporting on financial statements, prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP), of health care entities exposed to material uncertainties. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]
Introduction and Background

.01 Most health care providers participate in payment programs that pay less than full charges for services rendered. For example, some cost-based programs retrospectively determine the final amounts reimbursable for services rendered to their beneficiaries based on allowable costs. With increasing frequency, even non-cost-based programs (such as the Medicare Prospective Payment System) have become subject to retrospective adjustments (for example, billing denials and coding changes). Often, such adjustments are not known for a considerable period of time after the related services were rendered.

.02 The lengthy period of time between rendering services and reaching final settlement, compounded further by the complexities and ambiguities of reimbursement regulations, makes it difficult to estimate the net patient service revenue associated with these programs. This situation has been compounded due to the frequency of changes in federal program guidelines.

.03 Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 954-605-45-2 states, in part, that "service revenue shall be reported net of contractual and other adjustments in the statement of operations, including patient service revenue." As a result, patient receivables, including amounts due from third-party payors, are also reported net of expected contractual and other adjustments. However, amounts ultimately realizable will not be known until some future date, which may be several years after the period in which the services were rendered. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.04 This SOP provides guidance to auditors regarding uncertainties inherent in health care third-party revenue recognition. It discusses auditing matters related to testing third-party revenue and related receivables, including the effects of settlements (both cost-based and non-cost-based third-party payment programs), and provides guidance regarding the sufficiency and appropriateness of audit evidence and reporting on financial statements of health care entities exposed to material uncertainties. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

Scope and Applicability

.05 This SOP applies to audits of health care entities falling within the scope of the AICPA Audit and Accounting Guide Health Care Entities (the guide). Its provisions are effective for audits of periods ending on or after June 30, 2000. Early application of the provisions of this SOP is permitted.

Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables—Inherent Uncertainties

.06 Health care entities need to estimate amounts that ultimately will be realizable in order for revenues to be fairly stated in accordance with GAAP. The basis for such estimates may range from relatively straightforward calculations using information that is readily available to highly complex judgments based on assumptions about future decisions.

.07 Entities doing business with governmental payors (for example, Medicare and Medicaid) are subject to risks unique to the government-contracting
environment that are hard to anticipate and quantify and that may vary from entity to entity. For example

- a health care entity's revenues may be subject to adjustment as a result of examination by government agencies or contractors. The audit process and the resolution of significant related matters (including disputes based on differing interpretations of the regulations) often are not finalized until several years after the services were rendered.

- different fiscal intermediaries (entities that contract with the federal government to assist in the administration of the Medicare program) may interpret governmental regulations differently.

- differing opinions on a patient's principal medical diagnosis, including the appropriate sequencing of codes used to submit claims for payment, can have a significant effect on the payment amount.¹

- otherwise valid claims may be determined to be nonallowable after the fact due to differing opinions on medical necessity.

- claims for services rendered may be nonallowable if they are later determined to have been based on inappropriate referrals.²

- governmental agencies may make changes in program interpretations, requirements, or "conditions of participation," some of which may have implications for amounts previously estimated.

.08 Such factors often result in retrospective adjustments to interim payments. Reasonable estimates of such adjustments are central to the third-party revenue recognition process in health care, in order to avoid recognizing revenue that the provider will not ultimately realize. The delay between rendering services and reaching final settlement, as well as the complexities and ambiguities of billing and reimbursement regulations, makes it difficult to estimate net realizable third-party revenues.

Management’s Responsibilities

.09 Management and, when appropriate, those charged with governance are responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of its financial statements in accordance with GAAP as well as for the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. Despite the inherent uncertainties, management is responsible for estimating the amounts recorded in the financial statements and making the required disclosures in accordance with GAAP, based on management's analysis of existing conditions. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.

¹ Historically, the Health Care Financing Administration contracted with Peer Review Organizations to validate the appropriateness of admissions and the clinical coding from which reimbursement was determined. Such reviews were typically performed within ninety days of the claim submission date. However, the government has modified its policies with respect to such reviews and now analyzes coding errors through other means, including in conjunction with investigations conducted by the Office of the Inspector General of the U. S. Department of Health and Human Services.

² Effective January 1, 1995, the Limitation on Certain Physician Referrals law prohibited physicians from referring Medicare and Medicaid patients to health care entities with which they had a financial relationship for the furnishing of designated health services. Implementing regulations have not yet been adopted as of the date of this publication.
Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.10 Management’s assertions regarding proper valuation of its revenues and receivables are embodied in the financial statements. Management is responsible for recognizing revenues when their realization is reasonably assured. As a result, management makes a reasonable estimate of amounts that ultimately will be realized, considering—among other things—adjustments associated with regulatory reviews, audits, billing reviews, investigations, or other proceedings. Estimates that are significant to management’s assertions about revenue include the provision for third-party payor contractual adjustments and allowances. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.11 Management also is responsible for preparing and certifying cost reports submitted to federal and state government agencies in support of claims for payment for services rendered to government program beneficiaries.

The Auditor’s Responsibilities

.12 The auditor’s responsibility is to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, thereby enabling the auditor to express an opinion on whether the financial statements are presented fairly, in all material respects, in accordance with an applicable financial reporting framework. Reasonable assurance is obtained when the auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level. In developing an opinion, the auditor should conclude whether the auditor has obtained reasonable assurance, which includes considering whether, among other matters,

- sufficient appropriate audit evidence has been obtained.
- uncorrected misstatements are material, individually or in aggregate.
- the financial statements are prepared and fairly presented, in all material respects, in accordance with GAAP.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.13 Current industry conditions, as well as specific matters affecting the entity, provide relevant information when planning the audit. Among a number of procedures, the auditor's procedures may include an analysis of historical results (for example, prior fiscal intermediary audit adjustments and comparisons with industry benchmarks and norms) that enable the auditor to better assess the risk of material misstatements in the current period. When there are heightened risks, the auditor should perform audit procedures that respond to those risks, for example, more extensive tests covering the current period. Exhibit 10-1 of the guide includes examples of procedures auditors may perform. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

---

3 Risk factors, including ones related to legislative and regulatory matters, are discussed annually in the AICPA Audit Risk Alert Health Care Industry Developments.
With respect to auditing third-party revenues, a relevant consideration in addition to the usual revenue recognition considerations, is whether ultimately realizable amounts are known or will be presently known, or whether those amounts are uncertain because they are dependent on some other future, prospective actions or confirming events. For example, under a typical fee-for-service contract with a commercial payor, if the provider has performed a service for a covered individual, the revenue to which the provider is entitled should be determinable at the time the service is rendered. On the other hand, if the service was provided under a cost-based government contract, the revenue ultimately collectible may not be known until certain future events occur (for example, a cost report has been submitted and finalized after desk review or audit). In this case, management estimates the effect of such potential future adjustments. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

As stated previously, management is responsible for preparing the estimates contained in the financial statements. The auditor should evaluate the sufficiency and appropriateness of the evidence supporting those estimates, including the facts supporting management’s judgments, and the judgments made based on conditions existing at the time of the audit. The fact that net revenues recorded at the time services are rendered differ materially from amounts that ultimately are realized does not necessarily mean the audit was not properly planned or carried out. Similarly, the fact that future events may differ materially from management’s assumptions or estimates does not necessarily mean that management’s estimates were not valid or the auditor did not follow generally accepted auditing standards as described in this SOP with respect to auditing estimates. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

The measurement of estimates is inherently uncertain and depends on the outcome of future events. AU-C section 540, Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting Estimates, and Related Disclosures (AICPA, Professional Standards), and AU-C section 705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s Report (AICPA, Professional Standards), provide guidance to the auditor when the ultimate outcome of uncertainties cannot be expected to exist at the time of the audit because the outcome and related audit evidence are prospective. In the current health care environment, conclusive evidence concerning amounts ultimately realizable cannot be expected to exist at the time of the financial statement audit because the uncertainty associated with future program audits, administrative reviews, billing reviews, regulatory investigations, or other actions will not be resolved until sometime in the future. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

The fact that information related to the effects of future program audits, administrative reviews, regulatory investigations, or other actions does not exist does not lead to a conclusion that the evidence supporting management’s assertions is not sufficient to support management’s estimates. Rather,
the auditor's professional judgment regarding the sufficiency of the audit evidence is based on the audit evidence that is, or should be, available. If, after considering the existing conditions and available evidence, the auditor concludes that sufficient appropriate audit evidence supports management's assertions about the nature of a matter involving an uncertainty (in this example, the valuation of revenues and receivables), and their presentation or disclosure in the financial statements, an unmodified opinion ordinarily is appropriate. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.18 The inability to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence that the auditor needs to conclude that the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement would require the auditor to express a qualified opinion or to disclaim an opinion because of a scope limitation. For example, if an entity has conducted an internal evaluation (for example, of coding or other billing matters) under attorney-client privilege and management and its legal counsel refuse to respond to the auditor's inquiries and the auditor determines the information is necessary, and the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be material but not pervasive, the auditor would express a qualified opinion for a scope limitation. If the auditor concludes that the possible effects on the financial statements of undetected misstatements, if any, could be both material and pervasive, the auditor would disclaim an opinion. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.19 The accuracy of management's assumptions will not be known until future events occur. In evaluating the accuracy of those assumptions, the entity's historical experience in making past estimates and the auditor's experience in the industry are relevant. For certain matters, the best evidence available to the auditor (particularly as it relates to clinical and legal interpretations) may be the representations of management and its legal counsel, as well as information obtained through reviewing correspondence from regulatory agencies. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.20 Pursuant to AU-C section 580, Written Representations (AICPA, Professional Standards), the auditor should request management to provide written representations that all instances of identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered by management when preparing financial statements have been disclosed to the auditor. Examples of specific representations include the following:

- Receivables
  - Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, estimated adjustments to revenue, such as for denied claims and changes to home health resource group, resource utilization group, ambulatory payment classification, and diagnosis-related group assignments.
— Recorded valuation allowances are necessary, appropriate, and properly supported.
— All peer review organizations, fiscal intermediary, and third-party payor reports and information have been made available.

**Cost reports filed with third parties**

— All required Medicare, Medicaid, and similar reports have been properly filed.
— Management is responsible for the accuracy and propriety of all filed cost reports.
— All costs reflected on such reports are appropriate and allowable under applicable reimbursement rules and regulations and are patient-related and properly allocated to applicable payors.
— The employed reimbursement methodologies and principles are in accordance with applicable rules and regulations.
— Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, audit adjustments by intermediaries, third-party payors, or other regulatory agencies.
— All items required to be disclosed, including disputed costs that are being claimed to establish a basis for a subsequent appeal, have been fully disclosed in the cost report.
— Recorded third-party settlements include differences between filed (and to be filed) cost reports and calculated settlements, which are necessary based on historical experience or new or ambiguous regulations that may be subject to differing interpretations. Although management believes that the entity is entitled to all amounts claimed on the cost reports, management also believes the amounts of these differences are appropriate.

**Contingencies**

— No violations or possible violations of laws or regulations exist, such as those related to Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes, in any jurisdiction, whose effects are considered for disclosure in the financial statements or as a basis for recording a loss contingency other than those disclosed or accrued in the financial statements. This is including, but not limited to, the anti-kickback statute of the Medicare and Medicaid Patient and Program Protection Act of 1987, limitations on certain physician referrals (the Stark law), and the False Claims Act.
— Billings to third-party payors comply in all material respects with applicable coding guidelines (for example, ICD-9-CM and CPT-4) and laws and regulations (including those dealing with Medicare and Medicaid
antifraud and abuse), and billings reflect only charges for goods and services that were medically necessary; properly approved by regulatory bodies (for example, the Food and Drug Administration), if required; and properly rendered.

— There have been no internal or external investigations relating to compliance with applicable laws and regulations, including investigations in progress, that would have an effect on the amounts reported in the financial statements or on the disclosure in the notes to the financial statements.

— There have been no oral or written communications from regulatory agencies, governmental representatives, employees, or others concerning investigations or allegations of noncompliance with laws and regulations in any jurisdiction, including those related to Medicare and Medicaid antifraud and abuse statutes; deficiencies in financial reporting practices; or other matters that could have a material adverse effect on the financial statements.

— Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, a continuing care retirement community's obligation to provide future services and the use of facilities to current residents.

— Adequate consideration has been given to, and appropriate provision made for, a prepaid health care provider's obligation to provide future health services.

— Guarantees, whether written or oral, under which the health care entity is contingently liable, including guarantee contracts and indemnification agreements pursuant to FASB ASC 460, Guarantees, have been properly recorded or disclosed in the (consolidated) financial statements.

The auditor of the health care entity also might obtain specific representations, if applicable, of the following items that are unique or pervasive in the health care industry:

- The health care entity is in compliance with the provisions of Internal Revenue Code (IRC) Section 501(c)(3) and is exempt from federal income tax under IRC Section 501(a), as evidenced by a determination letter, and from state income tax.
- Information returns (Form 990) have been filed on a timely basis.
- Provision has been made, when material, for estimated retroactive adjustments by third-party payors under reimbursement agreements.
- The health care organization is in compliance with bond indentures or other debt instruments.
- For each of its outstanding bond issues, the health care entity is in compliance with postissuance requirements, as specified in

AAG-HCO APP D
the IRC, including, but not limited to, the areas of arbitrage and private business use.

- Pending changes in the organizational structure, financing arrangements, or other matters that could have a material effect on the financial statements of the entity are properly disclosed.
- The health care entity is in compliance with contractual agreements, grants, and donor restrictions.
- The health care entity has maintained an appropriate composition of net assets in amounts needed to comply with all donor restrictions.
- The internal controls over the receipt and recording of received contributions are adequate.
- The allocation of expenses reported in the notes to the financial statements is reasonable based on the health care entity's current operations.
- The health care entity has properly classified equity securities with readily determinable fair values and all debt securities as either trading or other-than-trading securities and reported these investments at fair value.
- The health care entity has reported to its risk management department all known asserted and unasserted claims and incidents. Adequate and reasonable provision has been made for losses related to asserted and unasserted malpractice, health insurance, worker's compensation, and any other claims.
- The health care entity is (or is not) subject to the requirements of Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133, *Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations*, or Title 45 U.S. Code of Federal Regulations Part 74.26 because it expended (or did not expend) more than $500,000 in federal awards during the year.
- The health care entity has classified net assets as unrestricted, temporarily restricted, or permanently restricted based on its assessment of the donor's intention, as specified in original donor correspondence, when available. When not available, the entity used other corroborating evidential matter, including minutes of the board, accounting records, and financial statements. To the extent that it was unable to review original donor correspondence to determine the amount of the original gift and donor additions, its determination of such amount was based on its best estimate considering the relevant facts and circumstances. Amounts classified as temporarily restricted are subject to donor-imposed purpose or time restrictions that precluded the health care entity from expending such amounts or recognizing such amounts as unrestricted as of the balance sheet date. Amounts classified as permanently restricted are subject to donor-imposed or statutory restrictions that require these amounts to be held in perpetuity. In addition, the health care entity has classified appreciation and income related to such donations in accordance with relevant donor or statutory restrictions. Losses on investments of a donor-restricted endowment fund have been classified in
accordance with FASB ASC 958-205-45. Reclassifications between net asset classes are proper.

[Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the 2012 edition of the Audit and Accounting Guide *Health Care Entities* and SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.21 Management’s refusal to furnish written representations constitutes a limitation on the scope of the audit. Such refusal is often sufficient to preclude an unmodified opinion and may cause an auditor to disclaim an opinion or withdraw from the engagement. However, based on the nature of the representations not obtained or the circumstances of the refusal, the auditor may conclude that a qualified opinion is appropriate. [Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

**Potential Departures From GAAP Related to Estimates and Uncertainties**

.22 The auditor also is responsible for determining whether financial statement assertions and disclosures related to accounting estimates have been presented in accordance with GAAP. Departures from GAAP related to accounting estimates generally fall into one of the following categories:

- Unreasonable accounting estimates
- Inappropriate accounting principles
- Inadequate disclosure

Therefore, in order to render an opinion, the auditor's responsibility is to evaluate the reasonableness of management's estimates based on present circumstances and to determine that estimates are reported in accordance with GAAP and adequately disclosed. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.23 As discussed in AU-C section 500, *Audit Evidence* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), the objective of the auditor is to design and perform audit procedures that enable the auditor to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence to be able to draw reasonable conclusions on which to base the auditor's opinion. As discussed previously, exhibit 10-1 of the guide provides a number of sample procedures that the auditor may perform in auditing an entity's patient revenues and accounts receivable, including those derived from third-party payors. For example, the guide notes that the auditor might "test the reasonableness of settlement amounts, including specific and unallocated reserves, in light of the involved payors, the nature of the payment mechanism, the risks associated with future audits, and other relevant factors." [Revised, September 2008, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS No. 105. Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of the 2012 edition of the Audit and Accounting Guide *Health Care Entities* and SAS Nos. 122–126.]

---

4 See paragraphs .25–.28.
Unreasonable Accounting Estimates

.24 The basis for management's assumptions regarding the nature of future adjustments and calculations as to the effects of such adjustments are relevant factors when evaluating the reasonableness of management's estimates.\(^5\) The auditor cannot determine with certainty whether such estimates are right or wrong, because the accuracy of management's assumptions cannot be confirmed until future events occur. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.25 Paragraph .08c of AU-C section 540 requires the auditor to obtain an understanding of how management makes the accounting estimates, including the assumptions underlying the accounting estimates to provide a basis for the assessment of the risks of material misstatement for accounting estimates. Based on the assessed risks of material misstatement, the auditor should determine, in accordance with paragraph .12 of AU-C section 540,

a. whether management has appropriately applied the requirements of the applicable financial reporting framework relevant to the accounting estimate and

b. whether the methods for making the accounting estimates are appropriate and have been applied consistently and whether changes from the prior period, if any, in accounting estimates or the method for making them are appropriate in the circumstances.

In responding to the assessed risks of material misstatement, as required by AU-C section 330, *Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluating the Audit Evidence Obtained* (AICPA, Professional Standards), the auditor should undertake one or more of the following, in accordance with paragraph .13 of AU-C section 540, taking into account the nature of the accounting estimate:

a. Determine whether events occurring up to the date of the auditor's report provide audit evidence regarding the accounting estimate.

b. Test how management made the accounting estimate and the data on which it is based. In doing so, the auditor should evaluate whether

i. the method of measurement used is appropriate in the circumstances,

ii. the assumptions used by management are reasonable in light of the measurement objectives of the applicable financial reporting framework, and

iii. the data on which the estimate is based is sufficiently reliable for the auditor's purposes.

c. Test the operating effectiveness of the controls over how management made the accounting estimate, together with appropriate substantive procedures.

d. Develop a point estimate or range to evaluate management's point estimate. For this purpose

---

\(^5\) The lack of such analyses may call into question the reasonableness of recorded amounts.
Statement of Position 00-1

i. if the auditor uses assumptions or methods that differ from management's, the auditor should obtain an understanding of management's assumptions or methods sufficient to establish that the auditor's point estimate or range takes into account relevant variables and to evaluate any significant differences from management's point estimate.

ii. if the auditor concludes that it is appropriate to use a range, the auditor should narrow the range, based on audit evidence available, until all outcomes within the range are considered reasonable.

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.26 The auditor should evaluate, based on the audit evidence, whether the accounting estimates in the financial statements are either reasonable in the context of the applicable financial reporting framework or are misstated. Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor may conclude that the evidence points to an accounting estimate that differs from management's point estimate. When the audit evidence supports a point estimate, the difference between the auditor's point estimate and management's point estimate constitutes a misstatement. When the auditor has concluded that using the auditor's range provides sufficient appropriate audit evidence, a management point estimate that lies outside the auditor's range would not be supported by audit evidence. In such cases, the misstatement is no less than the difference between management's point estimate and the nearest point of the auditor's range. (Paragraph .A122 of AU-C section 540). When management has changed an accounting estimate, or the method in making it, from the prior period based on a subjective assessment that there has been a change in circumstances, the auditor may conclude, based on the audit evidence, that the accounting estimate is misstated as a result of an arbitrary change by management or may regard it as an indicator of possible management bias (Paragraph .A123 of AU-C section 540). [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.27 Approaches and estimates will vary from entity to entity. Some entities with significant prior experience may attempt to quantify the effects of individual potential intermediary or other governmental (for example, the Office of Inspector General and the Department of Justice) or private payor adjustments, basing their estimates on very detailed calculations and assumptions regarding potential future adjustments. Some may prepare cost report analyses to estimate the effect of potential adjustments. Others may base their estimates on an analysis of potential adjustments in the aggregate, in light

---

6 Medicare cost reimbursement is based on the application of highly complex technical rules, some of which are ambiguous and subject to different interpretations even among Medicare's fiscal intermediaries. It is not uncommon for fiscal intermediaries to reduce claims for reimbursement that were based on management's good faith interpretations of pertinent laws and regulations. Additionally, the Provider Reimbursement Review Board or the courts may be required to resolve controversies regarding the application of certain rules. To avoid recognizing revenues before their realization is reasonably assured, providers estimate the effects of such potential adjustments. This is occasionally done by preparing a cost report based on alternative assumptions to help estimate contractual allowances required by generally accepted accounting principles. The existence of reserves or a reserve cost report does not by itself mean that a cost report was incorrectly or fraudulently filed.
of the payors involved; the nature of the payment mechanism; the risks associated with future audits; and other relevant factors. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.28 One of the key factors in evaluating the estimate is the historical experience of the entity (for example, the aggregate amount of prior cost-report adjustments and previous regulatory settlements) as well as the risk of potential future adjustments. The fact that an entity currently is not subject to a governmental investigation does not mean that a recorded valuation allowance for potential billing adjustments is not warranted. Nor do these emerging industry trends necessarily indicate that an accrual for a specific entity is warranted. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.29 In evaluating valuation allowances, the auditor may consider the entity's historical experience and potential future adjustments in the aggregate. For example, assume that over the past few years after final cost report audits were completed, a hospital's adjustments averaged 3 percent to 5 percent of total filed reimbursable costs. Additionally, the hospital is subject to potential billing adjustments, including errors (for example, violations of the three-day window, discharge and transfer issues, and coding errors). Even though specific incidents are not known, it may be reasonable for the hospital to estimate and accrue a valuation allowance for such potential future retrospective adjustments, both cost-based and non-cost-based. Based on this and other information obtained, the auditor may conclude that a valuation allowance for the year under audit of 3 percent to 5 percent of reimbursable costs plus additional amounts for potential non-cost-based program billing errors is reasonable.

.30 Amounts that ultimately will be realized by an entity are dependent on a number of factors, many of which may be unknown at the time the estimate is first made. Further, even if two entities had exactly the same clinical and coding experience, amounts that each might realize could vary materially due to factors outside of their control (for example, differing application of payment rules by fiscal intermediaries, legal interpretations of courts, local enforcement initiatives, timeliness of reviews, and quality of documentation). As a result, because estimates are a matter of judgment and their ultimate accuracy depends on the outcome of future events, different entities in seemingly similar circumstances may develop materially different estimates. The auditor may conclude that both estimates are reasonable in light of the differing assumptions.

Inappropriate Accounting Principles

.31 As previously stated, the auditor also is responsible for determining whether financial statement assertions and disclosures related to accounting estimates are presented in accordance with GAAP. When the financial statements are materially affected by a departure from GAAP, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with AU-C section 705. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.32 Valuation allowances should be recorded so that revenues are not recognized until the revenues are realizable. Valuation allowances are not
established based on the provisions of FASB ASC 450, Contingencies. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.33 Indicators of possible measurement bias related to valuation allowances include

- valuation allowances that are not associated with any particular program, issue, or time period (for example, cost-report year or year the service was rendered).
- distorted earnings trends over time (for example, building up specific or unallocated valuation allowances in profitable years and drawing them down in unprofitable years).

[Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

Inadequate Disclosure

.34 If the auditor concludes that a matter involving a risk or an uncertainty is not adequately disclosed in the financial statements in accordance with GAAP, the auditor should express a qualified or adverse opinion in accordance with AU-C section 705. FASB ASC 275-10-50 provides guidance on the information that reporting entities should disclose regarding risks and uncertainties existing as of the date of the financial statements. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

.35 In the health care environment, it is almost always at least reasonably possible that estimates regarding third-party payments could change in the near term as a result of one or more future confirming events (for example, regulatory actions reflecting local or national audit or enforcement initiatives). For most entities with significant third-party revenues, the effect of the change could be material to the financial statements. Where material exposure exists, the uncertainty regarding revenue realization should be disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. Because representations from legal counsel are often key audit evidence in evaluating the reasonableness of management's estimates of potential future adjustments, the inability of an attorney to form an opinion on matters about which he or she has been consulted may be indicative of an uncertainty that should be specifically disclosed in the financial statements. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.36 Differences between original estimates and subsequent revisions might arise due to final settlements, ongoing audits and investigations, or passage of time in relation to the statute of limitations. FASB ASC 954-605 requires that these differences be included in the statement of operations in the period in which the revisions are made and disclosed. Such differences are not treated as prior period adjustments unless they meet the criteria for prior period adjustments as set forth in FASB ASC 250-10-45. [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature.]

.37 Disclosures such as the following may be appropriate:
General Hospital (the Hospital) is a (not-for-profit, for-profit, or governmental hospital or health care system) located in (City, State). The Hospital provides health care services primarily to residents of the region.

Net patient service revenue is reported at estimated net realizable amounts from patients, third-party payors, and others for services rendered and includes estimated retroactive revenue adjustments due to future audits, reviews, and investigations. Retroactive adjustments are considered in the recognition of revenue on an estimated basis in the period the related services are rendered, and such amounts are adjusted in future periods as adjustments become known or as years are no longer subject to such audits, reviews, and investigations.

Revenue from the Medicare and Medicaid programs accounted for approximately 40 percent and 10 percent, respectively, of the Hospital's net patient revenue for the year ended 1999. Laws and regulations governing the Medicare and Medicaid programs are extremely complex and subject to interpretation. As a result, there is at least a reasonable possibility that recorded estimates will change by a material amount in the near term. The 1999 net patient service revenue increased approximately $10,000,000 due to removal of allowances previously estimated that are no longer necessary as a result of final settlements and years that are no longer subject to audits, reviews, and investigations. The 1998 net patient service revenue decreased approximately $8,000,000 due to prior-year retroactive adjustments in excess of amounts previously estimated.
Appendix

Other Considerations Related to Government Investigations

In recent years, the federal government and many states have aggressively increased enforcement efforts under Medicare and Medicaid anti-fraud and abuse legislation. Broadening regulatory and legal interpretations have significantly increased the risk of penalties for providers; for example, broad interpretations of "false claims" laws are exposing ordinary billing mistakes to scrutiny and penalty consideration. In such circumstances, evaluating the adequacy of accruals for or disclosure of the potential effects of noncompliance with laws and regulations in the financial statements of health care entities is a matter that is likely to require a high level of professional judgment.

As previously discussed in this Statement of Position, the far-reaching nature of alleged fraud and abuse violations creates an uncertainty with respect to the valuation of revenues, because future allegations of noncompliance with laws and regulations could, if proven, result in a subsequent reduction of revenues. In addition, management makes provisions in the financial statements and disclosures for any contingent liabilities associated with fines and penalties due to violations of such laws. Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification 450, Contingencies, provides guidance in evaluating contingent liabilities, such as fines and penalties under applicable laws and regulations. Estimates of potential fines and penalties are not accrued unless their payment is probable and reasonably estimable.

The auditor's expertise is in accounting and auditing matters rather than operational, clinical, or legal matters. Accordingly, the auditor's procedures focus on areas that normally are subject to internal control relevant to financial reporting. However, the further that suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations is removed from the events and transactions ordinarily reflected in the financial statements, the less likely the auditor is to become aware of the suspected noncompliance, to recognize its possible noncompliance with laws and regulations, and to evaluate the effect on the financial statements. For example, determining whether a service was medically necessary, obtained through a legally appropriate referral, properly performed (including using only approved devices, rendered in a quality manner), adequately supervised, accurately documented and classified, or rendered and billed by nonsanctioned individuals typically is not within the auditor's professional expertise. As a result, an audit in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards (GAAS) is not designed to detect such matters.

Further, because of the inherent limitations of an audit, an audit conducted in accordance with GAAS provides no assurance that all instances of noncompliance with laws and regulations will be detected.1

Nor does an audit under GAAS include providing any assurance on an entity's billings or cost report. In fact, cost reports typically are not prepared and submitted until after the financial statement audit has been completed.

---

1 Even when auditors undertake a special engagement designed to attest to compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grants (for example, an audit in accordance with Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133), the auditor's procedures do not extend to testing compliance with laws and regulations related to Medicare and Medicaid fraud and abuse.
Certain audit procedures, although not specifically designed to detect noncompliance with laws and regulations, may bring possible noncompliance with laws and regulations to an auditor's attention. When suspected noncompliance is detected, the auditor's responsibilities are addressed in AU-C section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*). Disclosure of noncompliance with laws and regulations to parties other than the client's senior management and its audit committee or board of directors is not ordinarily part of the auditor's responsibility, and such disclosure would be precluded by the auditor's ethical or legal obligation of confidentiality, unless the matter affects the auditor's opinion on the financial statements.² [Revised, June 2009, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of recent authoritative literature. Revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]

² Paragraph A28 of AU-C section 250, *Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements* (AICPA, *Professional Standards*), discusses circumstances in which a duty to notify parties outside the entity of identified or suspected noncompliance with laws and regulations may exist. [Footnote revised, December 2012, to reflect conforming changes necessary due to the issuance of SAS Nos. 122–126.]
Auditing Standards Board

DEBORAH D. LAMBERT, Chair
J. MICHAEL INZINA
JAMES S. GERSON, Vice Chair
CHARLES E. LANDES
JOHN BARNUM
W. SCOTT MCDONALD
ANDREW J. CAPELLI
KEITH O. NEWTON
LINDA K. CHEATHAM
ROBERT C. STEINER
ROBERT F. DACEY
GEORGE H. TUCKER
RICHARD DIETER
O. RAY WHITTINGTON
SALLY L. HOFFMAN

AICPA Health Care Third-Party Revenue Recognition Task Force

WILLIAM R. TITERA, Chair
ROBERT A. WRIGHT
MARTHA GARNER

AICPA Health Care Committee

ROBERT A. WRIGHT, Chair
CHARLES V. ROBB
THOMAS J. AARON
PEGGY B. SCOTT
PHILLIP J. BRUMMEL
ALAN A. SCHACHTER
A. JAMES BUDZINSKI
GORDON J. VETSCH
RICK R. CORCORAN
JONATHAN G. WEAVER
MICHAEL T. DEFREECE
AUDREY L. WENT
ROBERT E. MAZER

AICPA Staff

THOMAS RAY
Director
Audit and Attest Standards
ANNETTE SCHUMACHER BARR
Technical Manager
Professional Standards & Services

AAG-HCO APP D
Appendix E

Information Sources

Further information on matters addressed in this guide is available through various publications and services listed in the table that follows. Many non-government and some government publications and services involve a charge or membership requirement.

Fax services allow users to follow voice cues and request that selected documents be sent by fax machine. Some fax services require the user to call from the handset of the fax machine; others allow the user to call from any phone. Most fax services offer an index document, which lists titles and other information describing available documents.

Recorded announcements allow users to listen to announcements about a variety of recent or scheduled actions or meetings.

All listed telephone numbers are voice lines, unless otherwise designated as fax (f) or data (d) lines.

Information Sources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>General Information</th>
<th>Fax Services</th>
<th>Available Publications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>American Association of Homes and Services for the Aging</strong></td>
<td>AAHSA Publications Dept. 5119 Washington, DC 20061-5119 202.783.2242 <a href="http://www.leadingage.org">www.leadingage.org</a></td>
<td></td>
<td>Continuing Care Retirement Communities: An Industry in Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>American Hospital Association</strong></td>
<td>Order Department P.O. Box 92683 Chicago, IL 60675-2683 800.AHA.2626</td>
<td>Fax-on-Demand 312.422.2020</td>
<td>Hospital Statistics National Hospital Panel Survey Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>American Medical Association</strong></td>
<td>Order Department 515 N. State Street Chicago, IL 60610-4325 800.621.8335</td>
<td>Information-on-Request Fax Line 800.621.8335</td>
<td>&quot;Socioeconomic Resources in Medicine: Review of the Literature&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Center for Health Care Industry Performance Studies</strong></td>
<td>Order Department 1550 Old Henderson Road Suite S277 Columbus, OH 43220-3626 800.859.2447</td>
<td></td>
<td>Almanac of Hospital Financial and Operating Indicators</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>General Information</th>
<th>Fax Services</th>
<th>Available Publications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Healthcare Financial Management Association</td>
<td>Order Department 2 Westbrook Corporate Center Suite 700 Westchester, IL 60154 800.252.4362</td>
<td>Fax-on-Demand 615.385.4979</td>
<td>hfm magazine Issue Analysis 98-1, Compliance with Laws and Regulations for Healthcare Organizations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HealthLeaders-InterStudy</td>
<td>Order Department One Vantage Way B-300 Nashville, TN 37228 800.643.7600</td>
<td>Fax-on-Demand 303.784.6110</td>
<td>Competitive Edge: The HMO Industry Report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical Group Management Association</td>
<td>Order Department P.O. Box 17603 Denver, CO 80217-0603 877.275.6462</td>
<td>Fax-on-Demand 615.385.4979</td>
<td>Cost Survey Practice Management: Academic Practice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organization</th>
<th>General Information</th>
<th>Fax Services</th>
<th>Website Address</th>
<th>Recorded Announcements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American Institute of Certified Public Accountants</td>
<td>Order Department 220 Leigh Farm Road Durham, NC 27707-8110 888.777.7077 If outside of the United States, call 919.402.2317</td>
<td>24 Hour Fax Hotline 800.362.5066</td>
<td><a href="http://www.aicpa.org">www.aicpa.org</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Accounting Standards Board</td>
<td>Order Department 401 Merritt 7 P.O. Box 5116 Norwalk, CT 06856-5116 203.847.0700, ext. 10 800.748.0659</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.fasb.org">www.fasb.org</a></td>
<td>Action Alert Telephone Line 203.847.0700, ext. 444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization</td>
<td>General Information</td>
<td>Fax Services</td>
<td>Website Address</td>
<td>Recorded Announcements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Governmental Accounting Standards Board</td>
<td>Order Department</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.gasb.org">www.gasb.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>401 Merritt 7 P.O. Box 5116</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Norwalk, CT 06856-5116 ext. 10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>203.847.0700 800.748.0659</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DC 20548</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Washington, DC 20401-0001</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.gpoaccess.gov">www.gpoaccess.gov</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Association of Insurance Commissioners</td>
<td>1100 Walnut Street, Suite 1500</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.naic.org">www.naic.org</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kansas City, MO 64106-2197</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office of Management and Budget</td>
<td>725 17th Street, NW Washington</td>
<td></td>
<td><a href="http://www.omb.gov">www.omb.gov</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DC 20503 202.395.3080</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DC 20549 Publications Unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>202.551.4040 SEC Public</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reference 202.551.8090</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Information Line 202.942.8088</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ext. 4 TTY 202.551.6020</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix F

References to AICPA Technical Practice Aids

The following nonauthoritative questions and answers, commonly referred to as Technical Questions and Answers (TISs), have been prepared by the AICPA staff and are included in Technical Practice Aids. The questions and answers have not been approved, disapproved, or otherwise acted upon by the Financial Reporting Executive Committee or any other senior technical committee of the AICPA. They are not sources of established accounting principles\(^1\) nor are they sources of authoritative generally accepted auditing standards. The AICPA staff believes that the questions and answers listed subsequently may be useful and relevant for users of this guide. In addition to the following questions and answers, not-for-profit health care entities may find the questions and answers listed in TIS section 6140, "Not-for-Profit Entities" (AICPA, Technical Practice Aids), useful. Other questions and answers may also be useful and relevant to users of this guide, depending on the facts and circumstances.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIS Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5250.15</td>
<td>&quot;Application of Certain FASB Interpretation No. 48 (codified in FASB ASC 740-10) Disclosure Requirements to Nonpublic Entities That Do Not Have Uncertain Tax Positions&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6300.39</td>
<td>&quot;Cumulative Effect of Change in Accounting Principle—ASU No. 2010-26&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6300.40</td>
<td>&quot;Deferrable Commissions and Bonuses Under ASU No. 2010-26&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6140.23</td>
<td>&quot;Changing Net Asset Classifications Reported in a Prior Year&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.04</td>
<td>&quot;Hospital as Collecting Agent for Physicians [Amended]&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.12</td>
<td>&quot;General Obligation Bonds Issued for Current Use by City Owned Hospital [Amended]&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.17</td>
<td>&quot;Elimination of Profit on Intercompany Sales&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.19</td>
<td>&quot;Offsetting of Limited Use Assets&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.20</td>
<td>&quot;Format of Combined or Consolidated Financial Statements&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.25</td>
<td>&quot;Accounting for Transfer of Assets From Not-for-Profit to For-Profit Entities&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.26</td>
<td>&quot;Transfer of Assets From Subsidiary For-Profit Entity to Not-for-Profit Stockholder Parent&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.29</td>
<td>&quot;Timing of Recording Transfers Between Related Entities&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.30</td>
<td>&quot;Accounting for Transactions Involving Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs [Amended]&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) See chapter 1, "Overview and Unique Considerations of Health Care Entities," of this guide for additional information regarding the hierarchy of generally accounting principles for nongovernmental health care entities.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>TIS Section</strong></th>
<th><strong>Title</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6400.33</td>
<td>&quot;Accounting for a Joint Operating Agreement&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.34</td>
<td>&quot;Accounting for Computer Systems Costs Incurred in Connection With the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.35</td>
<td>&quot;Note to Sections 6400.36–.42—Implementation of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (in the Beneficiary's Financial Statements)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.36</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.37</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.38</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation—Does Common Control Lead to the Conclusion That the Beneficiary Can Determine the Timing and Amount of Distributions from the Recipient?&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.39</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (More Than One Beneficiary—Some Contributions Are Designated)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.40</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIS Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.41</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.42</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity)—Accounting for Unrealized Gains and Losses on Investments Held by the Foundation&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.43</td>
<td>&quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.45</td>
<td>&quot;Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.46</td>
<td>&quot;Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Guarantor's Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others—Mortgage Guarantees&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.48</td>
<td>&quot;Accounting for Costs Incurred During Implementation of ICD-10&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.49</td>
<td>&quot;Presentation of Claims Liability and Insurance Recoveries—Contingencies Similar to Malpractice&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.50</td>
<td>&quot;Accrual of Legal Costs Associated With Contingencies Other Than Malpractice&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.51</td>
<td>&quot;Presentation of Insurance Recoveries When Insurer Pays Claims Directly&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.52</td>
<td>&quot;Insurance Recoveries From Certain Retrospectively Rated Insurance Policies&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6910.34</td>
<td>&quot;Application of the Notion of Value Maximization for Measuring Fair Value of Debt and Controlling Equity Positions&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6910.35</td>
<td>&quot;Assessing Control When Measuring Fair Value&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIS Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8100.03</td>
<td>&quot;Using Current Auditing Standards for Audits of Prior Periods&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8700.03</td>
<td>&quot;Auditor's Responsibilities for Subsequent Events Relative to a Conduit Debt Obligor&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8800.01–.43</td>
<td>Various Questions and Answers on group audits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9100.07</td>
<td>&quot;Naming the City and State Where the Auditor Practices&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9100.08</td>
<td>&quot;Audit Firm With Multiple Offices on Their Company Letterhead and Effect on Report&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9110.15</td>
<td>&quot;Reporting on Medicaid/Medicare Cost Reports&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9110.19</td>
<td>&quot;Lender Comfort Letters&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9110.20</td>
<td>&quot;Effective Date of AU-C Section 905 in a Compliance Audit&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9110.21</td>
<td>&quot;Reporting on Current-Value Financial Statements That Supplement Historical-Cost Financial Statements in Presentations of Real Estate Entities&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9110.22</td>
<td>&quot;Use of Restricted Alert Language When Financial Statements Are Audited in Accordance With GAAS and Government Auditing Standards&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9110.23</td>
<td>&quot;Modification of Compliance Report When Financial Statements Are Audited in Accordance With GAAS&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9150.29</td>
<td>&quot;Effects on Compilation and Review Engagements When Management Does Not Assess Whether the Reporting Entity Is the Primary Beneficiary of a Variable Interest Entity and Instructs the Accountant to Not Perform the Assessment&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9150.30</td>
<td>&quot;Disclosure of Independence Impairment in the Accountant's Compilation Report on Comparative Financial Statements When the Accountant's Independence Is Impaired in Only One Period&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9160.28</td>
<td>&quot;Combining a Going Concern Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph With Another Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraph&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9170.02</td>
<td>&quot;Supplementary Information That Accompanies Interim Financial Information&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix G

The New Revenue Recognition Standard: FASB ASU No. 2014-09

Overview

On May 28, 2014, the IASB and FASB issued a joint accounting standard on revenue recognition to address a number of concerns regarding the complexity and lack of consistency surrounding the accounting for revenue transactions. Consistent with each board's policy, FASB issued FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606), and the IASB issued IFRS 15, Revenue from Contracts with Customers. FASB ASU No. 2014-09 will amend the FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) by creating a new Topic 606, Revenue from Contracts with Customers, and a new Subtopic 340-40, Other Assets and Deferred Costs—Contracts with Customers. The guidance in FASB ASU No. 2014-09 provides what FASB describes as a framework for revenue recognition and supersedes or amends several of the revenue recognition requirements in FASB ASC 605, Revenue Recognition, as well as guidance within the 900 series of industry-specific topics.

As part of the boards' efforts to converge U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS), the standard eliminates the transaction- and industry-specific revenue recognition guidance under current GAAP and replaces it with a principles-based approach for revenue recognition. The intent is to avoid inconsistencies of accounting treatment across different geographies and industries. In addition to improving comparability of revenue recognition practices, the new guidance provides more useful information to financial statement users through enhanced disclosure requirements. FASB and the IASB have essentially achieved convergence with these standards, with some minor differences related to the collectibility threshold, interim disclosure requirements, early application and effective date, impairment loss reversal, and nonpublic entity requirements.

The standard applies to any entity that either enters into contracts with customers to transfer goods or services or enters into contracts for the transfer of nonfinancial assets unless those contracts are within the scope of other standards (for example, insurance or lease contracts).

Effective/Applicability Date

The guidance in FASB ASU No. 2014-09 is effective for annual reporting periods of public entities beginning after December 15, 2016 (equates to January 1, 2017, for calendar year-end entities), including interim periods within that reporting period. Early application is not permitted.

For nonpublic entities, the amendments in the new guidance are effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018. Non-public
entities may elect to adopt the standard earlier, however, only as of the following:

- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within that reporting period (public entity effective date)
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017
- An annual reporting period beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within that reporting period

**Overview of the New Guidance**

The core principle of the revised revenue recognition standard is that an entity should recognize revenue to depict the transfer of goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those good or services.

To apply the proposed revenue recognition standard, FASB ASU No. 2014-09 states that an entity should follow these five steps:

1. Identify the contract(s) with a customer.
2. Identify the performance obligations in the contract.
3. Determine the transaction price.
4. Allocate the transaction price to the performance obligations in the contract.
5. Recognize revenue when (or as) the entity satisfies a performance obligation.

Under the new standard, revenue is recognized when a company satisfies a performance obligation by transferring a promised good or service to a customer (which is when the customer obtains control of that good or service). See the following discussion of the five steps involved when recognizing revenue under the new guidance.

**Understanding the Five-Step Process**

**Step 1: Identify the Contract(s) with a Customer**

FASB ASU No. 2014-09 defines a contract as "an agreement between two or more parties that creates enforceable rights and obligations." The new standard affects contracts with a customer that meets the following criteria:

- Approval (in writing, orally, or in accordance with other customary business practices) and commitment of the parties
- Identification of the rights of the parties
- Identification of the payment terms
- Contract has commercial substance
- Probable that the entity will collect the consideration to which it will be entitled in exchange for the goods or services that will be transferred to the customer
A contract does not exist if each party to the contract has the unilateral enforceable right to terminate a wholly unperformed contract without compensating the other party (parties).

**Step 2: Identify the Performance Obligations in the Contract**

A *performance obligation* is a promise in a contract with a customer to transfer a good or service to the customer.

At contract inception, an entity should assess the goods or services promised in a contract with a customer and should identify as a performance obligation (possibly multiple performance obligations) each promise to transfer to the customer either

- a good or service (or bundle of goods or services) that is distinct, or
- a series of distinct goods or services that are substantially the same and that have the same pattern of transfer to the customer.

A good or service that is not distinct should be combined with other promised goods or services until the entity identifies a bundle of goods or services that is distinct. In some cases, that would result in the entity accounting for all the goods or services promised in a contract as a single performance obligation.

**Step 3: Determine the Transaction Price**

The transaction price is the amount of consideration (fixed or variable) the entity expects to receive in exchange for transferring promised goods or services to a customer, excluding amounts collected on behalf of third parties. To determine the transaction price, an entity should consider the effects of

- variable consideration,
- constraining estimates of variable consideration,
- the existence of a significant financing component,
- noncash considerations, and
- consideration payable to the customer.

If the consideration promised in a contract includes a variable amount, then an entity should estimate the amount of consideration to which the entity will be entitled in exchange for transferring the promised goods or services to a customer. An entity would then include in the transaction price some or all of an amount of variable consideration only to the extent that it is probable that a significant reversal in the amount of cumulative revenue recognized will not occur when the uncertainty associated with the variable consideration is subsequently resolved.

An entity should consider the terms of the contract and its customary business practices to determine the transaction price.

**Step 4: Allocate the Transaction Price to the Performance Obligations in the Contract**

The transaction price is allocated to separate performance obligations in proportion to the standalone selling price of the promised goods or services. If a standalone selling price is not directly observable, then an entity should
estimate it. Reallocation of the transaction price for changes in the standalone selling price is not permitted. When estimating the standalone selling price, entities can use various methods including the adjusted market assessment approach, expected cost plus a margin approach, and residual approach (only if the selling price is highly variable and uncertain).

Sometimes, the transaction price includes a discount or a variable amount of consideration that relates entirely to one of the performance obligations in a contract. Guidance under the new standard specifies when an entity should allocate the discount or variable consideration to one (or some) performance obligation(s) rather than to all of the performance obligations in the contract.

**Step 5: Recognize Revenue when (or as) the Entity Satisfies a Performance Obligation**

The amount of revenue recognized when transferring the promised good or service to a customer is equal to the amount allocated to the satisfied performance obligation, which may be satisfied at a point in time (goods) or over time (services). Control of an asset refers to the ability to direct the use of, and obtain substantially all of the remaining benefits from, the asset. Control also includes the ability to prevent other entities from directing the use of, and obtaining the benefits from, an asset.

When performance obligations are satisfied over time, the entity should select an appropriate method for measuring its progress toward complete satisfaction of that performance obligation. The Standard discusses methods of measuring progress including input and output methods, and how to determine which method is appropriate.

**Additional Guidance under the New Standard**

In addition to the five-step process for recognizing revenue, FASB ASU No. 2014-09 also addresses the following areas:

- Accounting for incremental costs of obtaining a contract, as well as costs incurred to fulfill a contract.
- Licenses
- Warranties

Lastly, the new guidance enhances disclosure requirements to include more information about specific revenue contracts entered into by the entity, including performance obligations and the transaction price.

**Conclusion**

Upon implementation of the new standard, consistency of revenue recognition principles across geography and industry will be enhanced and financial statement users will be provided better insight through improved disclosure requirements. To provide CPAs with guidance during this time of transition, the AICPA’s Financial Reporting Center (FRC) offers invaluable resources on the topic, including a roadmap to ensure that companies take the necessary steps to prepare themselves for the new standard. In addition, the FRC
includes a list of conferences, webcasts, and other products to keep you informed on upcoming changes in revenue recognition. Refer to www.aicpa.org/INTERESTAREAS/FRC/ACCOUNTINGFINANCIALREPORTING/REVENUERECOGNITION/Pages/RevenueRecognition.aspx to stay updated on the latest information available on revenue recognition.
Appendix H

Schedule of Changes Made to the Text From the Previous Edition

As of September 1, 2014

This schedule of changes identifies areas in the text and footnotes of this guide that have been changed from the previous edition. Entries in the table of this appendix reflect current numbering, lettering (including that in appendix names), and character designations that resulted from the renumbering or reordering that occurred in the updating of this guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General</td>
<td>Information related to standards issued as of September 1, 2014, the &quot;as of&quot; date of this guide, but not yet effective on or before December 31, 2014, has been placed in shaded &quot;Guidance Update&quot; boxes, with a reference to appendix A, &quot;Guidance Updates.&quot; See appendix A for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>Updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former footnote 1 in paragraph 1.01</td>
<td>Deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 1.02 and 1.08</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 1.12–.13</td>
<td>Revised for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnote 1 in paragraph 2.04</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of the updated COSO Internal Control-Integrated Framework and illustrative documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.10</td>
<td>Revised to reflect the issuance of PCAOB Auditing Standard No. 16, Communications with Audit Committees (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, Auditing Standards).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.15</td>
<td>Revised to reflect the issuance of PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert No. 11, Considerations for Audits of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting (AICPA, PCAOB Standards and Related Rules, PCAOB Staff Guidance sec. 400.11).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.16</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former footnote 2 in heading before paragraph 2.19</td>
<td>Deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.24</td>
<td>Added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnote 3 in paragraph 2.28</td>
<td>Revised for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.39</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.42</td>
<td>Updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 2.46–.47</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 2.48</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB Accounting Standards Update (ASU) No. 2014-09, <em>Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnote 5 in paragraph 2.49</td>
<td>Revised for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 2.50 and 2.54</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 2.78</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2104-15, <em>Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 2.78–.87</td>
<td>Added going-concern considerations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box following paragraph 2.87 and related footnote 7</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2013-07, <em>Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205): Liquidation Basis of Accounting</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 2.94</td>
<td>Revised for IRC Section 501(r)(1) as established by the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act and for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 2.95 and related footnote 8</td>
<td>Added for the issuance of the OMB's final rule on Administrative Requirements, Cost Principles, and Audit Requirements for Federal Awards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former footnote 4 in paragraph 3.24</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former update box preceding paragraph 3.33</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box following paragraph 5.05</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-03, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Accounting for Certain Receive-Variable, Pay-Fixed Interest Rate Swaps—Simplified Hedge Accounting Approach (a consensus of the Private Company Council).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 5.21</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-03.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former footnote 4 in paragraph 5.26</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 6.03–.04 and 6.22</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box following paragraph 6.30</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-08, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205) and Property, Plant, and Equipment (Topic 360): Reporting Discontinued Operations and Disclosures of Disposals of Components of an Entity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 6.37</td>
<td>Added update box to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-02, Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Accounting for Goodwill (a consensus of the Private Company Council).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 6.41 and 6.49</td>
<td>Revised for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 6.51</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Former update box preceding paragraph 7.73</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 7.92–.93</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnote 14 in paragraph 7.102</td>
<td>Added for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 7.104</td>
<td>Added to reflect the release of SEC Final Rule Release No. 34-70462, Registration of Municipal Advisors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 8.65</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-12, Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Accounting for Share-Based Payments When the Terms of an Award Provide That a Performance Target Could Be Achieved after the Requisite Service Period (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 8.77–.78</td>
<td>Added to reflect updates to FASB ASC 405-40-15-1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 8.84–.85</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2011-06, Other Expenses (Topic 720): Fees Paid to the Federal Government by Health Insurers (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 10.01</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-09.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 10.17 and 10.29</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 11.28</td>
<td>Revised for clarification and passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 12.27</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 13.01–.02</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update boxes preceding paragraph 13.03 and following paragraph 13.27.</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-09.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former footnote 1 in paragraph 14.22</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 14.42</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraphs 15.05–.08 and related footnotes 4– 6</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former update box following paragraph 15.11</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 15.19</td>
<td>Revised for clarification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box following paragraph 15.25</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 15.68</td>
<td>Revised to reflect the issuance of GASB Statement No. 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 15.69</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of GASB Statement No. 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former update box preceding paragraph 15.93</td>
<td>Deleted for passage of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update box preceding paragraph 15.99</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of GASB Statement No. 71.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnote 39 in paragraph 15.109</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of GASB Statement No. 68.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paragraph 15.154</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of GASB Statement No. 69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendixes A, C, and E</td>
<td>Updated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendix F</td>
<td>Revised for the issuance of new Technical Practice Aids.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix G</td>
<td>Added to reflect the issuance of FASB ASU No. 2014-09.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>Updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Pronouncements and Other Technical Guidance</td>
<td>Updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject Index</td>
<td>Updated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glossary

The following terms can be found in the FASB Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) glossary:

**acquiree.** The business or businesses that the acquirer obtains control of in a business combination. This term also includes a nonprofit activity or business that a not-for-profit acquirer obtains control of in an acquisition by a not-for-profit entity.

**acquirer.** The entity that obtains control of the acquiree. However, in a business combination in which a variable interest entity is acquired, the primary beneficiary of that entity always is the acquirer.

**acquisition by a not-for-profit entity.** A transaction or other event in which a not-for-profit acquirer obtains control of one or more nonprofit activities or businesses and initially recognizes their assets and liabilities in the acquirer's financial statements. When applicable guidance in FASB ASC 805, Business Combinations, is applied by a not-for-profit entity (NFP), the term business combination has the same meaning as this term has for an NFP. Likewise, a reference to business combinations in guidance that links to FASB ASC 805 has the same meaning as a reference to acquisitions by NFPs.

**acquisition date.** The date on which the acquirer obtains control of the acquiree.

**advance refunding.** A transaction involving the issuance of new debt to replace existing debt with the proceeds from the new debt placed in trust or otherwise restricted to retire the existing debt at a determinable future date or dates.

**affiliate.** A party that, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with an entity.

**agent.** An entity that acts for and on behalf of another. Although the term agency has a legal definition, the term is used broadly to encompass not only legal agency, but also the relationships described in FASB ASC 958, Not-for-Profit Entities. A recipient entity acts as an agent for and on behalf of a donor if it receives assets from the donor and agrees to use those assets on behalf of or transfer those assets, the return on investment of those assets, or both to a specified beneficiary. A recipient entity acts as an agent for and on behalf of a beneficiary if it agrees to solicit assets from potential donors specifically for the beneficiary’s use and to distribute those assets to the beneficiary. A recipient entity also acts as an agent if a beneficiary can compel the recipient entity to make distributions to it or on its behalf.

**business.** An integrated set of activities and assets that is capable of being conducted and managed for the purpose of providing a return in the form of dividends, lower costs, or other economic benefits directly to investors or other owners, members, or participants. Additional guidance on what a business consists of is presented in paragraphs 4–9 of FASB ASC 805-10-55.

**business combination.** A transaction or other event in which an acquirer obtains control of one or more businesses. Transactions sometimes referred
Health Care Entities

to as true mergers or mergers of equals also are business combinations. See also [business and] acquisition by a not-for-profit entity.

capitation fee. A fixed amount per individual that is paid periodically (usually monthly) to a provider as compensation for providing comprehensive health care services for the period. The fee is set by contract between a prepaid health care plan and the provider. These contracts are generally with medical groups, independent practice associations, hospitals, and other similar providers. Capitation fees may be determined actuarially or negotiated based on expected costs to be incurred.

cash flow hedge. A hedge of the exposure to variability in the cash flows of a recognized asset or liability, or of a forecasted transaction, that is attributable to a particular risk.

charity care. Charity care represents health care services that are provided but are never expected to result in cash flows. Charity care is provided to a patient with demonstrated inability to pay. Each entity establishes its own criteria for charity care consistent with its mission statement and financial ability.

claim adjustment expenses. Expenses incurred in the course of investigating and settling claims ([further industry-specific information is provided in the following list of terms]).

collaborative arrangement. A contractual arrangement that involves a joint operating activity (see FASB ASC 808-10-15-7). These arrangements involve two (or more) parties that meet both of the following requirements:

a. They are active participants in the activity (see paragraphs 8–9 of FASB ASC 808-10-15).
b. They are exposed to significant risks and rewards dependent on the commercial success of the activity (see paragraphs 10–13 of FASB ASC 808-10-15).

compensation. Reciprocal transfers of cash or other assets in exchange for services performed.

conditional promise to give. A promise to give that depends on the occurrence of a specified future and uncertain event to bind the promisor.

conduit debt securities. Certain limited-obligation revenue bonds, certificates of participation, or similar debt instruments issued by a state or local governmental entity for the express purpose of providing financing for a specific third party (the conduit bond obligor) that is not a part of the state or local government’s financial reporting entity. Although conduit debt securities bear the name of the governmental entity that issues them, the governmental entity often has no obligation for such debt beyond the resources provided by a lease or loan agreement with the third party on whose behalf the securities are issued. Further, the conduit bond obligor is responsible for any future financial reporting requirements.

contribution. An unconditional transfer of cash or other assets to an entity or a settlement or cancellation of its liabilities in a voluntary nonreciprocal transfer by another entity acting other than as an owner. Those characteristics distinguish contributions from exchange transactions, which are reciprocal transfers in which each party receives and sacrifices approximately equal value; from investments by owners and distributions to
owners, which are nonreciprocal transfers between an entity and its owners; and from other nonreciprocal transfers, such as impositions of taxes or legal judgments, fines, and thefts, which are not voluntary transfers. In a contribution transaction, the value, if any, returned to the resource provider is incidental to potential public benefits. In an exchange transaction, the potential public benefits are secondary to the potential proprietary benefits to the resource provider. The term contribution revenue is used to apply to transactions that are part of the entity's ongoing major or central activities (revenues), or are peripheral or incidental to the entity (gains). See also inherent contribution.

control. The direct or indirect ability to determine the direction of management and policies through ownership, contract, or otherwise.

diagnosis-related group. A patient classification scheme that categorizes patients who are related medically with respect to primary and secondary diagnosis, age, or complications [(further industry-specific information is provided in the following list of terms)].

donor-imposed condition. A donor stipulation that specifies a future and uncertain event whose occurrence or failure to occur gives the promisor a right of return of the assets it has transferred or releases the promisor from its obligation to transfer its assets.

donor-imposed restriction. A donor stipulation that specifies a use for a contributed asset that is more specific than broad limits resulting from the following:

a. The nature of the not-for-profit entity (NFP)
b. The environment in which it operates
c. The purposes specified in its articles of incorporation or bylaws or comparable documents for an unincorporated association.

A donor-imposed restriction on an NFP's use of the asset contributed may be temporary or permanent. Some donor-imposed restrictions impose limits that are permanent, for example, stipulating that resources be invested in perpetuity (not used up). Others are temporary, for example, stipulating that resources may be used only after a specified date, for particular programs or services, or to acquire buildings and equipment.

economic interest. A not-for-profit entity's (NFP's) interest in another entity that exists if any of the following criteria are met:

a. The other entity holds or utilizes significant resources that must be used for the unrestricted or restricted purposes of the NFP, either directly or indirectly by producing income or providing services.
b. The NFP is responsible for the liabilities of the other entity.

See FASB ASC 958-810-55-6 for examples of economic interests.

endowment fund. An established fund of cash, securities, or other assets used to provide income for the maintenance of a not-for-profit entity (NFP). The use of the assets of the fund may be permanently restricted, temporarily restricted, or unrestricted. Endowment funds generally are established by donor-restricted gifts and bequests to provide either of the following:

a. A permanent endowment, which is to provide a permanent source of income
b. A term endowment, which is to provide income for a specific period. Alternatively, an NFP’s governing board may earmark a portion of its unrestricted net assets as a board-designated endowment fund.

equity transfer. An equity transfer is nonreciprocal. An equity transfer is a transaction directly between a transferor and a transferee. Equity transfers are similar to ownership transactions between a for-profit parent and its owned subsidiary (for example, additional paid-in capital or dividends). However, equity transfers can occur only between related not-for-profit entities if one controls the other or both are under common control. An equity transfer embodies no expectation of repayment, nor does the transferor receive anything of immediate economic value (such as a financial interest or ownership).

fed funds effective swap rate (or overnight index swap rate). The fixed rate on a U.S. dollar, constant-notional interest rate swap that has its variable-rate leg referenced to the Fed Funds effective rate with no additional spread over the Fed Funds effective rate on that variable-rate leg. That fixed rate is the derived rate that would result in the swap having a zero fair value at inception because the present value of fixed cash flows, based on that rate, equates to the present value of the variable cash flows.

financially interrelated entities. A recipient entity and a specified beneficiary are financially interrelated entities if the relationship between them has both of the following characteristics:

a. One of the entities has the ability to influence the operating and financial decisions of the other.

b. One of the entities has an ongoing economic interest in the net assets of the other.

functional classification. A method of grouping expenses according to the purpose for which costs are incurred. The primary functional classifications are program services and supporting activities.

fundraising activities. Activities undertaken to induce potential donors to contribute money, securities, services, materials, facilities, other assets, or time.

health maintenance organization (HMO). A generic group of medical care entities organized to provide defined health care services to members in return for fixed, periodic premiums (usually paid monthly) that are paid in advance.

incurred but not reported claims. Claims relating to insured events that have incurred but have not yet been reported to the insurer or reinsurer as of the date of the financial statements [(further industry-specific information is provided in the following list of terms)].

inherent contribution. A contribution that results if an entity voluntarily transfers assets (or net assets) or performs services for another entity in exchange for either no assets or for assets of substantially lower value and unstated rights or privileges of a commensurate value are not involved.

in-substance defeasance. Placement by the debtor of amounts equal to the principal, interest, and prepayment penalties related to a debt instrument in an irrevocable trust established for the benefit of the creditor [(further industry-specific information is provided in the following list of terms)].
**intermediary.** Although in general usage the term intermediary encompasses a broad range of situations in which an entity acts between two or more other parties, in this usage, it refers to situations in which a recipient entity acts as a facilitator for the transfer of assets between a potential donor and a potential beneficiary (donee) but is neither an agent or trustee nor a donee and donor.

**legal entity.** Any legal structure used to conduct activities or to hold assets. Some examples of such structures are corporations, partnerships, limited liability companies, grantor trusts, and other trusts.

**maintenance costs.** Costs associated with maintaining records relating to insurance contracts and with the processing of premium collections and commissions [(further industry-specific information is provided in the following list of terms)].

**management and general activities.** Activities that are not identifiable with a single program, fundraising activity, or membership-development activity but that are indispensable to the conduct of those activities and to an entity's existence.

**membership development activities.** Membership development activities include soliciting for prospective members and membership dues, membership relations, and similar activities. However, if there are no significant benefits or duties connected with membership, the substance of membership development activities may, in fact, be fundraising.

**merger date.** The date on which the merger becomes effective.

**merger of not-for-profit entities.** A transaction or other event in which the governing bodies of two or more not-for-profit entities (NFPS) cede control of those entities to create a new NFP.

**natural expense classification.** A method of grouping expenses according to the kinds of economic benefits received in incurring those expenses. Examples of natural expense classifications include salaries and wages, employee benefits, supplies, rent, and utilities.

**net assets.** The excess or deficiency of assets over liabilities of a not-for-profit entity, which is classified into three mutually exclusive classes according to the existence of absence of donor-imposed restrictions. See also unrestricted net assets, temporarily restricted net assets, and permanently restricted net assets.

**nonfinancial assets.** An asset that is not a financial asset. Nonfinancial assets include land, buildings, use of facilities or utilities, materials and supplies, intangible assets, or services.

**nonprofit activity.** An integrated set of activities and assets that is capable of being conducted and managed for the purpose of providing benefits, other than goods or services at a profit or profit equivalent, as a fulfillment of an entity's purpose or mission (for example, goods or services to beneficiaries, customers, or members). As with a not-for-profit entity, a nonprofit activity possesses characteristics that distinguish it from a business or a for-profit business entity.

**not-for-profit entity.** An entity that possesses the following characteristics, in varying degrees, that distinguish it from a business entity:
a. Contributions of significant amounts of resources from resource providers who do not expect commensurate or proportionate pecuniary return

b. Operating purposes other than to provide goods or services at a profit

c. Absence of ownership interests like those of business entities

Entities that clearly fall outside this definition include the following:

a. All investor-owned enterprises

b. Entities that provide dividends, lower costs, or other economic benefits directly and proportionately to their owners, members, or participants, such as mutual insurance entities, credit unions, farm and rural electric cooperatives, and employee benefit plans

**Performance Indicator.** A performance indicator reports results of operations. A performance indicator and the income from continuing operations reported by for-profit health care entities generally are consistent, except for transactions that clearly are not applicable to one kind of entity (for example, for-profit health care entities typically would not receive contributions, and not-for-profit health care entities would not award stock compensation). That is, a performance indicator is analogous to income from continuing operations of a for-profit entity.

**Permanently Restricted Net Assets.** The part of the net assets of a not-for-profit entity (NFP) resulting from the following:

a. Contributions and other inflows of assets whose use by the NFP is limited by donor-imposed stipulations that neither expire by the passage of time nor can be fulfilled or otherwise removed by the actions of the NFP.

b. Other asset enhancements and diminishments subject to the same kinds of stipulations.

c. Reclassification from or to other classes of net assets as a consequence of donor-imposed stipulations.

**Permanent Restriction.** A donor-imposed restriction that stipulates that resources be maintained permanently but permits the not-for-profit entity to use up or expend part or all of the income or other economic benefits derived from the donated assets.

**Prepaid Health Care Plan.** A plan in which the provider is compensated in advance by the sponsoring entity. The sponsoring entity pays or compensates the provider based on either a fixed sum or a per-enrollee amount. Prepaid health care plans include health maintenance organizations, preferred provider organizations, eye care plans, dental care plans, and similar plans. Under such plans, the financial risk of delivering the health care is transferred to the provider of services.

**Prepaid Health Care Services.** Any form of health care service provided to a member in exchange for a scheduled payment (or payments) established before care is provided, regardless of the level of service subsequently provided.

**Prepaid Health Care Services Providers.** Entities that provide or arrange for the delivery of health care services in accordance with the terms and provisions of a prepaid health care plan. Providers assume the financial
risk of the cost of delivering health care services in excess of preestablished fixed premiums. However, some or all of the financial risk may be contractually transferred to other providers (affiliated entities) or by purchasing stop-loss insurance. Other providers of prepaid health care services may include comprehensive medical plans, physicians groups (for example, independent practice associations), and hospitals.

**program services.** The activities that result in goods and services being distributed to beneficiaries, customers, or members that fulfill the purposes or mission for which the not-for-profit entity (NFP) exists. Those services are the major purpose for and the major output of the NFP and often relate to several major programs.

**prospective rate setting.** Prospective rate setting is a method used to set payment rates in advance of the delivery of health care services. Such payment rates determine what third parties will pay for health care services during the rate period (generally one year). Prospective rate setting may result from a contractual agreement with a third party, such as a Blue Cross plan, or it may be mandated through legislation. The intent of prospective rate setting is to establish payment rates before the period to which they will apply and that are not subject to change.

**public business entity.** A public business entity is a business entity meeting any one of the criteria below. Neither a not-for-profit entity nor an employee benefit plan is a business entity.

a. It is required by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) to file or furnish financial statements, or does file or furnish financial statements (including voluntary filers), with the SEC (including other entities whose financial statements or financial information are required to be or are included in a filing).

b. It is required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (the Act), as amended, or rules or regulations promulgated under the Act, to file or furnish financial statements with a regulatory agency other than the SEC.

c. It is required to file or furnish financial statements with a foreign or domestic regulatory agency in preparation for the sale of or for purposes of issuing securities that are not subject to contractual restrictions on transfer.

d. It has issued, or is a conduit bond obligor for, securities that are traded, listed, or quoted on an exchange or an over-the-counter market.

e. It has one or more securities that are not subject to contractual restrictions on transfer, and it is required by law, contract, or regulation to prepare U.S. GAAP financial statements (including footnotes) and make them publicly available on a periodic basis (for example, interim or annual periods). An entity must meet both of these conditions to meet this criterion.

An entity may meet the definition of a public business entity solely because its financial statements or financial information is included in another entity's filing with the SEC. In that case, the entity is only a public business entity for purposes of financial statements that are filed or furnished with the SEC.
reinsurance. A transaction in which a reinsurer (assuming entity), for a consideration (premium), assumes all or part of a risk undertaken originally by another insurer (ceding entity). For indemnity reinsurance, the legal rights of the insured are not affected by the reinsurance transaction and the insurance entity issuing the insurance contract remains liable to the insured for payment of policy benefits. Assumption or novation reinsurance contracts that are legal replacements of one insurer by another extinguish the ceding entity's liability to the policyholder [(further industry-specific information is provided in the following list of terms)].

retrospective rate setting. Under retrospective rate setting, third parties usually determine an interim payment rate and, during the rate period (generally one year), pay the health care entity for services rendered using that rate. After the rate period has ended, a final settlement is made in accordance with federal or state regulations or contractual agreements. Under a retrospective system, an entity may be entitled to receive additional payments or may be required to refund amounts received in excess of amounts earned under the system. Although final settlements are not made until a subsequent period, they are usually subject to reasonable estimations and are reported in the financial statements in the period in which services are rendered.

stop-loss insurance. A contract in which an entity agrees to indemnify providers for certain health care costs incurred by members.

tail coverage. Insurance designed to cover malpractice claims incurred before, but reported after, cancellation or expiration of a claims-made insurance policy.

temporarily restricted net assets. The part of the net assets of a not-for-profit entity (NFP) resulting from the following:

a. Contributions and other inflows of assets whose use by the NFP is limited by donor-imposed stipulations that either expire by passage of time or can be fulfilled and removed by actions of the NFP pursuant to those stipulations

b. Other asset enhancements and diminishments subject to the same kinds of stipulations

c. Reclassification from or to other classes of net assets as a consequence of donor-imposed stipulations, their expiration by passage of time, or their fulfillment and removal by actions of the NFP pursuant to those stipulations

trading securities. Securities that are bought and held principally for the purpose of selling them in the near term and therefore held for only a short period of time. Trading generally reflects active and frequent buying and selling, and trading securities are generally used with the objective of generating profits on short-term differences in price.

trustee. An entity that has a duty to hold and manage assets for the benefit of a specified beneficiary in accordance with a charitable trust agreement. In some states, not-for-profit entities (NFPs) are organized under trust law rather than as corporations. Those NFPs are not trustees as defined because, under those statutes, they hold assets in trust for the community or some other broadly described group, rather than for a specific beneficiary.
unrestricted net assets. The part of net assets of a not-for-profit entity (NFP) that is neither permanently restricted nor temporarily restricted by donor-imposed stipulations. The only limits on the use of unrestricted net assets are the broad limits resulting from the following:

a. The nature of the NFP
b. The environment in which the NFP operates
c. The purposes specified in the NFP’s articles of incorporation or bylaws
d. Limits resulting from contractual agreements with suppliers, creditors, and others entered into by the NFP in the course of its business

Unrestricted net assets generally result from revenues from providing services, producing and delivering goods, receiving unrestricted contributions, and receiving dividends or interest from investing in income-producing assets, less expenses incurred in providing services, producing and delivering goods, raising contributions, and performing administrative functions.

variable interest entity. A legal entity subject to consolidation according to the provisions of the "Variable Interest Entities" subsections of FASB ASC 810-10.

voluntary health and welfare entity. A not-for-profit entity (NFP) that is formed for the purpose of performing voluntary services for various segments of society and that is tax exempt (organized for the benefit of the public), supported by the public, and operated on a not-for-profit basis. Most voluntary health and welfare entities concentrate their efforts and expend their resources in an attempt to solve health and welfare problems of society and, in many cases, those of specific individuals. As a group, voluntary health and welfare entities include those NFPs that derive their revenue primarily from voluntary contributions from the general public to be used for general or specific purposes connected with health, welfare, or community services. For purposes of this definition, the general public excludes government entities when determining whether an NFP is a voluntary health and welfare entity.

The following is a list of additional terms that have been used in this guide and further information on select terms defined in the FASB ASC glossary:

acquisition costs. Marketing costs that are (a) directly related to the acquisition of specific subscriber contracts and member enrollment and (b) incremental to general marketing activities.

acute care. Inpatient general routine care provided to patients who are in a phase of illness that does not require the concentrated and continuous observation and treatment provided in intensive-care units.

administrative services only (ASO). A contract between a third-party company and self-funded plan in which the third-party company performs administrative services only and does not assume any risks. The employer is at risk for the cost of provided health care services. Services normally include claims processing but may include other services, such as actuarial analysis, utilization review, data reporting, and stop-loss coverage. This is a common arrangement when an employer sponsors a self-funded health care program.
advance fee. A payment required to be made by a continuing care retirement community (CCRC) resident prior to, or at the time of, admission to the CCRC for future services and the use of facilities specified in a contract that remains in effect for as long as the resident resides in the CCRC.

allocated loss adjustment expense. Claim expense that can be assigned to individual claims (for example, attorney's fees, claim adjusting service fees, or court costs).

allowable costs. Costs that are allowable under the principles of reimbursement of Medicare and Medicaid or contractual agreements with their payors, such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield.

allowance. The difference between gross patient service revenues charged at established rates for services rendered and amounts received or to be received from patients or third-party payors. Allowances are to be distinguished from uncollectible losses. The types of allowances are as follows:

- Charity allowances. The difference between charges at established rates and amounts received from indigent patients, voluntary agencies, or governmental units on behalf of specific indigent patients. Charity allowances are subtracted from gross charges to compute gross patient service revenue.

- Contractual allowances. The difference between charges at established rates and amounts received from third-party payors under contractual agreement. Contractual allowances are subtracted from gross patient service revenue to compute net patient service revenue.

- Courtesy allowances. The difference between charges at established rates and amounts received from doctors, clergymen, employees, and employees' dependents. Also called policy discounts. Courtesy allowances are subtracted from gross patient service revenue to compute net patient service revenue.

ambulatory care. Provision of health care services to outpatients and other patients who do not require admission to the hospital as inpatients. Any type of medical care provided to a patient who is not hospitalized.

ambulatory care organization. A partnership, association, corporation, or other legal entity organized to deliver health care services to patients that come or are brought to a health care facility for a purpose other than admission as an inpatient (for example, emergency room services, clinic services, or outpatient surgery).

ambulatory payment classifications (APC). The Medicare reimbursement mechanism that sets the prospectively established rate for outpatient reimbursement, which is similar to the diagnosis-related group (DRG) system that is used for inpatient reimbursement. APCs are based upon procedure versus diagnosis (as is used for DRGs) or encounter.

ancillary services. Services performed for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes. Ancillary services generally are those special services for which charges in addition to routine charges customarily are made (for example, laboratory, radiology, surgical, or other services).
**anticipated revenues.** Amounts including third-party payments (for example, those from Blue Cross and Blue Shield); contractually- or statutorily-committed investment income from sources related to the activities of a continuing care retirement community (CCRC); contributions pledged by donors to support CCRC activities; periodic fees expected to be collected; or the balance of deferred nonrefundable advance fees.

**asserted claim.** A claim made against a health care entity by or on behalf of a patient alleging improper professional service.

**assets limited as to use.** Assets that are segregated and limited regarding how the assets may be used either by the board or management (for example, designated for expenditure in the acquisition of property and equipment or for the liquidation of long-term debt) or by outside third parties other than a donor or grantor (for example, funds under bond agreements or malpractice arrangements).

**associated entity.** An individual practice association, hospital, medical group, or similar health care entity that contracts with a prepaid health care provider to provide health care services.

**bad-debt expense.** The current period charge for actual or expected doubtful accounts resulting from the extension of credit.

**benchmark.** The process of comparing an entity's operations and financial data with that of other entities, particularly comparing one entity with the entity considered the best in the industry. Quantitative benchmarks are used to establish performance objectives. Among physicians, it is often the standard for quality medical care and can be applied to any condition or procedure.

**best-efforts remarketing agreement.** A financing agreement in which the agent agrees to buy only those securities that it is able to sell to others; if the agent is unable to remarket the debt, the issuer is obligated to pay off the debt.

**board-designated funds.** Unrestricted resources set aside by the governing board for specific purposes or projects or for investment to produce income as if they were endowment funds.

**capitation arrangement.** An arrangement in which certain medical and other defined health care services are provided by third-party health care providers to a specified population under contractual arrangement with payors. In a capitation arrangement, the primary entity retains responsibility for the quality and performance of the provided services.

**case mix.** Grouping of patients possessing similar clinical attributes and output utilization patterns, primarily for purposes of cost accounting and reimbursement. The classifications or categories of patients treated by a hospital. Case mix directly influences the length of stays and intensity, cost, and scope of services provided by a hospital. Also defined as a weighting of a patient's acuity in which the average acuity is one.

**census, average daily.** The average number of inpatients, excluding newborns, in the hospital or facility each day for a given period of time. Average daily census for any classification is computed by taking the total number of patient days of care for that classification throughout the period and dividing those days by the total number of days in that period.
Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services (CMS). The federal agency responsible for Medicare and Medicaid programs.

**Claim adjustment expenses.** Claim adjustment expenses include any legal fees and the costs of paying claims and all related expenses (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

**Claims-made insurance policy.** A policy that covers only malpractice claims reported to the insurance carrier during the policy term, regardless of the date of the incident giving rise to the claim.

**Clinic.** A freestanding facility or part of another health care entity used for diagnosis and treatment of outpatients.

**Coinsurance.** A percentage that the insured member pays after the plan's deductible is exceeded and until the policy's stop-loss provision is reached. Sometimes used synonymously with copayment, but a **copayment** is a flat fee. See also **copayment**.

**Commercial paper.** Short-term, unsecured promissory notes that represent a flexible and low-cost form of short-term financing. Taxable commercial paper is sold on a discount basis, rather than an interest-bearing basis, with the discount determined by the maturity of the notes, the creditworthiness of the issuer or its credit support, and general market demand. The primary risk is the variable interest rate exposure. Issuance often requires some form of credit enhancement or liquidity support.

**Community rating.** The rating methodology required of federally-qualified health maintenance organizations (HMOs); HMOs under the laws of many states; and, occasionally, indemnity plans under certain circumstances. The HMO must obtain the same amount of money per member for all members in the plan. Community rating does allow for variability by allowing the HMO to factor in differences for age, sex, mix (average contract size), and industry factors; however, not all factors are necessarily allowed under state laws.

**Component unit.** Component units are legally separate organizations for which the elected officials of the primary government are financially accountable. In addition, component units can be other organizations for which the nature and significance of their relationship with a primary government are such that exclusion would cause the reporting entity’s financial statements to be misleading or incomplete. A component unit may be a governmental organization, except those that meet the definition of a **primary government**, **nonprofit corporation**, or **for-profit corporation**.

**Conduit financing.** A financing arrangement involving a government or other qualified agency using its name in an issuance of fixed income securities, generally for financing a not-for-profit entity’s capital project. See also **conduit debt securities** in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary.

**Continuing-care contract.** An agreement between a resident and continuing care retirement community (CCRC) specifying the services and facilities to be provided by the CCRC to a resident over an established period of time, usually the remaining life of the resident.

**Continuing care retirement community (CCRC).** A legal entity sponsoring or guaranteeing residential facilities, meals, and health care services for a
community of retired persons who may reside in apartments; other living units; or, in some cases, a nursing center. Also called a residential care facility or life-care retirement community.

**contract period.** The period (typically one year) for which premium rates are fixed by contract.

**contractual adjustments.** The differences between revenue at established rates and the amounts realizable from third-party payors under contractual agreements.

**copayment.** That portion of a claim or medical expense that a member must pay out of pocket. Typical copayments are fixed or variable flat amounts for physician office visits, prescriptions, or hospital services. Sometimes used synonymously with coinsurance, but **coinsurance** is a percentage payment. See also **coinsurance**.

**cost-plus.** A third-party administrator contract in which the employer pays the administrator a fee based on paid claims, such as a percentage of paid claims. The administrator funds the payment of claims and, therefore, is liable for unpaid claims if the employer is unable to pay the claims.

**costs of acquiring initial continuing-care contracts.** Costs incurred to originate a contract that result from, and are essential to, the acquisition of the initial contracts and are incurred through the date of substantial occupancy but no later than one year from the date of completion of construction. These costs include the following:

- The costs of processing the contract, such as evaluating the prospective resident's financial condition; evaluating and recording guarantees, collateral, and other security arrangements; negotiating contract terms; preparing and processing contract documents; and closing the transaction
- The costs from activities in connection with soliciting potential initial residents, such as model units and their furnishings, sales brochures, semipermanent signs, tours, grand openings, and sales salaries. These costs do not include advertising, interest, administrative costs, rent, depreciation, or any other occupancy or equipment costs
- The portion of an employee's compensation and benefits that relates to the initial contract acquisitions

**courtesy and policy discounts.** The differences between revenue recorded at established rates and amounts realizable for services provided to specific individuals, such as employees, medical staff, and clergy. See also **allowance**.

**covered charges.** The charges incurred by a patient that are covered under the contractual agreements with third-party payors.

**common procedural terminology (CPT) coding.** A coding structure used to code surgical procedures for statistical analysis and billing purposes. CPT coding was copyrighted by the American Medical Association, and the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services mandates the use of these codes for Medicare billing.

**credibility.** A measure of the statistical significance of a provider's own data, dependent on its stability and volume in relation to the stability and
Health Care Entities

volume of the industry data. Actuaries use credibility to blend an estimate from a provider’s own experience with a broader estimate based on the experience of similar institutions. A provider’s own experience may be assigned a credibility weight less than 100 percent due to year-to-year volatility. Such volatility is often a function of the size of the provider. Large providers generally have less volatility than small providers. In such an instance, a broader and more stable body of experience of similar providers would be used to supplement the specific provider’s experience.

credit enhancement. Typically, a bank letter of credit that guarantees investors will receive principal and interest in the event of an issuer default. A line of credit provides liquidity support to an issuer but does not provide a guarantee of the repayment of principal and interest in the event of issuer default. The liquidity support provides a loan to issuers in the event that the issuer is unable to place large amounts of maturing commercial paper with investors.

crossover refunding. A type of advance refunding in which the old debt is not immediately replaced. The proceeds from the new debt; additional cash deposits, if any; and the income earned on the related investments are sufficient to pay the principal and any call premium of the old debt and interest on the new debt until the date of crossover. Until the crossover, the proceeds from the new debt serve as collateral for that debt. The old debt is serviced by the entity until the date of crossover, at which time the proceeds from the new debt are used to retire the old debt, and the entity becomes obligated to service the new debt. The old debt remains as a liability on the issuer’s books until the crossover, when it is called in accordance with the call provisions of its indenture. Also called a delayed defeasance.

debt reserve funds. The amount of funds or cash that needs to be set aside to fund debt repayment.

deductible. The portion of a member’s health care expenses that must be paid out of pocket before any insurance coverage applies. Deductibles are common in indemnity insurance plans and preferred provider organizations, or PPOs, but uncommon in health maintenance organizations, or (HMOs).

defeasance. Legal satisfaction of refunded debt without the debt necessarily being retired.

diagnosis-related group (DRG). A statistical system of classifying any inpatient stay into groups for purposes of payment. DRGs may be primary or secondary, and an outlier classification also exists. This is the form of reimbursement that the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services uses to pay hospitals for Medicare recipients. Also used by a few states for all payors and by some private health plans for contracting purposes (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

donated services. Services of personnel who receive no monetary compensation or partial compensation. The term is usually applied to services rendered by members of religious orders, societies, or similar groups to institutions operated by, or affiliated with, such institutions.

durable medical equipment (DME). Medical equipment that is not disposable (that is, used repeatedly) and is only related to care for a medical
condition. Examples would include wheelchairs and home hospital beds. An area of increasing expense, particularly in conjunction with case management.

**Emergency Medical Treatment and Labor Act (EMTALA).** A federal law governing assessment and transfer of patients seeking emergency care. Sometimes called Emergency Medical Treatment and Active Labor Act.

**enrollee.** An individual who is a subscriber or an eligible dependent of a subscriber in a prepaid health care plan.

**enterprise fund.** In governmental accounting, an enterprise fund may be used to report any activity for which a fee is charged to external users for goods or services. An enterprise fund is a proprietary fund that is generally used to account for governmental activities that are similar to activities that may be performed by a commercial enterprise.

**estimated costs of future services.** Amounts that are expected to be incurred to provide services and the use of facilities to individuals over their remaining lives under continuing-care contracts. Examples include resident care, dietary, health care, facility, general and administrative, interest, depreciation, and amortization costs.

**excess levels.** The level of insurance coverage that applies to that portion of a loss or damage that exceeds a specified amount.

**exposure.** The amount of potential claim risk. The basis for reflecting differences in the claim potential among providers' bases for charging insurance premiums or allocating member contributions to a captive. Exposure bases for hospital professional liability include the number of occupied beds, outpatient visits, emergency room visits, and the number of residents by specialty.

**Federal Employee Health Benefits Program.** The program that provides health benefits to federal employees.

**fee-for-service system.** The traditional health care payment system under which providers receive a fee for each delivered service. Under the fee-for-service system, the total bill will increase not only if the fees increase but also if more units of service are rendered.

**fee schedule.** A comprehensive listing of fee maximums used to reimburse a provider on a fee-for-service basis. May also be referred to as fee maximums or a fee allowance schedule. A listing of the maximum fee that a health plan will pay for a certain service based on common procedural terminology billing codes.

**final settlement.** The ultimate liability of the health care entity to the third-party payor or the amount due to the health care entity from the payor as a result of determining the final total allowable cost for the reporting period and comparing that number with the amount that has been received from the payor for the reporting period.

**floating rate note (FRN).** A debt instrument that allows issuers to borrow at a floating short-term rate with a long-term stated maturity without some of the risks traditionally associated with commercial paper. The investor is subject to principal risk to the degree that the issuer's credit deteriorates or investor demand for FRNs decreases. Most health care issuers of FRNs
Health Care Entities

require credit enhancement and a bank liquidity facility in conjunction with an FRN program.

full medical risk. The risk from uncertainties about the frequency, severity, and health care costs of rendered medical services.

fund. A self-contained accounting entity set up to account for a specific activity or project.

gross charges. The total charges at established rates for services rendered to a patient.

gross service revenues. Gross charges less charity allowances (charity care at established rates).

health care costs. For managed care services, health care costs include costs incurred to provide benefits to members under risk arrangements, such as costs of capitation, wellness, network management, utilization management, quality assurance, and other health care services. Health care costs generally exclude general and administrative, selling, maintenance, marketing, and interest costs.

health care services. Services provided to individuals related to the diagnosis or treatment of physical or mental illness.

Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) of 1996. Enacted by the federal government to improve patient security and confidentiality and also to standardize the formatting of electronic transactions.

home care. This level of care involves visits by health care workers to the home of the patient.

home health agency. An agency organized to provide health and supportive services in a person's home. These services may include nursing; nutritional; and therapeutic aid, such as physical therapy and dialysis, and the rental, as well as sale, of medical equipment.

hospital. A health care institution with an organized medical and professional staff and permanent facilities that include inpatient beds and provide medical, nursing, and other health-related services to patients (each state has its own definition of hospital for accreditation purposes).

incremental costs. Costs that vary with, and are directly attributable to, changes in business, such as an additional employer or health maintenance organization, or HMO, contract. Fixed costs, such as building depreciation or general overhead, that do not change with the addition or loss of a contract are not incremental costs.

incurred but not reported (IBNR). Costs associated with health care services incurred during a financial reporting period but not reported to the health care entity until after the financial reporting date. IBNR is also defined as potential claims for incidents associated with professional service that have occurred but have not yet been reported to the health care entity (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

indenture. An agreement between two or more persons specifying the reciprocal rights and duties of the parties under a contract, such as a lease, mortgage, or contract between bondholders and the issuer of the bond.
individual practice association (IPA). A partnership, association, corporation, or other legal entity organized to provide or arrange for the delivery of health care services to members of a prepaid health care plan and non-member patients. In return, the IPA receives either a capitation fee or specified fee for rendered services.

inpatient. Under most circumstances, a patient who is provided with room, board, and general nursing service and is expected to remain in the health care facility at least overnight and occupy a bed.

in-substance defeasance. A form of advance refunding in which the debtor places into an irrevocable trust an amount of assets estimated to be sufficient to satisfy all future principal and interest payments of a specific obligation. In such cases, the debtor is not legally released from being the primary obligor (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

integrated delivery system. A provider or group of providers that is organized to deliver and finance acute and preventive health care services. An integrated delivery system generally will provide or arrange to provide a complete continuum of health care services (for example, inpatient acute care; ambulatory care; outpatient surgery; and home health care, including long-term care) to an enrolled population, generally for fixed, prepaid fees called premiums.

interest rate swaps. An agreement to exchange interest payments without actually exchanging the underlying principal. The two parties each agree to make interest payments based on the calculation formula for the other's debt. Swaps can be used for a variety of purposes, such as to reduce the overall cost of borrowing, lock in forward rates, reduce interest rate risk, or adjust the ratio of variable- and fixed-rate debt liabilities. Interest rate swaps do not change the amount or type of outstanding debt, but they do affect the issuer's debt portfolio and risk profile.

intermediate care facility (ICF). A facility that provides care to individuals whose mental or physical conditions require services that are above the level of room and board and that can be made available only through institutional facilities. The care provided at an ICF does not require hospitals or skilled nursing facilities. See also nursing center.

lag analysis. A report that tells managers the age of the claims that are being processed and the amount paid out each month (both for that month and any earlier months) and that compares those numbers with the amount of money that was accrued for expenses each month. A powerful tool used to determine whether the plan's reserves are adequate to meet all expenses. Plans that fail to properly perform lag studies may find themselves staring into the abyss.

length of stay (LOS). Number of calendar days that elapse between an inpatient's admission and discharge.

length of stay (average). A statistical measure of patient turnover determined by dividing the total number of patient days of care in a given period of time by the total number of inpatients who were discharged during that period.
London Interbank Offered Rate (LIBOR). A daily reference rate based on the interest rates at which banks offer to lend unsecured funds to other banks in the London wholesale money market.

long-term care. Provision of health, social, or personal care services on a recurring or continuous basis to persons with chronic physical or mental conditions who live in environments ranging from institutions to their own homes. This level of care is also called custodial care.

maintenance costs. Costs associated with maintaining enrollment records and processing premium collections and payments (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

managed care. A system of providing health care services to enrolled members in a plan through a defined network of health care providers who are given the responsibility to provide quality medical care while controlling the utilization of resources, use of expensive technologies, and access to specialists. Managed care can include a spectrum of systems, ranging from managed indemnity to preferred provider organizations, or, point of service, and open- and closed-panel health maintenance organizations, or HMOs.

managed care entities. A generic term applied to a managed care plan. These plans usually integrate the financing and delivery of health care services to an enrolled population. Managed care organizations contract with an organized provider network that either shares financial risks or has some incentive to deliver quality, cost-effective services. Also called managed care organizations.

mandatory tender. The requirement that a holder of a security surrender the security to the issuer or its agent (for example, a tender agent) for purchase. The tender date may be established under the bond contract or specified by the issuer upon the occurrence of an event specified in the bond contract. The purchase price typically is at par. Also called a mandatory put.

margin for risk of adverse deviation. Actuarially-determined estimate of the additional funding requirement to obtain a specific confidence level that losses will not exceed the amount paid into the self-insurance fund. Margins are determined using statistical simulation techniques.

Medicaid. Federal program created by Title XIX, “Medical Assistance,” of the 1965 amendment to the Social Security Act of 1935 that provides health care benefits to indigent and medically-indigent persons (called Medi-Cal in California). Funded by the federal and state governments and administered by the states.

medical group. An association of physicians and other licensed health care professionals organized on a group basis to practice medicine.

Medicare. Federal program created by Title XVIII, "Health Insurance for the Aged," of the 1965 amendment to the Social Security Act of 1935 that provides health insurance benefits primarily to persons over the age of 65 and others eligible for Social Security benefits.

Medicare Administrative Contractors (MAC). A term used to describe those entities that are agents of the government in the application and
provision of Medicare services. Previously referred to as a Medicare fiscal intermediary.

**Medicare Part A.** The portion of the Medicare program applicable to the reimbursement of inpatient hospital stays, critical access hospital services, certain care in a skilled nursing facility, hospice care, and some home health care.

**Medicare Part B.** The portion of the Medicare program applicable to the reimbursement of physician services, outpatient hospital care, durable medical equipment, and some medical services that are not covered by Medicare Part A.

**Medicare Part C.** The portion of the Medicare program created under the Balanced Budget Act of 1997 that includes the Medicare Advantage plans (formerly called Medicare+Choice) through which beneficiaries can enroll in additional types of health plans, including managed care plans.

**Medicare Part D.** The portion of the Medicare program created under the Medicare Modernization Act of 2003 featuring a voluntary outpatient prescription drug benefit, along with an interim prescription drug discount card and transitional assistance programs.

**medium-term notes.** An intermediate-term security offered on a continuous basis providing flexibility for an issuer to vary the amount of outstanding notes as its funding requirements change. The broad range of possible maturities enables an issuer to borrow at the most attractive yield at the time of each issuance. They can be issued domestically or abroad.

**member.** An individual who is enrolled as a subscriber or an eligible dependent of a subscriber in a prepaid health care plan.

**minimum premium contract.** A third-party administrator contract in which the administrator provides stop-loss insurance. A minimum fee is paid by an obligated entity, such as an employer, to a third-party administrator, such as an insurance company, in exchange for the third party administering the payment of claims up to a specified amount. Typically, the obligated entity is responsible for claims up to a certain limit, such as a percentage of total claims or specified amount, and uses the third party to pay the claims on its behalf, usually out of an employer-owned bank account. However, the third-party administrator is responsible for all payments above the predetermined limit.

**multiprovider captive.** An insurance entity owned by two or more health care entities that underwrites malpractice insurance for its owners.

**Municipal Swap Index.** The Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association Municipal Swap Index, which is a commonly used underlying for interest rate swaps that are used as hedges of interest rate risk associated with variable-rate tax-exempt debt. Also called the SIFMA Index.

**net advance refunding.** A type of advance refunding in which the proceeds from the new debt; additional cash deposits, if any; and the income earned on the related investments are sufficient to pay the interest, principal, and call premium on the old debt. After the advance refunding, the old debt is serviced by the investments in trust, and the new debt is serviced by the entity.
net service revenue. Gross service revenue less provisions for contractual adjustments with third-party payors, courtesy and policy discounts, or other adjustments and deductions, excluding charity care.

nonexchange transaction. As used in governmental financial accounting standards, an external transaction in which a government gives or receives value without directly receiving or giving equal value in exchange.

nursing center. A facility that provides nursing care to residents with a variety of needs or medical conditions. A nursing center may be a component of a continuing care retirement community. Also called a health center, skilled-nursing facility, intermediate-care facility, continuing-care facility, or basic-care home.

nursing home. Institution with an organized professional staff and permanent facilities, including inpatient beds, that provides continuous nursing and other health-related, psycho-social, and personal services to patients who are not in an acute phase of illness but who primarily require continued care on an inpatient basis.

occurrence-basis policy. A policy that covers claims resulting from incidents that occur during the policy term, regardless of when the claims are reported to the insurance carrier.

official statement (OS). The common term used for the offering document or offering circular prepared in connection with a new issue of municipal securities. Although functionally equivalent to the prospectus used in connection with registered securities, an official statement for municipal securities is exempt from the prospectus requirements of the Securities Act of 1933.

outliers. In referring to the Medicare Prospective Payment System, additional payments that are made for cases that have either unusually long lengths of stay or charges in excess of the cost outlier threshold.

outpatient. A patient who is not confined overnight in a health care institution. An ambulatory patient who visits the hospital for services but is not admitted to a hospital bed.

patient day. A common statistical measurement of hospital and inpatient activity. It represents one patient in the hospital or other facility overnight when the official patient census is taken. Many hospitals and providers follow the procedure of charging patients for fractional parts of a day or the day of discharge if the patient leaves after a particular hour referred to as the check-out time.

per diem reimbursement. Reimbursement of a health care entity based on a set rate per day, rather than charges. Per diem reimbursement can be varied by service (for example, medical or surgical, obstetrics, mental health, and intensive care) or uniform regardless of intensity of services.

periodic fees. Amounts paid to a continuing care retirement community by a resident at periodic intervals for continuing-care services. Such fees may be fixed or adjustable. Also called maintenance fees or monthly fees.

preferred provider organization (PPO). A plan that contracts with independent providers at a discount for services. The panel is limited in size and usually has some type of utilization review system associated with it. A
PPO may be risk bearing, such as an insurance company, or nonrisk bearing, such as a physician-sponsored PPO that markets itself to insurance companies or self-insured companies via an access fee.

**premium.** The consideration paid for providing contract coverage. Also called a subscriber fee.

**premium period.** The period to which a premium payment applies (generally one month) that entitles a member to health care services according to the contract provisions.

**prevailing charge.** A charge that falls within the range of charges most frequently used in a locality for a particular service or procedure.

**primary care.** Care that is rendered in an ambulatory fashion, such as in an emergency room, outpatient clinic, or other outpatient department.

**primary government.** The foundation of a primary government is a separately elected governing body that is elected by the citizens in a general, popular election. As the nucleus of the financial reporting entity, the primary government generally is the focal point for the users of the financial statements. A primary government is any state government or general-purpose local government, municipality, or county. A primary government is also a special-purpose government (for example, a hospital district) that meets all of the following criteria:

- It has a separately elected governing body.
- It is legally separate.
- It is fiscally independent of other state and local governments.

**prospective payment system (PPS).** Medicare payment made at a pre-determined, specific rate for each Medicare discharge, based on the patient's diagnosis. Each discharge is classified according to a series of diagnosis-related groups. Prospective rate setting is used to set provider rates under a PPS. See also **diagnosis-related group.**

**protected health information (PHI).** As defined by the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 regulations, health information that is created or received by a health care provider and relates to the past, present, or future physical or mental health or condition of an individual.

**provider.** A person or entity that undertakes to provide health care services.

**rate setting.** Process of establishing rates for providers of health care services by taking into account the financial needs of the provider. See also **prospective rate setting** and **retrospective rate setting** (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

**refundable advance fees.** The portion of an advance fee that is payable to a resident of a continuing care retirement community or the resident's estate.

**refunded debt.** Debt for which payment at a specified future date has been provided by the issuance of refunding debt.

**refunding debt.** Debt issued to provide funds to pay for refunded debt at a specified future date.
rehabilitation facility. Facility that provides medical, health-related, social, or vocational services to disabled persons to help them attain their maximum functional capacity.

reimbursement, cost-based. Payment by a third-party payor to a hospital of all allowable costs covered by the contract that are incurred by the hospital in the provision of services to patients.

reimbursement, prospective. Method of third-party payment by which costs to be incurred by an institution in providing services to patients are based not on actual costs but estimates made at the beginning of a fiscal period.

reimbursement, retroactive. Additional payment by a third-party payor to an institution for services not identified at the time of initial reimbursement.

reimbursement, retrospective. Method of third-party payment by which costs incurred by a hospital in providing services to covered patients are based on actual costs determined at the end of a fiscal period.

reinsurance. Reinsurance includes insurance purchased by a health plan to protect it against extremely high cost cases. It is a type of protection purchased by health maintenance organizations (HMOs) from insurance companies specializing in underwriting specific risks for a stipulated premium. Typical reinsurance risk coverages are individual stop-loss, aggregate stop-loss, out-of-area, and insolvency protection. As HMOs grow in membership, they usually reduce their reinsurance coverage and related direct costs as they reach a financial position to assume such risks themselves (defined in the FASB ASC glossary, as presented in the first section of this glossary).

resource-based relative value scales (RBRVS). A system to determine how much money medical providers should be paid. It is currently used by Medicare and many health maintenance organizations, or HMOs.

Resource Utilization Group (RUG). A system that categorizes skilled nursing facilities' patients into similar medical diagnoses for purposes of Medicare reimbursement.

retrospectively-rated insurance policy. An insurance policy with a premium that is adjustable based on the experience of the insured health care entity or group of health care entities during the policy term.

risk contract. A contract between a provider of health care services and a prepaid health care plan that exposes the provider to the uncertainty of financial gain or loss by obligating the provider to provide specified health care services to enrollees of the plan for a negotiated price, which may be an amount per case, service, or day. The price may vary based on the volume of services furnished during the contract period.

risk pool. A risk pool accumulates all the monies received from the capitation agreement and all the costs associated with providing patient services. At the end of the period, the excess of capitation payments over claims payments is distributed to the risk pool participants based upon the risk-sharing arrangement. See also capitation arrangement.

secondary care. Care that is rendered to inpatients in hospitals that offer short-term, acute-care services of either a general or specialized nature.
**self-insurance.** That portion of risk or loss assumed by a health care entity when no external insurance coverage exists.

**self-insured obligation.** The obligation for that portion of risk or loss assumed by a health care entity when no external insurance coverage exists.

**self-insured plan or self-funded plan.** A health plan in which the risk for medical cost is assumed by the company, rather than an insurance company or a managed care plan. Under the Employee Income Retirement Security Act of 1974, self-funded plans are exempt from state laws and regulations, such as premium taxes and mandatory benefits. Self-funded plans often contract with insurance companies or third-party administrators to administer the benefits.

**sinking fund.** A sinking fund is a means of repaying debt whereby the issuer makes periodic payments to a trustee who retires part of the issue, often by purchasing bonds on the open market.

**skilled nursing facilities (SNF).** These facilities provide services on a daily, inpatient basis. The services provided by an SNF are ordered by a physician and require the skilled services of technical or professional personnel.

**subbridge.** The person who is responsible for the payment of premiums or whose employment is the basis for eligibility for membership in a prepaid health care plan.

**tender option.** A provision in a bond contract under which the investor has the right to surrender the securities to the issuer or someone acting on the issuer's behalf, such as a tender agent, at the predetermined price (usually par) and on specified dates after the required notification. Also called an optional tender or put option.

**tertiary care.** Care that is rendered in hospitals that possess the personnel, equipment, and expertise to handle complex cases.

**third-party administrator (TPA).** A party unrelated to a plan who contracts to be responsible for plan administration.

**third-party payor.** Any entity, such as Blue Cross and Blue Shield, Medicare, or a commercial insurance entity, that contracts with health care entities and patients to pay for the care of covered patients.

**trust fund.** A fund established with an outside entity to be used for a specific purpose, such as to pay malpractice claims and related expenses as they arise.

**ultimate cost.** Total claims payments, including costs associated with litigating or setting claims.

**unasserted claim.** A medical malpractice claim that has not been formally asserted against a health care provider by, or on behalf of, a patient alleging improper professional service. It may relate to either reported or unreported incidents.

**unrelated business.** An activity that is a trade or business, regularly carried on, and not substantially related to furthering the exempt purpose of the not-for-profit entity. An unrelated business is subject to unrelated business income tax.
unreported incident. An occurrence in which improper professional service may have been administered by a health care provider, which may result in a malpractice claim of which the provider is not yet aware.

utilization (third party). The ratio of hospital services provided to third-party beneficiaries in relation to services provided to all patients of the hospital. This is usually based upon days, charges, or costs.

variable-rate demand notes (VRDN). Issuers may call the notes on any monthly interest payment date, which provides issuers the opportunity to refinance short-term obligations with long-term bonds if market conditions make this alternative attractive.

wholly-owned captive. An insurance entity subsidiary of a health care entity that provides malpractice insurance primarily to its parent entity.
## Index of Pronouncements and Other Technical Guidance

### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Trends and Techniques</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-for-Profit Entities—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure</td>
<td>3.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.S. GAAP Financial Statements—Best Practices in Presentation and Disclosure</td>
<td>3.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Bar Association (ABA) Statement of Policy Regarding Lawyers’ Responses to Auditors’ Requests for Information</td>
<td>8.122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Hospital Association Estimated Useful Lives of Depreciable Hospital Assets</td>
<td>6.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Institute of Certified Public Accountants (AICPA)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice Bulletins</td>
<td>15.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statements of Position</td>
<td>15.05 see also SOP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT Section 201, Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement</td>
<td>7.100, 7.103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU-C Section</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200, Overall Objectives of the Independent Auditor and the Conduct of an Audit in Accordance With Generally Accepted Auditing Standards</td>
<td>2.01–.08, 2.73, 4.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210, Terms of Engagement</td>
<td>2.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240, Consideration of Fraud in a Financial Statement Audit</td>
<td>2.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250, Consideration of Laws and Regulations in an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.54, 2.68–.71, 2.73, 2.76–.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>265, Communicating Internal Control Related Matters Identified in an Audit</td>
<td>2.108–.109, 11.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300, Planning an Audit</td>
<td>2.15, 2.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>315, <em>Understanding the Entity and its Environment and Assessing the Risks of Material Misstatement</em></td>
<td>2.07, 2.18, 2.33, 2.35–.40, 2.43–.45, 2.58, 2.60, 2.65–.66, Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76, 6.46, Exhibit 6-1 at 6.51, Exhibit 7-1 at 7.103, Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127, Exhibit 9-1 at 9.38, Exhibit 10-1 at 10.60, Exhibit 11-2 at 11.62, Exhibit 12-2 at 12.114, Exhibit 14-3 at 14.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320, <em>Materiality in Planning and Performance of an Audit</em></td>
<td>2.25–.27, 2.29–.30, 2.36, 15.158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>330, <em>Performing Audit Procedures in Response to Assessed Risks and Evaluation the Audit Evidence Obtained</em></td>
<td>2.18, 2.59–.60, 2.66, Exhibit 4—1 at 4.76, Exhibit 6-1 at 6.51, Exhibit 7-1 at 7.103, Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127, Exhibit 9-1 at 9.38, 10.59, Exhibit 10-1 at 10.60, 11.60, Exhibit 11-2 at 11.62, Exhibit 12-2 at 12.114, Exhibit 14-3 at 14.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>402, <em>Audit Considerations Relating to an Entity Using a Service Organization</em></td>
<td>2.66, Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450, <em>Evaluation of Misstatements Identified During the Audit</em></td>
<td>2.25, 2.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500, <em>Audit Evidence</em></td>
<td>Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76, Exhibit 6-1 at 6.51, Exhibit 7-1 at 7.103, Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127, Exhibit 9–1 at 9.38, Exhibit 10-1 at 10.60, Exhibit 11-2 at 11.62, Exhibit 12-2 at 12.114, Exhibit 14-3 at 14.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501, <em>Audit Evidence—Specific Considerations for Selected Items</em></td>
<td>4.74, 5.47, 8.115–.116, 8.123–.124, Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>505, <em>External Confirmations</em></td>
<td>11.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>520, Analytical Procedures</td>
<td>2.58–.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>530, Audit Sampling</td>
<td>2.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>540, Auditing Accounting Estimates, Including Fair Value Accounting</td>
<td>2.60, 4.74, 8.112,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disclosures</td>
<td>11.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>550, Related Parties</td>
<td>12.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>570, The Auditor’s Consideration of an Entity's Ability to</td>
<td>2.73, 2.78–.79, 2.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continue As a Going Concern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>580, Written Representations</td>
<td>2.88–.92, 8.114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600, Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.19–.22, 4.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>620, Using the Work of an Auditor's Specialist</td>
<td>Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8.119, 8.120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interpretation No. 1, &quot;The Use of Legal Interpretations As Audit</td>
<td>7.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evidence to Support Management’s Assertion That a Transfer of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Assets Has Met the Isolation Criterion in Paragraphs 7–14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codification 860-10-40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700, Forming an Opinion and Reporting On Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.78, 8.125, 15.161,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15.165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>705, Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor’s</td>
<td>8.116, 15.161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>706, Emphasis-of-Matter Paragraphs and Other-Matter Paragraphs in</td>
<td>15.163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Independent Auditor’s Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720, Other Information in Documents Containing Audited Financial</td>
<td>7.87–.88, 15.01,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statements</td>
<td>15.162, 15.167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>725, Supplementary Information in Relation to the Financial</td>
<td>15.01, 15.162, 15.166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statements As a Whole</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>730, Required Supplementary Information</td>
<td>15.01, 15.159, 15.162–.164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800, Special Considerations—Audits of Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.12, 2.78, 2.104,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepared in Accordance With Special Purpose Frameworks</td>
<td>7.73, 12.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805, Special Considerations—Audits of Single Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.12, 15.165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and Specific Elements, Accounts, or Items of a Financial Statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>806, Reporting On Compliance With Aspects of Contractual Agreements or Regulatory Requirements in Connections With Audited Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>920, Letters for Underwriters and Certain Other Requesting Parties</td>
<td>7.86, 7.98–.102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>925, Filings With the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission Under the Securities Act of 1933</td>
<td>7.92–.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>935, Compliance Audits</td>
<td>2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit and Accounting Guides (AAG)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not-for-Profit Entities</td>
<td>1.08, 11.02, 11.16, 11.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State and Local Governments</td>
<td>15.01–.02, 15.28, 15.37–.38, 15.57, 15.98, 15.123, 15.146, 15.155–.156, 15.158–.162, 15.159, 15.160, 15.161, 15.162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit Guides</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government Auditing Standards and Circular A-133 Audits</td>
<td>2.101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Considerations in Auditing Financial Instruments</td>
<td>4.74, 5.47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CFR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 CFR 74</td>
<td>2.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 CFR 74.26</td>
<td>2.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 CFR 74.26(d)</td>
<td>2.97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AAG-HCO AUD
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FASB ASC</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205, Presentation of Financial Statements</td>
<td>6.23, 6.28, 6.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205-20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210, Balance Sheet</td>
<td>3.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210-10</td>
<td>3.08, 4.65, 7.47, 8.06, 8.36, 10.54, 13.23–.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210-20</td>
<td>8.14, 10.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220, Comprehensive Income</td>
<td>15.25–.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225, Income Statement</td>
<td>7.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225-20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230, Statement of Cash Flows</td>
<td>3.33, 3.36, 4.19, 4.66, 15.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>230-10</td>
<td>3.33–.34, 3.37, 4.42, 4.44, 4.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250, Accounting Changes and Error Corrections</td>
<td>10.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250-10</td>
<td>6.25, 12.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270, Interim Reporting</td>
<td>7.75–.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>270-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275, Risks and Uncertainties</td>
<td>2.60, 8.03, 13.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>275-10</td>
<td>2.60, 8.53, 8.100–.101, 8.104, 8.106, 10.51–.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>280, Segment Reporting</td>
<td>15.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310, Receivables</td>
<td>10.43, 10.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310-10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320, Investments—Debt and Equity Securities</td>
<td>4.24, 4.27, 4.66, 12.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320-10</td>
<td>4.24–.27, 4.49–.58, 4.65–.66, 4.68, 15.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323, Investments—Equity Method and Joint Ventures</td>
<td>12.39, 12.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323-10</td>
<td>4.22, 4.43, 4.45, 4.70, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.19, 12.33–.36, 12.46, 12.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>323-30</td>
<td>12.46, 12.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325, Investments—Other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325-20</td>
<td>4.24, 4.49, 4.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325-40</td>
<td>4.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325-50</td>
<td>4.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340, Other Assets and Deferred Costs</td>
<td>6.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>340-30</td>
<td>8.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350, Intangibles—Goodwill and Other</td>
<td>6.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350-20</td>
<td>6.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350-30</td>
<td>3.19, 6.38–.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350-40</td>
<td>6.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360, Property, Plant and Equipment</td>
<td>6.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>360-10</td>
<td>3.19, 4.15, 6.21, 6.23, 6.25–.28, 6.38, 6.50, 15.48, 15.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405, Liabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405-20</td>
<td>7.14–.15, 7.23, 7.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405-40</td>
<td>8.77–.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410, Asset Retirement and Environmental Obligations</td>
<td>6.18, 8.77, 15.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410-20</td>
<td>6.19, 8.62–.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410-30</td>
<td>6.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420, Exit or Disposal Cost Obligations</td>
<td>15.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420-10</td>
<td>3.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440, Commitments</td>
<td>8.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>440-10</td>
<td>6.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450, Contingencies</td>
<td>2.54, 8.03, 8.20, 8.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>450-20</td>
<td>8.04, 8.15–.16, 8.23, 8.26, 8.48–.49, 15.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>460, Guarantees</td>
<td>2.93, 8.03, 8.56–58, 8.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>460-10</td>
<td>8.56, 15.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470, Debt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470-50</td>
<td>7.14, 7.17, 7.28, 7.31–32, 7.34, 7.36, 7.65, 15.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>470-60</td>
<td>7.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>605, Revenue Recognition</td>
<td>10.01, Update 2-1 at 2.48, Update 13-1 at 13.27, Update 13-2 at 13.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>605-45</td>
<td>12.57, 13.03, 13.26–29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>605-50</td>
<td>6.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710, Compensation—General</td>
<td>8.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>710-10</td>
<td>8.66, 8.70, 8.72, 8.74, 15.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712, Compensation—Nonretirement Postemployment Benefits</td>
<td>8.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>712-10</td>
<td>8.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715, Compensation—Retirement Benefits</td>
<td>3.16, 8.66, 8.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715-10</td>
<td>8.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715-20</td>
<td>8.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715-30</td>
<td>8.70, 8.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715-60</td>
<td>8.70, 8.73, 8.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715-70</td>
<td>8.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>715-80</td>
<td>8.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>718, Compensation—Stock Compensation</td>
<td>8.66, Update 8-1 at 8.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720, Other Expenses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-15</td>
<td>14.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-20</td>
<td>8.08, 8.13, 8.35–36, 8.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-25</td>
<td>6.32, 11.01, 11.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-35</td>
<td>13.22, 14.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-45</td>
<td>6.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720-50</td>
<td>8.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>740, Income Taxes</td>
<td>8.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>740-10</td>
<td>8.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805, Business Combinations</td>
<td>12.89-.90, 12.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805-10</td>
<td>12.98-.100, 12.107, 12.110-.112, 12.111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805-20</td>
<td>12.101-.102, 12.111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805-30</td>
<td>12.111-.112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>805-50</td>
<td>12.75-.76, 12.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>808, Collaborative Arrangements</td>
<td>Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>808-10</td>
<td>12.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>810, Consolidation</td>
<td>12.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>810-10</td>
<td>4.46, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.10-.11, 12.27, 12.29, 12.31-.32, 12.59, 12.61, 12.63-.64, 12.69, 12.71, Update 12-1 at 12.59, Update 12-2 at 12.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>810-15</td>
<td>Update 12-1 at 12.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>810-20</td>
<td>Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.46, 12.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>810-30</td>
<td>Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.32, 12.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815, Derivatives and Hedging</td>
<td>4.04, 4.24, 4.28, 5.05-.07, 5.20, 5.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815-10</td>
<td>5.01-.02, 5.05-.06, 5.08, 5.35, 5.38, 5.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815-15</td>
<td>5.05, 5.31-.35, 5.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815-20</td>
<td>5.09-.10, 5.16-.18, 5.20-.21, 5.23-.26, 5.28, 5.30, Update 5-1 at 5.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815-25</td>
<td>4.26, 5.09, 5.19, 5.28, 5.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Title</strong></td>
<td><strong>Paragraphs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815-30</td>
<td>5.11–.12, 5.19, 5.28, 5.41, 5.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>815-35</td>
<td>5.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>820, <em>Fair Value Measurement</em></td>
<td>4.19, 4.38, 4.48, 11.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>820-10</td>
<td>4.19, 4.37, 4.72, 7.70, 11.22, 12.41–.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>825, <em>Financial Instruments</em></td>
<td>4.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>825-10</td>
<td>4.17–.22, 4.24, 4.43, 4.51, 4.68–.69, 5.32, 5.38, 7.69, 10.44, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.37–.40, 12.43–.44, 12.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>835, <em>Interest</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>835-20</td>
<td>6.06–.11, 6.48, 7.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>835-30</td>
<td>8.111, 11.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>840, <em>Leases</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>840-40</td>
<td>6.15, 6.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>845, <em>Nonmonetary Transactions</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>845-10</td>
<td>11.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>850, <em>Related Party Disclosures</em></td>
<td>8.81, 12.70, 12.87–.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>850-10</td>
<td>12.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>855, <em>Subsequent Events</em></td>
<td>3.39–.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>855-10</td>
<td>3.39, 7.71, 8.53, 8.101, 8.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>860, <em>Transfers and Servicing</em></td>
<td>10.45, 15.51, 15.122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>860-10</td>
<td>4.71, 7.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>860-30</td>
<td>4.60, 4.71, 7.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>915, <em>Development Stage Entities</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>915-10</td>
<td>Update 12-1 at 12.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>944, <em>Financial Services—Insurance</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>944-20</td>
<td>8.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>944-30</td>
<td>8.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>944-40</td>
<td>8.13, 8.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>946, <em>Financial Services—Investment Companies</em></td>
<td>4.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954, <em>Health Care Entities</em></td>
<td>3.01, 6.05, 10.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-10</td>
<td>1.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-205</td>
<td>3.04, 6.43, 9.24, 11.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-210</td>
<td>3.06, 3.08, 4.08, 9.24, 13.23, 14.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-225</td>
<td>3.03, 3.09–.10, 3.12–.13, 3.15–.16, 3.18, 3.28, 4.21, 4.34, 6.30, 11.12, 11.55, 12.36, 12.74, 12.80, 12.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-305</td>
<td>4.07–.08, 8.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-310</td>
<td>10.36, 10.42, 10.47, 12.84, 12.86, 13.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-320</td>
<td>3.16, 4.28, 4.30, 4.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-325</td>
<td>4.15, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-340</td>
<td>14.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-360</td>
<td>6.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-405</td>
<td>10.38, 10.52, 13.08–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-440</td>
<td>14.31–.33, 14.40, Exhibit 14-2 at 14.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-450</td>
<td>8.05, 8.08, 8.13–.18, 8.20, 8.22, 8.28, 8.45–.46, 8.49, 13.13, 13.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-470</td>
<td>7.42, 7.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-605</td>
<td>3.25, 10.06, 10.10, 10.16, 10.26, 10.28, 10.30, 10.32–.35, 10.37, 10.40, 10.42, 10.49, 12.21, 14.03, 14.14–.17, 14.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-720</td>
<td>8.09, 8.19, 8.32, 8.39–.40, 8.42–.43, 8.45–.46, 13.19, 13.21–.22, 14.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-740</td>
<td>8.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-805</td>
<td>3.16, 12.107–.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-810</td>
<td>8.45, 8.47, 12.04, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.07, 12.10, 12.44–.45, 12.50, 12.59, 12.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>954-815</td>
<td>5.07, 5.43, 5.45, 12.107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958, Not-For-Profit Entities</td>
<td>1.08, 3.01, 15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-10</td>
<td>4.21, 12.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-20</td>
<td>4.39, 4.43, 4.46, 4.62, 11.43, 12.19–.20, 12.23, 12.78–.81, 15.150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-30</td>
<td>5.38, 11.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-205</td>
<td>2.94, 3.02, 3.05, 3.16, 3.27–.28, 3.30, 3.34, 4.34, 4.65, 4.73, 6.43, 9.11, 9.18, 9.21–.22, 9.26–.28, 9.30, 9.36, 11.12, 11.21, 11.26–.27, 11.54, 12.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-210</td>
<td>3.05–.07, 3.36, 4.10, 9.05, 9.08, 9.16, 9.33, 11.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-230</td>
<td>3.33, 3.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-310</td>
<td>11.16, 11.23, 11.49, 11.51–.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-320</td>
<td>4.28–.30, 4.32–.33, 4.35, 4.39, 4.47, 4.68, 9.18, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.38, 12.65–.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-325</td>
<td>4.47, 4.49, 4.68, 12.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-360</td>
<td>6.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-605</td>
<td>4.33, 4.39, 4.41, 4.62, 4.63, 9.28, 11.01, 11.05–.06, 11.08–.09, 11.13, 11.16–.18, 11.20, 11.22, 11.25, 11.29–.30, 11.39, 11.41–.45, 11.47, 11.49, 11.61, Exhibit 11-2 at 11.62, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.18, 12.23–.24, 12.81, 12.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-720</td>
<td>3.26, 3.28, 15.132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-805</td>
<td>3.16, 12.89–.90, 12.92–.93, 12.95, 12.96–.100, 12.102–.106, 12.108, 12.113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-810</td>
<td>6.17, 9.18, 9.37, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.06, 12.09–.13, 12.15, 12.29, 12.33, 12.50–.53, 12.58, 12.66–.68, 12.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>958-840</td>
<td>12.53–.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>970, Real Estate—General</td>
<td>14.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>970-323</td>
<td>Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05, 12.36, 12.43–.47, 12.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>970-810</td>
<td>12.39–.40, 12.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FASB ASU</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2013-06, Not-For-Profit Entities (Topic 958): Services Received From Personnel of an Affiliate; a Consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force</td>
<td>Update 11-1 at 11.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2013-07, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205): Liquidation Basis of Accounting</td>
<td>Update 2-3 at 2.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-02 Intangibles—Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Accounting for Goodwill (A Consensus of the Private Company Council)</td>
<td>Update 6-2 at 6.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-03, Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Accounting for Certain Receive-Variable, Pay-Fixed Interest Rate Swaps</td>
<td>5.21, Update 5-1 at 5.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-07, Consolidation (Topic 810): Applying Variable Interest Entities Guidance to Common Control Leasing Arrangements</td>
<td>Update 12-1 at 12.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-08, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 205) and Property, Plant, and Equipment (Topic 360): Reporting Discontinued Operations and Disclosures of Disposals of Components of an Entity</td>
<td>Update 6-1 at 6.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-09, Revenue From Contracts With Customers (Topic 606): Summary and Amendments That Create Revenue From Contracts With Customers</td>
<td>10.01, Update 13-1 at 13.03, Update 13-2 at 13.27, Appendix F, Update 2-1 at 2.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-12, Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Accounting for Share-Based Payments When the Terms of an Award Provide That a Performance Target Could Be Achieved After the Requisite Service Period</td>
<td>Update 8-1 at 8.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2014-15, Presentation of Financial Statements—Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties About and Entity’s Ability to Continue As a Going Concern</td>
<td>Update 2-2 at 2.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FASB FIN No. 14, <em>Reasonable Estimation of the Amount of a Loss</em></td>
<td>15.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FASB SFAC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 4, <em>Objectives of Financial Reporting by Nonbusiness Organizations</em></td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 5, <em>Recognition and Measurement in Financial Statements of Business Enterprises</em></td>
<td>10.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 6, <em>Elements of Financial Statements</em></td>
<td>9.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 7, <em>Using Cash Flow Information and Present Value in Accounting Measurements</em></td>
<td>8.25–26, 14.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FASB SFAS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 5, <em>Accounting for Contingencies</em></td>
<td>15.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 13, <em>Accounting for Leases</em></td>
<td>15.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 76, <em>Extinguishment of Debt</em></td>
<td>7.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 116, <em>Accounting for Contributions Received and Contributions Made</em></td>
<td>11.18, 15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 117, <em>Financial Statements of Not-For-Profit Organizations</em></td>
<td>9.25, 15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 124, <em>Accounting for Certain Investments Held by Not-For-Profit Organizations</em></td>
<td>15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 125, <em>Accounting for Transfers and Servicing of Financial Assets and Extinguishments of Liabilities</em></td>
<td>7.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 136, <em>Transfers of Assets to a Not-For-Profit Organization or Charitable Trust That Raises or Holds Contributions for Others</em></td>
<td>15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 164, <em>Not-For-Profit Entities: Mergers and Acquisitions</em></td>
<td>15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Government health care entities, applicability</td>
<td>15.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guidance and reporting updates, summary</td>
<td>Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GASB Interpretation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2, Disclosure of Conduit Debt Obligations</td>
<td>15.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 3, Financial Reporting for Reverse Repurchase Agreements</td>
<td>15.38, 15.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GASB Statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 3, Deposits With Financial Institutions, Investments (Including Repurchase Agreements), and Reverse Repurchase Agreements</td>
<td>15.01, 15.38, 15.51–.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 7, Advance Refundings Resulting in Defeasance of Debt</td>
<td>15.81–.82, 15.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 9, Reporting Cash Flows of Proprietary and Nonexpendable Trust Funds and Governmental Entities That Use Proprietary Fund Accounting</td>
<td>15.26, 15.34, 15.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 13, Accounting for Operating Leases With Scheduled Rent Increases</td>
<td>15.70–.71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 16, Accounting for Compensated Absences</td>
<td>15.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 23, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Refundings of Debt Reported by Proprietary Activities</td>
<td>15.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 27, Accounting for Pensions by State and Local Governmental Employers</td>
<td>15.32, 15.96, 15.100, 15.102, Update 15-1 at 15.29, Update 15-3 at 15.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 28, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Securities Lending Transactions</td>
<td>15.38, 15.51–.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 29, The Use of Not-For-Profit Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles by Governmental Entities</td>
<td>15.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 31, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Certain Investments and for External Investment Pools</td>
<td>15.11, 15.38, 15.40–.44, 15.46–.47, 15.49, 15.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 33, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Nonexchange Transactions</td>
<td>15.11, 15.121, 15.124, 15.126, 15.128–.129, 15.150–.151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 34, Basic Financial Statements for State and Local Governments</td>
<td>15.11–.12, 15.16, 15.19, 15.22, 15.25, 15.27–.30, 15.49, 15.52, 15.61, 15.64, 15.77, 15.86, 15.108–.110, 15.112–.113, 15.119, 15.121, 15.123, 15.133, 15.165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 38, Certain Financial Statement Note Disclosures</td>
<td>15.18, 15.23, 15.52, 15.86, 15.109, 15.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 39, Determining Whether Certain Organizations Are Component Units</td>
<td>15.11, 15.141–.142, 15.148, 15.150–.151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 40, Deposit and Investment Risk Disclosures</td>
<td>15.36, 15.38, 15.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 45, Accounting and Financial Reporting by Employers for Postemployment Benefits Other Than Pensions</td>
<td>15.32, 15.101–.102, 15.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 47, Accounting for Termination Benefits</td>
<td>15.105, 15.109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 48, Sales and Pledges of Receivables and Future Revenues and Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets and Future Revenues</td>
<td>15.122–.123, 15.165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 49, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pollution Remediation Obligations</td>
<td>15.75–.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 50, Pension Disclosures</td>
<td>15.96, 15.109, Update 15-1 at 15.29, Update 15-3 at 15.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 51, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Intangible Assets</td>
<td>15.65–.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 52, Land and Other Real Estate Held As Investments by Endowments</td>
<td>15.38, 15.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 53, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Derivative Instruments</td>
<td>15.38, 15.54–.55, 15.57, 15.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 55, The Hierarchy of Generally Accepted Accounting Principles for State and Local Governments</td>
<td>15.05–.06, 15.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 59, Financial Instruments Omnibus</td>
<td>15.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 60, Accounting and Financial Reporting for Service Concession Arrangements</td>
<td>15.71–.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 61, The Financial Reporting Entity: Omnibus, an Amendment of GASB Statements No. 14 and No. 34</td>
<td>15.11, 15.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 62, Codification of Accounting and Financial Reporting Guidance Contained in Pre-November 30, 1989 FASB and AICPA Pronouncements</td>
<td>15.09–.11, 15.16, 15.22, 15.24, 15.36, 15.38–.40, 15.52, 15.64, 15.70–.71, 15.77, 15.84–.85, 15.93, 15.97, 15.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 63, Financial Reporting of Deferred Outflows of Resources, Deferred Inflows of Resources, and Net Position</td>
<td>15.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 64, Derivative Instruments: Application of Hedge Accounting Termination Provisions</td>
<td>15.38, 15.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 65, Items Previously Reported As Assets and Liabilities</td>
<td>15.38, 15.83, 15.85, 15.126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 66, Technical Corrections—2012</td>
<td>15.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 67, Financial Reporting for Pension Plans—An Amendment of GASB Statement No. 25</td>
<td>Update 15-1 at 15.29, Update 15-3 at 15.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 69, Government Combinations and Disposals of Government Operations</td>
<td>15.38, 15.68–.69, 15.154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 71, Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date—An Amendment of GASB Statement No. 68</td>
<td>Update 15-4 at 15.99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GASB TB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. 2004-2, Recognition of Pension and Other Postemployment Benefit Expenditures/Expense and Liabilities by Cost-Sharing Employers</td>
<td>15.96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Government Accounting Standards Board (GASB)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Comprehensive Implementation Guide</strong></td>
<td>15.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical Bulletins</td>
<td>15.05 see also GASB TB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Government Auditing Standards (GAS) (Yellow Book)</strong></td>
<td>2.99–101, 7.96, 15.155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Government Auditing Standards, December 2011 Revision (GAS)</strong></td>
<td>2.97, 2.100, 2.101</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IRS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IRC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form 990</td>
<td>2.94, 8.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form 990-T</td>
<td>8.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 115</td>
<td>15.106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 501(A)</td>
<td>2.94, 8.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 501(C)(3)</td>
<td>1.12, 2.94, 7.40, 7.43–44, 8.88–89, 8.92, 15.107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 501(H)</td>
<td>8.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 501(R)</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 501(R)(1)</td>
<td>2.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 4958</td>
<td>Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IRS Notice 2008-31, Voluntary Closing Agreement Program for Tax-Exempt Bonds and Tax Credit Bonds</strong></td>
<td>7.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IRS Publications</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4078, <strong>Tax-Exempt Private Activity Bonds</strong></td>
<td>7.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IRS Exempt Organizations (TE/GE) Hospital Compliance Final Report</strong></td>
<td>8.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAIC SSAP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 25, Accounting for and Disclosures About Transactions With Affiliates and Other Related Parties;</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 35, Guaranty Fund and Other Assessments</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 47, Uninsured Plans</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 50, Classifications and Definitions of Insurance or Managed Care Contracts in Force</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 54, Individual and Group Accident and Health Contracts</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 55, Unpaid Claims, Losses and Loss Adjustment Expenses</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 61, Life, Deposit-Type and Accident and Health Reinsurance</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 66, Retrospectively Rated Contracts</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 73, Health Care Delivery Assets—Supplies, Pharmaceutical and Surgical Supplies, Durable Medical Equipment, Furniture, Medical Equipment and Fixtures, and Leasehold Improvements in Health Care Facilities</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 84, Certain Health Care Receivables and Receivables Under Government Insured Plans</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 85, Claim Adjustment Expenses</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 87, Capitalization Policy</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 96, Settlement Requirements for Intercompany Transactions</td>
<td>2.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Association of Insurance Commissioners (NAIC)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accounting Practice and Procedures manual</td>
<td>2.92–.105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Financial Reporting Model Regulation</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implemental Guide for the Annual Financial Reporting Model Regulation</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation Guide for the Annual Financial Reporting Model Regulation</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model Audit Rule</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Statutory Framework for Reporting Significant Deficiencies and Material Weaknesses in Internal Control to Insurance Regulators</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Health Care Entities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NCGA Interpretation No. 6, Notes to the Financial Statements Disclosure</td>
<td>15.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCGA Statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 1, Governmental Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles</td>
<td>15.77, 15.79, 15.123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 4, Accounting and Financial Reporting Principles for Claims and Judgments and Compensated Absences</td>
<td>15.93, 15.108</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-21, Cost Principles for Educational Institutions</td>
<td>Update 2-4 at 2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-50, Audit Followup</td>
<td>Update 2-4 at 2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-87, Cost Principles for State, Local and Indian Tribal Governments</td>
<td>Update 2-4 at 2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-89, Catalog of Federal Domestic Assistance</td>
<td>Update 2-4 at 2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-102, Grants and Cooperative Agreements With State and Local Governments</td>
<td>Update 2-4 at 2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-110, Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Other Agreements With Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals and Other Non-Profit Organizations</td>
<td>Update 2-4 at 2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-133, Audits of States, Local Governments and Non-Profit Organizations</td>
<td>2.94–.97, Update 2-4 at 2.95, 2.99–.101, 7.96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCAOB AS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 5, An Audit of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting That Is Integrated with an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.15, 2.28, 2.66, 2.108–.109, 4.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 11, Consideration of Materiality in Planning and Performing an Audit</td>
<td>2.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 16, Communications With Audit Committees</td>
<td>2.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 18, Related Parties, Amendments to Certain PCAOB Auditing Standards Regarding Significant Unusual Transactions and Other Amendments to PCAOB Auditing Standards</td>
<td>Update 12-3 at 12.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCAOB AU section</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>324, Service Organizations</td>
<td>Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>325, Communications About Control Deficiencies in an Audit of Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>332, Auditing Derivative Instruments, Hedging Activities, and Investments in Securities</td>
<td>4.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>342, Auditing Accounting Estimates</td>
<td>2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCAOB Staff Audit Practice Alert</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 2, Matters Related to Auditing Fair Value Measurements of Financial Instruments and the Use of Specialists</td>
<td>4.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. 11, Considerations for Audits of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting</td>
<td>2.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practice Aids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying OCBOA in State and Local Governmental Financial Statements</td>
<td>2.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clarified Standards, and</td>
<td>Appendix C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Considerations for Audits Performed in Accordance with Public Company Accounting Oversight Board</td>
<td>2.15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

S

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Paragraphs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sarbanes-Oxley Act Section 404</td>
<td>2.110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC Final Rule Release No. 34-70462, Registration of Municipal Advisors</td>
<td>7.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC Regulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S-K</td>
<td>7.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S-X</td>
<td>7.08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC Rule 15Ba 1-1</td>
<td>7.104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC SAB Topic 5(M), Other Than Temporary Impairment of Certain Investments in Equity Securities</td>
<td>4.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Codification of Staff Accounting Bulletins</td>
<td>4.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>00-1, Auditing Health Care Third-Party Revenues and Related Receivables</td>
<td>2.48, 2.61, 8.103, 10.20–.21, 10.29, 10.50–.51, 10.56–.57, Appendix D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96-1, Environmental Remediation Liabilities</td>
<td>8.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98-1, Accounting for the Costs of Computer Software Developed or Obtained for Internal Use</td>
<td>15.132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98-2, Accounting for Costs of Activities of Not-For-Profit Organizations and State and Local Governmental Entities That Include Fund Raising</td>
<td>15.132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99-1, Guidance to Practitioners in Conducting and Reporting on an Agreed-Upon Procedures Engagement to Assist Management in Evaluating the Effectiveness of its Corporate Compliance Program</td>
<td>Appendix B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSCS No. 1, Consulting Services: Definitions and Standards</td>
<td>7.89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Technical Practice Aids</td>
<td>15.07, Appendix F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIS Section</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.18, &quot;Applicability of Practical Expedient&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.19, &quot;Unit of Account&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.20, &quot;Determining Whether NAV Is Calculated With FASB ASC 946, Financial Services—Investment Companies&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.21, &quot;Determining Whether an Adjustment to NAV Is Necessary&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.22, &quot;Adjusting NAV When it Is Not As of the Reporting Entity's Measurement Date&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.23, &quot;Adjusting NAV When it Is Not Calculated Consistent With FASB ASC 946&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.24, &quot;Disclosures—Ability to Redeem Versus Actual Redemption Request&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.25, &quot;Impact of 'Near Term' On Classification Within Fair Value Hierarchy&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.26, &quot;Categorization of Investments for Disclosure Purposes&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2220.27, &quot;Determining Fair Value of Investments When the Practical Expedient Is Not Used or Is Not Available&quot;</td>
<td>4.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6140.23, &quot;Changing Net Asset Classifications Reported in a Prior Year&quot;</td>
<td>9.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400, Health Care Entities</td>
<td>11.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.30, &quot;Accounting for Transactions Involving Medicaid Voluntary Contribution or Taxation Programs&quot;</td>
<td>8.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.36, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.37, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the foundation to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the foundation.)&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.38, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation—Does Common Control Lead to the Conclusion That the Beneficiary Can Determine the Timing and Amount of Distributions from the Recipient?&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.40, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that meets a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary can influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.41, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (The beneficiary makes an expenditure that is consistent with a purpose restriction on net assets held for its benefit by the recipient entity—The beneficiary cannot influence the operating and financial decisions of the recipient to such an extent that the beneficiary can determine the timing and amount of distributions from the recipient.)&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.42, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of a Beneficiary's Interest in the Net Assets of a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity)—Accounting for Unrealized Gains and Losses on Investments Held by the Foundation&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 4.45, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.43, &quot;Application of FASB ASC 958—Classification of Distributions From a Financially Interrelated Fund-Raising Foundation (Recipient Entity) to a Health Care Beneficiary&quot;</td>
<td>4.44, 12.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Paragraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.45, &quot;Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others&quot;</td>
<td>8.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.46, &quot;Applicability of FASB ASC 460—Guarantor's Accounting and Disclosure Requirements for Guarantees, Including Indirect Guarantees of Indebtedness of Others—Mortgage Guarantees&quot;</td>
<td>8.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.49, &quot;Presentation of Claims Liability and Insurance Recoveries—Contingencies Similar to Malpractice&quot;</td>
<td>8.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.50, &quot;Accrual of Legal Costs Associated With Contingencies Other Than Malpractice&quot;</td>
<td>8.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.51, &quot;Presentation of Insurance Recoveries When Insurer Pays Claims Directly&quot;</td>
<td>8.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6400.52, &quot;Insurance Recoveries From Certain Retrospectively Rated Insurance Policies&quot;</td>
<td>8.09</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Subject Index

## A

**ACA.** See Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act

**ACCOUNTABLE CARE ORGANIZATIONS (ACO)** .................................................. 1.12

**ACCOUNTING CHANGES, NOT-FOR-PROFIT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES** ............. 3.22

**ACCOUNTING ESTIMATES** ........ 2.60–.62, ........................................ 8.112–.117

**ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE**  
  - Confirmations .................................. 10.58–.60  
  - Defined ........................................ 11.60  
  - Government health care entities sold or financed as cash flow ............... 15.122

**ACO.** See Accountable Care Organization; affordable care organizations

**ACQUISITION.** See also mergers and acquisitions  
  - Compared to merger for NFP .................. 12.93  
  - Costs of, managed care services ......................... 13.21–.22  
  - Fees paid to the federal government by health insurers .................... 8.85  
  - By NFPs, reporting requirements .......................... 12.97–.109

**ACQUISITION DATE, DEFINED** ........ 12.100

**ACTUARIES AND ACTUARIAL METHODS, USE OF, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES** ........ 8.118–121

**ADVANCE FEES, CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES**  
  - Nonrefundable .............. 14.23–24, 14.48,  
    Exhibit 14-1 at 14.49  
  - With periodic fees ....................... 14.13  
  - Refundable ............. 14.16–20, 14.22–23,  
    14.42, Exhibit 14-1 at 14.49

**ADVANCE FEES, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES** ........ 10.16

**AFFILIATES**  
  - Defined ........................................ 12.79  
  - Services received from ........................... Update 11-1 at 11.28

**AFFORDABLE CARE ORGANIZATIONS (ACO) FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING AND REPORTING** .......... 13.04–02

**AGENCY FUNDS, COMPENSATION AND RELATED BENEFITS** ................ 8.82–83

**AGREEMENTS TO JOINTLY OPERATE FACILITY, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES** .......... 12.55–.57

**ALLOWANCES, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITY RECEIVABLES** ........ 15.121

**AMORTIZATION, INTANGIBLE ASSET USEFUL LIFE** .......................... 6.39–41

**ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES, RISK ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES** ........ 2.40–42, 2.58–59

**ANNUAL FEES, PAID TO THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT BY HEALTH INSURERS** .................. 8.85

**ANTICIPATED INVESTMENT INCOME CONSIDERATION, MANAGED CARE SERVICES** .................. 13.17

**APPLICABILITY OF GUIDE** ........ 1.02–.06

**ARBITRAGE, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING** ........................................ 7.41

**ASSERTIONS, AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS** ........ 2.33–34

**ASSET RETIREMENT AND ENVIRONMENTAL REMEDIATION OBLIGATIONS**  
  - Conditional asset retirement obligations, defined .................................. 8.62  
  - Contingencies and other liabilities ........................................... 8.62–64  
  - Government health care entities ........................................... 15.75–76  
  - Property, plant and equipment ........................................... 6.18–.20

**ASSETS.** See specific types of assets

**ATTESTATION ENGAGEMENTS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING** ........ 7.103–104

**AUDIT PLANNING** ........ 2.01–.04, 2.15–.18

**AUDIT RISK**  
  - Assertions of .................................. 2.09  
  - GAAS and ....................................... 2.03  
  - Of material misstatement ...................... 2.05–.08,  
    2.33–34, 2.49

**AUDIT TEAM, DISCUSSION AMONG, RISK ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES** ........ 2.43

**AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS** ........ 2.01–110  
  - Accounting estimates .................................. 2.60–62  
  - Annual financial reporting model regulation .................................. 2.110  
  - Assertions in assessments of risks of material misstatements .............. 2.33–34  
  - Audit planning .................................. 2.15–18  
  - Audit risk ........................................ 2.05–09  
  - Communications .................................. 2.73, 2.109–110  
  - Complex transactions .................................. 2.24  
  - Compliance with laws and regulations .................................. 2.67–77  
  - Contingencies and other liabilities ...................................... 8.107–127,  
    Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127  
  - Continuing care retirement communities .................................. 14.43–48,  
    Exhibit 14-3 at 14.49  
  - Contributions received and made .................................. 11.56–62, Exhibit 11-2 at 11.62

AAG-HCO AUD
AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS—continued

- Derivatives ........................................5.47
- Documentation .................................2.87, Update 2-3 at 2.87
- Financial statement audit ....................2.03–04
- Generally ...........................................2.01–02
- Going-concern considerations ............2.78–87
- Government health care entities ............15.155–167
- Group audits ......................................2.19–22
- Independent auditor reports .................15.161–162
- Internal control deficiencies .................2.108
- Internal control matters in an audit, communicating ...2.109
- Investments ....... 4.74–76, Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76
- Material misstatement, risk of .......... 2.05–08, 2.33–34, 2.49
- Materiality ...........................................2.23–30
- Medical malpractice ............................8.108–111
- Multi-location audits ............................2.23
- Municipal bond financing. See also municipal bond financing ..........7.103
- Net assets ...........................................Exhibit 9-1 at 9.38
- NFP health care entities ............12.114, Exhibit 12-2 at 12.114
- Performance materiality ......................2.29–30
- Property, plant and equipment .......... 6.46–51, Exhibit 6-1 at 6.51
- Qualitative aspects of materiality .........2.31–32
- Regulators, communications with ..........2.110
- Reporting entity and related entities .....12.114, Exhibit 12-2 at 12.114
- Required supplementary information ....15.162–165
- Risk assessment procedures .............. 2.35–57
- Risk-based capital (RBC) formula ...........2.70, 2.106–107
- Single Audit Act .................................2.95–101
- Statutory reporting considerations ...... 2.102–105
- Supplementary information .................15.166–167
- Third-party revenues and related receivables ..........10.55–57, Exhibit 10-1 at 10.60
- Transactions processed by service organizations ..........2.63–66
- Written representations .......... 2.82, 2.88–93

AUDITING STANDARDS, CLARIFIED ................Appendix C

AUDITORS
- Auditor-established involvement, municipal securities ............................7.90
- Compliance responsibility of .......... 2.70–77
- Going-concern responsibility ......... 2.79
- Independent auditor reports included on continuing disclosure website, municipal bond financing ..........7.97
- Municipal securities filing .......... 7.86–95

AUDITOR’S SPECIALIST, EVALUATING .............8.120

AVAILABLE-FOR-SALE SECURITIES ...... 4.25

AWARDS. See grants, awards, or sponsorships

B

BALANCE SHEET PRESENTATION
- Government health care entities .............15.13–18
- Managed care services ...................... 13.23–24
- Municipal bond financing ................... 7.45–47
- NFP health care entities .....................3.06–08
- Statement of net position .............15.13–18

BOND INSURANCE, DEFINED ............ 7.10

BUSINESS ASSOCIATES, DEFINED ..........2.14

BUSINESS ASSOCIATES AGREEMENTS ........2.14

BUSINESS COMBINATIONS. See also mergers and acquisitions
- Defined ..............................................12.110
- Government health care entities .............15.153–154

C

CALLS AND MODE CONVERSIONS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ....................7.18–19

CALLS IN DEBT, EMBEDED DERIVATIVES .........................5.35–36

CAPITAL ASSETS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ..........15.61–64, 15.77

CAPITALIZATION OF DEBT-ISSUANCE COSTS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ..............15.85

CAPITALIZED INTEREST, PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT .................6.06–11

CAPITATION ARRANGEMENTS, MANAGED CARE SERVICES .................13.07

CAPITATION PAYMENTS, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES ..............10.17

CAPTIVE INSURANCE COMPANIES, MEDICAL MALPRACTICE ......8.30–33, 8.41–43

CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS
- Centralized cash management arrangements ..................................4.03–06
- Continuing care retirement communities ..................................4.01–11
- Government health care entities ..........15.34–37
- Restricted donations ................................4.07
- Restricted or designated cash amounts ..................................4.08–11

CASH FLOW
- Future contributions, estimated ..........11.24
- Government health care entities sold or financed .....................15.122
- Statements. See statement of cash flows

AAG-HCO AUD
CASH FLOW HEDGES .......................... 5.11–13
CCRC. See continuing care retirement communities
CENTER FOR MEDICARE AND MEDICAID SERVICES (CMS) .................... 1.12
CHALLENGE GRANT ........................ 11.19
CHANGES MADE TO THE TEXT FROM PREVIOUS EDITION, SCHEDULE OF .................................. Appendix H
CHARITABLE, DEFINED .................. 8.89
CHARITABLE GIFTS ........................ 15.130
CHARITABLE TRUSTS, TRANSFER OF ASSETS TO ...................................... 11.39–46
CHARITY CARE ............................ 10.15, 10.25–28
CHILDREN'S HEALTH INSURANCE PROGRAM (1997) ............................... 1.11
CHNA. See community health needs assessment
CLAIMS-MADE INSURANCE ........8.34–36, .................................... 15.89
CMS. See Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services
COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ......12.62–72
COMMON PURPOSE, NFP REPORTING REQUIREMENTS ......................... 12.55
COMMUNICATIONS, AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS .......................... 2.73, 2.109–110
COMMUNITY HEALTH NEEDS ASSESSMENT (CHNA) .............................. 1.12
COMPENSATION AND RELATED BENEFITS
· Agency funds ......................... 8.82–83
· Complex pay practices ........... 8.67
· Disclosures ......................... 15.108–109
· Generally ......................... 8.65–66
· Government health care entities ... 15.98–105
· Incentive and deferred compensation plans ........................................ 8.68–73
· Postretirement and postemployment benefit plans ................................ 8.75–76
· Sabbaticals and other compensated absences .................................. 8.74
COMPLETE SET OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, NOT-FOR-PROFIT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .......... 3.02–05
COMPLEX PAY PRACTICES, COMPENSATION AND RELATED BENEFITS ........8.67
COMPLEX TRANSACTIONS .................. 8.24
COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND REGULATIONS, AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS ........ 2.67–77
COMPONENT UNITS
· Defined .............................. 15.136–137
· As “major” ............................ 15.143
· In MD&A ............................... 15.33
· Minority interest in .................. 15.110
· Reporting entities .................. 15.141–143
CONDITIONAL ASSET RETIREMENT OBLIGATIONS, DEFINED ............. 8.62
CONDITIONAL PROMISES TO GIVE .................. 11.18
CONDITIONS AND EVENTS, GOING-CONCERN CONSIDERATIONS ............ 2.81
CONDUIT BONDS TRADED IN PUBLIC MARKETS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING .......... 7.06–08
CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
· Component unit presentation 15.142
· NFP health care entities ........ 3.42–43, 12.62–72
CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES .......................... 8.01–127
· Accounting estimates ............. 8.112–117
· Actuaries and actuarial methods, use of ............................................. 8.118–121
· Agency funds ......................... 8.82–83
· Asset retirement and environmental remediation obligations ............. 8.62–64
· Auditing considerations ............. 8.107–127, Exhibit 8-1 at 8.127
· Compensation and related benefits. See compensation and related benefits
· Complex pay practices .......... 8.67
· Disclosures ............................ 15.88
· Discounting, medical malpractice 8.25–29
· Evaluating auditor’s specialist 8.120
· Evaluating lawyers’ responses 8.122–125
· Fees paid to the federal government by health insurers 8.84–85
· Generally ......................... 8.01–02
· Government health care entities 15.87–109
· Incentive and deferred compensation plans 8.68–73
· Income taxes .......................... 8.119
· Insurance recovery recognition 8.07–09
· Joint and several liability arrangements 8.77–81
· Managing risk of loss ............ 8.10–12
· Medicaid voluntary contribution or taxation programs 8.98–99
· Medical malpractice 8.25–29, 8.108–111
· Physician guarantees and agreements 8.54–61
· Postretirement and postemployment benefit plans 8.75–76
· Private inurement and intermediate sanctions 8.57, 8.92–93
· Recognition, measurement and disclosure 8.03–06

AAG-HCO CON
CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES—continued

- Risks and uncertainties ........................................ 8.100–.106
- Sabbaticals and other compensated absences ......................... 8.74
- State and local taxes ........................................... 8.95
- Tax considerations for NFP entities ................................ 8.86–.99
- Tax positions ................................................................ 8.96–.97
- Unrelated business income ........................................... 8.94
- Written representations ............................................... 2.93

CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES (CCRC) ........ 14.01–.49
- Advance fees ......................................................... 14.08
- Auditing considerations .............................................. 14.43–.48,
  .. Exhibit 14-3 at 14.49
- Classification of refundable advance fees .......................... 14.26–.30
- Fees and payment methods .......................................... 14.13–.15
- Financial statement presentation .................................... 14.37–.43
- Future services and use of facilities accounting .................... 14.31–.35,
  .. Exhibit 14-2 at 14.49
- Generally ............................................................... 14.01–.05
- Initial contract acquisition cost accounting ......................... 14.36
- Nonrefundable advance fees ................................. 14.23–.24, 14.48
  .. Exhibit 14-1 at 14.49
- Periodic fees ........................................................... 14.09
- Refundable advance fees .............................. 14.16–.20,
  .. 14.22–.23, 14.42, Exhibit 14-1 at 14.49
- Reoccupancy proceeds fees .......................................... 14.21–.22
- Types of contracts .................................................. 14.06–.10
- Types of living accommodations .................................... 14.11–.12
- Use fees ................................................................. 14.10

CONTRACTS
- Continuing care retirement communities .............................. 14.06–.10, 14.46
- Loss contract accounting, managed care services .................. 13.13–.16

CONTRIBUTIONS, DEFINED ..................... 6.32

CONTRIBUTIONS RECEIVED AND MADE .......................... 11.01–.63
- Accounting for ................................................... 11.04, 11.10
- Auditing considerations .............................................. 11.56–.62,
  .. Exhibit 11-2 at 11.62
- Contributions made .................................................. 11.47
- Contributions received .............................................. 11.09–.46
- Distinguished from other transactions ............................... 11.03–.08
- Donations received without restrictions .............................. 11.11
- Expiration of donor-imposed restrictions ............................. 11.12–.14, 11.21
- Fund-raising and special event cost reporting ..................... 11.31–.33
- Future cash flow estimates .......................................... 11.24
- Generally ............................................................... 11.01
- Government health care entities .................................... 15.124–.134

CONTRIBUTIONS RECEIVED AND MADE—continued
- Long-lived assets .................................................. 11.25–.27
- Measurement ......................................................... 11.23
- Naming opportunity ................................................. 11.34–.37,
  .. Table 11-1 at 11.37
- Other considerations .............................................. 11.40–.55
- Recognition of contributions received ................................ 11.09
- Services ............................ 11.28–.30, Update 11-1 at 11.28
- Split-interest agreements .......................................... 11.48

CONTROL
- Defined ............................................................... 12.08
- NFP health care entities ........................................... 12.06–.07,
  .. 12.12–.16

CONTROLLING FINANCIAL INTERESTS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........ 12.29–.32

COVENANTS, AUDITING MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING .............. 7.79–.81

CREDIT ENHANCEMENT, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING .............. 7.09–.11

CREDIT RATINGS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ......................... 7.82

CROSSOVER BONDS ............................................. 7.17

CURRENT ASSETS, DEFINED .................................. 4.65

D

DEBT DEFEASANCE, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........ 15.81–.84

DEBT EXTINGUISHMENT
- Gain or loss on ..................................................... 7.32–.33
- Government health care entities ................................... 15.81–.84
- Municipal bond financing .......................................... 7.28

DEBT ISSUANCE COSTS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING .............. 7.34–.36

DEBT RESTRUCTURING, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING .............. 7.83–.85

DEBT SECURITIES, DEFINED .................................. 4.74

DEFEASANCE
- Debt, government health care entities ................................ 15.81–.84
- Legal ................................................................. 7.21
- Municipal bond financing .......................................... 7.20–.26

DEFERRED COMPENSATION PLANS, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES ........ 8.68–.73

DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES ................................ 15.83, 15.111

DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES .................. 15.14–15, 15.58,
  .. 15.83, 15.111

DEFINED RELATIONSHIP, NFP REPORTING REQUIREMENTS .......... 12.55

DERECOGNITION, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ....................... 7.26
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS, DEFINED</th>
<th>5.02, 5.04, 15.54–55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DERIVATIVES</td>
<td>5.01–.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Auditing considerations</td>
<td>5.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Cash flow hedges</td>
<td>5.11–13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Characteristics</td>
<td>15.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Defined</td>
<td>5.02, 5.05, 5.31, 15.53–54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Embedded</td>
<td>5.31–39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Fair value hedges</td>
<td>5.09–10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Financial statement presentation</td>
<td>5.40–46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Generally</td>
<td>5.01–08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Government health care entities</td>
<td>15.53–59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Hedge accounting</td>
<td>5.15–21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Hedging derivative instruments</td>
<td>15.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Investment derivative instruments</td>
<td>15.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Issuance of debt and</td>
<td>15.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Leverage</td>
<td>15.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Net settlement</td>
<td>15.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· NFP health care entities</td>
<td>5.45–46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Nonhedging derivatives</td>
<td>5.14, 5.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Settlement factors</td>
<td>15.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Shortcut method</td>
<td>5.22–30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Swaps</td>
<td>5.03, 15.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· Uses for</td>
<td>5.04</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| DESIGN, DEFICIENCY IN | 2.108 |

| DISCLOSURES | 15.77 |
| · Capital assets | 15.108–109 |
| · Compensation and related benefits | 15.108–109 |
| · Contingencies and other liabilities | 8.03–06, 8.81, 15.88 |
| · Derivatives | 5.43 |
| · Government health care entities | 15.52, 15.77, 15.86, 15.88, 15.108–109 |
| · Government health care entity receivables | 15.123 |
| · Independent auditor reports included on continuing disclosure website, municipal bond financing | 7.97 |
| · Investments | 4.68–73, 15.52 |
| · Joint and several liability arrangements | 8.81 |
| · Managed care services | 13.30 |
| · Medical malpractice | 8.48–53 |
| · Municipal bond financing | 7.66–72, 15.86 |
| · Net assets | 8.33–38 |
| · NFP health care entities | 12.87–88 |
| · Not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities reporting requirements | 12.113 |
| · Obligated group reporting | 7.73 |
| · Reporting entity and related entities | 12.87–88, 12.113 |
| · Secondary market disclosure requirements | 7.105 |

| DISCONTINUED OPERATIONS | 3.21 |
| · Property, plant and equipment | 6.28–30 |

| DISCOUNTS | 15.121 |
| · Government health care entity receivables | 15.121 |
| · Medical malpractice | 8.25–29 |

| DISPOSAL, PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT | 6.21–27 |

| DOCUMENTATION, AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS | 2.87 |
| · Update 2-3 at 2.87 |

| DONATED ITEMS, CASH RECEIPTS FROM NFP SALE OF | 3.37 |

| DONATIONS PROMISED (PLEDGES) | 11.15–24, 15.128 |

| DONATIONS RECEIVED WITHOUT RESTRICTIONS | 11.11 |

| DONOR-IMPOSED RESTRICTIONS | 9.06, 11.10–14, 11.21, 11.38 |

| DONOR-RESTRICTED ENDOWMENT FUNDS, CLASSIFICATION | 9.26–32 |

| DISCOUNTS | 12.08 |
| · NFP health care entities | 12.06–09 |
| · Ongoing, in the net assets of another | 12.12–16 |

| EDGAR. See Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis, and Retrieval (EDGAR) system |

| ELECTRONIC DATA GATHERING, ANALYSIS, AND RETRIEVAL (EDGAR) SYSTEM | 3.43 |

| ELECTRONIC MUNICIPAL MARKET ACCESS (EMMA) SYSTEM | 3.43, 7.74, 7.97, Appendix A-11 at 7.105 |

| EMBEDDED DERIVATIVES | 5.31–39 |

| EMERGENCY MEDICAL TREATMENT AND ACTIVE LABOR ACT | 1.11 |

| EMM. See Electronic Municipal Market Access |

| ENDOWMENT, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES | 15.126 |

| ENVIRONMENTAL REMEDIATION OBLIGATIONS. See asset retirement and environmental remediation obligations |

| EPISODIC PAYMENTS, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES | 10.17 |

| EQUITY SECURITIES, DEFINED | 4.74, 15.43, 15.44 |

| EQUITY TRANSACTIONS | 4.62, 12.78–81 |

| EQUITY TRANSFERS | 12.73–77, 12.80 |

| ESTIMATED FINAL SETTLEMENTS, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES | 10.46–54 |

AAG-HCO EST
EVENTS. See also fund-raising and special event cost reporting
- Going-concern considerations ............2.81
- Subsequent, NFP health care entities ........3.39–.42

EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS
- Compared to contributions ............11.06–.08
- Naming opportunities ............11.36, Table 11-1 at 11.37

EXCHANGES, STATE AND FEDERAL HEALTH BENEFIT .................1.10

EXPENSES
- Managed care services ............13.20
- NFP health care entities ............3.26–.28
- Operating revenues compared to, government health care entities ........15.21

EXPIRATION OF DONOR-IMPOSED RESTRICTIONS ........11.12–.14, 11.21

EXTERNAL INVESTMENT POOLS, DEFINED ........15.43–.44
EXTINGUISHMENT AND MODIFICATION TRANSACTIONS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ........7.14–.17
EXTRAORDINARY ITEMS, NOT-FOR-PROFIT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........3.21

F
FACILITY, IN SERVICE CONCESSION ARRANGEMENT ...............15.71

FAIR VALUE
- Defined ..................4.48, 15.42
- Intangible asset ..........6.41
- Measurements for investments ........4.48

FAIR VALUE HEDGES ............5.09–.10

FAIR VALUE OPTION, INVESTMENTS. See also not recorded under fair value option, investments ........4.17–.22
FALSE CLAIMS ACT ............1.11, 2.93
FANNIE MAE ..................5.26
FED FUNDS EFFECTIVE SWAP RATE ...........5.26–.27

FEDERAL EMPLOYEES HEALTH BENEFITS ........10.11

FEDERAL GOVERNMENT, FEES PAID TO, BY HEALTH INSURERS ........8.84–.85

FEDERAL NATIONAL MORTGAGE ASSOCIATION (FANNIE MAE) ........5.26

FEE-FOR-SERVICE ARRANGEMENTS, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES ........10.17

FEES. See also advance fees, continuing care retirement communities
- Paid to the federal government by health insurers ........8.84–.85
- And payment methods, continuing care retirement communities ........14.13–.15

FINANCIAL ASSETS, DEFINED ........4.17

FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS, DEFINED .........................4.68

FINANCIAL REPORTING ENTITY, DEFINED.
See also reporting entity and related entities ........15.135

FINANCIAL REPORTING EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (FINREC)
- Anticipated investment income consideration ............13.17
- Capitation arrangements ............13.07
- Continuous care retirement communities ............14.23, 14.30, 14.41
- Disclosures ...................10.53
- On impairment of investments ............4.59
- Medical malpractice ............8.25, 8.29, 8.52
- Naming opportunities ............11.35

FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION
- Audit of ..................2.03–.04
- Balance sheet. See balance sheet presentation
- Classification of investments ........4.65–.67
- Consolidated. See consolidated financial statements
- Continuing care retirement communities ............14.37–.43
- Derivatives ............5.40–.46
- Financial statement defined ............3.41
- Going-concern considerations ........2.82–.83
- Government health care entities ........15.12–.33
- Investments ............4.65–.73
- Management’s discussion and analysis (MD&A) ............15.29–.33
- Municipal bond financing. See municipal bond financing
- NFP health care entities ............3.02–.05,
- Nonhedging derivatives ............5.42
- Property, plant and equipment ........6.42–.45
- Reporting entity and related entities ............12.62–.72
- Required supplementary information ............15.29–.33
- Segment reporting ............15.27–.28
- Statement of cash flows ............13.25–.27, 15.26
- Statement of revenues, expenses and changes in net assets ........15.19–.25

FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, NOT-FOR-PROFIT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........3.01–.42
- Balance sheet ............3.06–.08
- Complete set ............3.02–.05
- Derivatives ............5.43–.46
- Examples ............3.42–.43
- Generally ............3.01
- Notes to financial statements ........3.38, 15.118
- Statement of cash flows ............3.33–.37
- Statement of changes in net assets (or equity) ............3.29–.32
- Statement of operations ............3.09–.28
- Subsequent events ............3.39–.41
FINANCIALLY ACCOUNTABLE GOVERNMENTAL ORGANIZATIONS 15.136
FINANCIALLY-INTERRELATED ENTITIES, DEFINED 12.19, 12.23
FIXED ASSET CONSTRUCTION, PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT 6.14–17
FOR-PROFIT ENTITY, NFP RELATIONSHIPS WITH A 12.26–48
FUND-RAISING (PLEDGES) 11.15–24, 15.128
FUND-RAISING AND SPECIAL EVENT COST REPORTING
  · As contribution 11.31–33
  · Governmental health care entities 15.132
  · Investment gain or loss related to donor-restricted contributions 11.38
  · Pledges 11.15–24, 15.128
  · Transfer of assets to NFP entity or charitable trust 11.39–46
FUND-RAISING ORGANIZATIONS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 12.17–25
FUTURE SERVICES AND USE OF FACILITIES ACCOUNTING, CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES 14.31–35, Exhibit 14-2 at 14.49

GAAP. See generally accepted accounting principles
GAAS. See generally accepted auditing standards
GAINS OR LOSSES
  · Debt extinguishment 7.32–33
  · Derivatives 5.44
  · Investment gain or loss related to donor-restricted contributions 11.38
GENERAL PARTNERSHIPS, INTERESTS IN, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 12.39–40
GENERALLY ACCEPTED ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES (GAAP)
  · Audit planning 2.15
  · Government health care entities, applicability 15.03
  · Hierarchy for government health care entities 15.05–08
GENERALLY ACCEPTED AUDITING STANDARDS (GAAS)
  · Audit planning 2.01–04, 2.18
  · Audit risk 2.03
  · Auditing, and regulatory compliance 2.70
  · Risk assessment procedures 2.51–52
GOING-CONCERN CONSIDERATIONS 2.78–87
  · Audit procedures 2.80
  · Auditor’s responsibility 2.79
  · Consideration of conditions and events 2.81
  · Consideration of the effect on the auditor’s report when the doubt has been alleviated 2.84
  · Consideration of the effect on the auditor’s report when the doubt remains 2.85–87
  · Consideration of the financial statement effects 2.82–83
  · Disclosure Update 2-2 at 2.78
  · Documentation 2.87, Update 2-3 at 2.87
GOODWILL 6.37, 15.68–69, Update 6-2 at 6.38
GOVERNMENT ACCOUNTING STANDARDS BOARD (GASB)
  · Concept Statements 15.07
  · Government health care entities 15.02
GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 15.01–167
  · Applicability 15.03–04
  · Asset retirement and environmental remediation obligations 15.75–76
  · Auditing considerations 15.155–167
  · Auditing standard updates and guidance Update 15-3 at 15.99
  · Balance sheet presentation 15.13–18
  · Business combinations 15.153–154
  · Capital assets 15.61–64, 15.77
  · Capitalization of debt-issuance costs 15.85
  · Cash and cash equivalents 15.34–37
  · Claims-made policies 15.89
  · Classification 1.08
  · Compensation and related benefits 15.98–105
  · Contingencies and other liabilities 15.87–109
  · Contributions received and made 15.124–134
  · Debt defeasance and extinguishment 15.81–84
  · Defined 15.03
  · Derivatives 15.53–59
  · Disclosures 15.52, 15.77, 15.86, 15.88, 15.108–109
  · FASB and AICPA pronouncement applicability 15.11
  · Financial reporting requirements 15.52, 15.118–119
  · Financial statement presentation 15.12–33
  · GAAP hierarchy 15.05–08
  · GASB vs. AICPA auditing standard clarifications 15.01
  · General principles for recognition, measurement and disclosures 15.88
  · Goodwill 15.68–69
  · Impairment of investments 15.47–48

Subject Index 525

AAG-HCO GOV
GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES—continued

- Independent auditor reports 15.161–.162, ................................... 15.167
- Institutionally-related foundations 15.147–152
- Insurance-related contingencies 15.87
- Intangible assets 15.65–.67
- Investments 15.38–.52
- Irrevocable self-insurance trusts 15.92
- Leases 15.70
- Management’s discussion and analysis (MD&A) 15.29–.33
- Municipal bond financing 15.78–.80
- Net position 15.13–.18, 15.77, 15.80, 15.109–.119, 15.123, 15.133–.134
- Nonexchange financial guarantees 15.94–.96
- Nonexchange transactions 15.124–.134
- Other contingencies 15.97
- Pensions 15.98–.100
- Physician guarantees and agreements 15.92–.93
- Postretirement and postemployment benefit plans 15.101–103
- Property, plant and equipment 15.60
- Public-entity risk pools 15.91
- Reporting entity and related entities 15.135–146
- Required supplementary information 15.01, 15.29–33, 15.159, 15.163–165
- Restructuring costs 15.105
- Retrospectively-rated policies and contracts 15.90
- Return on investments 15.49–.50
- Reverse repurchase agreements 15.51
- Sabbaticals and other compensated absences 15.104
- Securities lending activities 15.51
- Segment reporting 15.27–.28
- Service concession arrangement (SCA) 15.71–.74
- Statement of cash flows 15.26
- Statement of net position 15.13–.18, 15.77, 15.80
- Statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net assets 15.19–.25
- Supplementary information 15.166–.167
- Tax considerations 15.106–.107
- Termination benefits 15.101–103, 15.105
- Third-party revenues and related receivables 15.120–.123

GOVERNMENTAL-RESTRICTED NET POSITION 15.113–117

GROUP AUDITS 2.19–.22
GUARANTEES, NONEXCHANGE FINANCIAL 15.94–.96
GUIDANCE UPDATES, SUMMARY Appendix A

H

HEALTH CARE AND EDUCATION RECONCILIATION ACT (2010) 1.11–.12, 2.45

HEALTH CARE COST ACCOUNTING, MANAGED CARE SERVICES 13.08–.12

HEALTH CARE ENTITIES. See also specific topics 1.01–.14
- Applicability of guide 1.02–.06
- Classification of 1.07–.08
- Guide purpose 1.01
- Reform of health care 1.12–.14
- Regulatory environment 1.09–.11

HEALTH INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY FOR ECONOMIC AND CLINICAL HEALTH (HITECH) ACT 2.14

HEALTH INSURANCE PORTABILITY AND ACCOUNTABILITY ACT OF 1996 (HIPAA) 1.11, 2.14

HEDGING DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS. See also derivatives 15.55

HELD-TO-MATURITY SECURITIES 4.25

HOSPITALS, TAX-EXEMPT 1.12

I

IBNR CLAIMS. See incurred-but-not-reported (IBNR) claims

ICD-10 MEDICAL CODING 2.49, 2.93

IDENTIFIABLE INTANGIBLE ASSETS 15.66

IMPAIRMENT
- Goodwill 6.37
- Intangible asset not subject to amortization 6.40
- Of investments 4.49–.59, 15.47–.48
- Property, plant and equipment 6.21–.27

INCENTIVE AND DEFERRED COMPENSATION PLANS, COMPENSATION AND RELATED BENEFITS 8.68–.73

INCEPTION OF ARRANGEMENT, JOINT AND SEVERAL LIABILITY ARRANGEMENTS 8.78

INCOME AND CASH FLOW STATEMENT, MANAGED CARE SERVICES 13.25–.27

INURRED-BUT-NOT-REPORTED (IBNR) CLAIMS, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES 8.13, 8.15, 8.35–.36, 8.102, 8.117

AAG-HCO GOV
INDEPENDENT AUDITOR REPORTS
- Government health care entities 15.161–162, 15.167
- Municipal bond financing 7.97

INDIVIDUAL SECURITY LEVEL, IMPAIRMENT OF INVESTMENTS 4.50

INFLows OF RESOURCES, DEFERRED 15.83, 15.111

INFORMATION SOURCES Appendix E

INITIAL CONTRACT ACQUISITION COST ACCOUNTING, CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES 14.36

INSIDERS 8.92

INSURANCE RECOVERY RECOGNITION, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES 8.07–09

INSURANCE-RELATED CONTINGENCIES, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 15.87

INSURERS, FEES PAID TO THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT BY HEALTH INSURERS 8.84–85

INTANGIBLE ASSETS 6.39–41, 15.65–67

INTEREST RATES 5.06, 7.04

INTERMEDIATE SANCTIONS, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES 8.92

INTERMEDIATE SUBTOTALS FOR OPERATIONS, NOT-FOR-PROFIT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 3.18–20

INTERNAL CONTROLS 2.49, 2.108–110

INTERNAL REVENUE CODE (IRC), AUDIT PLANNING 2.11

INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE (IRS) 1.10

INVESTMENT DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS 15.54

INVESTMENTS 4.12–76
- Auditing considerations 4.74–76, Exhibit 4-1 at 4.76
- Classification 4.65–67
- Disclosures 4.68–73, 15.52
- Equity transactions 4.62
- Fair value measurement 4.48
- Fair value option 4.17–22
- Financial reporting requirements 15.52
- Financial statement presentation 4.65–73
- Generally 4.12–16
- Government health care entities 15.38–52
- Impairment of investments 4.49–59, 15.47–48
- Investment pools 4.39–47
- Not recorded under fair value option. See not recorded under fair value option, investments
- Regulation 4.64
- Return on investments 15.49–50

INVESTMENTS—continued
- Reverse repurchase agreements 15.51
- Securities lending activities 4.60, 15.51
- Transfer of assets to NFP entity or charitable trust 4.61–63

INVESTOR-OWNED HEALTH CARE ENTITIES
- Classification of 1.08
- Mergers and acquisitions 12.110–112
- Net assets 9.01
- Not recorded under fair value option, investments 4.24–27
- Public or private business entities 1.02, 1.08
- Reporting entity and related entities 12.59–61

IRREVOCABLE SELF-INSURANCE TRUSTS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 15.92

IRS, GENERALLY. See Internal Revenue Service

J

JOINT AND SEVERAL LIABILITY ARRANGEMENTS 8.77–81

JOINT CONTROL, NFP REPORTING REQUIREMENTS 12.55

L

LAWYERS’ RESPONSES TO LITIGATION, EVALUATING 6.14–17, 15.70

LETTER OF CREDIT, CREDIT ENHANCEMENT 7.09–11

LEVERAGE, DERIVATIVES 15.53

LIABILITIES. See contingencies and other liabilities

LIMITED PARTNERSHIPS, INTERESTS IN, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 12.41–48

LIQUIDATION BASIS OF ACCOUNTING Update 2-3 at 2.87

LIVING ACCOMMODATIONS, CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES 14.11–12

LOCAL GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES. See government health care entities

LONDON INTERBANK OFFERED RATE (LIBOR) 5.26–27

LONG-LIVED ASSETS
- Contributions received and made 11.25–27
- Property, plant and equipment 6.34–39

LOSS CONTRACT ACCOUNTING, MANAGED CARE SERVICES 13.13–16
MAJORITY VOTING INTEREST, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ....... 12.06–07, 12.29

MANAGED CARE SERVICES ....... 13.01–30
- Acquisition costs .......................... 13.21–22
- Anticipated investment income consideration .......................... 13.17
- Balance sheet presentation .............. 13.23–24
- Capitation arrangements ................. 13.07
- Disclosures ................................ 13.30
- Expenses .................................. 13.20
- Generally .................................. 13.01–02
- Gross revenue reporting indicators .... 13.28
- Health care cost accounting ............. 13.08–12
- Income and statement of cash flows ................................ 13.25–27
- Loss contract accounting ................. 13.13–16
- Net revenue reporting indicators ....... 13.29
- Recognition and classification of revenue ................................ 13.03–06
- Stop-loss insurance accounting ......... 13.18–19

MANAGEMENT
- Compliance with laws and regulations .... 2.69
- Information about plans to mitigate going concerns .............................. 2.82
- From whom written representations are requested .................................. 2.90–91
- Written representations ................. 2.82, 2.88–93

MANAGEMENT’S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (MD&A), GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .... 15.29–33, 15.163

MAR. See Model Audit Rule

MATCHING GRANT ......................... 11.19

MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT
- Audit risk .................................... 2.05–08
- Auditing, assertions in assessments of risks of material misstatements ........ 2.33–34
- Revenue recognition ....................... 2.49

MATERIAL WEAKNESS, INTERNAL CONTROL DEFICIENCIES ............................. 2.108

MATERIALITY
- Application .................................. 2.23
- Auditing considerations ................. 2.23–30
- Benchmarks, for-profit and NFPs ....... 2.28
- Performance materiality ................. 2.29–30
- Qualitative aspects of .................... 2.31–32

MEDICAID
- Compliance with, auditing considerations ................................ 2.52–56
- As health benefit ........................... 1.10
- Third-party revenues and related receivables ......................... 10.11
- Voluntary contributions ................. 8.98–99
- Written representations ................... 2.93

MEDICAL CODING ...................... 2.49, 2.93

MEDICAL MALPRACTICE ............ 8.13–53
- Auditing considerations .................. 8.10–111
- Captive insurance companies ............ 8.30–33,
- Claims-made insurance .................. 8.34–36
- Contingencies and other liabilities .................. 8.108–111
- Disclosures .................................. 8.48–53
- Discounting of liabilities ................. 8.25–29
- Generally ................................... 8.13–24
- Losses and obligations, risk assessment procedures ....................... 2.47
- Retroactively-rated premium policies ................................ 8.37–43
- Trust funds .................................. 8.44–47

MEDICARE
- Compliance with, auditing considerations ................................ 2.52–56
- Medical coding ............................ 2.49
- Third-party revenues and related receivables ......................... 10.11
- Written representations ................... 2.93

MEDICARE ADMINISTRATIVE CONTRACTORS ..................... 10.11–12

MEDICARE AND MEDICAID PATIENT AND PROGRAM PROTECTION ACT (1987) ............ 1.11, 2.67, 2.93

MEDICARE PRESCRIPTION DRUG IMPROVEMENT AND MODERNIZATION ACT (2003) ..................... 1.11

MEDICARE SHARED SAVINGS PROGRAM (MSSP) ..................... 1.12

MERGERS AND ACQUISITIONS. See also business combinations
- Defined ...................................... 12.95, 12.97
- Disclosures .................................. 12.113
- Government health care entities ...... 15.01
- Investor-owned health care entities .................. 12.110–112
- NFP health care entities .................. 12.95–105
- Performance indicators .................. 12.107–109
- Reporting entity and related entities .................. 12.89–113

MERGERS COMPARED TO ACQUISITIONS FOR NFP ..................... 12.93

MERITORIOUS DEFENSES, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES ............ 8.124

MINIMUM REVENUE GUARANTEES, DEFINED ..................... 8.56

MODEL AUDIT RULE (MAR) .............. 2.110

MSRB. See Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board

MSSP. See Medicare Shared Savings Program

MULTI-LOCATION AUDITS .................... 2.23
MUNICIPAL SECURITIES RULEMAKING .. 7.01–105
  • Arbitrage ............................ 7.41
  • Assets limited as to use .......... 7.63
  • Attestation engagements ....... 7.103–104
  • Auditing considerations .......... 7.77–103
  • Auditor involvement with municipal securities filing .............. 7.86–95
  • Balance sheet presentation ........ 7.45–47
  • Bond insurance ...................... 7.10
  • Calls and mode conversions .......... 7.18–19
  • Conduit bonds traded in public markets ............ 7.06–08
  • Covensants ........................................ 7.79–81
  • Credit enhancement ............... 7.09–11
  • Credit ratings .............................. 7.82
  • Debt extinguishment ................. 7.28
  • Debt issuance costs ............... 7.34–36
  • Debt restructuring ................... 7.83–85
  • Defeasance ............................. 7.20–26
  • Derecognition .............................. 7.26
  • Disclosures .............................. 7.66–72, 15.86
  • Due-on-demand or put provisions . . 7.48–54
  • Extinguishment and modification transactions ....... 7.14–17
  • Financial statement presentation . . 7.48–76
  • Gain or loss on debt extinguishment .......... 7.32–33
  • GAS reports and references in official statement ............ 7.96
  • Generally ........................................ 7.01–05
  • Government health care entities . 15.78–80
  • Independent auditor reports .... 7.97
  • Interim financial reporting ........ 7.75–76
  • Issuance ........................................ 7.12–13
  • Long-term debt with covenant violation .......... 7.57–61
  • Modifications .............................. 7.27–31
  • Obligated group reporting ....... 7.73–74
  • Puts or tender options .......... 7.37–39
  • Regulation .................... Appendix A at 7.105
  • Statement of operations .......... 7.64–65
  • Subjective acceleration clause ....... 7.53, 7.55–56
  • Subsequent events ................. 7.62
  • Summary .............................. Exhibit 7-1 at 7.103
  • Tax considerations ............... 7.40–44
  • Underwriter letters ............... 7.98–102

MUNICIPAL SECURITIES RULEMAKING BOARD (MSRB) ........ 7.74, 7.97

N

NAMING OPPORTUNITIES ........ 11.34–37,
  Table 11-1 at 11.37

NATIONAL COUNCIL ON GOVERNMENTAL ACCOUNTING (NCGA) .. 15.77, 15.79

NET ASSETS (EQUITY) ........ 9.01–38
  • Auditing considerations ........ Exhibit 9-1 at 9.38
  • Classification of donor-restricted endowment funds .............. 9.26–32

NET ASSETS (EQUITY)—continued
  • Defined ........................................ 9.02
  • Disclosures .............................. 9.33–37
  • Investor-owned health care entities ........ 9.01
  • NFP health care entities .......... 3.29–32,
  9.02–18
  • Permanently restricted net assets . . 9.09–11
  • Reclassifications .............. 9.19–24
  • Restrictions on ....................... 9.09–14
  • Statement of changes in NFP health care entities .......... 3.29–32
  • Temporarily restricted net assets . . 9.12–14
  • Unrestricted net assets ........ 9.15–18

NET POSITION
  • Defined ........................................ 15.13, 15.17
  • Government health care entities . 15.13–18,
  15.77, 15.80, 15.109–119,
  15.123, 15.133–134
  • Governmental-restricted .......... 15.113–117
  • NFP health care entities .......... 15.110,
  15.112–114, 15.116
  • NFP health care entities reporting requirements .......... 15.118–119
  • Permanently-restricted .......... 15.116
  • Restrictions on .............. 15.111, 15.113–117
  • Statement of net position ........ 15.13–18,
  15.77, 15.80
  • Statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position . 15.19–25
  • Unrestricted .......... 15.110–111

NET REVENUE REPORTING INDICATORS,
  MANAGED CARE SERVICES .... 13.29

NET SETTLEMENT, DERIVATIVES .. 15.53

NFP. See not-for-profit (NFP) health care entities

NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS IN
  VOTING STOCK, NFP HEALTH CARE
  ENTITIES ........ 12.33–38

NONEXCHANGE FINANCIAL GUARANTEES .......... 15.94–96

NONEXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS
  • Classification and eligibility .......... 15.126
  • Government health care entities ........ 15.124–134
  • Presentation ......................... 15.133
  • Voluntary ............................. 15.126

NONFINANCIAL ASSETS, DEFINED .... 11.20

NONOPERATING REVENUES, COMPARED TO EXPENSES, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .... 15.21

NONRECIPROCAL TRANSFERS, PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT .... 6.31–33

NONREFUNDABLE ADVANCE FEE ACCOUNTING, CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES ......... 14.23–24,
  14.48, Exhibit 14-1 at 14.49

AAG-HCO NON
NOT RECORDED UNDER FAIR VALUE OPTION, INVESTMENTS
- Generally ........................................... 4.23
- Investor-owned health care
  entities ........................................... 4.24–.27
- NFP health care entities ................. 4.28–.35
- Other financial instruments .............. 4.36–.38

NOTES TO FINANCIAL STATEMENTS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ... 3.38, 15.118

NOT-FOR-PROFIT (NFP) HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .......... 3.01–.43
- Accounting changes ......................... 3.22
- Acquisition by, reporting requirements .... 12.97–.109
- Balance sheet presentation ................. 3.06–.08
- Classification of ............................... 1.08
- Complete set of financial statements .... 3.02–.05
- Defined ........................................... 1.02
- Derivatives ...................................... 5.45–.46
- Discontinued operations ..................... 3.21
- Donations received without restrictions ........................................... 11.11
- Expenses .......................................... 3.26–.28
- Expenses compared to operating revenues ........................................... 15.21
- Extraordinary items ........................... 3.21
- Financial statement examples ............... 3.42–.43
- Generally ......................................... 3.01
- Intermediate subtotals ....................... 3.18–.20
- Investor-owned health care
  entities ........................................... 12.110–.112
- Materiality benchmarks ...................... 2.28
- Net assets ........................................ 3.29–.32, 9.02–.18
- Net position ...................................... 15.110, 15.112–.114, 15.116
- Not recorded under fair value option, investments ......................... 4.28–.35
- Notes to financial statements .............. 3.37–.38, 15.118
- Performance indicators ..................... 3.12–.17
- Permanently restricted net assets ...... 9.09–.11
- Reclassifications ............................... 9.19–.24
- Reporting ......................................... 12.01–.115
- Revenue recognition .......................... 3.23–.25
- Statement of cash flows ...................... 3.33–.37
- Statement of changes in net assets .......... 3.29–.32
- Statement of operations ..................... 3.09–.11
- Subsequent events ............................. 3.39–.42
- Tax considerations for ....................... 8.86–.99
- Temporarily restricted net assets ...... 9.12–.14
- Transfer of assets .............................. 11.39–.46
- Unrestricted net assets ....................... 9.15–.18

OBLIGATED GROUP REPORTING, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ............ 7.73–.74
OCBOA. See other comprehensive basis of accounting
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET (OMB) ....................... 2.94–.97
OFFICE OF MUNICIPAL SECURITIES (OMS) .......................... Appendix A-4 at 7.105
OFFICE OF THE ATTORNEYS GENERAL, STATE ..................... 1.10
OFFICIAL STATEMENTS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ............. 7.91–.96
0il. See other information

AAG-HCO NOT
OMB. See Office of Management and Budget
OMS. See Office of Municipal Securities
ONGOING ECONOMIC INTEREST IN THE NET
ASSETS OF ANOTHER ............12.79
OPEB. See other postemployment benefits
OPERATING REVENUES, COMPARED TO
EXPENSES, GOVERNMENT HEALTH
CARE ENTITIES ............15.21
OPERATIONS, DEFICIENCY IN ........2.108
OPINION UNITS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH
CARE ENTITIES ............15.156–157
OTHER COMPREHENSIVE BASIS OF
ACCOUNTING (OCBOA) ..........2.15
OTHER INFORMATION (OI)
· Auditing consideration ........15.166–167
· GASB vs. AICPA auditing standard
  clarifications .....................15.01
· Government health care entities ....15.01,
  15.162, 15.166–167
· Independent auditor reports .......15.162
OTHER POSTEMPLOYMENT BENEFITS
(OPEB), GOVERNMENT HEALTH
CARE ENTITIES ............15.101
OTHER TRANSFERS, NFP HEALTH CARE
ENTITIES .........................12.82–86
OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES,
DEFERRED .............15.14–15, 15.58,
.......................................15.83, 15.111
OVERNIGHT INDEX SWAP RATE ....5.26–27

P
PATIENT OR RESIDENT SERVICE
REVENUE .........................10.18–36
· Ability to pay ....................10.34
· Accounting .....................10.30–36
· Charity care .....................10.25–28
· Estimating revenue not related to
  third-party payors ..........10.29
· Estimating revenue related to
  government programs or other
  third-party payors ..........10.20–24
· Financial reporting requirements ..10.30–36
· Generally .......................10.16
· Revenue recognition ..........10.18–19
PATIENT PROTECTION AND AFFORDABLE
CARE ACT OF 2010 (ACA) ......1.11–13,
.....................................2.45, 8.84–85
PATIENT RECEIVABLES, THIRD-PARTY
REVENUES AND RELATED
RECEIVABLES .............10.41–45
PCAOB. See Public Company Accounting
Oversight Board
PENSIONS ......................15.98–100,
.................................. Update 15-1 at 15.29,
.................................. Updates 15-3–15-4 at 15.99
PER CASE ARRANGEMENTS,
THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED
RECEIVABLES ..................10.17
PER DIEM ARRANGEMENTS,
THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED
RECEIVABLES .............10.17
PERFORMANCE INDICATORS .......3.12–20,
...................................12.107–109
PERFORMANCE MATERIALITY .......2.29–30
PERIODIC FEES, CONTINUING CARE
RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES ......14.09
PERIODIC FEES ONLY, CONTINUING CARE
RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES ......14.13
PERMANENT ENDOWMENT, GOVERNMENT
HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ......15.126
PERMANENTLY RESTRICTED NET
ASSETS .........................9.09–11
PERS. See Public Employees Retirement
System
PHI. See protected health information
PHYSICIAN GUARANTEES AND
AGREEMENTS, CONTINGENCIES AND
OTHER LIABILITIES ..........8.54–61
PLEDGES ......................11.15–24, 15.128
POSTRETIREMENT AND POSTEMPLOYMENT
BENEFIT PLANS .............8.75–76,
........................................15.101–103
PPE. See property, plant and equipment
PREDOMINANTLY SUPPORTED,
DEFINED .......................12.105
PREMIUM AND CAPITATION REVENUES,
THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED
RECEIVABLES .............10.16, 10.37–40
PREPAID HEALTH CARE SERVICES, RISK
ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES ......2.46
PRIVATE COMPANIES, AS INVESTOR-OWNED
BUSINESS ......................1.02, 1.08
PRIVATE COMPANY ALTERNATIVE
ISSUED BY THE PRIVATE COMPANY
COUNCIL ......................6.38–41,
.................................. Update 5-1 at 5.06,
.................................. Update 12-2 at 12.60
PRIVATE INUREMENT, CONTINGENCIES AND
OTHER LIABILITIES ........8.57, 8.92–93
PROMISES TO GIVE IN FUTURE PERIOD
(PLEDGES) ..............11.15–24, 15.128
PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT
(PPE) .......................6.01–51
· Asset retirement and environmental
  remediation obligations ..........6.18–20
· Auditing considerations ..........6.46–51,
  .................................. Exhibit 6-1 at 6.51
· Capitalized interest .............6.06–11
· Discontinued operations ..........6.28–30

AAG-HCO PRO
PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT (PPE)—continued

- Financial statement presentation ........ 6.42–45
- Fixed asset construction, lessee involvement in ........ 6.14–17
- Generally .................................. 6.01–05
- Government health care entities ........ 15.60
- Impairment or disposal .................. 6.21–27
- Long-lived assets ....................... 6.34–39
- Nonreciprocal transfers ............... 6.31–33
- Private company alternative issued by the private company council ........ 6.38–41
- Rebates and discounts .................. 6.12
- Supplies .................................. 6.13

PROTECTED HEALTH INFORMATION (PHI) ................................ 2.14

PUBLIC BUSINESS ENTITIES, AS INVESTOR-OWNED BUSINESS ........ 1.02, 1.08

PUBLIC COMPANY ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD (PCAOB)
- Audit considerations .................... 2.60
- Audit planning ................................ 2.10
- Internal controls ......................... 2.28, 2.66, 4.74

PUBLIC EMPLOYEES RETIREMENT SYSTEM (PERS) .................... 15.101

PUBLIC ENTITY RISK POOLS .......... 15.91

PURPOSE OF GUIDE .................... 1.01

PUTS IN DEBT, EMBEDDED Derivatives .................. 5.35–36

PUTS OR TENDER OPTIONS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ............ 7.37–39

R

RAC. See Recovery Audit Contractor

RADV. See Risk Assessment Data Validation

RATE SETTING, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES ........ 10.05–10

RBC FORMULA. See risk-based capital (RBC) formula

REACQUISITION PRICE .................... 7.33

REBATES AND Discounts, PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT ........ 6.12

RECEIVABLES. See third-party revenues and related receivables

RECLASSIFICATION
- Of net assets ......................... 9.21
- NFP health care entities ........... 3.11

RECOVERY AUDIT CONTRACTOR (RAC) .................................... 2.17

REFORM OF HEALTH CARE ............ 1.12–14


REGULATIONS
- Communications with regulators, auditing considerations ............. 2.110
- Compliance with, auditing considerations .......................... 2.67–77
- Municipal securities . Appendix A at 7.105
- Responsibility for compliance ................................ 2.68
- Responsibility of management ..................... 2.69
- Responsibility of the auditor .............................. 2.70–77

REGULATORY ENVIRONMENT .... 1.09–11

REOCCUPANCY PROCEEDS FEES, CCRC ........ 14.21–22

REPORTING
- Fundraising and special event cost ................................ 11.31–33
- Government health care entities . 15.27–28, 15.52, 15.118–119
- Guidance updates, summary .......... Appendix A
- Joint and several liability arrangements .................. 8.77
- Not-for-profit entities. See not-for-profit health care entities reporting requirements
- Patient or resident service revenue ..................... 10.30–36
- Segment reporting ................................ 15.27–28

REPORTING ENTITY AND RELATED ENTITIES .......... 12.01–115
- Acquisition by NFP entities .......... 12.97–109
- Auditing considerations .......... 12.114, Exhibit 12-2 at 12.114
- Business combinations ............... 15.153–154
- Defined .................................. 15.135
- Disclosures ......................... 12.87–88, 12.113
- Equity transactions .................. 12.78–81
- Equity transfers ....................... 12.73–77, 12.80
- Financial statement presentation .. 12.62–72
- Flowcharts .......... Appendix A at 12.115
- Generally . 12.01–05, Exhibit 12-1 at 12.05
- Government health care entities .......... 15.135–146
- Institutionally-related foundations .......... 15.147–152
- Managed care services .............. 13.23–30
- Mergers and acquisitions .......... 12.89–113
- Other transfers ....................... 12.82–86
- Performance indicators .............. 12.107–109
- Private company alternative issues by the private company council .......... Update 12-2 at 12.60

REPRESENTATION LETTER TO UNDERWRITERS ........ 7.98–102
### Subject Index

**REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (RSI)**
- Auditing consideration .......... 15.162–165
- Financial statement presentation ..... 15.29–33
- GASB vs. AICPA auditing standard clarifications .................................. 15.01
- Government health care entities ..... 15.01, 15.29–33, 15.159, 15.163–165
- Independent auditor reports .......... 15.162
- Pensions ................................ Update 15-1 at 15.29

**RESIDENT SERVICE REVENUE. See patient or resident service revenue**

**RESTRICTIONS**
- Donor-imposed .................. 9.06, 11.10–14, 11.21, 11.38
- Investment gain or loss related to donor-restricted contributions .......... 11.38
- On net assets .................. 9.09–14
- On net position .............. 15.111, 15.113–117
- Restricted assets reported as .......... 15.16

**RESTRUCTURING COSTS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .......... 15.105**

**REVERSIVELY-RATED POLICIES AND CONTRACTS**
- Government health care entities .......... 15.90
- Medical malpractice policy, written by captive insurance company .......... 8.41–43
- Medical malpractice premiums .......... 8.37–40

**RETURN ON INVESTMENTS, GOVERNMENTAL HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .......... 15.49–50**

**REVENUE BONDS, MUNICIPAL .......... 7.03**

**REVENUE RECOGNITION**
- Contingencies and other liabilities .......... 8.03–06
- Government health care entities .......... 15.120–123
- Internal controls .................. 2.49
- Managed care services ............. 13.03–06
- New standard for, FASB ASU No. 2014-09 .................. Appendix F
- NFP health care entities .......... 3.23–25
- Patient or resident service revenue .......... 10.18–19
- Risk assessment procedures .......... 2.48–49,
- Substantive analytical procedures ........ 2.58–59
- Third-party. See third-party revenues and related receivables

**REVERSE REPURCHASE AGREEMENTS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES .......... 15.51**

**REVERSIONARY INTEREST OF PROCEEDS, DONATIONS .................. 6.04**

**RISK ASSESSMENT DATA VALIDATION (RADV) .................. 2.17**

**RISK ASSESSMENT PROCEDURES ............. 2.35–57**
- Analytical procedures .......... 2.40–42, 2.58–59
- Discussion among audit team .......... 2.43
- The entity and its environment .......... 2.44–45
- GAAS and ................................ 2.51–52
- Generally .................. 2.35–36
- Medical malpractice losses and obligations .......... 2.47
- Prepaid health care services ................ 2.46
- Related activities and .......... 2.37–57
- Revenue recognition ............ 2.48–49,
- Substantive analytical procedures ........ Update 2-1 at 2.48

**RISK OF LOSS, MANAGING, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES .......... 8.10–12**

**RISK OF MATERIAL MISSTATEMENT ............. 2.05–08, 2.33–34, 2.49**

**RISK-BASED CAPITAL (RBC) FORMULA ............. 2.70, 2.106–107**

**RISK-BASED CONTRACTS, THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES .......... 10.17**

**RISKS AND UNCERTAINTIES, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES .......... 8.100–106**

RSI. See required supplementary information

**SABBATICALS AND OTHER COMPENSATED ABSENCES ............. 8.74, 15.104**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT (2002) .................. 2.110, 7.08**

**SCA. See service concession arrangement**

**SCHEDULE OF CHANGES MADE TO TEXT FROM PREVIOUS EDITION ........ Appendix H**

**SECONDARY MARKET DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS .......... Appendix A-5–A-10 at 7.105**

**SECURITIES ACT OF 1933 (THE 1933 ACT), MUNICIPAL BONDS .......... 7.92–94, Appendix A at 7.105**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)**
- EDGAR system .................. 3.43
- EMMAS system ............... 3.43, 7.74, 7.97, Appendix A-11 at 7.105
- Office of Municipal Securities .......... Appendix A-4 at 7.105
- Secondary market disclosure requirements .......... Appendix A-5–A-10 at 7.105

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934 (1934 ACT) .......... 7.08, Appendix A at 7.105**
SECURITIES INDUSTRY AND FINANCIAL MARKETS ASSOCIATION (SIFMA) 5.26–.27
SECURITIES LENDING ACTIVITIES, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 15.51
SECURITY, DEFINED 15.40–.41, 15.43–.44
SEGMENT REPORTING, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 15.27–.28
SELF-INSURANCE TRUSTS, IRREVOCABLE 15.92
SERVICE CONCESSION ARRANGEMENT (SCA) 15.71–.74
SERVICE ORGANIZATIONS, TRANSACTIONS, AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS 2.63–.66
SERVICES, CONTRIBUTIONS RECEIVED AND MADE 11.28–.30, Update 11-1 at 11.28
SETTLEMENT FACTORS, DERIVATIVES 5.37–.39
SPLIT-INTEREST AGREEMENTS, EMBEDDED DERIVATIVES 5.37–.39
SSAP. See Statements of Statutory Accounting Principles
STARK I, II AND III 1.11
STATE AND LOCAL TAXES, CONTINGENCIES AND OTHER LIABILITIES 8.95
STATE HEALTH CARE ENTITIES. See government health care entities
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS
· Government health care entities 15.26, 15.121
· Managed care services 13.25–.27
· NFP health care entities 3.33–.37
STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN NET ASSETS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 3.29–.32
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 15.13–18, 15.42, 15.77, 15.80
STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING 7.64–.65
STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 3.09–.11
· Accounting changes 3.22
· Discontinued operations 3.21
· Expenses 3.26–.28
· Extraordinary items 3.21
· Generally 3.09–.28
· Intermediate measures for operations 3.18–.20
· Performance indicators for operations 3.12–.20
· Revenues 3.23–.25
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION 15.19–.25
STATEMENTS OF STATUTORY ACCOUNTING PRINCIPLES (SSAP) 2.103, 2.105
STATUTORY REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS, AUDITING 2.102–.105
STOP-LOSS INSURANCE ACCOUNTING, MANAGED CARE SERVICES 13.18, 13.19
SUBJECTIVE ACCELERATION CLAUSE 7.53, 7.55–.56
SUBSEQUENT EVENTS, NFP HEALTH CARE ENTITIES 3.39–.42
SUBSTANTIAL DOUBT 2.85
SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (SI)
· Auditing consideration 15.162, 15.166–167
· GASB vs. AICPA auditing standard clarifications 15.01
· Government health care entities 15.01, 15.162, 15.166–167
· Independent auditor reports 15.162
SUPPLIES, PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT 6.13

AAG-HCO SEC
SWAPS .......................... 5.03, 15.56

T

TAX CONSIDERATIONS
  · Contingencies and other liabilities .................. 8.86–99, 8.119
  · Government health care entities, compensation and related benefits ..........15.106–107
  · Medicaid voluntary contribution or taxation programs ...................... 8.98–99
  · Municipal bond financing ............ 7.40–44
  · Municipal bonds ....................... 7.04
  · For NFP entities .................. 8.86–99
  · Private inurement and intermediate sanctions .......................... 8.57, 8.92–93
  · State and local taxes ............. 8.95
  · Tax positions ....................... 8.96–97
  · Unrelated business income ........ 8.94

TAX POSITIONS ..................... 8.96–97

TAX REFORM ACT (1986) ............. 7.17

TAX-EXEMPT HOSPITALS .............. 1.12

TEMPERARILY RESTRICTED NET ASSETS .................. 9.12–14

TENDER OPTIONS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING ................. 7.37–39

TERM ENDOWMENT, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........ 15.126

TERMINATION BENEFITS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........... 15.101–103, 15.105

TERMS OF ENGAGEMENT, AUDIT PLANNING .................. 2.10–14

THIRD-PARTY REVENUES AND RELATED RECEIVABLES .......... 10.01–56
  · Accounts receivable confirmations .................. 10.58–60
  · Audit planning .......................... 2.11
  · Auditing considerations .................. 10.55–57, Exhibit 10-1 at 10.60
  · Estimated final settlements ........... 10.46–54
  · Generally ................................ 10.01–15
  · Government contracting environment .................. 10.11–14
  · Government health care entities .......... 15.120–123
  · Medical coding .......................... 2.49, 2.93
  · Patient or resident service revenue. See patient or resident service revenue
  · Patient receivables .................. 10.41–45
  · Premium and capitation revenues ........ 10.16, 10.37–40
  · Rate setting .......................... 10.05–10
  · Types of revenue ...................... 10.16
  · Written representations .............. 2.93

TRADING SECURITIES ................... 4.25

TRANSFER OF OPERATIONS, GOVERNMENT HEALTH CARE ENTITIES ........ 15.01

TRICARE .................................. 10.11

TRUST FUNDS, MEDICAL MALPRACTICE .................. 8.44–47

U

UNCONDITIONAL PROMISES TO GIVE ........ 11.14, 11.20, 11.22, 11.24

UNDERSTANDING OF THE ENTITY ........ 2.36

UNDERWRITER LETTERS, MUNICIPAL BOND FINANCING .......... 7.98–102

UNDERWRITERS, DEFINED .............. 7.98

UNIFORM PRUDENT MANAGEMENT OF INSTITUTIONAL FUNDS ACT (UPMIFA) ........... 9.27–29, 9.31

UNRELATED BUSINESS INCOME .......... 8.94

UNRESTRICTED NET ASSETS .......... 9.15–18

UNRESTRICTED NET POSITION .......... 15.110–111

UPMIFA. See Uniform Prudent Management of Institutional Funds Act

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES ............. 1.09

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE .......... 1.10

USE FEES, CONTINUING CARE RETIREMENT COMMUNITIES .......... 14.10

USEFUL LIFE .................. 6.39–41

V

VALUE
  · Contributions received .......... 11.23
  · Of naming opportunities ......... 11.37

VARIABLE INTEREST ENTITIES (VIE) .................. 12.61

VARIANCE POWER ...................... 11.42

VIE. See variable interest entities

VOLUNTARY CONTRIBUTIONS.
  See also contributions received and made ........ 11.03

VOLUNTARY HEALTH AND WELFARE ENTITIES .... 1.03, 1.08

VOLUNTARY NONEXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS, GOVERNMENTAL .......... 15.126

W

WRITTEN REPRESENTATIONS, AUDITING CONSIDERATIONS ........ 2.82, 2.88–93